



PROJECT MANUAL

CNE Saline Courthouse Restoration Specifications



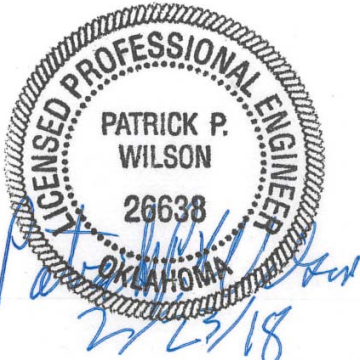

1408-018 - Package 1: Bid Set

Issue 1 - February 23, 2018



1architecture
1319 EAST 6TH ST.
TULSA, OK 74120
(918) 764.9996
1architecture.com

SECTION 00 0107 - SEALS PAGE

<p>Architect</p>  <p>MELISSA K LYNN a0162 2-22-18</p> <p>STATE OF OKLAHOMA LICENSED ARCHITECT</p>	<p>MEP Engineer</p>  <p>JEFF PATE 28075 02-22-18</p> <p>LICENSED PROFESSIONAL ENGINEER OKLAHOMA</p> <p>CA5338(PE)</p>
<p>Civil Engineer</p>  <p>PATRICK P. WILSON 26638 2/23/18</p> <p>LICENSED PROFESSIONAL ENGINEER OKLAHOMA</p>	 <p>Dewain Hodge Jr. 23185 02-22-2018</p> <p>LICENSED PROFESSIONAL ENGINEER OKLAHOMA</p> <p>CA5338(PE)</p>

END OF SECTION

TABLE OF CONTENTS

SPECIFICATION SECTIONS:

DIVISION 00 - PROCUREMENT AND CONTRACTING REQUIREMENTS

00 0102	COVER
00 0107	SEALS PAGE
00 0111	TABLE OF CONTENTS
00 3132	GEOTECHNICAL DATA <i>Geotechnical Engineering Report 4.21.2017</i>

DIVISION 01 - GENERAL REQUIREMENTS

01 1000	SUMMARY
01 2500	SUBSTITUTION PROCEDURES <i>Request Form - Bidding</i> <i>Request Form - Construction</i>
01 3100	PROJECT MANAGEMENT AND COORDINATION
01 3110	REQUEST FOR INTERPRETATION
01 3120	ELECTRONIC FILES AGREEMENT
01 3216	CONSTRUCTION SCHEDULE
01 3233	PHOTOGRAPHIC DOCUMENTATION
01 3300	SUBMITTAL PROCEDURES
01 3553	SECURITY PROCEDURES
01 4000	QUALITY REQUIREMENTS
01 4200	DEFINITIONS AND REFERENCE STANDARDS
01 5000	TEMPORARY FACILITIES AND CONTROLS
01 5500	VEHICULAR ACCESS AND PARKING
01 7123	CONTRACTOR CONSTRUCTION STAKING
01 7329	CUTTING AND PATCHING
01 7413	PROGRESS CLEARING
01 7419	CONSTRUCTION WASTE MANAGEMENT AND DISPOSAL
01 7420	REMOVAL OF CONDEMNED MATERIALS AND STRUCTURES
01 7700	CLOSEOUT PROCEDURES
01 7823	OPERATION AND MAINTENANCE DATA
01 7839	PROJECT RECORD DOCUMENTS
01 8113	INDOOR AIR QUALITY

DIVISION 02 - EXISTING CONDITIONS

02 4119	SELECTIVE DEMOLITION
---------	----------------------

DIVISION 03 - CONCRETE – NOT USED

DIVISION 04 - MASONRY – NOT USED

DIVISION 05 - METALS – NOT USED

DIVISION 06 - WOOD, PLASTICS, AND COMPOSITES – NOT USED

DIVISION 07 - THERMAL AND MOISTURE PROTECTION

07 2100 THERMAL INSULATION (ADD ALTERNATE)
07 2126 BLOWN INSULATION

DIVISION 08 - OPENINGS – NOT USED

DIVISION 09 - FINISHES

09 2900 GYPSUM BOARD
09 3000 TILING
09 9723 CONCRETE SEALERS

DIVISION 10 - SPECIALTIES

10 4413 FIRE EXTINGUISHER CABINETS

DIVISION 11 - EQUIPMENT – NOT USED

DIVISION 12 - FURNISHINGS – NOT USED

DIVISION 13 - SPECIAL CONSTRUCTION – NOT USED

DIVISION 14 - CONVEYING EQUIPMENT- NOT USED

DIVISION 21 - FIRE SUPPRESSION

21 0517 SLEEVES AND SLEEVE SEALS FOR FIRE-SUPPRESSION PIPING
21 2200 CLEAN-AGENT FIRE-EXTINGUISHING SYSTEMS

DIVISION 22 - PLUMBING

22 0513 COMMON MOTOR REQUIREMENTS FOR PLUMBING EQUIPMENT
22 0516 EXPANSION FITTINGS AND LOOPS FOR PLUMBING PIPING
22 0517 SLEEVES AND SLEEVE SEALS FOR PLUMBING PIPING
22 0518 ESCUTCHEONS FOR PLUMBING PIPING
22 0523 GENERAL-DUTY VALVES FOR PLUMBING PIPING
22 0529 HANGERS AND SUPPORTS FOR PLUMBING PIPING AND EQUIPMENT
22 0553 IDENTIFICATION FOR PLUMBING PIPING AND EQUIPMENT
22 0719 PLUMBING PIPING INSULATION
22 1116 DOMESTIC WATER PIPING
22 1119 DOMESTIC WATER PIPING SPECIALTIES
22 1316 SANITARY WASTE AND VENT PIPING
22 1319 SANITARY WASTE PIPING SPECIALTIES
22 1323 SANITARY WASTE INTERCEPTORS
22 3300 ELECTRIC, DOMESTIC-WATER HEATERS
22 4213.13 COMMERCIAL WATER CLOSETS
22 4216.13 COMMERCIAL LAVATORIES
22 4216.16 COMMERCIAL SINKS

DIVISION 23 - HEATING VENTILATING AND AIR CONDITIONING

23 0513	COMMON MOTOR REQUIREMENTS FOR HVAC EQUIPMENT
23 0517	SLEEVES AND SLEEVE SEALS FOR HVAC PIPING
23 0518	ESCUTCHEONS FOR HVAC PIPING
23 0529	HANGERS AND SUPPORTS FOR HVAC PIPING AND EQUIPMENT
23 0553	IDENTIFICATION FOR HVAC PIPING AND EQUIPMENT
23 0593	TESTING, ADJUSTING, AND BALANCING FOR HVAC
23 0713	DUCT INSULATION
23 0800	COMMISSIONING OF HVAC
23 2300	REFRIGERANT PIPING
23 3113	METAL DUCTS
23 3300	AIR DUCT ACCESSORIES
23 3713	DIFFUSERS, REGISTERS, AND GRILLES
23 5400	FURNACES
23 8126	SPLIT-SYSTEM AIR-CONDITIONERS
23 8239	UNIT HEATERS

DIVISION 25 - INTEGRATED AUTOMATION – NOT USED

DIVISION 26 - ELECTRICAL

26 0519	LOW-VOLTAGE ELECTRICAL POWER CONDUCTORS AND CABLES
26 0523	CONTROL-VOLTAGE ELECTRICAL POWER CABLES
26 0526	GROUNDING AND BONDING FOR ELECTRICAL SYSTEMS
26 0529	HANGERS AND SUPPORTS FOR ELECTRICAL SYSTEMS
26 0533	RACEWAYS AND BOXES FOR ELECTRICAL SYSTEMS
26 0544	SLEEVES AND SLEEVE SEALS FOR ELECTRICAL RACEWAYS AND CABLING
26 0548.16	SEISMIC CONTROLS FOR ELECTRICAL SYSTEMS
26 0553	IDENTIFICATION FOR ELECTRICAL SYSTEMS
26 0572	OVERCURRENT PROTECTIVE DEVICE SHORT-CIRCUIT STUDY
26 0573	OVERCURRENT PROTECTIVE DEVICE COORDINATION STUDY
26 0574	OVERCURRENT PROTECTIVE DEVICE ARC-FLASH STUDY
26 0923	LIGHTING CONTROL DEVICES
26 2416	PANELBOARDS
26 2713	ELECTRICITY METERING
26 2726	WIRING DEVICES
26 2813	FUSES
26 2816	ENCLOSED SWITCHES AND CIRCUIT BREAKERS
26 4313	SURGE PROTECTION FOR LOW-VOLTAGE ELECTRICAL POWER CIRCUITS
26 5119	LED INTERIOR LIGHTING
26 5619	EXTERIOR LIGHTING

DIVISION 27 - COMMUNICATIONS – NOT USED

DIVISION 28 - ELECTRONIC SAFETY AND SECURITY

28 3111	DIGITAL, ADDRESSABLE FIRE-ALARM SYSTEM
---------	--

DIVISION 31 - EARTHWORK

- 31 1100 CLEARING AND GRUBBING
- 31 1110 SALVAGING TOPSOIL
- 31 2300 EXCAVATION AND EMBANKMENT
- 31 3116 TERMITE AND INSECT CONTROL (ADD ALTERNATE)

DIVISION 32 - EXTERIOR IMPROVEMENTS

- 32 1123 AGGREGATE BASE COURSES
ODOT Special Provision for Aggregate Base
- 32 1310 CONCRETE PAVING
- 32 1516 SIDEWALK

DIVISION 33 - UTILITIES

- 33 1115 LIQUEFIED PETROLEUM GAS PIPING POLYETHYLENE (PE)

DIVISION 34 - TRANSPORTATION

- 34 4130 PAVEMENT STRIPING

REFERENCE GUIDELINES:

OKLAHOMA DEPARTMENT OF TRANSPORTATION

- ODOT SOLID SLAB SODDING
- ODOT TEMPORARY SEDIMENT CONTROLS
- ODOT TEMPORARY SILT DIKE
- ODOT PIPE UNDERDRAIN INSTALLATION
- ODOT SQUARE TUBE POST DETAILS

GENERAL SERVICES ADMINISTRATION

(ADDITIONAL GUIDELINES AVAILABLE AT <https://www.gsa.gov/real-estate/historic-preservation/historic-preservation-policy-tools/preservation-tools-resources/technical-documents>)

- 6300-02-S SURFACE PREPARATION FOR PAINTING WOOD
- 6300-03-S APPLYING A SEMI-TRANSPARENT OR OPAQUE STAIN TO WOOD
- 6400-05-S CLEANING AND REFINISHING OF WOODWORK
- 6400-15-S REPLACING DETERIORATED WOODWORK
- 6430-04-S STRIPPING DETERIORATED VARNISH FROM WOOD HANDRAILS & REFINISHING
- 6440-02-S REPLACING DAMAGED OR MISSING PIECES OF WOOD WALL MOLDING
- 6440-04-S REPAIRING SCRATCHES, GOUGES AND DENTS IN WOOD WALL ORNAMENT
- 8210-02-S REPAIR OF BOWS OR UNDULATIONS IN A WOOD DOOR FRAME
- 8610-01-S REHABILITATING WOOD WINDOWS
- 8610-04-S REPLACING A WOOD WINDOW SILL
- 8611-01-S SEALING LEAKY WOOD DOUBLE-HUNG WINDOWS
- 8800-01-S REPLACING BROKEN GLASS IN WOOD AND METAL WINDOWS
- 9550-02-S STRIPPING, STAINING AND POLISHING WOOD FLOORS
- 9560-01-S REPLACING DAMAGED FLOORBOARDS

SALINE COURTHOUSE REMODEL
ROSE, OK

CHEROKEE NATION BUSINESSES

9560-02-S REPAIRING SMALL HOLES AND CRACKS IN WOOD FLOORS
9900-07-S GENERAL GUIDELINES FOR PAINTING EXTERIOR AND INTERIOR SURFACES

THE SECRETARY OF THE INTERIOR'S STANDARDS FOR THE TREATMENT OF HISTORIC PROPERTIES

STANDARDS FOR REHABILITATION & GUIDELINES FOR REHABILITATING HISTORIC BUILDINGS - 2017

SECTION 00 3132 GEOTECHNICAL DATA

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General Conditions and Division 01 Specifications, apply to this Section.

1.2 DESCRIPTION

- A. Geotechnical investigations were conducted for the Owner in the area where work is to be performed under the Contract and a report of the results prepared. The report is included in the Project Manual.

1.3 USE OF DATA

- A. The report of geotechnical investigations was obtained for use in study and design. The report is made available for Bidder's information only and is neither a part of the Contract Documents nor a warranty of subsurface conditions.
- B. Bidder shall visit the site and become acquainted with existing conditions. Prior to bidding, Bidder may make its own subsurface investigations to satisfy itself as to site and subsurface conditions, subject to the following stipulations:
 - 1. Such investigations shall be performed only under time schedules and arrangements approved in advance by the Owner in writing.
 - 2. The sites of such investigations shall be restored to the respective conditions that existed before such investigations were undertaken.
 - 3. Bidder shall indemnify and hold harmless the Owner and Architect from and against claims, damages, losses, and expenses attributable to bodily injury or death and to injury to or destruction of tangible property arising out of or resulting from such investigations.
- C. Bidder shall assume full responsibility for interpreting the information furnished in the report, for the conclusions drawn from the information furnished, and from its inspection of the site.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS (NOT USED)

PART 3 - EXECUTION (NOT USED)

END OF SECTION

**GEOTECHNICAL ENGINEERING REPORT
SALINE COURTHOUSE – NEW IMPROVEMENTS
ROSE, OKLAHOMA**

Prepared for:

CHEROKEE NATION BUSINESSES, LLC
777 West Cherokee Street
Catoosa, Oklahoma 74015

Prepared by:



Springfield, MO
4168 W. Kearney Springfield, MO 65803
Call 417.864.6000 Fax 417.864.6004
www.ppimo.com

PPI PROJECT NUMBER: 242380

PROJECT SERVICE AGREEMENT NUMBER: 15E0644.08

April 21, 2017

April 21, 2017

Cherokee Nation Businesses, LLC
777 West Cherokee Street
Catoosa, Oklahoma 74015

Attn: Mr. WC Gernandt
Email: wc.gernandt@cnent.com

RE: Geotechnical Engineering Report
Saline Courthouse – New Improvements
Rose, Oklahoma
PPI Project Number: 242380
Project Service Agreement Number: 15E0644.08

Dear Mr. Gernandt:

Attached, please find the report summarizing the results of the geotechnical investigation conducted for the above referenced project. We appreciate this opportunity to be of service. If you have any questions, please don't hesitate to contact this office.

PALMERTON & PARRISH, INC.
By:

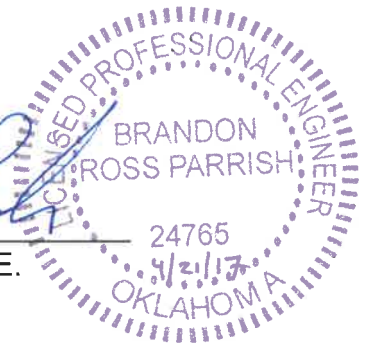
PALMERTON & PARRISH, INC.
By:

Taylor Anderson

Taylor L. Anderson, E.I.
Geotechnical Engineer

Brandon Parrish

Brandon R. Parrish, P.E.
Vice-President



Submitted: One (1) Electronic .pdf Copy

TLA/BRP/BRP/jrh

cc: Mr. Kevin Ogle
Kevin.Ogle@cn-bus.com

TABLE OF CONTENTS

EXECUTIVE SUMMARY.....	1 & 2
1.0 INTRODUCTION.....	3
2.0 PROJECT DESCRIPTION.....	4
3.0 SITE DESCRIPTION.....	4
4.0 SUBSURFACE INVESTIGATION.....	4
4.1 Subsurface Borings.....	5
4.2 Laboratory Testing.....	5
5.0 SITE GEOLOGY.....	6
6.0 GENERAL SITE & SUBSURFACE CONDITIONS.....	6
6.1 Limestone.....	7
6.2 Auger Refusal.....	7
6.3 Groundwater.....	8
7.0 EARTHWORK.....	8
7.1 Fill Material Types.....	9
7.2 Compaction Requirements.....	10
7.3 Landscaping & Site Drainage.....	10
7.4 Earthwork Construction Considerations.....	11
7.5 Excavations.....	11
8.0 FOUNDATIONS.....	11
8.1 Uplift Capacity of Shallow Foundations.....	12
8.2 Construction Considerations for Shallow Foundations.....	13
9.0 SEISMIC CONSIDERATIONS.....	13
10.0 FLOOR SLABS.....	13
11.0 PAVEMENT.....	14
11.1 Flexible Pavement.....	14
11.2 Rigid Pavement.....	14
11.3 Pavement Thickness.....	15
12.0 CONSTRUCTION OBSERVATION & TESTING.....	15
13.0 REPORT LIMITATIONS.....	16

FIGURES

FIGURE 1 – BORING LOCATION PLAN

APPENDICES

APPENDIX I – BORING LOGS & KEY TO SYMBOLS
 APPENDIX II – GENERAL NOTES
 APPENDIX III – IMPORTANT INFORMATION REGARDING YOUR
 GEOTECHNICAL REPORT

EXECUTIVE SUMMARY

A Geotechnical Investigation was performed at the site planned for construction of the proposed New Improvements to the existing Saline Courthouse property located in Rose, Oklahoma. It is understood that the New Improvements will include a new Restroom Building, parking area and trail system. The proposed new Restroom Building is anticipated to be single-story in height, utilize a slab-on-grade floor system and measure approximately 650 sq. ft. in plan view. Foundation and floor slab loadings are anticipated to be light. Minimal cut and/or fill depths are anticipated to achieve finish subgrade elevations across the project site. New pavement for parking is also anticipated.

As requested by Cherokee Nation Businesses, LLC (CNB), a total of six (6) geotechnical borings were drilled at the project site. All borings were discontinued in natural overburden soils or limestone bedrock at depths ranging from 5 to 15 ft. below the existing ground surface. Based upon the information obtained from the borings and subsequent laboratory testing, the site is suitable for construction of the proposed New Improvements to the existing Saline Courthouse property. Important geotechnical considerations for the project are summarized below. However, users of the information contained in the report must review the entire report for specific details pertinent to geotechnical design considerations.

- Topsoil on the order of 3 to 5 inches in depth was encountered within Borings 1, 2, 5 and 6. Thicker zones of topsoil may be encountered during site development procedures;
- Shallow natural soils containing little to no rock content at the project site may undergo loss of shear strength properties upon an increase in soil moisture or when disturbed by heavier construction equipment. The shallow lean clays encountered within a majority of the borings may not be suitable for support of building slabs, fill placement, and pavements. In addition, if these shallow clays are removed, they may not be suitable for use as controlled fill, if weather conditions do not allow for proper drying. **Removal and replacement of unsuitable subgrade soils and the possible requirement of importing suitable fill material should be included in project budgets and schedules;**

EXECUTIVE SUMMARY

- Shallow fat CH clays were encountered across the project site. Based upon the anticipated excavation depths, CH clays may be exposed at/or near foundation bottoms within the proposed development area. Care should be exercised so that soils should not be allowed to become frozen, desiccated, saturated or disturbed prior to concrete placement to limit the potential for shrink/swell. All affected material should be removed from excavations;
- Limestone was encountered within Borings 1, 3, 5 and 6 at depths ranging from 4.8 to 10.8 ft. below the existing ground surface. Limestone may be encountered at shallower depths in areas not drilled due to the pinnacled nature of the limestone;
- It is recommended that the proposed Restroom Building be supported upon shallow foundations bearing in natural overburden soils or controlled fill. These recommendations are further discussed in Section 8.0 of this report;
- Based upon information provided by the Design Team, minimal excavation is anticipated to be required for foundation installation for the Restroom Building, with minimal fill placement to achieve Finish Floor Elevation (FFE);
- The project site classifies as a Site Class C in accordance with Section 1613 of the 2012 International Building Code (IBC); and
- Palmerton & Parrish, Inc. should be retained for construction observation and construction materials testing. Close monitoring of subgrade preparation work is considered critical to achieve adequate foundation and subgrade performance.

GEOTECHNICAL ENGINEERING REPORT
SALINE COURTHOUSE – NEW IMPROVEMENTS
ROSE, OKLAHOMA

1.0 INTRODUCTION

This is the report of the Geotechnical Investigation performed at the site planned for construction of the proposed New Improvements to the existing Saline Courthouse property located in Rose, Oklahoma. This investigation was authorized by Project Service Agreement No. 15E0644.08, between Cherokee Nation Businesses, LLC (CNB) and Palmerton & Parrish, Inc. (PPI) dated March 20, 2017. The approximate site location is shown in the aerial photograph below for reference.



The purpose of the Geotechnical Investigation was to provide information for foundation design and construction planning, and to aid in site development. PPI’s scope of services included field and laboratory investigation of the subsurface conditions in the vicinity of the proposed project site, engineering analysis of the collected data, development of recommendations for foundation & pavement design and construction planning, and preparation of this engineering report.

2.0 PROJECT DESCRIPTION

Item	Description
Site Layout	See Figure 1: Boring Location Plan
New Restroom Building	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Single-story in height; • Utilize a slab-on-grade floor system; and • Measure approximately 650 sq. ft. in plan view.
Anticipated Foundation & Floor Slab Loadings	Light.
New Pavement	New pavement for parking and a trail system is also anticipated.
Anticipated Grading	Minimal depths fill to achieve finish subgrade elevation within the Restroom Building, with minimal depths of cut/fill within the New Parking Area.

3.0 SITE DESCRIPTION

Item	Description
Physical Location	Rose, Oklahoma
Township/Range/Section	20N/22E/18
Latitude/Longitude (± Center of Project Site)	36.207897°N / -95.009833°W
Available Historic Aerial Photography	Based upon available historic aerial photography, the project site has been largely undeveloped to the south. However, the existing Courthouse Building and decomposed granite trail system have been present at the project site to the north and west since prior to 1995.
Current Ground Cover	Grass covered field and wooded area.
Existing Topography	Gently sloping to the southwest.
Drainage Characteristics	Poor to fair.

4.0 SUBSURFACE INVESTIGATION

Subsurface conditions were investigated through completion of six (6) subsurface borings and subsequent laboratory testing.

4.1 Subsurface Borings

Boring locations were selected by CNB and staked in the field by PPI. Borings were identified as follows:

Borings	Location
1 & 2	Restroom Building
3 & 4	Trail System
5 & 6	Parking Areas

Approximate boring locations are shown on Figure 1: Boring Location Plan. The Oklahoma One-Call System was notified prior to the investigation to assist in locating buried public utilities.

All borings were discontinued in natural overburden soils or limestone bedrock at depths ranging from 5 to 15 ft. below the existing ground surface. Logs of the borings showing descriptions of soil and rock units encountered, as well as results of field and laboratory tests and a “Key to Symbols” are presented in Appendix I.

Borings were drilled March 29, 2017 using 4.5-inch O.D. continuous flight augers powered by a CME-55 track-mounted drill-rig. Soil samples were collected at 2.5 to 5-ft. centers during drilling. Soil sample types included split spoon samples collected while performing the Standard Penetration Test (SPT) in general accordance with ASTM D1586 and thin walled Shelby tubes pushed hydraulically in advance of drilling in accordance with ASTM D1587. Please refer to Appendix II for general notes regarding boring logs and additional soil sampling information.

4.2 Laboratory Testing

Collected samples were sealed and transported to the laboratory for further evaluation and visual examination. Laboratory soil testing included the following:

- Moisture Content (ASTM D2216);
- Unconfined Compressive Strength (ASTM D2166);
- Atterberg Limits (ASTM D4318);

- Swell Tests (ASTM D4546): and
- Pocket Penetrometers.

Laboratory test results are shown on each boring log in Appendix I and are summarized in the following table.

Boring	Depth (ft.)	Liquid Limit (LL)	Plastic Limit (PL)	Plasticity Index (PI)	Moisture Content (%)	USCS Symbol	Cohesion (psf)	Dry Unit Wt. (pcf)	Percent Swell (%)	Swell Pressure (tsf)
1	0 to 2	-	-	-	17.0	CL	1280	110.3	-	-
1	6.5 to 8.5	58	17	41	26.9	CH	1680	98.0	0	0
2	3.5 to 5	44	16	28	14.5	CL	-	-	-	-
2	6 to 8	-	-	-	27.3	CH	1210	92.1	-	-
4	3.5 to 5	39	17	22	11.9	CL	-	-	-	-

5.0 SITE GEOLOGY

The general site is underlain at depth by Mississippian Age Deposits of the Boone Formation. This rock unit consists predominately of cherty limestone. Overburden soils at the site area are typically residual having developed through chemical and physical weathering of the underlying parent bedrock. The boundary between overburden soils and relatively unweathered limestone is usually abrupt, while the boundary between overburden soils and shale is generally a more gradual transition.

6.0 GENERAL SITE & SUBSURFACE CONDITIONS

Based upon subsurface conditions encountered within the borings drilled at the project site, generalized subsurface conditions are summarized in the table below. Soil stratification lines on the boring logs indicate approximate boundary lines between different types of soil and rock units based upon observations made during drilling. In-situ transitions between soil and some rock types are typically gradual.

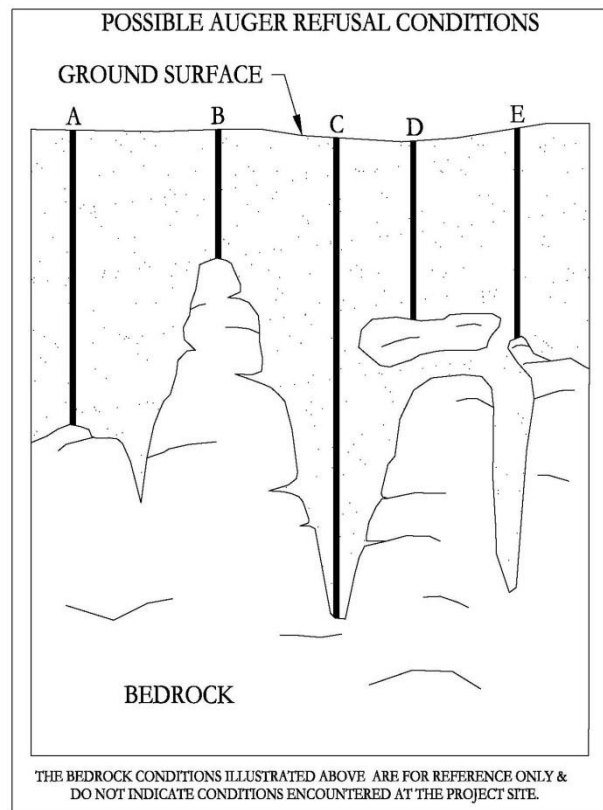
Description	Borings	Approx. Depth to Bottom of Stratum	Material Encountered	Moisture	Consistency/ Density
Stratum 1	1, 2, 5 & 6	0.3 to 0.4 ft.	Topsoil	Moist	Soft
Stratum 2	All	2.3 to 5.5 ft.	Lean Clay	Moist	Soft to Stiff
Stratum 3	All	Boring Completion in Borings 2 & 4 Top of Limestone in Borings 1, 3, 5 & 6	Fat Clay	Moist	Soft to Stiff
Stratum 4	1, 3, 5 & 6	Boring Completion	Limestone	-	Medium Hard

6.1 Limestone

Limestone bedrock was encountered within Borings 1, 3, 5 and 6 at depths ranging from 4.8 to 10.8 ft. below the existing ground surface. The upper portion of the limestone was weathered allowing penetration with continuous flight augers.

6.2 Auger Refusal

Auger refusal is defined as the depth below the ground surface at which a boring can no longer be advanced with the soil drilling technique being used. Auger refusal is subjective and is based upon the type of drilling equipment and types of augers being used, as well as the effort exerted by the driller. Several different auger refusal conditions are possible in the general site area. These conditions are represented graphically in the adjacent figure: (A) on the upper surface of continuous bedrock, (B) on rock “pinnacles”, (C) in widened joints that may extend well below the surrounding bedrock surface, (D) slabs of unweathered rock suspended in the residual soil matrix, or “floaters”, or (E) on the upper surface of discontinuous bedrock.



Due to possibility that some or all of these features exist at this project site, estimating the exact quantity of rock excavation is difficult. Linear interpolation of apparent bedrock elevations based upon the boring data is often used, but can misrepresent actual rock removal quantities where such anomalies exist.

6.3 Groundwater

Shallow groundwater was not observed within the borings on the date drilled. Groundwater levels should be expected to fluctuate with changes in site grading, precipitation, and regional groundwater levels. Groundwater may be encountered at shallower depths during wetter periods.

7.0 EARTHWORK

Although a site specific grading plan was not provided as of the date of this report, it is anticipated that minimal depths of cut and/or fill will be required to achieve finish subgrade elevation at the project site. The initial phase of site preparation should include to the following:

- Removal of all vegetative and organic matter;
- Topsoil stripping up to 6-inches should be anticipated. Thicker topsoil zones may be encountered during site development procedures. Topsoil should be stockpiled outside of areas to receive new controlled fill or construction and are only acceptable for use in lawn or landscape areas only; and
- Areas scheduled to receive controlled fill should be proof-rolled and approved in accordance with the following section of this report.

After these initial phases of site preparation are complete, it is recommended that all areas scheduled to receive controlled fill, building, or slab/pavement construction be proof-rolled to assure a stable subgrade. Proof-rolling consists essentially of rolling the ground surface with a loaded tandem axle dump truck or similar heavy rubber tired construction equipment and noting any areas which rut or deflect during rolling. All soft subgrade areas identified during proof-rolling should be undercut and replaced with

compacted fill as outlined below. **Proof-rolling, undercutting and replacement should be monitored by a qualified representative of PPI.**

If construction is initiated during wetter months, the requirement for undercutting soft surficial soils below normal site stripping should be anticipated and reflected in contract documents. **Undercut depths on the order of 2 or more ft. are considered possible. Based upon past experience of this firm, the shallow lean clay subgrade at the site is known to significantly lose strength when saturated and disturbed by construction equipment. Further, material removed from undercuts may not be suitable for use as compacted fill due to high soil moisture if poor drying conditions (cool temperatures and frequent precipitation) occur during site grading. If the construction schedule will not permit delay for better drying conditions, the project budget should include an allowance for subgrade undercut and replacement with soil material containing appreciable quantities of chert from an off-site borrow area. As an alternate to select cherty clay, rock fill subbase (4 to 8 inch top size stone) may be placed to improve subgrade stability.**

After evaluation by proof-rolling and approval, the subgrade should be scarified to a depth of at least 8 inches in depth, adjusted to within the specified ranges of optimum moisture content and compacted to specified densities as outlined below (see Section 7.2). Placement of controlled fill may then proceed.

7.1 Fill Material Types

Fill Type ¹	USCS Classification	Acceptable Location for Placement
Low Volume Change Engineered Fill ²	CL, GC or SC (LL < 50)	All locations and elevations
On-Site Soils	CL or CH	All locations and elevations ³
1. Controlled, compacted fill should consist of approved materials that are free of organic matter and debris and contain maximum rock size of 4 to 6 inches. Frozen material should not be used and fill should not be placed on a frozen subgrade. A sample of each material type should be submitted to the Geotechnical Engineer for evaluation prior to its use. 2. Low plasticity cohesive soil or granular soil having at least 15% low plasticity fines. 3. CH Clays with Liquid Limit above 50 is considered suitable for use as controlled fill only if the percentage of rock fragments exceeds 35 % or if placed 2 ft. below shallow foundations, slab or pavement areas.		

7.2 Compaction Requirements

Item	Description
Subgrade Scarification Depth	At least 8 inches
Fill Lift Thickness	8-inches (loose)
Compaction Requirements ¹	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> 95% Standard Proctor Density (ASTM D-698)
Moisture Content ²	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ± 2% optimum moisture for CL, GC or SC soil types; and 0 to 4% above optimum for CL-CH & CH soil types.
<p>1. We recommend that engineered fill (including scarified compacted subgrade) be tested for moisture content and compaction during placement. Should the results of the in-place density tests indicate the specified moisture or compaction limits have not been met, the area represented by the test should be reworked and retested as required until the specified moisture and compaction requirements are achieved. One (1) field density test for each 2,500 and 5,000 sq. ft. of fill lift, but no less than 3 tests per lift, is recommended in building and pavement areas, respectively.</p> <p>2. Highly plastic natural clays containing little to no chert, which may be exposed at finish subgrade elevations should be scarified approximately 8-inches, moisture conditioned and recompacted.</p>	

7.3 Landscaping & Site Drainage

Discharge from roof downspouts should be collected and diverted well away from the building perimeter and incorporated into the design plans. Rapid, efficient runoff away from the building should also be provided. In addition, landscaping requiring frequent watering should be prohibited adjacent to building foundations.

In addition, provisions should be implemented to reduce the potential for large fluctuations in moisture within the subgrade soils adjacent to the structure. Ponding of surface water immediately adjacent to the structures and pavements can significantly increase subgrade moisture and may result in undesirable subgrade movement. As previously mentioned, careful consideration should be given to the landscaping and drainage elements to be installed at the project site adjacent to building and pavement areas. **Trees and some large bushes can draw significant moisture from the subgrade soils, resulting in shrinkage and subsequent foundation/pavement movement.**

7.4 Earthwork Construction Considerations

Shallow CH clays are present at the project site. These CH clays are known to exhibit primarily low swell potential if allowed to dry and then become saturated. Once grading and filling operations have been completed, the moisture within the subgrade should be maintained and soils not be allowed to dry and desiccate prior to construction of floor slabs, pavements and footings. Grading of the site should be performed in such a manner so that ponding of surface water on prepared subgrade or in excavations is avoided. During construction, if the prepared subgrade should become frozen, desiccated, saturated, or disturbed, the affected material should be scarified or removed, moisture conditioned and recompacted prior to floor slab construction.

7.5 Excavations

Based upon the subsurface conditions encountered during this investigation, the on-site soils typically classify as Type B in accordance with OSHA regulations. Temporary excavations in soils classifying as Type B with a total height of less than 20 ft. should be cut no steeper than 1H:1V in accordance with OSHA guidelines. **Confirmation of soil classification during construction, as well as construction safety (including shoring, if required), is the responsibility of the contractor.**

8.0 FOUNDATIONS

As previously mentioned, medium stiff to stiff natural clays were encountered across the project site. It is recommended that the proposed new Restroom Building to the existing Saline Courthouse be supported upon shallow foundations bearing in medium stiff to stiff natural soils or controlled fill. Recommendations for shallow foundation design and construction are provided in the following table.

Description	Mat (Spread Footing)	Continuous Footing
Net allowable bearing pressure ¹	2,500 psf	2,000 psf
Minimum dimensions	2.5 ft.	1.5 ft.
Maximum footing width	10 ft.	
Recommended bearing depth ²	2 ft.	
Minimum embedment below finished grade for frost protection and variation in soil moisture (footings on soil) ³	2 ft.	
Minimum footing bearing depth below compacted fill surface	1 ft.	
Allowable passive pressure ⁴	500 psf	
Coefficient of sliding friction ⁵	0.4 (natural soils or controlled fill)	

1. The recommended net allowable bearing pressure is the pressure in excess of the minimum surrounding overburden pressure at the footing base elevation. The recommended pressure considers all unsuitable and/or soft or loose soils, if encountered, are undercut and replaced with tested and approved new engineered fill. Footing excavations should be free of loose and disturbed material, debris, and water when concrete is placed.
2. If minimal grade changes are expected within the building footprint, footings are recommended to be installed upon medium stiff to stiff natural soils encountered at least 2 ft. (possibly deeper) below existing grade.
3. For perimeter footings and footings beneath unheated areas.
4. Allowable passive pressure value considers a Factor of Safety of about 2. Passive pressure value applies to undisturbed native clay or properly compacted fill. If formed footings are constructed, the space between the formed side of a footing and excavation sidewall should be cleaned of all loose material, debris, and water and backfilled with tested and approved fill compacted to at least 95% of the material's Standard Proctor dry density. Passive resistance should be neglected for the upper 2.5 ft. of the soil below the final adjacent grade due to strength loss from freeze/thaw and shrink/swell.
5. Coefficient of friction value is an ultimate value and does not contain a Factor of Safety.

8.1 Uplift Capacity of Shallow Foundations

Resistance of shallow spread footings to uplift (U_p) may be based upon the dead weight of the concrete footing structure (W_c) and the weight of soil backfill contained in an inverted cone or pyramid directly above the footings (W_s). The following parameters may be used in design:

Description	Weights
Weight of Concrete (W_c)	150 pcf
Weight of Soil Resistance (W_s)	100 pcf

The base of the cone or pyramid should be the top of the footing and the pyramid or cone sides should form an angle of 30 degrees with the vertical. Allowable uplift capacity (U_p) should be computed as the lesser of the two (2) equations listed below:

$$U_P = (W_S/2.0) + (W_C/1.25) \text{ or } U_P = (W_S + W_C)/1.5$$

8.2 Construction Considerations for Shallow Foundations

It is essential that footing/mat bottoms should not be allowed to become dry and desiccate prior to concrete placement to help reduce the potential for shrink/swell behavior. Footings/mats should be clean and free of standing water, debris, and loose soil at the time of concrete placement. Footing/mat excavations should be observed by a representative of PPI prior to placement of reinforcing steel and concrete placement.

9.0 SEISMIC CONSIDERATIONS

Code Used	Site Classification
2012 International Building Code (IBC) ¹	C
1. In general accordance with the 2012 <i>International Building Code</i> , Section 1613	

10.0 FLOOR SLABS

A slab-on-grade or slab-on-fill floor system is considered appropriate at the site based upon subsurface conditions encountered and future site grading. Listed below are key considerations for design purposes of the floor slab.

- Prior to placement of controlled fill, if any, natural soils should be scarified, moisture content adjusted and re-compacted in accordance with Sections 7.0 of this report:
- Prior to slab placement, soil moisture should be adjusted and maintained within the parameters specified in Section 7.0 of this report; and

Placement of 4 or more inches of compacted free-draining granular base course below slabs that are not below grade is recommended to limit moisture rise through slabs and to improve slab support, particularly at joints. An impervious moisture barrier consisting of 6-mil plastic sheeting or equivalent should be provided in accordance with the 2012 IBC. Use of a 10-mil vapor barrier is recommended below all slab areas with an intended use sensitive to slab moisture.

11.0 PAVEMENT

It is anticipated that any new pavements associated with this project will be constructed of either an asphaltic concrete wearing surface placed over a base or a rigid Portland Cement Concrete pavement over a granular base.

11.1 Flexible Pavement

If asphaltic paving is selected, the aggregate base may be a granular compacted crushed limestone with a gradation and quality conforming to the requirements of the Oklahoma Department of Transportation (ODOT), Standard Specification 703.01 for Type A aggregate. The maximum lift thickness for the granular base is 4 in. Granular base thicknesses in excess of 4 in. should be placed in multiple lifts with each lift being of approximately equal thickness. The granular base should be compacted to at least 100% of Standard Proctor Compaction (ASTM D-698).

Asphaltic concrete, both base and surface, should conform to the applicable requirements of ODOT Standard Specification 708. Asphaltic concrete should be compacted to 92 to 96% of Maximum Theoretical Gravity (ASTM D-2041). Substitution of an appropriate Superpave Mix Design, SP 190C or SP 250C, can be used in place of the bituminous base. SP 190C or SP 125C may be used for the surface. All bituminous mix designs should have been prepared or verified within 6 months of the date of placement on the project.

11.2 Rigid Pavement

If rigid concrete paving is selected, a minimum 4-in. thickness granular base compacted to 100% of Standard Proctor should be placed on the prepared subgrade. The Portland Cement Concrete (PCC) mix should have a minimum 28-day compressive strength of 4000 pounds per square inch (psi). Concrete should be placed at a low slump (1 to 3 inch) and have an entrained air content of 5 to 7%. If an increased slump is desired, use of Super Plasticizer is recommended.

11.3 Pavement Thickness

A pavement thickness would best be computed if traffic frequencies and wheel loadings were provided to us, but a typical pavement design for this type of development would generally generate a Structural Number of 3.0 to 3.5 within heavy duty areas and 2.4 to 2.6 within light duty areas, depending on the subgrade conditions. The following table presents corresponding typical flexible and rigid pavement thickness using the general Structural Numbers.

PAVEMENT TYPE	Anticipated Traffic Frequency	Asphaltic Surface (in.)	Asphaltic Base (in.)	Concrete Thickness (in.)	Aggregate Base (in.)
Flexible Pavement	Heavy Duty	3.0	4.0	-	4.0
	Light Duty	2.0	2.0	-	6.0
Rigid Pavement	Heavy Duty	-	-	7.0	4.0
	Light Duty	-	-	5.0	4.0

As mentioned above, a more accurate pavement thickness can be computed if anticipated traffic frequencies and wheel loadings are provided to PPI. The above thicknesses are considered approximate since actual pavement loading has not been provided.

12.0 CONSTRUCTION OBSERVATION & TESTING

The construction process is an integral design component with respect to the geotechnical aspects of a project. Since geotechnical engineering is influenced by variable depositional and weathering processes and because we sample only a small portion of the soils affecting the performance of the proposed structures, unanticipated or changed conditions can be disclosed during grading. Proper geotechnical observation and testing during construction is imperative to allow the Geotechnical Engineer the opportunity to evaluate assumptions made during the design process. Therefore, we recommend that PPI be kept apprised of design modifications and construction schedule of the proposed project to observe compliance with the design concepts and geotechnical recommendations, and to allow design changes in the event

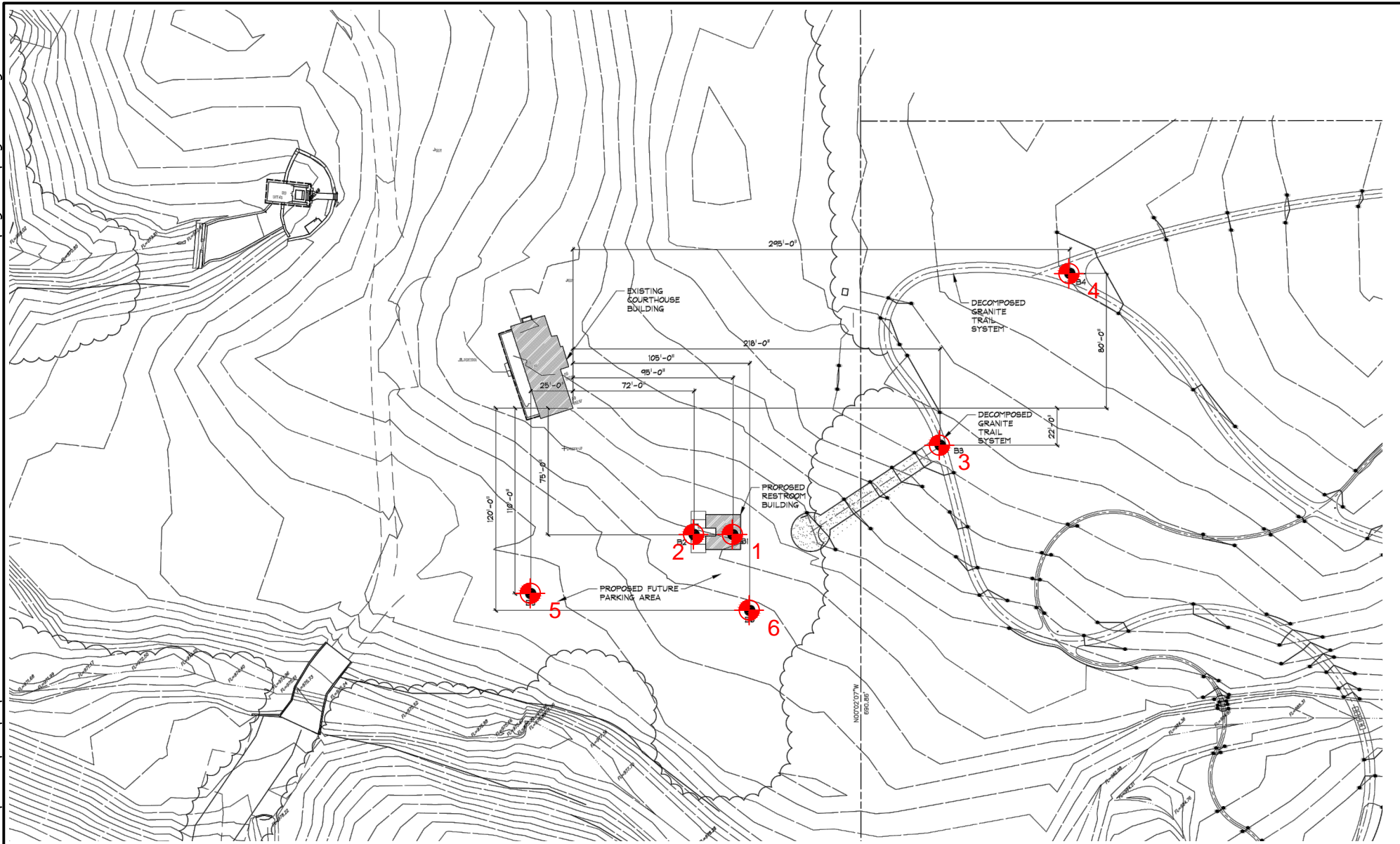
that subsurface conditions or methods of construction differ from those assumed while completing this study. We recommend that during construction all earthwork be monitored by a representative of PPI, including site preparation, placement of all engineered fill and trench backfill, and all foundation excavations as outlined below.

- An experienced Geotechnical Engineer or Engineering Technician of PPI should observe the subgrade throughout the proposed project site immediately following stripping to evaluate the native clay, identify areas requiring additional undercutting, and evaluate the suitability of the exposed surface for fill placement;
- An experienced Engineering Technician of PPI should monitor and test all fill placed within the building and pavement areas to determine whether the type of material, moisture content, and degree of compaction are within recommended limits;
- An experienced Technician or Engineer of PPI should observe and test all footing excavations. Where unsuitable bearing conditions are observed, remedial procedures can be established in the field to avoid construction delays; and
- The condition of the subgrade should be evaluated immediately prior to construction of the building floor slabs to determine whether the moisture content and relative density of the subgrade soils are as recommended.


13.0 REPORT LIMITATIONS

This report has been prepared in accordance with generally accepted practices of other consultants undertaking similar studies at the same time and in the same geographical area. Palmerton & Parrish, Inc. observed that degree of care and skill generally exercised by other consultants under similar circumstances and conditions. Palmerton & Parrish's findings and conclusions must be considered not as scientific certainties, but as opinions based on our professional judgment concerning the significance of the data gathered during the course of this investigation. Other than this, no warranty is implied or intended.

FIGURE



LEGEND

 Boring Location

SCALE
1" = 80'

Project: Saline Courthouse Additions - Rose, Oklahoma
Client: Cherokee Nation Businesses, LLC

Boring Location Plan

DATE: April 3, 2017

Project Number: 242380



PALMERTON & PARRISH, INC.
GEOTECHNICAL AND MATERIALS ENGINEERS/
MATERIALS TESTING LABORATORIES / ENVIRONMENTAL SERVICES

FIGURE 1

APPENDIX I
BORING LOGS & KEY TO SYMBOLS



4168 W. Kearney St.
Springfield, Missouri 65803
Telephone: (417) 864-6000
Fax: (417) 864-6004

GEOTECHNICAL BORING LOG

BORING NUMBER

1

PAGE 1 OF 1

CLIENT Cherokee Nation Business PROJECT NAME Saline Courthouse Additions
 PROJECT NO. 242380 PROJECT LOCATION Saline County, Oklahoma
 DATE STARTED 3/29/17 COMPLETED 3/29/17 SURFACE ELEVATION _____ BENCHMARK EL. _____
 DRILLER JS DRILL RIG 2000 CME 55 GROUND WATER LEVELS _____
 HAMMER TYPE Auto AT TIME OF DRILLING None
 LOGGED BY RD CHECKED BY _____ AT END OF DRILLING _____
 NOTES _____

DEPTH (ft)	DRILLING METHOD	STRATA SYMBOL	MATERIAL DESCRIPTION Unified Soil Classification System	SAMPLE TYPE NUMBER	RECOVERY % (RQD %)	CORRECTED BLOW COUNTS (N VALUE)	POCKET PEN. (tsf)	◆ DRY UNIT WT (pcf) ◆ 20 40 60 80 100 ▲ N VALUE ▲ 20 40 60 80 PL MC LL 20 40 60 80 □ SHEAR STRENGTH (ksf) □ 1 2 3 4				ELEVATION (ft)		
								1	2	3	4			
0.0			TOPSOIL, Grass Covered (3")											
0.3			LEAN CLAY, Trace Chert, Dark Brown, Stiff, Moist (CL)	ST 1	71		3.75							
2.5			- Scattered Chert Below 2.5'											
3.5			FAT CLAY, Trace Chert, Tan, Medium Stiff, Moist (CH)	SPT 2		2-2-4 (6)	1.75							
6.0			SHALEY FAT CLAY, Tan & Gray, Stiff, Moist (CH)											
7.5				ST 3	100		2.75							
10.0				SPT 4		3-5-6 (11)	2.5							
10.8			LIMESTONE PINNACLE, w/ Tan Fat Clay, Medium Hard, Highly Weathered											
14.5				SPT 5		2-2-14 (16)								
15.0			LIMESTONE, Medium Hard, Weathered											

CFA - 4.5" O.D.

Bottom of borehole at 15.0 feet.

BORING LOG - PPI - PPI STD TEMPLATE.GDT - 4/12/17 14:27 - S:_MASTER PROJECT FILE\2017\OK\IC\CHEROKEE NATION BUS-242380-SALINE COURTHOUSE-SUBBORING LOGS.BPJ



4168 W. Kearney St.
Springfield, Missouri 65803
Telephone: (417) 864-6000
Fax: (417) 864-6004

GEOTECHNICAL BORING LOG

BORING NUMBER

3

PAGE 1 OF 1

CLIENT Cherokee Nation Business PROJECT NAME Saline Courthouse Additions
 PROJECT NO. 242380 PROJECT LOCATION Saline County, Oklahoma
 DATE STARTED 3/29/17 COMPLETED 3/29/17 SURFACE ELEVATION _____ BENCHMARK EL. _____
 DRILLER JS DRILL RIG 2000 CME 55 GROUND WATER LEVELS _____
 HAMMER TYPE Auto AT TIME OF DRILLING None
 LOGGED BY RD CHECKED BY _____ AT END OF DRILLING _____
 NOTES _____

DEPTH (ft)	DRILLING METHOD	STRATA SYMBOL	MATERIAL DESCRIPTION Unified Soil Classification System	SAMPLE TYPE NUMBER	RECOVERY % (RQD %)	CORRECTED BLOW COUNTS (N VALUE)	POCKET PEN. (tsf)	◆ DRY UNIT WT (pcf) ◆ 20 40 60 80 100 ▲ N VALUE ▲ 20 40 60 80 PL MC LL 20 40 60 80 ■ SHEAR STRENGTH (ksf) ■ 1 2 3 4				ELEVATION (ft)
0	CFA - 4.5" O.D.	[Diagonal Hatching]	LEAN CLAY, w/ Chert, Dark Brown, Stiff, Moist, Grass Covered (CL)	SPT 1		3-8-14 (22)	1.25					
1.0 ft												
1		[Diagonal Hatching]	LEAN CLAY, w/ Chert, Red Brown, Stiff, Moist (CL)									
2		[Stippled]	CHERT LAYER									
2.3 ft												
3		[Diagonal Hatching]	FAT CLAY, Brown Tan, Stiff, Moist (CH)	SPT 2		14-10-7 (17)						
3.0 ft												
3.8 ft		[Diagonal Hatching]	FAT CLAY, Tan, Stiff, Slightly Moist (CH)									
4												
4.8 ft												
5		[Brick Pattern]	LIMESTONE, Medium Hard, Weathered									
5.3 ft												
Bottom of borehole at 5.3 feet.				SPT 3		50/0"						

BORING LOG - PPI - PPI STD TEMPLATE.GDT - 4/12/17 14:27 - S:\MASTER PROJECT FILE\2017\OK\IC\CHEROKEE NATION BUS-242380-SALINE COURTHOUSE-SUBBORING LOGS\BORING LOGS.GPJ



4168 W. Kearney St.
Springfield, Missouri 65803
Telephone: (417) 864-6000
Fax: (417) 864-6004

GEOTECHNICAL BORING LOG

BORING NUMBER

4

PAGE 1 OF 1

CLIENT Cherokee Nation Business PROJECT NAME Saline Courthouse Additions
 PROJECT NO. 242380 PROJECT LOCATION Saline County, Oklahoma
 DATE STARTED 3/29/17 COMPLETED 3/29/17 SURFACE ELEVATION _____ BENCHMARK EL. _____
 DRILLER JS DRILL RIG 2000 CME 55 GROUND WATER LEVELS _____
 HAMMER TYPE Auto AT TIME OF DRILLING None
 LOGGED BY RD CHECKED BY _____ AT END OF DRILLING _____
 NOTES _____

DEPTH (ft)	DRILLING METHOD	STRATA SYMBOL	MATERIAL DESCRIPTION Unified Soil Classification System	SAMPLE TYPE NUMBER	RECOVERY % (RQD %)	CORRECTED BLOW COUNTS (N VALUE)	POCKET PEN. (tsf)	◆ DRY UNIT WT (pcf) ◆ 20 40 60 80 100 ▲ N VALUE ▲ 20 40 60 80 PL MC LL 20 40 60 80 ■ SHEAR STRENGTH (ksf) ■ 1 2 3 4				ELEVATION (ft)
0.0	CFA - 4.5" O.D.	[Hatched Pattern]	LEAN CLAY, Dark Brown, Soft to Medium Stiff, Moist (CL)	SPT 1		2-2-1 (3)	1.25					
2.5			LEAN CLAY, w/ Chert, Red Brown, Stiff, Moist (CL)									
5.0			FAT CLAY, w/ Chert, Red Brown, Stiff, Slightly Moist (CH)	SPT 2			7-9-10 (19)					
7.5			FAT CLAY, w/ Chert, Tan, Stiff, Dry (CH)	SPT 3			8-12-16 (28)					
10.0				SPT 4		11-18-25 (43)						
Bottom of borehole at 10.0 feet.												

BORING LOG - PPI - PPI STD TEMPLATE.GDT - 4/12/17 14:27 - S:_MASTER PROJECT FILE\2017\OK\CHEROKEE NATION BUS-242380-SALINE COURTHOUSE-SUBBORING LOGS.GPJ



4168 W. Kearney St.
Springfield, Missouri 65803
Telephone: (417) 864-6000
Fax: (417) 864-6004

GEOTECHNICAL BORING LOG

BORING NUMBER

5

PAGE 1 OF 1

CLIENT Cherokee Nation Business PROJECT NAME Saline Courthouse Additions
 PROJECT NO. 242380 PROJECT LOCATION Saline County, Oklahoma
 DATE STARTED 3/29/17 COMPLETED 3/29/17 SURFACE ELEVATION _____ BENCHMARK EL. _____
 DRILLER JS DRILL RIG 2000 CME 55 GROUND WATER LEVELS _____
 HAMMER TYPE Auto AT TIME OF DRILLING None
 LOGGED BY RD CHECKED BY _____ AT END OF DRILLING _____
 NOTES _____

DEPTH (ft)	DRILLING METHOD	STRATA SYMBOL	MATERIAL DESCRIPTION Unified Soil Classification System	SAMPLE TYPE NUMBER	RECOVERY % (RQD %)	CORRECTED BLOW COUNTS (N VALUE)	POCKET PEN. (tsf)	DRY UNIT WT (pcf)				ELEVATION (ft)
								20	40	60	80	
0	CFA - 4.5" O.D.		TOPSOIL, Grass Covered (5")	SPT 1		3-4-4 (8)	2.25	▲ N VALUE ▲ PL MC LL 20 40 60 80 □ SHEAR STRENGTH (ksf) □ 1 2 3 4				
0.4 ft			LEAN CLAY, Trace Chert, Dark Brown, Medium Stiff, Moist (CL)									
2.0 ft			LEAN CLAY, Scattered Chert Gravel, Brown, Medium Stiff, Moist (CL)									
4.0 ft			FAT CLAY, Trace Chert, Brown Tan, Medium Stiff, Moist (CH)	SPT 2		3-6-50/5"	2.75					
4.9 ft			LIMESTONE, Medium Hard, Weathered									
5.0 ft			Bottom of borehole at 5.0 feet.									

BORING LOG - PPI - PPI STD TEMPLATE.GDT - 4/12/17 14:27 - S:\MASTER PROJECT FILE\2017\OK\IC\CHEROKEE NATION BUS-242380-SALINE COURTHOUSE-SUBBORING LOGS.GPJ



4168 W. Kearney St.
Springfield, Missouri 65803
Telephone: (417) 864-6000
Fax: (417) 864-6004

GEOTECHNICAL BORING LOG

BORING NUMBER

6

PAGE 1 OF 1

CLIENT Cherokee Nation Business PROJECT NAME Saline Courthouse Additions
 PROJECT NO. 242380 PROJECT LOCATION Saline County, Oklahoma
 DATE STARTED 3/29/17 COMPLETED 3/29/17 SURFACE ELEVATION _____ BENCHMARK EL. _____
 DRILLER JS DRILL RIG 2000 CME 55 GROUND WATER LEVELS _____
 HAMMER TYPE Auto AT TIME OF DRILLING None
 LOGGED BY RD CHECKED BY _____ AT END OF DRILLING _____
 NOTES _____

DEPTH (ft)	DRILLING METHOD	STRATA SYMBOL	MATERIAL DESCRIPTION Unified Soil Classification System	SAMPLE TYPE NUMBER	RECOVERY % (RQD %)	CORRECTED BLOW COUNTS (N VALUE)	POCKET PEN. (tsf)	◆ DRY UNIT WT (pcf) ◆ 20 40 60 80 100 ▲ N VALUE ▲ 20 40 60 80 PL MC LL 20 40 60 80 □ SHEAR STRENGTH (ksf) □ 1 2 3 4				ELEVATION (ft)
0			TOPSOIL, Grass Covered (3") 0.3 ft									
0.3			LEAN CLAY, Scattered Chert Gravel, Dark Brown, Medium Stiff, Moist (CL)	SPT 1		3-3-3 (6)	2	▲	○			
3.5			FAT CLAY, Scattered Chert Gravel, Tan & Gray, Medium Stiff, Moist (CH)	SPT 2		2-4-4 (8)	1	▲	○			
6.0			LIMESTONE, Medium Hard, Weathered 8.1 ft	SPT 3		50/1"						
6.1			Bottom of borehole at 6.1 feet.									

BORING LOG - PPI - PPI STD TEMPLATE.GDT - 4/12/17 14:27 - S:_MASTER PROJECT FILE\2017\OK\IC\CHEROKEE NATION BUS-242380-SALINE COURTHOUSE-SUBBORING LOGS.GPJ

CFA - 4.5" O.D.



4168 W. Kearney St.
 Springfield, Missouri 65803
 Telephone: (417) 864-6000
 Fax: (417) 864-6004

KEY TO SYMBOLS

CLIENT Cherokee Nation Business

PROJECT NAME Saline Courthouse Additions

PROJECT NO. 242380

PROJECT LOCATION Saline County, Oklahoma

LITHOLOGIC SYMBOLS (Unified Soil Classification System)



BLDRCBBL: Boulders and cobbles



CH: USCS High Plasticity Clay



CL: USCS Low Plasticity Clay



LIMESTONE



TOPSOIL: Topsoil

SAMPLER SYMBOLS



Standard Penetration Test






Shelby Tube

WELL CONSTRUCTION SYMBOLS

ABBREVIATIONS

LL - LIQUID LIMIT (%)
 PI - PLASTIC INDEX (%)
 W - MOISTURE CONTENT (%)
 DD - DRY DENSITY (PCF)
 NP - NON PLASTIC
 -200 - PERCENT PASSING NO. 200 SIEVE
 PP - POCKET PENETROMETER (TSF)

TV - TORVANE
 PID - PHOTOIONIZATION DETECTOR
 UC - UNCONFINED COMPRESSION
 ppm - PARTS PER MILLION
 Water Level at Time Drilling, or as Shown
 Water Level at End of Drilling, or as Shown
 Water Level After 24 Hours, or as Shown

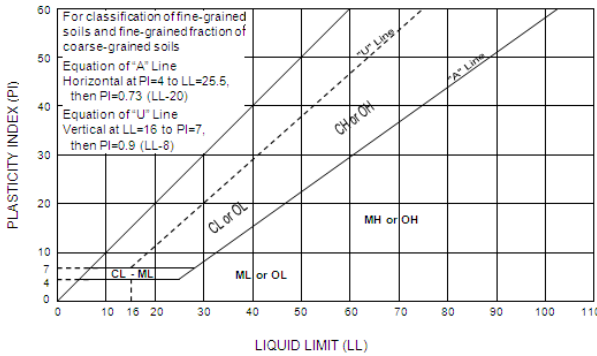
APPENDIX II
GENERAL NOTES

GENERAL NOTES

SOIL PROPERTIES & DESCRIPTIONS

COHESIVE SOILS

Consistency	Unconfined Compressive Strength (Qu)	Pocket Penetrometer Strength	N-Value
	(psf)	(tsf)	(blows/ft)
Very Soft	<500	<0.25	0-1
Soft	500-1000	0.25-0.50	2-4
Medium Stiff	1001-2000	0.50-1.00	5-8
Stiff	2001-4000	1.00-2.00	9-15
Very Stiff	4001-8000	2.00-4.00	16-30
Hard	>8000	>4.00	31-60
Very Hard			>60



Group Symbol	Group Name
CL	Lean Clay
ML	Silt
OL	Organic Clay or Silt
CH	Fat Clay
MH	Elastic Silt
OH	Organic Clay or Silt
PT	Peat
CL-CH	Lean to Fat Clay

Plasticity		Moisture	
Description	Liquid Limit (LL)	Descriptive Term	Guide
Lean	<45%	Dry	No indication of water
Lean to Fat	45-49%	Moist	Indication of water
Fat	≥50%	Wet	Visible water

Fine Grained Soil Subclassification	Percent (by weight) of Total Sample
Terms: SILT, LEAN CLAY, FAT CLAY, ELASTIC SILT Sandy, gravelly, abundant cobbles, abundant boulders with sand, with gravel, with cobbles, with boulders scattered sand, scattered gravel, scattered cobbles, scattered boulders a trace sand, a trace gravel, a few cobbles, a few boulders	PRIMARY CONSTITUENT >30-50] >15-30] – secondary coarse grained constituents 5-15] <5]
The relationship of clay and silt constituents is based on plasticity and normally determined by performing index tests. Refined classifications are based on Atterberg Limits tests and the Plasticity Chart.	

NON-COHESIVE (GRANULAR) SOILS

RELATIVE DENSITY	N-VALUE
Very Loose	0-4
Loose	5-10
Medium Dense	11-24
Dense	25-50
Very Dense	≥51

MOISTURE CONDITION	
Descriptive Term	Guide
Dry	No indication of water
Moist	Damp but no visible water
Wet	Visible free water, usually soil is below water table.

**GRAIN SIZE IDENTIFICATION		
Name	Size Limits	Familiar Example
Boulder	12 in. or more	Larger than basketball
Cobbles	3 in. to 12 in.	Grapefruit
Coarse Gravel	¾-in. to 3 in.	Orange or lemon
Fine Gravel	No. 4 sieve to ¾-in.	Grape or pea
Coarse Sand	No. 10 sieve to No. 4 sieve	Rock salt
Medium Sand	No. 40 sieve to No. 10 sieve	Sugar, table salt
Fine Sand*	No. 200 sieve to No. 40 sieve	Powdered sugar
Fines	Less than No. 200 sieve	

*Particles finer than fine sand cannot be discerned with the naked eye at a distance of 8 in.

Coarse Grained Soil Subclassification	Percent (by weight) of Total Sample
Terms: GRAVEL, SAND, COBBLES, BOULDERS Sandy, gravelly, abundant cobbles, abundant boulders with gravel, with sand, with cobbles, with boulders scattered gravel, scattered sand, scattered cobbles, scattered boulders a trace gravel, a trace sand, a few cobbles, a few boulders	PRIMARY CONSTITUENT >30-50] >15-30] – secondary coarse grained constituents 5-15] <5]
Silty (MH & ML)*, clayey (CL & CH)* (with silt, with clay)* (trace silt, trace clay)*	<15] 5-15] – secondary fine grained constituents <5]
*Index tests and/or plasticity tests are performed to determine whether the term "silt" or "clay" is used.	

*Modified after Ref. ASTM D2487-93 & D2488-93

**Modified after Ref. Oregon DOT 1987 & FHWA 1997

***Modified after Ref. AASHTO 1988, DM 7.1 1982, and Oregon DOT 1987

GENERAL NOTES

BEDROCK PROPERTIES & DESCRIPTIONS

ROCK QUALITY DESIGNATION (RQD)	
Description of Rock Quality	*RQD (%)
Very Poor	< 25
Poor	25-50
Fair	50-75
Good	75-90
Excellent	90-100

*RQD is defined as the total length of sound core pieces 4 in. or greater in length, expressed as a percentage of the total length cored. RQD provides an indication of the integrity of the rock mass and relative extent of seams and bedding planes.

SCALE OF RELATIVE ROCK HARDNESS		
Term	Field Identification	Approx. Unconfined Compressive Strength (tsf)
Extremely Soft	Can be indented by thumbnail	2.6-10
Very Soft	Can be peeled by pocket knife	10-50
Soft	Can be peeled with difficulty by pocket knife	50-260
Medium Hard	Can be grooved 2 mm deep by firm pressure of knife	260-520
Moderately Hard	Requires one hammer blow to fracture	520-1040
Hard	Can be scratched with knife or pick only with difficulty	1040-2610
Very Hard	Cannot be scratched by knife or sharp pick	>2610

DEGREE OF WEATHERING	
Slightly Weathered	Rock generally fresh, joints stained and discoloration extends into rock up to 25mm (1 in), open joints may contain clay, core rings under hammer impact.
Weathered	Rock mass is decomposed 50% or less, significant portions of rock show discoloration and weathering effects, cores cannot be broken by hand or scraped by knife.
Highly Weathered	Rock mass is more than 50% decomposed, complete discoloration of rock fabric, core may be extremely broken and gives clunk sound when struck by hammer, may be shaved with a knife.

GRAIN SIZE (TYPICALLY FOR SEDIMENTARY ROCKS)		
Description	Diameter (mm)	Field Identification
Very Coarse Grained	>4.76	
Coarse Grained	2.0-4.76	Individual grains can easily be distinguished by eye.
Medium Grained	0.42-2.0	Individual grains can be distinguished by eye.
Fine Grained	0.074-0.42	Individual grains can be distinguished by eye with difficulty.
Very Fine Grained	<0.074	Individual grains cannot be distinguished by unaided eye.

VOIDS	
Pit	Voids barely seen with naked eye to 6mm (¼-in)
Vug	Voids 6 to 50mm (¼ to 2 in) in diameter
Cavity	50 to 6000mm (2 to 24 in) in diameter
Cave	>600mm

BEDDING THICKNESS	
Very Thick Bedded	> 3' thick
Thick Bedded	1' to 3' thick
Medium Bedded	4" to 1' thick
Thin Bedded	1¼" to 4" thick
Very Thin Bedded	½" to 1¼" thick
Thickly Laminated	⅛" to ½" thick
Thinly Laminated	⅛" or less (paper thin)

DRILLING NOTES

Drilling and Sampling Symbols

NQ – Rock Core (2-in. diameter)	CFA – Continuous Flight (Solid Stem) Auger	WB – Wash Bore or Mud Rotary
HQ – Rock Core (3 in. diameter)	SS – Split Spoon Sampler	TP – Test-Pit
HSA – Hollow Stem Auger	ST – Shelby Tube	HA – Hand Auger

Soil Sample Types

Shelby Tube Samples: Relatively undisturbed soil samples were obtained from the borings using thin wall (Shelby) tube samplers pushed hydraulically into the soil in advance of drilling. This sampling, which is considered to be undisturbed, was performed in accordance with the requirements of ASTM D 1587. This type of sample is considered best for the testing of "in-situ" soil properties such as natural density and strength characteristics. The use of this sampling method is basically restricted to soil containing little to no chert fragments and to softer shale deposits.

Split Spoon Samples: The Standard Penetration Test is conducted in conjunction with the split-barrel sampling procedure. The "N" value corresponds to the number of blows required to drive the last 1 foot of an 18-in. long, 2-in. O.D. split-barrel sampler with a 140 lb. hammer falling a distance of 30 in. The Standard Penetration Test is carried out according to ASTM D-1586.

Water Level Measurements

Water levels indicated on the boring logs are levels measured in the borings at the times indicated. In permeable materials, the indicated levels may reflect the location of groundwater. In low permeability soils, shallow groundwater may indicate a perched condition. Caution is merited when interpreting short-term water level readings from open bore holes. Accurate water levels are best determined from piezometers.

Automatic Hammer

Palmerton and Parrish's CME's are equipped with automatic hammers. The conventional method used to obtain disturbed soil samples used a safety hammer operated by company personnel with a cat head and rope. However, use of an automatic hammer allows a greater mechanical efficiency to be achieved in the field while performing a Standard Penetration resistance test based upon automatic hammer efficiencies calibrated using dynamic testing techniques.

*Modified after Ref. ASTM D2487-93 & D2488-93

**Modified after Ref. Oregon DOT 1987 & FHWA 1997

***Modified after Ref. AASHTO 1988, DM 7.1 1982, and Oregon DOT 1987

APPENDIX III

IMPORTANT INFORMATION REGARDING YOUR GEOTECHNICAL REPORT

Important Information about Your Geotechnical Engineering Report

Subsurface problems are a principal cause of construction delays, cost overruns, claims, and disputes.

While you cannot eliminate all such risks, you can manage them. The following information is provided to help.

Geotechnical Services Are Performed for Specific Purposes, Persons, and Projects

Geotechnical engineers structure their services to meet the specific needs of their clients. A geotechnical engineering study conducted for a civil engineer may not fulfill the needs of a construction contractor or even another civil engineer. Because each geotechnical engineering study is unique, each geotechnical engineering report is unique, prepared *solely* for the client. No one except you should rely on your geotechnical engineering report without first conferring with the geotechnical engineer who prepared it. *And no one — not even you — should apply the report for any purpose or project except the one originally contemplated.*

Read the Full Report

Serious problems have occurred because those relying on a geotechnical engineering report did not read it all. Do not rely on an executive summary. Do not read selected elements only.

A Geotechnical Engineering Report Is Based on A Unique Set of Project-Specific Factors

Geotechnical engineers consider a number of unique, project-specific factors when establishing the scope of a study. Typical factors include: the client's goals, objectives, and risk management preferences; the general nature of the structure involved, its size, and configuration; the location of the structure on the site; and other planned or existing site improvements, such as access roads, parking lots, and underground utilities. Unless the geotechnical engineer who conducted the study specifically indicates otherwise, do not rely on a geotechnical engineering report that was:

- not prepared for you,
- not prepared for your project,
- not prepared for the specific site explored, or
- completed before important project changes were made.

Typical changes that can erode the reliability of an existing geotechnical engineering report include those that affect:

- the function of the proposed structure, as when it's changed from a parking garage to an office building, or from a light industrial plant to a refrigerated warehouse,

- elevation, configuration, location, orientation, or weight of the proposed structure,
- composition of the design team, or
- project ownership.

As a general rule, *always* inform your geotechnical engineer of project changes—even minor ones—and request an assessment of their impact. *Geotechnical engineers cannot accept responsibility or liability for problems that occur because their reports do not consider developments of which they were not informed.*

Subsurface Conditions Can Change

A geotechnical engineering report is based on conditions that existed at the time the study was performed. *Do not rely on a geotechnical engineering report* whose adequacy may have been affected by: the passage of time; by man-made events, such as construction on or adjacent to the site; or by natural events, such as floods, earthquakes, or groundwater fluctuations. *Always* contact the geotechnical engineer before applying the report to determine if it is still reliable. A minor amount of additional testing or analysis could prevent major problems.

Most Geotechnical Findings Are Professional Opinions

Site exploration identifies subsurface conditions only at those points where subsurface tests are conducted or samples are taken. Geotechnical engineers review field and laboratory data and then apply their professional judgment to render an opinion about subsurface conditions throughout the site. Actual subsurface conditions may differ—sometimes significantly—from those indicated in your report. Retaining the geotechnical engineer who developed your report to provide construction observation is the most effective method of managing the risks associated with unanticipated conditions.

A Report's Recommendations Are *Not* Final

Do not overrely on the construction recommendations included in your report. *Those recommendations are not final*, because geotechnical engineers develop them principally from judgment and opinion. Geotechnical engineers can finalize their recommendations only by observing actual

subsurface conditions revealed during construction. *The geotechnical engineer who developed your report cannot assume responsibility or liability for the report's recommendations if that engineer does not perform construction observation.*

A Geotechnical Engineering Report Is Subject to Misinterpretation

Other design team members' misinterpretation of geotechnical engineering reports has resulted in costly problems. Lower that risk by having your geotechnical engineer confer with appropriate members of the design team after submitting the report. Also retain your geotechnical engineer to review pertinent elements of the design team's plans and specifications. Contractors can also misinterpret a geotechnical engineering report. Reduce that risk by having your geotechnical engineer participate in prebid and preconstruction conferences, and by providing construction observation.

Do Not Redraw the Engineer's Logs

Geotechnical engineers prepare final boring and testing logs based upon their interpretation of field logs and laboratory data. To prevent errors or omissions, the logs included in a geotechnical engineering report should *never* be redrawn for inclusion in architectural or other design drawings. Only photographic or electronic reproduction is acceptable, *but recognize that separating logs from the report can elevate risk.*

Give Contractors a Complete Report and Guidance

Some owners and design professionals mistakenly believe they can make contractors liable for unanticipated subsurface conditions by limiting what they provide for bid preparation. To help prevent costly problems, give contractors the complete geotechnical engineering report, *but* preface it with a clearly written letter of transmittal. In that letter, advise contractors that the report was not prepared for purposes of bid development and that the report's accuracy is limited; encourage them to confer with the geotechnical engineer who prepared the report (a modest fee may be required) and/or to conduct additional study to obtain the specific types of information they need or prefer. A prebid conference can also be valuable. *Be sure contractors have sufficient time* to perform additional study. Only then might you be in a position to give contractors the best information available to you, while requiring them to at least share some of the financial responsibilities stemming from unanticipated conditions.

Read Responsibility Provisions Closely

Some clients, design professionals, and contractors do not recognize that geotechnical engineering is far less exact than other engineering disciplines. This lack of understanding has created unrealistic expectations that

have led to disappointments, claims, and disputes. To help reduce the risk of such outcomes, geotechnical engineers commonly include a variety of explanatory provisions in their reports. Sometimes labeled "limitations" many of these provisions indicate where geotechnical engineers' responsibilities begin and end, to help others recognize their own responsibilities and risks. *Read these provisions closely.* Ask questions. Your geotechnical engineer should respond fully and frankly.

Geoenvironmental Concerns Are Not Covered

The equipment, techniques, and personnel used to perform a *geoenvironmental* study differ significantly from those used to perform a *geotechnical* study. For that reason, a geotechnical engineering report does not usually relate any geoenvironmental findings, conclusions, or recommendations; e.g., about the likelihood of encountering underground storage tanks or regulated contaminants. *Unanticipated environmental problems have led to numerous project failures.* If you have not yet obtained your own geoenvironmental information, ask your geotechnical consultant for risk management guidance. *Do not rely on an environmental report prepared for someone else.*

Obtain Professional Assistance To Deal with Mold

Diverse strategies can be applied during building design, construction, operation, and maintenance to prevent significant amounts of mold from growing on indoor surfaces. To be effective, all such strategies should be devised for the *express purpose* of mold prevention, integrated into a comprehensive plan, and executed with diligent oversight by a professional mold prevention consultant. Because just a small amount of water or moisture can lead to the development of severe mold infestations, a number of mold prevention strategies focus on keeping building surfaces dry. While groundwater, water infiltration, and similar issues may have been addressed as part of the geotechnical engineering study whose findings are conveyed in this report, the geotechnical engineer in charge of this project is not a mold prevention consultant; *none of the services performed in connection with the geotechnical engineer's study were designed or conducted for the purpose of mold prevention. Proper implementation of the recommendations conveyed in this report will not of itself be sufficient to prevent mold from growing in or on the structure involved.*

Rely on Your ASFE-Member Geotechnical Engineer for Additional Assistance

Membership in ASFE/The Best People on Earth exposes geotechnical engineers to a wide array of risk management techniques that can be of genuine benefit for everyone involved with a construction project. Confer with your ASFE-member geotechnical engineer for more information.



8811 Colesville Road/Suite G106, Silver Spring, MD 20910
Telephone: 301/565-2733 Facsimile: 301/589-2017
e-mail: info@asfe.org www.asfe.org

Copyright 2004 by ASFE, Inc. Duplication, reproduction, or copying of this document, in whole or in part, by any means whatsoever, is strictly prohibited, except with ASFE's specific written permission. Excerpting, quoting, or otherwise extracting wording from this document is permitted only with the express written permission of ASFE, and only for purposes of scholarly research or book review. Only members of ASFE may use this document as a complement to or as an element of a geotechnical engineering report. Any other firm, individual, or other entity that so uses this document without being an ASFE member could be committing negligent or intentional (fraudulent) misrepresentation.

SECTION 01 1000 – SUMMARY

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 PROJECT

- A. Project Name: Saline Courthouse Remodel, Rose, OK 74364 – 36° 12' 32.84" N and 95° 00' 40.50" W.
- B. Owner's Name: Cherokee Nation Businesses 777 W. Cherokee St. Catoosa, OK 74015.
- C. Architect's Name: 1Architecture LLC. 1319 E. 6th Street Tulsa, Oklahoma 74120.
- D. Summary Description: Remodel of an existing two-story courthouse building constructed in 1884.

1.2 DESCRIPTION OF ALTERATIONS WORK

- A. Interior remodel to include but not limited to: updating MEP systems, restoring existing interior materials, adding new restrooms and finishes, revising interior walls, and stabilizing existing structural members.
- B. Exterior remodel to include but not limited to: replacing damaged siding and decking, replacing entry steps, adding exterior lighting, adding ADA ramp and parking space.

1.3 OWNER OCCUPANCY

- A. Owner intends to occupy the Project by the date stated in the Agreement as the contract completion date.

1.4 CONTRACTOR USE OF SITE AND PREMISES

- A. Provide access to and from site as required by law and by Owner:
 - 1. Emergency Building Exits During Construction: Keep all exits required by code open during construction period; provide temporary exit signs if exit routes are temporarily altered.
 - 2. Do not obstruct roadways, sidewalks, or other public ways without permit.

END OF SECTION

SECTION 01 2500 - SUBSTITUTION PROCEDURES

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including the 'general conditions', as provided by the Owner, and other Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section includes administrative and procedural requirements for
 1. Proposed Product List
 2. Substitutions
- B. Related Sections:
 1. Divisions 02 through 34: Sections for specific requirements and limitations for Substitutions.

1.3 DEFINITIONS

- A. Substitutions: Changes, proposed by the Contractor in products, materials, equipment, or Contract requirements, from those required by the Contract Documents.

1.4 SUBMITTALS (BIDDING)

- A. THE PROPOSED PRODUCTS LIST AND SUBSTITUTION REQUESTS
 1. The intent of the Proposed Products List once updated and approved is:
 - a. To fully identify, prior to beginning the Work, the products the Contractor intends to provide, and substitutions that have been requested and approved.
 - b. To facilitate timely workflow and submittal processing by avoiding rejection of unacceptable products and unspecified products later during construction.
 2. Proposed Products List
 - a. Within 14 working days after date of receipt of notice to proceed and before submitting any Product Submittals, submit for approval the updated Proposed Products List of the products proposed for installation. If specified, verify the name of the manufacturer for each product and, where applicable, indicate the name of Subcontractor. If a Substitution Request has been submitted and approved, indicate appropriately on the Proposed Products List.
 - b. The list shall be tabulated by and be updated by the Contractor as necessary for each Specification Section.
 - c. For each product listed, clearly indicate: a) As Specified/Basis of Design, or b) Approved Substitution. For each product designated Not Basis of Design, clearly indicate: c) The Approved Substituted Item and d) the associated Subcontractor. Products specified solely by reference standard or performance requirements do not require naming.
 - d. Provide 1 printed copy and 1 digital copy of the list, in an editable format for comments by the Architect, unless another quantity has been agreed to.
- B. A Substitution Request forwarded by the Contractor means that the Contractor:
 1. Has investigated the proposed substitution for accuracy and completeness.

2. Has determined that the substitution is equal to or superior in quality and serviceability (performance) to the product specified in the Contract Documents, and if necessary, approved by the Owner.
 3. Will provide the same guarantee for the substitution that is required for the product specified in the Contract Documents.
 4. Waives all claims for additional costs that subsequently become apparent as a result of the substitution.
 5. Accepts all additional costs that subsequently become apparent as a result of the substitution, including any re-design work by the Architect.
 6. Will coordinate the installation of the accepted substitution into the Work (including As-Built Documents) without requiring revisions to the Drawings, and will make such changes in the Work of the various trades as may be required to provide a completed condition. If requested substitution involves more than one Sub-contractor, the Contractor will coordinate the requested substitution with other portions of the Work, verify that it is uniform and consistent, is compatible with other products, and is acceptable to all contractors involved.
- C. A request for a substitution will not be considered if:
1. The substitution is merely indicated or implied on the Shop Drawing or Product Data submittal without the specified formal request and documented proof of conformance. Submittal approvals for items not meeting specifications are not valid. Completed construction related to such items is subject to automatic rejection.
 2. Implementation requires a major revision of the Contract Documents in order to accommodate the substitution.
 3. The substitution request is substantially incomplete.
- D. Architect's Review of Substitution Requests
1. The Architect will review a properly submitted, complete Substitution Requests on the specified form corresponding with the timing of submittal.
 2. The Architect will evaluate each Substitution Request and inform the Contractor in writing whether the proposed substitution is approved, approve as noted, or not approved.
 - a. Substitution requests that do not conform to requirements, including submittal timing, are subject to automatic rejection.
 3. The Architect's decision as to conformance and acceptability will be consistent with the intent of the Contract Documents.
 4. In the absence of written acceptance of a Substitution Request, proposed substitutions shall be understood as not accepted.
 5. The Architect will endeavor to evaluate the substitution request in a reasonable period of time. With the request, the Contractor shall inform the Architect of the deadline for final decision on the request (minimum of 7 working days from submittal of request in writing). In the absence of Architect's decision within the critical time, the Contractor shall proceed with the specified product.
- E. Architect's Review of the updated Proposed Products List
1. The Architect will review the completed, updated Proposed Products List submitted by the Contractor.
 2. The Architect will evaluate the Proposed Products List and inform the Contractor in writing whether the proposed, updated Proposed Products List is approved, approve as noted, or not approved.

3. The Architect will endeavor to evaluate the updated Proposed Products List in a reasonable period of time. With the submission, the Contractor shall inform the Architect of the deadline for final decision on the list (minimum of 7 working days from submittal of request in writing). In the absence of Architect's decision within the critical time, the Contractor shall proceed with only specified products.

1.5 SUBSTITUTION REQUESTS AFTER THE UPDATED, PROPOSED PRODUCTS LIST IS APPROVED

- A. Use no product in the Work that is not named in the Contract Documents, or not listed in the approved, updated, Proposed Products List, or not approved as a Substitution. Products specified solely by reference standard or performance requirements do not require naming.
- B. During construction of the Work, products not listed on the approved Proposed Products List shall not be used without receipt of an approved Substitution Request. A Substitution Request will be considered under one of the following conditions:
 1. The product listed on the approved Proposed Product List becomes unavailable. Include with the substitution request a letter from the listed manufacturer, on the manufacturer's letterhead, verifying that the product is no longer available.
 2. Conditions uncovered at the Site render the listed product inappropriate, or an undesirable choice for the conditions uncovered. Include with the substitution request a full description of the uncovered conditions and why the requested substitution is preferable to the listed product.
 3. If approved in writing by the Owner, the Architect will consider a Contractor's Substitution Request after the approval of the updated Proposed Products List when the following conditions are documented and submitted to the Architect. If the following conditions are not satisfied, the Architect will return requests without action, except to record noncompliance with these requirements:
 - a. Requested substitution offers Owner a substantial, quantified advantage in cost, time, energy conservation, or other considerations, after deducting additional responsibilities Owner must assume. Owner's additional responsibilities may include compensation to Architect for redesign and evaluation services, increased cost of other construction by Owner, and similar considerations.
 - b. Requested substitution does not require extensive revisions to the Contract Documents.
 - c. Requested substitution is consistent with the Contract Documents and will produce indicated results.
 - d. Substitution request is fully documented and properly submitted.
 - e. Requested substitution will not adversely affect Contractor's construction schedule, or if the schedule is affected, no additional costs will be incurred by the Owner.
 - f. Requested substitution provides an equal or greater warranty than the specified warranty.
 - g. All other requirements of Specification Section 01 2500 related to requirements of a Substitution Request.
- C. Make each Substitution Request on the appropriate, specified Substitution Request form based upon the timing of its submittal. Fully execute the form and provide all the information required by the form and this Specification.

1.6 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Compatibility of Substitutions: Investigate and document compatibility of proposed substitution with related products and materials. Engage qualified testing agency to perform compatibility tests recommended by manufacturers.

1.7 PROCEDURES

- A. Coordination: Modify or adjust affected work as necessary to integrate work of the approved substitutions.
- B. Notify the Architect of any changes to items outside of the identified product, so any future project revisions or requests for information may be evaluated appropriately.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS (NOT USED)

PART 3 - EXECUTION (NOT USED)

END OF SECTION

1 Architecture

SUBSTITUTION REQUEST FORM - BIDDING

This substitution request form may be used for Substitution Requests as specified in Division 01 2500 Section -"Substitution Procedures" only during the bidding phase and as indicated below.

TO: _____ PROJECT: _____

SPECIFICATION ITEM: _____

Section	Page	Paragraph	Description
---------	------	-----------	-------------

Substitution approval is an acceptance of only the manufacturer and product for general conformance with the design intent reflected in the Contract Documents. The A/E has made no attempt to verify specific performance data, or to check the details of the proposed substitution regarding special features, capacities, physical dimensions, or code and/or regulatory compliance. All of which remain the responsibility of the Contractor.

1. **Substitution information required to be submitted (verify that all items below are provided to avoid automatic rejection):**

- An itemized comparison of the proposed substitution with the product features specified in the Contract Documents.
- Product Data highlighted to show applicability to proposed substitution and project conditions
- Performance and test data as required for comparison
- Warranty information as required for comparison
- References and samples where applicable

The undersigned requests consideration of the following:

PROPOSED SUBSTITUTION: _____

Data included (check above in item #1 as applicable and included):

The undersigned certifies that the following, unless modified by attachments, are correct:

1. The proposed substitution conforms to required dimensions set by the specified product.
3. The proposed substitution will have no adverse affect on other trades, the construction schedule, or specified Contractor warranty requirements.
4. Maintenance and service parts will be **locally** available for the proposed substitution.

The undersigned further certifies that the function, appearance, and quality of the proposed substitution are *equivalent or superior* to the specified and/or basis of design item.

The undersigned agrees to absorb *any and all* additional costs resulting from acceptance of the proposed substitution including both known and subsequently discovered revisions to other construction needed in order to accommodate the proposed substitution, as well as any other expected and unforeseen costs, such as delays, code approval-related expenses, changes to the building or engineering design, additional architectural services, detailing, and construction costs.

The undersigned agrees that, if this page is reproduced, the terms and conditions for substitutions found in the specifications of the Bidding Documents apply to this request.

SUBMITTED BY (Sub-contractor if applicable):

Name

Company Name

Date:

For use by the Architect/Engineer:

- Approved Approved as noted
- Not Approved

A/E Signature: _____ Date: _____

General Contractor (Signature) – signature of the Substitution Request form confirms that Contractor has verified all requirements of **Section 01 2500 – 1.4 – C**.

1 Architecture

SUBSTITUTION REQUEST FORM - CONSTRUCTION

This substitution request form may be used for Substitution Requests as specified in Division 01 2500 Section -"Substitution Procedures" only during the construction phase (after approval of an updated Proposed Products List) and as indicated below.

TO: _____ PROJECT: _____

SPECIFICATION ITEM: _____

Section	Page	Paragraph	Description
---------	------	-----------	-------------

Substitution approval is an acceptance of only the manufacturer and product for general conformance with the design intent reflected in the Contract Documents. The A/E has made no attempt to verify specific performance data, or to check the details of the proposed substitution regarding special features, capacities, physical dimensions, or code and/or regulatory compliance. All of which remain the responsibility of the Contractor.

1. **Required conditions for a substitution being submitted after a complete, updated Proposed Products List has been reviewed and accepted by the Architect (select one to avoid rejection):**

- The product listed on the Proposed Products List has become unavailable. A letter from the listed manufacturer, on the manufacturer's letterhead has been included herewith verifying that the product is no longer available. If the specified manufacturer is no longer in business, submit written proof other than the statement of the Contractor, Sub-contractor or proposed substituting product manufacturer.
- Conditions uncovered at the Site render the listed product inappropriate, or an undesirable choice for the conditions uncovered. A full description of the uncovered conditions and why the requested substitution is a desirable product is included herewith.

2. **Minimum substitution information required to be submitted (verify that all applicable items below are provided in order to avoid automatic rejection):**

- An itemized comparison of the proposed substitution with the product features specified in the Contract Documents.
- Product Data highlighted to show applicability to proposed substitution and project conditions
- Performance and test data as required for comparison
- Warranty information as required for comparison
- References and samples where applicable

The undersigned requests consideration of the following:

PROPOSED SUBSTITUTION: _____

Data included (check above in item #2 as applicable and included):

The undersigned certifies that the following, unless modified by attachments, are correct:

1. The proposed substitution conforms to required dimensions set by the specified product.
3. The proposed substitution will have no adverse affect on other trades, the construction schedule, or specified Contractor warranty requirements.
4. Maintenance and service parts will be **locally** available for the proposed substitution.

The undersigned further certifies that the function, appearance, and quality of the proposed substitution are *equivalent or superior* to the specified and/or basis of design item.

The undersigned agrees to absorb *any and all* additional costs resulting from acceptance of the proposed substitution including both known and subsequently discovered revisions to other construction needed in order to accommodate the proposed substitution, as well as any other expected and unforeseen costs, such as delays, code approval-related expenses, changes to the building or engineering design, additional architectural services, detailing, and construction costs.

The undersigned agrees that, if this page is reproduced, the terms and conditions for substitutions found in the Bidding Documents apply to this request.

SUBMITTED BY:

Name (Sub-contractor if applicable)

Company Name

Date: _____

General Contractor (Signature) – signature of the Substitution request form confirms that Contractor has verified all requirements of **Section 01 2500 – 1.4 – C**.

For use by the Architect/Engineer:

Approved Approved as noted

Not Approved

A/E Signature: _____ Date: _____

SECTION 01 3100 - PROJECT MANAGEMENT AND COORDINATION

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General Conditions and other Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section includes administrative provisions for coordinating construction operations within scope of Contractor's work, including, but not limited to, the following:
 - 1. General project coordination procedures.
 - 2. Administrative and supervisory personnel.
 - 3. Coordination drawings.
 - 4. Requests for Interpretation (RFIs).
 - 5. Project meetings.
- B. Related Sections:
 - 1. 01 3300 Submittal Procedures
 - 2. 01 7700 Closeout Procedures

1.3 COORDINATION

- A. Coordinate construction operations of the Contract to ensure efficient and orderly installation of each part of the Work within Contract scope. Coordinate operations and procedures with work that will be performed by others, where necessary for efficient and orderly installation of each part of the Work. Coordinate activities that depend on each other for proper installation, connection, and operation.
 - 1. Schedule construction operations in sequence required to obtain the best results where installation of one part of the Work depends on installation of other components, before or after its own installation.
 - 2. Coordinate installation of different components to ensure maximum performance and accessibility for required maintenance, service, and repair.
 - 3. Make adequate provisions to accommodate items scheduled for later installation.
- B. Prepare memoranda for distribution to each party involved, outlining special procedures required for coordination. Include such items as required notices, reports, and list of attendees at meetings. Prepare similar memoranda for Owner and separate contractors if coordination of their Work is required.
- C. Administrative Procedures: Coordinate administrative procedures with other construction activities, whether within or outside of Contract scope, to avoid conflicts and to ensure orderly progress of the Work. Coordinate procedural and temporary matters such as, but not limited to: schedule, meetings, temporary facilities, submittals, closeout, and system startup.
- D. Conservation: Coordinate construction activities to ensure that operations are carried out with consideration given to conservation of energy, water, and materials. Coordinate use of temporary utilities to minimize waste.

1. Salvage materials and equipment involved in performance of, but not actually incorporated into, the Work. Refer to other Sections for disposition of salvaged materials that are designated as Owner's property.

1.4 COORDINATION DRAWINGS/BUILDING INFORMATION MODEL

- A. Coordination Drawings, General: Prepare coordination Drawings where limited space availability necessitates coordination, or if coordination is required to facilitate integration into the Project of products and materials that are fabricated or installed by more than one entity. The Architect shall determine the necessity for Coordination Drawings and notify the Contractor when the submittal shall be required. Review time shall be consistent with submittal review times indicated in Specification Section 01 3300 Submittal Procedures.
 1. Purpose: Coordination drawings show in advance the Project's final construction using actual dimensions of the construction and components to prevent physical conflicts and functional incompatibilities during construction.
 2. Content: Project-specific information, drawn accurately to a scale large enough to indicate and resolve conflicts. Do not base coordination drawings on standard printed data. Include the following information, as applicable:
 - a. All entities involved in the Project's construction are required to participate. Coordinate the addition of trade-specific information to the coordination drawings in a sequence that best provides for coordination of the information and resolution of conflicts between installed components before submitting for review.
 - b. Indicate functional and spatial relationships of components of architectural, structural, civil, mechanical, and electrical systems.
 - c. Indicate space requirements for routine maintenance and for anticipated replacement of components during the life of the installation.
 - d. Show location and size of access doors required for access to concealed dampers, valves, and other controls.
 - e. Indicate required installation sequences.
 - f. Indicate dimensions shown on the Drawings. Specifically note dimensions that appear to be in conflict with submitted equipment and minimum clearance requirements. Provide alternate sketches to Architect indicating proposed resolution of such conflicts. Minor dimension changes and difficult installations will not be considered changes to the Contract.
- B. Coordination Drawing Organization: Organize coordination drawings as follows:
 1. Floor Plans and Reflected Ceiling Plans: Show architectural and structural elements, and mechanical, plumbing, fire protection, fire alarm, and electrical Work. Show locations of visible ceiling-mounted devices relative to acoustical ceiling grid. Supplement plan drawings with section drawings where required to adequately represent the Work.
 2. Plenum Space: Indicate sub-framing for support of ceiling and wall systems, mechanical and electrical equipment, and related Work. Locate components within ceiling plenum to accommodate layout of light fixtures indicated on Drawings. Indicate areas of conflict between light fixtures and other components.
 3. Mechanical Room: Provide coordination drawings for mechanical rooms.
 4. Structural Penetrations: Indicate penetrations and openings required for all disciplines.

5. Slab and Embedded Items: Indicate new slab locations and sizes and locations of curbs and housekeeping pads, and similar items.
6. Mechanical and Plumbing Work: Show the following:
 - a. Sizes and bottom elevations of ductwork, piping, and conduit runs, including insulation, bracing, flanges, and support systems.
 - b. Dimensions of major components, such as dampers, valves, diffusers, access doors, cleanouts and electrical distribution equipment.
7. Electrical Work: Show the following:
 - a. Runs of vertical and horizontal conduit 1-1/4 inch diameter and larger.
 - b. Light fixture, exit light, emergency battery pack, smoke detector, and other fire alarm locations.
 - c. Panel board, switch board, switchgear, transformer, busway, generator, and motor control center locations.
 - d. Location of pull boxes and junction boxes, dimensioned from wall center lines.
8. Fire Protection System: Show the following:
 - a. Locations of standpipes, mains piping, branch lines, pipe drops, and sprinkler heads.
9. Submit for Information: Architect will review coordination drawings to confirm that the Work is being coordinated, but not for the accuracy of the coordination, which is the Contractor's responsibility. If the Architect determines that the coordination drawings are not being prepared in sufficient scope or detail, or are otherwise deficient, the Architect will so inform the Contractor, who shall make changes as directed and resubmit.
10. Prepare coordination drawing submittal in accordance with requirements of Division 01 section specifying submittal procedures. In addition to electronic files, submit hard copies in number specified for Shop Drawings.

1.5 REQUESTS FOR INTERPRETATION/INFORMATION (RFIs)

- A. General: Immediately on discovery of the need for additional information or interpretation of the Contract Documents, Contractor shall prepare and submit an RFI on the form specified and in compliance with the General Conditions.
 1. RFIs shall be submitted through the Contractor. RFI's submitted otherwise will be returned unprocessed, without response.
 2. In order to expedite processing, each RFI shall include only one distinct issue.
 3. Coordinate and submit RFIs in a prompt manner so as to avoid delays in Project schedule.
 4. RFI's that do not contain adequate references to the Drawings and Specifications are subject to immediate rejection.
- B. Content of the RFI: Include a detailed, legible description of item needing information or interpretation, providing the related information pertinent to understand the issue.
- C. RFI Forms: Use Request for Interpretation form bound in the Project Manual or as approved by Architect.
- D. RFI Response: Each RFI will be reviewed, required action will be determined, and a response will be issued within 7 working days, or otherwise reasonable promptness. RFIs received after 1:00 p.m. will be considered as received the following working day.
 1. RFIs may be returned without action for reasons such as:
 - a. Requests involving submittals or substitutions.

- b. The Contract Documents contain the information needed to answer the request.
 - c. Incomplete or poorly prepared RFIs, or RFI's based on superseded Documents.
 2. The action may include a request for additional information, in which case the time period for response will begin upon receipt of the additional information.
 3. When the response described on RFI may result in a change to the Contract Time or the Contract Sum, Contractor may submit a Change Proposal according to Contract Document provisions dealing with Contract Modification Procedures. Give written notification to the Architect of such changes within 10 days of receipt of the RFI response.
 - E. If in disagreement with RFI response, Contractor shall give written notice to the Architect of such disagreement within 7 working days of receiving the RFI response.
 - F. RFI Log: Prepare, maintain, and submit a tabular log of RFIs organized by the RFI number. When requested, submit log within 1 working day of request.
 1. Number RFI's consecutively. Follow-up RFI's on the same topic should retain number of original and add "R__" number suffix.

1.6 PROJECT MEETINGS AND CONFERENCES

- A. General: All entities involved in the Project shall participate, as necessary, in meetings and conferences called for the benefit of the Project. Contractor shall be responsible for attendance of all entities performing work under the Contract, as requested or appropriate to meeting purpose.
 1. Contractor shall attend meetings called by Owner or Architect.
 2. Notify Owner and Architect within a reasonable period in advance of scheduled meetings and conferences. Architect's and Owner's attendance shall not be required at meetings for subcontractor or general construction coordination, except as specifically requested by Contractor.
 3. Except as otherwise agreed, the entity calling the meeting/conference shall conduct it as follows:
 - a. Inform participants and others involved, and individuals whose presence is required, of date and time. Notify Owner and Architect of scheduled meeting dates and times.
 - b. Attendees: Entities concerned with current progress or involved in planning, coordination, or performance of future activities, except as special purpose meetings or conferences require otherwise. All participants at the meeting shall be familiar with Project and authorized to conclude matters relating to the Work.
 - c. Agenda: At least 2 working days prior to the scheduled meeting, prepare the meeting agenda and distribute it to all invited attendees. Review progress of construction activities, procedures, and preparations. Discuss items that could affect Project progress.
 - d. Record significant discussions, agreements, and disagreements, including required corrective measures and actions. Resolve the items or identify steps to resolution. Record significant discussions and agreements achieved. Distribute the meeting minutes to everyone concerned, including Owner and Architect, within a time period sufficient to permit actions pursuant to the meeting.

- B. Preconstruction Conference: A preconstruction conference shall be held before starting construction, at a time convenient to Owner and Architect.
 - 1. Attendees: Authorized representatives of Owner, Architect, and their consultants; Contractor and its superintendent; major subcontractors; suppliers; and other concerned parties shall attend the conference. Participants at the conference shall be familiar with Project and authorized to conclude matters relating to the Work.
 - 2. Agenda: Discuss significant items that could affect progress. Agenda will be developed by Contractor, with input from Owner, Architect.

- C. Progress Meetings: The Owner, Architect and Contractor together, shall determine frequency sufficient to ensure meeting the construction schedule.
 - 1. Coordinate dates of meetings with preparation of payment requests, except as otherwise agreed.
 - 2. Contractor's Construction Schedule: The Contractor's Construction Schedule shall be updated and presented at all Progress Meetings. Review progress since the last meeting and for next period. Determine whether each activity is on time, ahead of schedule, or behind schedule, in relation to Contractor's construction schedule. Determine how construction behind schedule will be expedited; secure commitments from parties involved to do so. Discuss whether schedule revisions are required to ensure that current and subsequent activities will be completed within the Contract Time. Review present and future needs of each entity present.
 - 3. Schedule Updating: Revise construction schedule after each progress meeting where revisions to the schedule have been made or recognized. Issue revised schedule concurrently with the report of each meeting.

- D. Preinstallation Conferences: Conduct a preinstallation conference at Project site before each construction activity that requires coordination with other construction.
 - 1. Attendees: Installer and representatives of manufacturers and fabricators involved in or affected by the installation and its coordination or integration with other materials and installations that have preceded or will follow, shall attend the meeting.
 - 2. Do not proceed with installation if the conference cannot be successfully concluded. Initiate whatever actions are necessary to resolve impediments to performance of the Work and reconvene the conference at earliest feasible date.

- E. Coordination Meetings: Conduct Project coordination meetings at regular intervals as agreed to by Owner, Architect and Contractor. Project coordination meetings are in addition to specific meetings held for other purposes, such as progress meetings and preinstallation conferences.
 - 1. Attendees: In addition to representatives of Owner and Architect (only, upon request from the Owner or Contractor, with 2 working days written notice), each contractor, subcontractor, supplier, and other entity concerned with current progress or involved in planning, coordination, or performance of future activities shall be represented at these meetings. All participants at the meetings shall be familiar with Project and authorized to conclude matters relating to the Work.
 - 2. Agenda: Review and correct or approve minutes of the previous coordination meeting. Review other items of significance that could affect progress. Include topics for discussion as appropriate to status of Project.

- a. Combined Contractor's Construction Schedule: Review progress since the last coordination meeting. Determine whether each contract is on time, ahead of schedule, or behind schedule, in relation to combined Contractor's construction schedule. Determine how construction behind schedule will be expedited; secure commitments from parties involved to do so. Discuss whether schedule revisions are required to ensure that current and subsequent activities will be completed within the Contract Time.
 - b. Schedule Updating: Revise combined Contractor's construction schedule after each coordination meeting where revisions to the schedule have been made or recognized. Issue revised schedule concurrently with report of each meeting.
 - c. Review present and future needs of each contractor present, including the following:
 - 1) Interface requirements.
 - 2) Sequence of operations.
 - 3) Status of submittals.
 - 4) Off-site fabrication.
 - 5) Access.
 - 6) Temporary facilities and controls.
 - 7) Quality and work standards.
 - 8) Change Orders.
3. Reporting: Record meeting results and, within 2 working days after the meeting, distribute copies to everyone in attendance and to others affected by decisions or actions resulting from each meeting.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS (Not Used)

PART 3 - EXECUTION (Not Used)

END OF SECTION

SECTION 01 3110 - REQUEST FOR INTERPRETATION

DATE TRANSMITTED: _____

RFI NO.: _____

Contractor requests interpretation of the following from 1 Architecture:

(Note: Request only 1 interpretation per RFI. This permits individual handling and expedites response. Please include all relevant specification and drawing references as well as photographs of the condition.)

This box, if checked by the Contractor, indicates a potential change to the Contract Sum associated with this RFI. The change is in the range of \$_____ to \$_____.

This box, if checked by the Contractor, indicates a potential change to the Contract Time associated with this RFI. The change is in the range of _____ days to _____ days.

Requested By: (name): _____

1 Architecture response:

Date Received: _____

1 Arch DOES NOT expect a change to the Contract Sum Contract Time related to this RFI.
 1 Arch expects a change to the Contract Sum Contract Time related to this RFI.

Response By: _____

Date Transmitted: _____

NOTE: This base form is formatted for completion on screen using MS Word. Only form revisions by 1 Architecture are valid.

SECTION 01 3120 - ELECTRONIC FILES AGREEMENT

Project Title: TITLE
Project Location: CITY, STATE, ZIP
1Architecture Project No./Package ID, Title: NUMBER AND TITLE

The Contractor has requested that 1Architecture provide certain electronic/data/digital files (Files) from 1Architecture's Instruments of Service, and/or Work Product, as the case may be, for the Project identified above. The Files are requested for the purpose of providing convenience in the preparation of submittals, such as shop drawings and coordination drawings.

Contractor covenants and agrees that: 1) the Files are Instruments of Service of 1Architecture, the author, and/or Work Product of 1Architecture, as the case may be; 2) in providing the Files, 1Architecture does not transfer common law, statutory law, or other rights, including copyrights; 3) the Files are not Contract Documents, in whole or in part; and 4) the Files are not As-Built files.

Contractor agrees to report defects in the Files to 1Architecture, within 10 days of the initial Files transmittal date (Acceptance Period). It is understood that, if necessary, 1Architecture will correct such defects in a timely manner and retransmit the Files. Contractor further understands that correction of defects reported after the Acceptance Period, is at the sole discretion of 1Architecture.

Contractor understands that the Files have been prepared to 1Architecture criteria and may not conform to Contractor's drafting or other documentation standards. The Contractor further agrees that they are using the Files at their own risk, and that 1Architecture does not warrant the accuracy of these Files.

Contractor understands that due to the translation process of certain CADD/BIM formats, and the transmission of such Files to Contractor that 1Architecture does not guarantee the accuracy, completeness or integrity of the data, and that the Contractor will hold 1Architecture harmless for any data or file clean-up required to make these Files usable.

Contractor understands that even though 1Architecture may have computer virus scanning software to detect the presence of computer viruses, there is no guarantee that computer viruses are not present in the Files, and that Contractor will hold 1Architecture harmless for such viruses and their consequences, as well as any and all liability or damage caused by the presence of a computer virus in the Files.

Contractor agrees that the use of the Files does not reduce nor modify the Contractor's contract responsibilities for submitting complete and coordinated services.

Contractor agrees, to the fullest extent permitted by law, to indemnify and hold 1Architecture harmless from any and all damage, liability, or cost (including protection from loss due to attorney's fees and costs of defense), arising from or in any way connected with and changes made to the Files by Contractor or Contractor's failure to coordinate the electronic Files with modifications to the Contract Documents.

Under no circumstances shall transfer of Files to Contractor be deemed a sale by 1Architecture. 1Architecture makes no warranties, express or implied, of merchantability or fitness for any particular purpose.

Accepted for the Contractor:

_____	_____
By	Company
_____	_____
Signature	Title
_____	_____
Date	

END OF SECTION

SECTION 01 3216 - CONSTRUCTION SCHEDULE

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 SECTION INCLUDES

- A. Construction schedule, bar chart type.

1.2 REFERENCES

- A. AGC (CPSM) - Construction Planning and Scheduling Manual; Associated General Contractors of America; 2004.
- B. M-H (CPM) - CPM in Construction Management - Project Management with CPM, O'Brien, McGraw-Hill Book Company; 2006.

1.3 SUBMITTALS

- A. Promptly (within 15 working days) after award of the Contract, Submit one or both of the following:
 - 1. Horizontal bar chart with separate bar for each major trade or operation, identifying first workday of each week and critical path.
 - 2. Network analysis system using the critical path method.
- B. Submit the number of opaque reproductions that Contractor requires, plus one physical and one digital copy that will be retained by Architect.

1.4 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Scheduler: Construction Manager personnel or specialist Consultant specializing in CPM scheduling with one year minimum experience in scheduling construction work of a complexity comparable to this Project, and having use of computer facilities capable of delivering a detailed graphic printout within 48 hours of request.

1.5 SCHEDULE FORMAT

- A. Listings: In chronological order according to the start date for each activity. Identify each activity with the applicable specification section number.
- B. Diagram Sheet Size: Maximum 11x 17 inches or width required.
- C. Sheet Size: Multiples of 8-1/2 x 11 inches.

- D. Scale and Spacing: To allow for notations and revisions.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS (NOT USED)

PART 3 – EXECUTION

3.1 PRELIMINARY SCHEDULE

- A. Prepare preliminary schedule in the form of a horizontal bar chart.

3.2 CONTENT

- A. Show complete sequence of construction by activity, with dates for beginning and completion of each element of construction.
- B. Identify each item by specification section number.
- C. Identify work of separate stages and other logically grouped activities.
- D. Provide sub-schedules for each stage of Work identified in Section 01 1000.
- E. Provide sub-schedules to define critical portions of the entire schedule.
- F. Include conferences and meetings in schedule.
- G. Show accumulated percentage of completion of each item, and total percentage of Work completed, as of the first day of each month.
- H. Provide separate schedule of submittal dates for shop drawings, product data, samples, and owner-furnished products. Products identified under Allowances, and dates reviewed submittals will be required from Architect. Indicate decision dates for selection of finishes.
- I. Indicate delivery dates for owner-furnished products.
- J. Coordinate content with schedule of values as submitted by the Contractor to the Architect prior to submittal of the Contractor's first payment requisition and, subsequently, approved by the Architect for use as the basis for all the Contractor's payment requisitions for the Project (which are to be submitted to the Architect for review and approval, in part or whole, per the discretion of the Architect's opinion of the Project's progression and stage of completion for the period in question and under review).

- K. Provide legend for symbols and abbreviations used.

3.3 BAR CHARTS

- A. Include a separate bar for each major portion of Work or operation.
- B. Identify the first work day of each week.

3.4 REVIEW AND EVALUATION OF SCHEDULE

- A. Participate in joint review and evaluation of schedule with Architect at each submittal.
- B. Evaluate project status to determine work behind schedule and work ahead of schedule.
- C. After review, revise as necessary as result of review, and resubmit within 10 days.

3.5 UPDATING SCHEDULE

- A. Maintain schedules to record actual start and finish dates of completed activities.
- B. Indicate progress of each activity to date of revision, with projected completion date of each activity.
- C. Annotate diagrams to graphically depict current status of Work.
- D. Identify activities modified since previous submittal, major changes in Work, and other identifiable changes.
- E. Indicate changes required to maintain Date of Substantial Completion.
- F. Submit reports required to support recommended changes.
- G. Provide narrative report to define problem areas, anticipated delays, and impact on the schedule. Report corrective action taken or proposed and its effect including the effects of changes on schedules of separate contractors.

3.6 DISTRIBUTION OF SCHEDULE

- A. Distribute copies of updated schedules to Contractor's project site file, to Subcontractors, suppliers, Architect, Owner, and other concerned parties.

- B. Instruct recipients to promptly report, in writing, problems anticipated by projections shown in schedules.

END OF SECTION

SECTION 01 3233 - PHOTOGRAPHIC DOCUMENTATION

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General Conditions and other Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section includes administrative and procedural requirements for the following:
 - 1. Preconstruction photographs.
 - 2. Periodic construction photographs.
 - 3. Final completion construction photographs.
- B. Related Requirements:
 - 1. Division 01 Section "Closeout Procedures" for submitting photographic documentation as project record documents at Project closeout.

1.3 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Digital Photographs: Submit image files within three days of taking photographs.
 - 1. Digital Camera: Minimum sensor resolution of 8 megapixels.
 - 2. Format: Minimum 3200 by 2400 pixels, in unaltered original files, with same aspect ratio as the sensor, uncropped, date and time stamped, in folder named by date of photograph, accompanied by key plan file.
 - 3. Identification: Provide the following information with each image description in file metadata tag:
 - a. Name of Project.
 - b. Name and contact information for photographer, for final construction completion photographs only.
 - c. Name of Architect and Contractor.
 - d. Date photograph was taken.
 - e. Description of vantage point, indicating location, direction (by compass point), and elevation or story of construction, for final construction completion photographs only.
 - f. Unique sequential identifier keyed to accompanying key plan.

1.4 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Photographer Qualifications for Final Completion Photographs: An individual who has been regularly engaged photographing construction projects for not less than three years.

1.5 USAGE RIGHTS

- A. Obtain and transfer copyright usage rights to Owner for unlimited reproduction of all photographic documentation.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 PHOTOGRAPHIC MEDIA

- A. Digital Images: Provide images in JPG format, produced by a digital camera with minimum sensor size of 8 megapixels, and at an image resolution of not less than 3200 by 2400 pixels.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 CONSTRUCTION PHOTOGRAPHS

- A. Final Completion Photographer: Engage a qualified photographer to take construction photographs.
- B. Pre-Construction and Construction Progress Photography: CM's on-site project staff to take pre-construction and construction progress photographs, documenting existing conditions and items that will be covered by new construction.
- C. General: Take photographs using the maximum range of depth of field, and that are in focus, to clearly show the Work. Photographs with blurry or out-of-focus areas will not be accepted.
 - 1. Maintain key plan with each set of construction photographs that identifies each photographic location.
- D. Digital Images: Submit digital images exactly as originally recorded in the digital camera, without alteration, manipulation, editing, or modifications using image-editing software.
 - 1. Date and Time: Include date and time in file name for each image.
 - 2. Field Office Images: Maintain one set of images accessible in the field office at Project site, available at all times for reference. Identify images in the same manner as those submitted to Architect.
- E. Preconstruction Photographs: Before starting construction, take photographs of Project site and surrounding properties, including existing items to remain during construction, from different vantage points, as directed by Architect.
 - 1. Flag excavation areas before taking construction photographs.
 - 2. Take 20 photographs to show existing conditions adjacent to property before starting the Work.
 - 3. Take 20 photographs of existing buildings either on or adjoining property to accurately record physical conditions at start of construction.
 - 4. Take additional photographs as required to record settlement or cracking of adjacent structures, pavements, and improvements.
- F. Periodic Construction Photographs: Take 20 minimum photographs monthly with the cutoff date associated with each Application for Payment. Select vantage points to show status of construction and progress since last photographs were taken.
- G. Final Completion Construction Photographs: Take 20 color photographs after date of Substantial Completion for submission as project record documents. Architect will inform photographer of desired vantage points.
 - 1. Do not include date stamp.

END OF SECTION

SECTION 01 3300 - SUBMITTAL PROCEDURES

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section includes:
 - 1. Administrative and procedural requirements for making submittals
 - 2. Detailed requirements for:
 - a. The submittal schedule
 - b. Product submittals, such as Shop Drawings, Product Data, Samples
- B. Related Requirements: The following requirements are specified in other Division 01 sections except as otherwise indicated.
 - 1. Proposed products list is specified with substitution procedures.
 - 2. Quality requirements, including mock-ups and sample installations
 - 3. Payment procedures for submitting Applications for Payment and the schedule of values.
 - 4. Construction progress documentation such as schedules, reports, and Contractor's construction schedule.
 - 5. Operation and maintenance data.
 - 6. Project record documents such as Drawings, record Specifications, and record Product Data.
 - 7. Demonstration and training submittals, such as video recordings of demonstration of equipment and training of Owner's personnel.

1.3 DEFINITIONS

- A. Contractor: Refers to an entity in direct Contract with the Owner to perform the Work of the Contract. Contractor shall review and approve product submittals.
- B. Product Submittals: In general, Product Submittals show characteristics of the proposed construction in one of the following forms:
 - 1. Shop Drawings: Drawings, diagrams, schedules and other data specially prepared for the Work by the Contractor or a Subcontractor, Sub-subcontractor, manufacturer, supplier, or distributor to illustrate some portion of the Work.
 - 2. Product Data: Illustrations, standard schedules, performance charts, color charts, instructions, brochures, diagrams, and other information furnished by the Contractor to illustrate materials or equipment for some portion of the Work.
 - a. Product Data does not include Material Safety Data Sheets. Do not submit MSDS. They will be returned without review.
 - 3. Samples: Physical examples that illustrate materials, equipment, or workmanship and establish standards by which the Work will be judged.
- C. Action Submittals: Written and graphic information and physical samples that require Architect's responsive action. Action submittals are those submittals indicated in individual Specification Sections as action submittals.

- D. Informational Submittals: Written and graphic information and physical samples that do not require Architect's responsive action. Submittals may be rejected for not complying with requirements. Informational submittals are those submittals indicated in individual Specification Sections as informational submittals.
- E. File Transfer Protocol (FTP): Communications protocol that enables transfer of files to and from another computer over a network and that serves as the basis for standard Internet protocols. An FTP site is a portion of a network located outside of network firewalls within which internal and external users are able to access files.
- F. Portable Document Format (PDF): An open standard file format licensed by Adobe Systems used for representing documents in a device-independent and display resolution-independent fixed-layout document format.

1.4 SUBMITTALS SCHEDULE

- A. Submit a schedule of submittals, arranged in chronological order by dates as required by construction schedule. For action submittals, allow for time required for review, ordering, manufacturing, fabrication, and delivery when establishing dates. Include additional time required for making corrections or modifications to submittals noted by the Architect and additional time for handling and reviewing submittals required by those corrections. Note that submittal schedule is a separate document required in addition to the construction schedule.
 - 1. Submit the Submittals Schedule for information.
- B. Submit all required types of submittals for each product together. For example: Shop Drawings will not be reviewed when related Samples, Product Data, and test reports have not been submitted.
- C. Coordinate submittal schedule with list of subcontracts, the schedule of values, Contractor's construction schedule, and proposed products list.
- D. Initial Submittal: Submit initial Submittals Schedule not more than 7 days after receipt of reviewed Proposed Products List, or concurrently with start-up construction schedule. Include submittals required during the first 60 days of construction. List those submittals required to maintain orderly progress of the Work and those required early because of long lead time for manufacture or fabrication.
- E. Submit revised submittal schedule to reflect changes in current status and timing for submittals. Final Submittal: Submit concurrently with the first complete submittal of Contractor's construction schedule. Categorize submittal items by type, and designate the respective types by type code. Refer to code definitions below.
- F. "Latest possible date" means the date of receipt by Architect. This date allows for review and return to Contractor in time to meet the construction schedule.

Type	Code Explanation
SD	Shop Drawings
PD	Product Data

Type	Code Explanation
S	Sample
DC	Design calculations
L	Letter
SoC	Statement of Compliance
Cer	Certificate/Certification
Q	Qualifications statement (such as for Contractor, fabricator, or erector.)
SC	Sample construction (such as mock-up or sample installation.)
Inl	Installation instructions
AT	Acceptance Test
Opl	Operating instructions
Mal	Maintenance instructions
MAA	Maintenance agreement
MaM	Maintenance materials
Rcp	Receipt (such as for keys, tools, and detachable parts, including delivery tickets.
RD	Record Documents
SW	Special Warranty
TR	Test Report

1.5 GENERAL SUBMITTAL PROVISIONS

- A. Requirements specified for submittals are intended to provide efficient handling, while permitting review responsibilities to be carried out.
- B. Architect will accept submittals only from the Contractor. Only items specified to be submitted will be accepted.
- C. Bind submittals in a manner suitable for 215 x 275-mm (8-1/2 x 11-inch) file folder storage, except where doing so is not workable.
- D. Transmit submittals with all transportation charges prepaid.
- E. Avoidable Resubmittals
 1. The first two reviews of each specified submittal will be processed without cost to the Contractor. After the second review, the Owner may charge the Contractor for the cost of such additional processing, unless the processing results from approved Change Orders causing revisions to previously approved submittals.
- F. MSDS: Do not submit Material Safety Data Sheets. If MSDS are required by the Contract Documents, request clarification of instructions from the Architect.
- G. Review Stamp
 1. Contractor shall purchase one or more rubber stamps of the Review Stamp form shown in the Project Manual in as many copies as Contractor may require.
 2. The Review Stamp form may be reproduced on adhesive-backed transparencies ("sticky-backs"), or electronically embedded on Shop Drawings. An electronic file is available through request to the Architect's Project Manager.
 3. Affix the Review Stamp form to submittals. Refer to "**Affixing Review Stamp**" heading in this Section.
 4. Do not revise Review Stamp wording or format. Change in the size of the stamp shall be approved prior to use.

5. Do not include additional review stamps or notes that contradict the Review Stamp wording.
6. The Contractor shall sign and date each instance of the Review Stamp, providing evidence that Contractor has reviewed the submittal and fulfilled contractual requirements for verification and coordination. The Contractor shall address all items within the Contractor Action area of the Stamp.

1.6 GENERAL SUBMITTAL PROCEDURES

- A. General: Prepare and submit submittals required by individual Specification Sections.
- B. Before preparing the initial submittal of each type, request the Architect's direction regarding format.
- C. Hardcopy/electronic Submittal Requirements: The Specifications are based on submittal of hardcopy documents. Requirements shall apply to submittals made through electronic means, except as necessary to accommodate and use the benefits of electronic document processing. The basic intent will be that, electronic documents, if printed, shall comply with the respective requirements for hardcopy. Specific details of submittals will be subject to mutually agreed procedures.
- D. Submittals shall be performed electronically.
 1. Post electronic submittals as PDF electronic files directly to Architect's FTP site specifically established for Project.
 2. Submit electronic submittals via email as PDF electronic files.
 3. Architect will return annotated file. Annotate and retain one copy of file as an electronic Project record document file.
 4. Provide a digital signature with digital certificate on electronically-submitted certificates and certifications where indicated.
- E. Closeout Submittals and Maintenance Material Submittals: Comply with requirements specified in Division 01 section governing closeout procedures.
- F. Certificates and Certifications Submittals: Provide a statement that includes signature of entity responsible for preparing certification. Certificates and certifications shall be signed by an officer or other individual authorized to sign documents on behalf of that entity.
- G. Where notarized statement is required, provide a notarized statement on original paper copy certificates and certifications where indicated.
- H. Test and Inspection Reports Submittals: Comply with requirements specified in Division 01 section governing quality requirements.
- I. Schedule of Tests and Inspections: Comply with requirements specified in Division 01 section governing quality requirements.
- J. Preconstruction Test Reports: Submit reports written by a qualified testing agency, on testing agency's standard form, indicating and interpreting results of tests performed before installation of product, for compliance with performance requirements in the Contract Documents.

- K. Compatibility Test Reports: Submit reports written by a qualified testing agency, on testing agency's standard form, indicating and interpreting results of compatibility tests performed before installation of product. Include written recommendations for primers and substrate preparation needed for adhesion.
- L. Field Test Reports: Submit reports indicating and interpreting results of field tests performed either during installation of product or after product is installed in its final location, for compliance with requirements in the Contract Documents.
- M. Contractor's Construction Schedule: Comply with requirements specified in Division 01 section governing construction progress documentation.
- N. Application for Payment: Comply with requirements specified in Division 01 section payment procedures.
- O. Schedule of Values: Comply with requirements specified in Division 01 section governing payment procedures.
- P. Subcontract List: Prepare a written summary identifying individuals or firms proposed for each portion of the Work, including those who are to furnish products or equipment fabricated to a special design. Include the following information in tabular form:
 - 1. Name, address, and telephone number of entity performing subcontract or supplying products.
 - 2. Number and title of related Specification Section(s) covered by subcontract.
 - 3. Drawing number and detail references, as appropriate, covered by subcontract.
- Q. Coordination Drawings: Comply with requirements specified in Division 01 section project management and coordination."
- R. Qualification Data: Prepare written information that demonstrates capabilities and experience of firm or person. Include lists of completed projects with project names and addresses, contact information of architects and owners, and other information specified.
- S. Welding Certificates: Prepare written certification that welding procedures and personnel comply with requirements in the Contract Documents. Submit record of Welding Procedure Specification and Procedure Qualification Record on American Welding Society (AWS) forms. Include names of firms and personnel certified.
- T. Installer Certificates: Submit written statements on manufacturer's letterhead certifying that Installer complies with requirements in the Contract Documents and, where required, is authorized by manufacturer for this specific Project.
- U. Manufacturer Certificates: Submit written statements on manufacturer's letterhead certifying that manufacturer complies with requirements in the Contract Documents. Include evidence of manufacturing experience where required.
- V. Product Certificates: Submit written statements on manufacturer's letterhead certifying that product complies with requirements in the Contract Documents.
- W. Material Certificates: Submit written statements on manufacturer's letterhead certifying that material complies with requirements in the Contract Documents.

- X. Material Test Reports: Submit reports written by a qualified testing agency, on testing agency's standard form, indicating and interpreting test results of material for compliance with requirements in the Contract Documents.
 - Y. Product Test Reports: Submit written reports indicating current product produced by manufacturer complies with requirements in the Contract Documents. Base reports on evaluation of tests performed by manufacturer and witnessed by a qualified testing agency, or on comprehensive tests performed by a qualified testing agency.
 - Z. Research Reports: Submit written evidence, from a model code organization acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction, that product complies with building code in effect for Project. Include the following information:
 - 1. Name of evaluation organization.
 - 2. Date of evaluation.
 - 3. Time period when report is in effect.
 - 4. Product and manufacturers' names.
 - 5. Description of product.
 - 6. Test procedures and results.
 - 7. Limitations of use.
- AA.Maintenance Data: Comply with requirements specified in Division 01 Section governing operation and maintenance data.

1.7 PRODUCT SUBMITTAL ADMINISTRATIVE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Architect's Digital Data Files:
 - 1. With the Owner's concurrence, electronic copies of files used to create the Contract Drawings will be provided by Architect for Contractor's use in preparing submittals, subject to the Architect's electronic file transfer agreement. The Contractor shall expect, and shall so agree, to execute and deliver the Architect's agreement before the transfer of such Instruments of Service.
 - 2. Request the Architect's electronic file transfer agreement form. Submit the request for file transfer directly to the Architect. Include the executed agreement, and a list of documents requested, as identified in the Contract Documents.
 - 3. The files will not be identical to the Contract Drawings. Prior to requesting files, discuss with the Architect how the files will differ from the Contract Documents, and related limitations, such as which Drawings will not be represented, the file format, what information will be included, and method of transmittal.
- B. Coordination: Coordinate preparation and processing of submittals with performance of construction activities.
 - 1. Coordinate each submittal with fabrication, purchasing, testing, delivery, other submittals, and related activities that require sequential activity.
 - 2. Submit all submittal items required for each Specification Section concurrently unless partial submittals for portions of the Work are indicated on approved submittal schedule.
 - 3. Submit action submittals and informational submittals required by the same Specification Section as separate packages under separate transmittals.
 - 4. Coordinate transmittal of different types of submittals for related parts of the Work so processing will not be delayed because of need to review submittals concurrently for coordination.
 - a. The right is reserved to withhold action on a submittal requiring coordination with other submittals until related submittals are received.

- C. Processing Time: Allow time for submittal review, including time for resubmittals. Time for review shall commence on Architect's receipt of submittal. No extension of the Contract Time will be authorized because of failure to transmit submittals enough in advance of the Work to permit processing, including resubmittals.
1. Initial Review: Normally, allow not less than 10 working days for initial review of each submittal. Allow additional time if coordination with other submittals is required.
 2. When a large volume of submittal materials is scheduled, additional review time may be required. Similarly, a particular submittal may require review completion in less than the agreed normal time. Due to variations in submittal volume and processing needs, agreed review time is not intended to apply to extreme conditions.
 3. Resubmittal Review: Allow 10 working days for review of each resubmittal.
 4. Sequential Review: Where sequential review of submittals by Architect's consultants, Owner, or other parties is indicated, allow 15 working days for initial review of each submittal.
- D. Maintain at the Project Site ready access to the latest reviewed Shop Drawings and Product Data, and one set of samples.

1.8 PREPARING PRODUCT SUBMITTALS

- A. Title Block for Product Submittals
1. Shop Drawings, the cover sheets for Product Data, and the labels for Samples shall each have an identifying title block containing:
 - a. Project title.
 - b. Architect's name, Project Number, and Contract Package title.
 - c. Brief description of submittal item matching the description on the Submittal Form.
 - d. Contractor's name and project or contract number.
 - e. Name and phone number of manufacturer, supplier, subcontractor, or other such organization furnishing the submittal to the Contractor.
- B. Shop Drawings: Prepare Project-specific information, drawn accurately to scale. Do not base Shop Drawings on reproductions of the Contract Documents or standard printed data, unless submittal based on Architect's digital data drawing files is otherwise permitted.
1. Preparation: Fully illustrate requirements in the Contract Documents. Include the following information, as applicable:
 - a. Identification of products.
 - b. Schedules.
 - c. Compliance with specified standards.
 - d. Notation of coordination requirements.
 - e. Notation of dimensions established by field measurement.
 - f. Relationship and attachment to adjoining construction clearly indicated.
 - g. Seal and signature of professional engineer if specified.
 2. Sheet Size: Except for templates, patterns, and similar full-size drawings, submit Shop Drawings on sheets at least 8-1/2 by 11 inches (215 by 280 mm), but no larger than 30 by 42 inches (750 by 1067 mm).
 3. Submit Shop Drawings in the following format:
 - a. PDF electronic file.
 4. Each sheet of the same item or system shall be uniform in size and numbered consecutively.

5. Each sheet shall contain the title block specified below plus an unobstructed space at the right side or bottom, of size not less than 150 x 200 mm (6 by 8 inches) for submittal review stamps and notations.
6. Include the Review Stamp to each sheet.
7. Dimensions on Shop Drawings shall be the same system of measure (i.e., metric or inch-pound) as on the Contract Drawings.

C. Product Data

1. Submit the manufacturer's Product Data, 3 copies of each submittal item. Bind the material to form identical bound copies. Attach to each a 215 x 275-mm (8-1/2 x 11-inch) cover sheet containing the title block specified below plus an unobstructed space for submittal review stamps and notations.
2. The Architect will return one copy.
3. If the Review Stamp cannot be placed on the submittal item without obstructing information, affix the Review Stamp to a separate piece of paper for that item, same size as cover sheet.
4. Where the publication displays more products than the product intended to be submitted, prominently mark to indicate the exact product and product options and accessories being submitted, and strike-out non-applicable information.
 - a. Mark where selections are to be made.
 - b. Tailor large catalogs so that excessive unrelated products are not included.
5. To highlight and mark-up Product Data information, use bold markings that will be easily seen after photocopying. Do not use highlighter, pencil, or color.
6. Clearly convey the differences between similar products included in the submittal.
 - a. Clearly highlight information that differs for different sizes or grades.
7. Correlate Product Data with Contract Documents:
 - a. Where the Contract Documents include designations such as types or marks, mark Product Data with these designations and include them on the Submittal Form. For example: glass types; fixture item numbers.
 - b. Clearly highlight information on Product Data that shows compliance with specified requirements. For example: manufacturer (not supplier, distributor, etc.); model number; rating; performance characteristics.
8. If multiple manufacturers or products are being submitted for similar items, include manufacturer or product name in separate line item descriptions on the Submittal Form. Don't use distributor or other supplier names other than manufacturer.
9. Dimensioning on Product Data shall be the same system of measure (metric vs. inch-pound) as on the Contract Drawings. If preprinted catalogues display only the system not used in the Contract Drawings, mark-up the Product Data with the other system's dimensions.

D. Samples

1. Submit Samples in triplicate, except where different number is specified, with identifying labels firmly attached.
 - a. Labels shall be of a size to contain the title block specified below plus unobstructed space for submittals review stamps and notations.
 - b. Each sample shall display, as a minimum, the Architect's project number, and the submittal and item numbers. Where Sample size does not permit the full title block and Review Stamp without obstructing information, provide a separate sheet of paper, 215 x 275-mm (8-1/2 x 11-inch), securely attached to each sample (or sample set), with the Review Stamp affixed.
 - c. The Architect will retain one sample or sample set and return the others.
 - d. Maintain at least one sample or sample set at the site.

2. Sample Sets Showing Range of Variation: Where variations are unavoidable due to nature of the materials, submit sets of samples of not less than three units showing extremes and middle of range. Attach samples in sets together unless doing so is not reasonably practical.
 3. Recording of Sample Installation: Note and preserve the on-site indicators of each area constituting a sample installation, but remove indicators at final clean-up of Project. Use normal submittal form and process to provide record of sample.
 4. When color, texture, or pattern is specified by naming a particular manufacturer and style, include one sample of the specified product for comparison if another product is submitted.
- E. Submittal Compliance Form
1. Fill in the information required for Division 01 Document "Submittal Compliance Form" and include as a line item on the Submittal Cover Sheet for each applicable Submittal.
 2. Upon receipt, the Architect will complete the form in the space below "Architect Action" and indicate the Action on the Submittal Cover Sheet.
 3. Procedures and processing time are the same as indicated in this Section.

1.9 AFFIXING REVIEW STAMP

- A. Separate Line Items: Affix an image of the Review Stamp to each separately-reviewable item of the submittal package. For example:
1. On each separate Shop Drawing sheet, affix a Review Stamp image.
 2. For each separate item appearing on a Contract Document schedule, affix a separate Review Stamp image. For example: lighting fixture; plumbing fixture.
 3. For each separate type of a product identified for the specified item, affix a separate Review Stamp image. For example, glass type; masonry unit type; metal panel type.
- B. When affixed, the Review Stamp shall not obscure information contained in the submittal.
- C. Fill in name of Contractor and Contractor's project or contract number, if not already entered on stamp.
- D. In the section of the stamp titled "Contractor Action," fill in the following information:
1. Section number of Specification Section for which submittal is being made, and Paragraph number of specific submittal requirement within Section. Do not include items from more than one Specification Section on one form.
 2. Submittal number: Refer to Submittal Form Instructions for submittal numbering.
 3. Item number as shown on the Submittal Form.
 4. Date submitted by Contractor.
 5. Mark to signify whether item is Shop Drawing, Product Data, or Sample, or, if 'Other,' enter descriptive words on the blank line.
 6. Signature of authorized representative of the Contractor who has performed the Contractor's review and approval of the submittal item, and the date.

1.10 DELEGATED-DESIGN SERVICES

- A. Design Data: Prepare and submit written and graphic information, including, but not limited to, performance and design criteria, list of applicable codes and regulations, and calculations. Include list of assumptions and other performance and design

criteria and a summary of loads. Include load diagrams if applicable. Provide name and version of software, if any, used for calculations. Include page numbers.

- B. Performance and Design Criteria: Where professional design services or certifications by a design professional are specifically required of Contractor by the Contract Documents, provide products and systems complying with specific performance and design criteria indicated.
 - 1. If criteria indicated are not sufficient to perform services or certification required, submit a written request for additional information to Architect.
- C. Delegated-Design Services Certification: In addition to Shop Drawings, Product Data, and other required submittals, submit digitally-signed PDF electronic file and three paper copies of certificate, signed and sealed by the responsible design professional licensed to practice in the state of the project, for each product and system specifically assigned to Contractor to be designed or certified by a design professional.
 - 1. Indicate that products and systems comply with performance and design criteria in the Contract Documents. Include list of codes, loads, and other factors used in performing these services.

1.11 ARCHITECT REVIEW

- A. General: Architect will not review submittals that do not display Contractor's signature indicating that Contractor has reviewed submittal and that Contractor affirms that it is complete and meets submittal requirements.
- B. Partial submittals prepared for a portion of the Work will be reviewed when use of partial submittals has received prior approval from Architect.
- C. Incomplete submittals are not acceptable, will be considered nonresponsive, and will be returned without review.
- D. Informational Submittals: Architect's staff and consultants will review the submittal and will not return it, or will return it if it does not comply with requirements. Architect will forward each submittal to appropriate party.
- E. Action Submittals: Architect's staff and consultants will review the submittals, and mark the Review Stamp on each submittal item with an action code. When more than one action code is assigned to the item, the most restrictive designation marked on the stamp will govern what next shall be done with the item. The code meanings are described below.
- F. Action Codes Permitting Use
 - 1. When an action code permitting use is assigned to a submittal, it does not authorize work that does not comply with the requirements of the Contract Documents. Acceptance of the Work will depend on compliance.
 - 2. Code AP – Approved: The Work covered by the submittal item may proceed.
 - 3. Code AN – Approved as Noted: The Work covered by the submittal item may proceed, provided it complies with the Architect's notations and Contract Document requirements.
 - 4. Code AN-R - Approved as Noted - Resubmit: Do not deliver or install the related work until the resubmittal has received Code AP or AN. However, fabrication and other off-site work covered by the submittal item may proceed, at the Contractor's

risk, provided it complies with the Architect's notations and Contract Document requirements.

G. Action Code Prohibiting Use

1. Action Code REJ – Not Approved: Work covered by submittal item, including purchasing, fabrication, delivery, and other activity, shall not proceed. Revise the submittal item or prepare new item in accordance with Architect's notations. Resubmit corrected or new item without delay; do not permit submittal items marked "Not Approved" to be used. Work incorporating such items will be rejected.

H. Action Code for Items Not Required

1. Action Code X – Not Requested by Contract Documents: Submittal item is not called for by Contract Documents and is being returned unreviewed by Architect except to extent necessary to determine its status.

1.12 SUBMITTAL FORM INSTRUCTIONS

A. General: Note Submittal Form is also available as MS Word file in electronic format for use as template. It is recommended, to expedite submittal review, that electronic form be used to generate hardcopy Submittal Form to accompany submittal; email exact copy as early as possible.

1. Submittal Numbering (at top right of form): See below.
2. Routing: Purpose of Routing section is to record dates when recipients receive and forward submittal.
3. Contact Information: Fill out completely with Project information.

B. Submittal Definition

1. Each submittal consists of items from only ONE Specifications section.
2. Complete Submittal: If ALL the items required by the Specifications section are listed on one Submittal Form (including continuation sheet), it is a complete submittal.
3. Partial Submittals: If it is necessary to divide the required items of a given Specifications section into two or more submittals to meet schedule or handling requirements, the separate submittals are partial submittals. All partial submittals have the same submittal number, and are differentiated by sequential P-numbers (see below).
4. All items in each submittal, whether complete or partial, will be processed together: Individual items will not be 'broken out' for special handling. Arrange submittals accordingly.

C. Submittal Numbering

1. Number submittals as described below to permit tracking.
2. **Submittal Number:** Assign permanent, five-digit number to each submittal. Begin with 00001 and advance number by one for each new submittal throughout Project. Do not use same submittal number for more than one submittal package, that is, for submittals from more than one section.
3. **P-Number for Partial Submittals:** Number each partial submittal in P space. Begin with 1 and advance number by one for each subsequent partial. If submittal is complete submittal, leave P space blank.
4. **R-Number for Re-submittals:** Number each re-submittal in R space. Begin with 1 for first re-submittal and advance the number by one for each subsequent resubmittal. Make no entry for initial submittal.

5. Note that the form has a location for Contractor to use a separate numbering system.
- D. **Item Kind:** Identify each submittal item using the type code specified for submittal schedule entries.
- E. **Shop Drawings:** Show number of opaque copies. Include description of each drawing, matching description on drawing itself.
- F. **Description:** Provide a brief, clear generic description of each line item, using the Drawings or Specifications as a guide. If more than one manufacturer's model numbers are included in the submittal package, indicate the model numbers in parentheses in the affected line items. Do not list distributors or suppliers other than the manufacturer.
- G. **Resubmittals:** In addition to providing the R-number, enter the information using the same line item number as the original submittal package. Doing so will avoid delay in handling the resubmittal package. Resubmit only those items that previously received Code No. AN-R or REJ.

1.13 OBTAINING AND USING SUBMITTAL FORM

- A. **Obtain Form** through Architect's Construction Administrator.
 1. During Project start-up, discuss changes to Form that can be made to customize template to Project e.g., routing, contact names, project numbers, etc. and reduce entry of repetitious information.
 2. Note that Form will be supplied in 1-sheet hardcopy or electronic file, each with continuation sheet for use with larger submittals.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS (not used)

PART 3 - EXECUTION (not used)

END OF SECTION 01 3300

SECTION 01 3553 - SECURITY PROCEDURES

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 SECTION INCLUDES

- A. Security measures including entry control, personnel identification and miscellaneous restrictions.

1.2 RELATED REQUIREMENTS

- A. Section 01 1000 - Summary: use of premises and occupancy.
- B. Section 01 5100 - Temporary Utilities: temporary lighting.

1.3 SECURITY PROGRAM

- A. Protect Work from theft, vandalism, and unauthorized entry.
- B. Initiate program at project mobilization.
- C. Maintain program throughout construction period until Substantial Completion.
- D. Coordinate with Owner's security program if applicable.

1.4 ENTRY CONTROL

- A. Restrict entrance of persons and vehicles into Project site and existing facilities.
- B. Allow entrance only to authorized persons with proper identification.
- C. Maintain log of workers and visitors, make available to Owner on request.
- D. Contractor shall control entrance of persons and vehicles related to Owner's operations.

1.5 PERSONNEL IDENTIFICATION

- A. Provide project orientation decals to each person authorized to enter premises.
- B. Maintain a list of accredited persons, submit copy to Owner on request.

1.6 RESTRICTIONS

- A. Do not allow cameras on site or photographs taken except by written approval of Owner, except as required for construction progress documentation or as deemed necessary by CM's project staff.

PART 2 PRODUCTS – (NOT USED)

PART 3 EXECUTION – (NOT USED)

END OF SECTION

SECTION 01 4000 - QUALITY REQUIREMENTS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General Conditions and other Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section includes administrative and procedural requirements for quality assurance and quality control.
- B. Testing and inspecting services are required to verify compliance with requirements specified or indicated. These services do not relieve Contractor of responsibility for compliance with the Contract Document requirements.
 - 1. Specific quality-assurance and -control requirements for individual construction activities are specified in the Sections that specify those activities. Requirements in those Sections may also cover production of standard products.
 - 2. Specified tests, inspections, and related actions do not limit Contractor's other quality-assurance and -control procedures that facilitate compliance with the Contract Document requirements.
 - 3. Requirements for Contractor to provide quality-assurance and -control services required by Architect, Owner, Commissioning Authority, or authorities having jurisdiction are not limited by provisions of this Section.
- C. Related Requirements:
 - 1. Division 01 "Mock-Ups".
 - 2. Divisions 02 through 34 Sections for specific test and inspection requirements.

1.3 DEFINITIONS

- A. Quality-Assurance Services: Activities, actions, and procedures performed before and during execution of the Work to guard against defects and deficiencies and substantiate that proposed construction will comply with requirements.
- B. Quality-Control Services: Tests, inspections, procedures, and related actions during and after execution of the Work to evaluate that actual products incorporated into the Work and completed construction comply with requirements. Services do not include contract enforcement activities performed by Architect.
- C. Preconstruction Testing: Tests and inspections performed specifically for Project before products and materials are incorporated into the Work, to verify performance or compliance with specified criteria.
- D. Product Testing: Tests and inspections that are performed by an NRTL, an NVLAP, or a testing agency qualified to conduct product testing and acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction, to establish product performance and compliance with specified requirements.

- E. Source Quality-Control Testing: Tests and inspections that are performed at the source, e.g., plant, mill, factory, or shop.
- F. Field Quality-Control Testing: Tests and inspections that are performed on-site for installation of the Work and for completed Work.
- G. Testing Agency: An entity engaged to perform specific tests, inspections, or both. Testing laboratory shall mean the same as testing agency.
- H. Installer/Applicator/Erector: Contractor or another entity engaged by Contractor as an employee, Subcontractor, or Sub-subcontractor, to perform a particular construction operation, including installation, erection, application, and similar operations.
 - 1. Use of trade-specific terminology in referring to a trade or entity does not require that certain construction activities be performed by accredited or unionized individuals, or that requirements specified apply exclusively to specific trade(s).
- I. Experienced: When used with an entity or individual, "experienced" means having successfully completed a minimum of five previous projects similar in nature, size, and extent to this Project; being familiar with special requirements indicated; and having complied with requirements of authorities having jurisdiction.

1.4 CONFLICTING REQUIREMENTS

- A. Referenced Standards: If compliance with two or more standards is specified and the standards establish different or conflicting requirements for minimum quantities or quality levels, comply with the most stringent requirement. Refer conflicting requirements that are different, but apparently equal, to Architect for a decision before proceeding.
- B. Minimum Quantity or Quality Levels: The quantity or quality level shown or specified shall be the minimum provided or performed. The actual installation may comply exactly with the minimum quantity or quality specified, or it may exceed the minimum within reasonable limits. To comply with these requirements, indicated numeric values are minimum or maximum, as appropriate, for the context of requirements. Refer uncertainties to Architect for a decision before proceeding.

1.5 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Shop Drawings (as required): For integrated exterior mockups or building areas for testing, provide plans, sections, and elevations, indicating materials and size of mockup construction.
 - 1. Indicate manufacturer and model number of individual components.
 - 2. Provide axonometric drawings for conditions difficult to illustrate in two dimensions.
- B. Sample Construction: Process submittal for field samples as specified for product submittal, for documentation.

1.6 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Testing Agency Qualifications: For testing agencies specified in "Quality Assurance" Article to demonstrate their capabilities and experience, include proof of qualifications in the form of a recent report on the inspection of the testing agency by a recognized authority.
- B. Schedule of Tests and Inspections (as required): Prepare a schedule of tests, inspections, and similar quality-control services required by the Contract Documents. Coordinate and submit concurrently with Contractor's construction schedule. Update as the Work progresses.
 - 1. Distribution: Distribute schedule to Owner, Architect, Commissioning Authority (where applicable), testing agencies, and each party involved in performance of portions of the Work where tests and inspections are required.
- C. Schedule of Tests and Inspections: Prepare in tabular form and include the following:
 - 1. Entity (Owner or CM) financially responsible to provide each test required for the project.
 - 2. Specification Section number and title.
 - 3. Entity responsible for performing tests and inspections.
 - 4. Description of test and inspection.
 - 5. Identification of applicable standards.
 - 6. Identification of test and inspection methods.
 - 7. Number of tests and inspections required.
 - 8. Time schedule or time span for tests and inspections.
 - 9. Requirements for obtaining samples.
 - 10. Unique characteristics of each quality-control service.
- D. The Contractor shall submit the Schedule of Tests and Inspections to the Architect and Owner within 15 working days after date of receipt of notice to proceed and before commencing with any testing of the Work.

1.7 REPORTS AND DOCUMENTS

- A. Test and Inspection Reports: Prepare and submit certified written reports specified in other Sections to the Architect within 7 working days of the test or inspection's completion. Include the following:
 - 1. Date of issue.
 - 2. Project title and number.
 - 3. Name, address, and telephone number of testing agency.
 - 4. Dates and locations of samples and tests or inspections.
 - 5. Names of individuals making tests and inspections.
 - 6. Description of the Work and test and inspection method.
 - 7. Identification of product and Specification Section.
 - 8. Complete test or inspection data.
 - 9. Test and inspection results and an interpretation of test results.
 - 10. Record of temperature and weather conditions at time of sample taking and testing and inspecting.
 - 11. Comments or professional opinion on whether tested or inspected Work complies with the Contract Document requirements.
 - 12. Name and signature of laboratory inspector.
 - 13. Recommendations on retesting and reinspecting.

- B. Manufacturer's Technical Representative's Field Reports (as required): Prepare and submit written information documenting manufacturer's technical representative's tests and field inspections specified in other Sections to the Architect within 7 working days of the field report's completion. Include the following:
 - 1. Name, address, and telephone number of technical representative making report.
 - 2. Statement on condition of substrates and their acceptability for installation of product.
 - 3. Statement that products at Project site comply with requirements.
 - 4. Summary of installation procedures being followed, whether they comply with requirements and, if not, what corrective action was taken.
 - 5. Results of operational and other tests and a statement of whether observed performance complies with requirements.
 - 6. Statement whether conditions, products, and installation will affect warranty.
 - 7. Other required items indicated in individual Specification Sections.

- C. Factory-Authorized Service Representative's Reports (as required): Prepare and submit written information documenting manufacturer's factory-authorized service representative's tests and inspections specified in other Sections to the Architect within 7 working days of the test or inspection's completion. Include the following:
 - 1. Name, address, and telephone number of factory-authorized service representative making report.
 - 2. Statement that equipment complies with requirements.
 - 3. Results of operational and other tests and a statement of whether observed performance complies with requirements.
 - 4. Statement whether conditions, products, and installation will affect warranty.
 - 5. Other required items indicated in individual Specification Sections.

1.8 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. General: Qualifications paragraphs in this article establish the minimum qualification levels required; individual Specification Sections specify additional requirements.

- B. Manufacturer Qualifications: A firm experienced in manufacturing products or systems similar to those indicated for this Project and with a record of successful in-service performance, as well as sufficient production capacity to produce required units.

- C. Fabricator Qualifications: A firm experienced in producing products similar to those indicated for this Project and with a record of successful in-service performance, as well as sufficient production capacity to produce required units.

- D. Installer Qualifications: A firm or individual experienced in installing, erecting, or assembling work similar in material, design, and extent to that indicated for this Project, whose work has resulted in construction with a record of successful in-service performance.

- E. Professional Engineer Qualifications: A professional engineer who is legally qualified to practice in jurisdiction where Project is located and who is experienced in providing engineering services of the kind indicated. Engineering services are defined as those performed for installations of the system, assembly, or product that is similar in material, design, and extent to those indicated for this Project.

- F. Specialists: Certain Specification Sections require that specific construction activities shall be performed by entities who are recognized experts in those operations. Specialists shall satisfy qualification requirements indicated and shall be engaged for the activities indicated.
 - 1. Requirements of authorities having jurisdiction shall supersede requirements for specialists.
- G. Testing Agency Qualifications: An NRTL, an NVLAP, or an independent agency with the experience and capability to conduct testing and inspecting indicated, as documented according to ASTM E 329; and with additional qualifications specified in individual Sections; and, where required by authorities having jurisdiction, that is acceptable to authorities.
 - 1. NRTL: A nationally recognized testing laboratory according to 29 CFR 1910.7.
 - 2. NVLAP: A testing agency accredited according to NIST's National Voluntary Laboratory Accreditation Program.
- H. Manufacturer's Technical Representative Qualifications: An authorized representative of manufacturer who is trained and approved by manufacturer to observe and inspect installation of manufacturer's products that are similar in material, design, and extent to those indicated for this Project.
- I. Factory-Authorized Service Representative Qualifications: An authorized representative of manufacturer who is trained and approved by manufacturer to inspect installation of manufacturer's products that are similar in material, design, and extent to those indicated for this Project.

1.9 QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Owner Responsibilities: Where quality-control services are indicated as Owner's responsibility, Owner will engage a qualified testing agency to perform these services.
 - 1. Owner will furnish Contractor with names, addresses, and telephone numbers of testing agencies engaged and a description of types of testing and inspecting they are engaged to perform within 10 working days after date of Contractor's notice to proceed and before commencing with any testing of the Work.
 - 2. Costs for retesting and reinspecting construction that replaces or is necessitated by work that failed to comply with the Contract Documents will be charged to and paid for by the Contractor.
- B. Contractor Responsibilities: Tests and inspections not explicitly assigned to Owner are the Contractor's responsibility. Perform additional quality-control activities required to verify that the Work complies with requirements, whether specified or not.
 - 1. Unless otherwise indicated, provide quality-control services specified and those required by authorities having jurisdiction. Perform quality-control services required of Contractor by authorities having jurisdiction, whether specified or not.
 - 2. Where services are indicated as Contractor's responsibility, engage a qualified testing agency to perform these quality-control services.
 - a. Contractor shall not employ same entity engaged by Owner, unless agreed to in writing by Owner.
 - b. Contractor shall not pass testing through to subcontractor when it would result in a conflict of interest.
 - 3. Notify testing agencies at least 24 hours in advance of time when Work that requires testing or inspecting will be performed.

4. Where quality-control services are indicated as Contractor's responsibility, submit a certified written report, via email and hard copy, of each quality-control service to the Architect within 48 hours of the service's completion.
 5. Testing and inspecting requested by Contractor and not required by the Contract Documents are the Contractor's responsibility.
 6. Submit additional copies of each written report directly to authorities having jurisdiction, when they so direct.
- C. **Manufacturer's Field Services:** Where indicated, engage a factory-authorized service representative to inspect field-assembled components and equipment installation, including service connections. Report results in writing as specified in Division 01 Section "Submittal Procedures."
- D. **Manufacturer's Technical Services:** Where indicated, engage a manufacturer's technical representative to observe and inspect the Work. Manufacturer's technical representative's services include participation in preinstallation conferences, examination of substrates and conditions, verification of materials, observation of Installer activities, inspection of completed portions of the Work, and submittal of written reports.
- E. **Retesting/Reinspecting:** Regardless of whether original tests or inspections were Contractor's responsibility, provide quality-control services, including retesting and reinspecting, for construction that replaced Work that failed to comply with the Contract Documents.
- F. **Testing Agency Responsibilities:** Cooperate with Architect, Commissioning Authority (if LEED Certification applies) and Contractor in performance of duties. Provide qualified personnel to perform required tests and inspections.
1. Notify Architect, Commissioning Authority, and Contractor promptly of irregularities or deficiencies observed in the Work during performance of its services.
 2. Determine the location from which test samples will be taken and in which in-situ tests are conducted.
 3. Conduct and interpret tests and inspections and state in each report whether tested and inspected work complies with or deviates from requirements.
 4. Submit a certified written report, in duplicate, of each test, inspection, and similar quality-control service through Contractor to the Architect within 5 working days of the test or inspection's completion.
 5. Do not release, revoke, alter, or increase the Contract Document requirements or approve or accept any portion of the Work.
 6. Do not perform any duties of Contractor.
- G. **Associated Services:** Cooperate with agencies performing required tests, inspections, and similar quality-control services, and provide reasonable auxiliary services as requested. Notify agency sufficiently in advance of operations to permit assignment of personnel. Provide the following:
1. Access to the Work.
 2. Incidental labor and facilities necessary to facilitate tests and inspections.
 3. Adequate quantities of representative samples of materials that require testing and inspecting. Assist agency in obtaining samples.
 4. Facilities for storage and field curing of test samples.
 5. Delivery of samples to testing agencies.

6. Preliminary design mix proposed for use for material mixes that require control by testing agency.
 7. Security and protection for samples and for testing and inspecting equipment at Project site.
- H. Coordination: Coordinate sequence of activities to accommodate required quality-assurance and -control services with a minimum of delay and to avoid necessity of removing and replacing construction to accommodate testing and inspecting.
1. Schedule times for tests, inspections, obtaining samples, and similar activities.
- 1.10 SPECIAL TESTS AND INSPECTIONS
- A. Special Tests and Inspections: Owner will engage qualified testing agency special inspector to conduct special tests and inspections required by the Documents and authorities having jurisdiction as responsibility of Owner, and as follows:
1. Verifying that manufacturer maintains detailed fabrication and quality-control procedures and reviews the completeness and adequacy of those procedures to perform the Work.
 2. Notifying Architect and Contractor promptly of irregularities and deficiencies observed in the Work during performance of its services.
 3. Submitting a certified written report of each test, inspection, and similar quality-control service to Architect within 7 working days of the test or inspection's completion with copy to Contractor and to authorities having jurisdiction.
 4. Submitting a final report of special tests and inspections at Substantial Completion, which includes a list of unresolved deficiencies.
 5. Interpreting tests and inspections and stating in each report whether tested and inspected work complies with or deviates from the Contract Documents.
 6. Retesting and reinspecting corrected work.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS (NOT USED)

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 TEST AND INSPECTION LOG

- A. Test and Inspection Log: Prepare a record of tests and inspections. Include the following:
1. Date test or inspection was conducted.
 2. Description of the Work tested or inspected.
 3. Date test or inspection results were transmitted to Architect.
 4. Identification of testing agency or special inspector conducting test or inspection.
- B. Maintain log at Project site. Post changes and revisions as they occur. Provide access to test and inspection log for Architect's, reference during normal working hours. If log is updated, send updated log with the payment application for reference.

3.2 REPAIR AND PROTECTION

- A. General: On completion of testing, inspecting, sample taking, and similar services, repair damaged construction and restore substrates and finishes.
1. Provide materials and comply with installation requirements specified in other Specification Sections or matching existing substrates and finishes. Restore patched areas and extend restoration into adjoining areas with durable seams

that are as invisible as possible. Comply with the Contract Document requirements for cutting and patching in Section 01 7329 Cutting and Patching.

- B. Protect construction exposed by or for quality-control service activities.
- C. Repair and protection are Contractor's responsibility, regardless of the assignment of responsibility for quality-control services.

END OF SECTION

SECTION 01 4200 - DEFINITIONS AND REFERENCE STANDARDS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General Conditions and other Division 1 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 DEFINITIONS

- A. General: Basic Contract definitions are included in the Conditions of the Contract.
- B. Definitions are intended to apply to other sections except as otherwise specifically indicated.

<u>Term</u>	<u>Definition</u>
Approved	When used to convey Architect's action on Contractor's submittals, applications, and requests, "approved" is limited to Architect's duties and responsibilities as stated in the Conditions of the Contract. When relating to submittals, the work covered by the submittal item may proceed.
Approved as Noted	When relating to submittals, the work covered by the submittal item may proceed, provided it complies with the Architect's notations and Contract Document requirements.
As otherwise agreed	Used in relation to items to be determined after Contract by agreement between Owner, Architect, and Contractor, with input from other entities as appropriate.
Certified	Guaranteed in writing over the signature of an authorized representative of the certifying organization.
Delete	To remove something entirely from the Work.
Directed	An instruction by Architect. Other terms including "requested," "authorized," "selected," "required," and "permitted" have the same meaning as "directed."
Furnish	Supply and deliver to Project site, ready for unloading, unpacking, assembly, installation, and similar operations.
Indicated	Requirements expressed by graphic representations or in written form on Drawings, in Specifications, and in other Contract Documents. Other terms including "shown," "noted," "scheduled," and "specified" have the same meaning as "indicated."
Install	Operations at Project site including unloading, temporarily storing, unpacking, assembling, erecting, placing, anchoring, applying, working to dimension, finishing, curing, protecting, cleaning, and similar operations.

N.I.C./NIC	Not in Contract.
Necessary	That which is reasonably necessary to the proper completion of the Work.
Per	In accordance with the requirements of.
Products	Materials, equipment, or systems.
Project Site	Space available for performing construction activities. The extent of Project site is shown on Drawings and may or may not be identical with the description of the land on which Project is to be built.
Provide	Furnish and install, complete and ready for the intended use.
Regulations	Laws, ordinances, statutes, and lawful orders issued by authorities having jurisdiction, and rules, conventions, and agreements within the construction industry that control performance of the Work.
Rejected	When relating to submittals, the work covered by the submittal item is not approved, including purchasing, fabrication, delivery, and any other activities shall not proceed. Revise the submittal item or prepare a new item in accordance with the Architect's notations. Work incorporating such items will be rejected.
Replace	To put something new in place of.
Required	Referring to requirements of the Contract Documents, unless its use clearly implies a different interpretation.
Revise & Resubmit	When relating to submittals, do not deliver or install the related work until the resubmittal has received an approved or approved as noted code. However, fabrication and other off-site work covered by the submittal item may proceed, at the Contractor's risk, provided it complies with the Architect's notations and Contract Documents.
Shown/indicated	Appearing on the Drawings, unless their use clearly implies a different interpretation.
Supply	Same as Furnish

1.3 INDUSTRY STANDARDS

- A. Applicability of Standards: Unless the Contract Documents include more stringent requirements, applicable construction industry standards have the same force and effect as if bound or copied directly into the Contract Documents to the extent referenced. Such standards are made a part of the Contract Documents by reference.
- B. Publication Dates: Comply with standards in effect as of date of the Contract Documents unless otherwise indicated.

- C. Copies of Standards: Each entity engaged in the Work of the Project will be held to be familiar with industry standards applicable to its construction activity. Copies of applicable standards are not bound with the Contract Documents.
 - 1. Where copies of standards are needed to perform a required construction activity, obtain copies directly from publication source.

- D. No Change to Contract Responsibilities: No provision of any reference standard, manual, statute, code or regulation (whether or not specifically incorporated by reference in the Contract Documents) shall be effective to change the duties and responsibilities of the Owner, Contractor, Construction Manager, Architect, Architect's consultants, or officers, directors, agents or employees of any of them from those set forth in the Contract Documents, nor shall it be effective to assign to the Architect, Architect's consultants, or officers, directors, agents or employees of any of them any duty or authority to supervise or direct the furnishing or performance of the Work or any duty or authority to undertake responsibility contrary to the Contract provisions.

1.4 ABBREVIATIONS AND ACRONYMS

- A. Industry Organizations: Where abbreviations and acronyms are used in Specifications or other Contract Documents, they shall mean the recognized name of the entities indicated in Thomson Gale's "Encyclopedia of Associations" or in Columbia Books' "National Trade & Professional Associations of the U.S."

PART 2 - PRODUCTS (Not Used)

PART 3 - EXECUTION (Not Used)

END OF SECTION

SECTION 01 5000 – TEMPORARY FACILITIES AND CONTROLS

PART 1 – GENERAL

1.1 SECTION INCLUDES

- A. Temporary Utilities: Electricity, lighting, heat, cooling, and water.
- B. Temporary Telecommunications Services
- C. Temporary Sanitary Facilities
- D. Barriers
- E. Project Identification
- F. Removal of Utilities, Facilities, and Controls

1.2 GENERAL

- A. In addition to specific responsibilities for temporary facilities and controls indicated in this Section, each contractor is responsible for the following:
 - 1. Installation, operation, maintenance, and removal of each temporary facility necessary for its own normal construction activity, and costs and use charges associated with each facility, except as otherwise provided for in this Section.
 - 2. Plug-in electric power cords and extension cords, supplementary plug-in task lighting, and special lighting necessary exclusively for its own activities.
 - 3. Its own storage and fabrication sheds.
 - 4. Temporary enclosures for its own construction activities.
 - 5. Staging and scaffolding for its own construction activities.
 - 6. General hoisting facilities for its own construction activities, up to 2 tons.
 - 7. Progress cleaning of work areas affected by its operations on a daily basis.
 - 8. Secure lockup of its own tools, materials, and equipment.
 - 9. Construction aids and miscellaneous services and facilities necessary exclusively for its own construction activities.
- B. Unless noted otherwise, all temporary facilities, utilities, barriers, and project identification to be Contractor provided and Owner paid as required for construction operations.

1.3 TEMPORARY ELECTRICITY

- A. Cost: Contractor shall provide and Owner shall pay for service required for construction operations, with branch wiring and distribution boxes located to allow service and lighting by means of construction-type power cords.
- B. Connect to Owner's existing power service if available.
 - 1. Do not disrupt Owner's need for continuous service if existing power is utilized.
 - 2. Exercise measures to conserve energy.
 - 3. Provide separate metering to quantify amount of energy used for construction.
- C. Complement existing power service capacity and characteristics as required.
- D. Provide power outlets for construction operations, with branch wiring and distribution boxes located at each floor. Provide flexible power cords as required.
- E. Provide main service disconnect, meter and over-current protection at convenient location.
- F. Permanent convenience receptacles may be utilized during construction.
- G. Provide adequate distribution equipment, wiring, and outlets to provide single phase branch circuits for power and lighting.

1.4 TEMPORARY LIGHTING FOR CONSTRUCTION PURPOSES

- A. Provide and maintain adequate lighting for construction operations to achieve a minimum lighting level of equivalent to 2 watt/sq ft. based upon incandescent.
- B. Provide branch wiring from power source to distribution boxes with lighting conductors, pigtails, and lamps as required.
- C. Maintain lighting and provide routine repairs.

1.5 TEMPORARY HEATING

- A. Provide heating devices and heat as needed to maintain specified conditions for construction operations.
- B. Maintain minimum ambient temperature of 50 degrees F in enclosed areas where construction is in progress, unless indicated otherwise in specifications.

1.6 TEMPORARY COOLING

- A. Provide cooling devices and cooling as needed to maintain specified conditions for construction operations.
- B. Maintain maximum ambient temperature of 80 degrees F in enclosed areas where construction is in progress, unless indicated otherwise in specifications.

1.7 TEMPORARY WATER SERVICE

- A. Provide and maintain suitable quality water service for construction operations at time of project mobilization.
- B. Connect to existing water source.
 - 1. Exercise measures to conserve water.
 - 2. Provide separate metering.

1.8 TELECOMMUNICATIONS SERVICES

- A. Provide and maintain telecommunications services to field office at time of project mobilization.
- B. Provide equivalent equipment and connections for Owner's field office if requested by the Owner.
- C. Telecommunications services shall include:
 - 1. Windows-based personal computer dedicated to project telecommunications, with necessary software and laser printer.
 - 2. Telephone Lines: One line minimum, land line or dedicated cell phone acceptable.
 - 3. Internet Connections: Minimum of one; DSL modem or faster.
 - 4. Facsimile Service: Minimum of one dedicated fax machine/printer, with dedicated phone line or a Fax-to-email software.

1.9 TEMPORARY SANITARY FACILITIES

- A. Provide and maintain required facilities and enclosures. Provide at time of project mobilization.
- B. Maintain the provided facilities daily in a clean and sanitary condition.
- C. At the end of construction, return all facilities to the same or better condition as originally found.

1.10 BARRIERS

- A. Provide barriers to prevent unauthorized entry to construction areas, to prevent access to areas that could be hazardous to workers or the public, to allow for owner's use of site and to protect existing facilities and adjacent properties from damage from construction operations and demolition if required.
- B. Provide barricades and covered walkways required by governing authorities for public rights-of-way and for public access to existing building.
- C. Provide protection for plants designated to remain. Replace damaged plants.
- D. Protect non-owned vehicular traffic, stored materials, site, and structures from damage.

1.11 PROJECT IDENTIFICATION

- A. If required by the Owner, provide project identification sign of design and construction to be indicated by the Architect.
- B. Erect on-site at location indicated by the Architect.
- C. No other signs are allowed without Owner permission except those required by law.

1.12 REMOVAL OF UTILITIES, FACILITIES, AND CONTROLS

- A. Remove temporary utilities, equipment, facilities, materials, prior to Substantial Completion inspection.
- B. Remove underground installations to a minimum depth of 2 feet. Grade site as indicated.
- C. Clean and repair damage caused by installation or use of temporary work.
- D. Restore existing facilities used during construction to original condition.
- E. Restore new permanent facilities used during construction to specified condition.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS (NOT USED)

PART 3 - EXECUTION (NOT USED)

END OF SECTION

SECTION 01 5500 - VEHICULAR ACCESS AND PARKING

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 SECTION INCLUDES

- A. Access roads.
- B. Parking.
- C. New permanent pavements.
- D. Construction parking control.
- E. Flag persons.
- F. Haul routes.
- G. Maintenance.
- H. Removal, repair.
- J. Mud from site vehicles.

1.2 RELATED REQUIREMENTS

- A. Section 01 1000 - Summary: access to site, work sequence, and occupancy.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 MATERIALS

- A. Temporary Construction: Contractor's option.
- B. Materials for Permanent Construction: As specified in product specification sections or in construction drawings.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 PREPARATION

- A. Clear areas, provide surface and storm drainage of road, parking, area premises, and adjacent areas.

3.2 ACCESS ROADS

- A. Tracked vehicles not allowed on paved areas.
- B. Location as approved by Architect and Owner.
- C. Provide unimpeded access for emergency vehicles. Maintain 20 foot width driveways with turning space between and around combustible materials.
- D. Provide and maintain access to fire hydrants free of obstructions.

3.3 PARKING

- A. Use of designated areas of existing parking facilities by construction personnel to be coordinated by Contractor with Architect and Owner.
- B. Do not allow heavy vehicles or construction equipment in parking areas.
- C. Arrange for temporary parking areas to accommodate use of construction personnel.
- D. When site space is not adequate, provide additional off-site parking.
- E. Locate as approved by Owner.

3.4 NEW PERMANENT PAVEMENTS

- A. Prior to Substantial Completion the base for permanent roads and parking areas may be used for construction traffic.
- B. Avoid traffic loading beyond paving design capacity.

3.5 CONSTRUCTION PARKING CONTROL

- A. Control vehicular parking to prevent interference with public traffic and parking, access by emergency vehicles, and Owner's operations.
- B. Monitor parking of construction personnel's vehicles in existing facilities. Maintain vehicular access to and through parking areas.
- C. Prevent parking on or adjacent to access roads or in non-designated areas.

3.6 FLAG PERSONS

- A. Provide trained and equipped flag persons to regulate traffic when construction operations or traffic encroach on public traffic lanes.

3.7 HAUL ROUTES

- A. Confine construction traffic to designated haul routes.
- B. Provide traffic control at critical areas of haul routes to regulate traffic, to minimize interference with public traffic.

3.8 MAINTENANCE

- A. Maintain traffic and parking areas in a sound condition free of excavated material, construction equipment, Products, mud, snow, ice, and excessive dust.
- B. Maintain existing paved areas used for construction; promptly repair breaks, potholes, low areas, standing water, and other deficiencies, to maintain paving and drainage in original, or specified, condition.

3.9 REMOVAL, REPAIR

- A. Repair existing facilities damaged by use, to original condition.
- B. Repair damage caused by installation to specified condition.

3.10 MUD FROM SITE VEHICLES

- A. Provide means of removing mud from vehicle wheels before entering streets.

END OF SECTION

SECTION 01 7123 – CONTRACTOR CONSTRUCTION STAKING

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 SUMMARY

- A. This section consists of furnishing labor, equipment, and material to provide construction layout methods and materials and the maintenance of these for the proper execution and inspection of the work.

PART 2 – PRODUCTS (NOT USED)

PART 3 – EXECUTION

3.1 STAKING

- A. Identify and verify the bench marks.
- B. Notify the Architect if bench marks established by the Owner have been destroyed, damaged, or removed previous to the beginning of construction.
- C. Stake the limits for construction as shown on plans.
 - 1. Construction boundaries.
 - 2. Protected areas.
 - 3. Property lines.
 - 4. Right-of-Way lines.
 - 5. Easements, if the work is restricted by the easement.
- D. Stake the line and grade of construction features.
- E. Provide qualified staff with appropriate equipment to perform construction layout work.
- F. Notify the Architect of plan errors initially by verbal communication followed by written communication (letter on company letterhead, Request for Interpretation form, or email). All communication shall go through the approved chain of communication.
 - 1. Architect will evaluate the claimed plan error.
 - 2. Architect will issue a clarification if there is no error.
 - 3. If there is a plan error, the Architect shall arrange for special surveys to determine the corrective action for the plan error.

NOTE: Any surveying or checking of the layout by the Architect or Owner's surveyor and the acceptance of all or any part of it shall not relieve the Contractor of the responsibility to secure the proper line and grade of the construction features shown in the plans and/or corrective direction provided in writing by the Engineer.

- 4. Architect will provide written direction to remedy the error if there is a plan error.

END OF SECTION

SECTION - 01 7329 CUTTING AND PATCHING

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 SUMMARY

- A. Section includes procedural requirements for cutting and patching.

1.2 DEFINITIONS

- A. Cutting: Removal of existing construction necessary to permit installation or performance of other Work.
- B. Patching: Fitting and repair work required to restore surfaces to original conditions after installation of other Work.

1.3 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. General: Contractor shall take reasonable care prior to all cutting and drilling in order to minimize unintended damage to concealed conduits, cables, pipes, reinforcing steel, etc. In circumstances where the absence of such concealed elements is not established conclusively, utilize detection and mapping technology, e.g., X-ray or Sub-surface Interface Radar (SIR), to locate any such elements that may be present before proceeding with the cutting or drilling work.
- B. Structural Elements: Do not cut and patch structural elements in a manner that could change their load-carrying capacity or load-deflection ratio.
- C. Operational Elements: Do not cut and patch operating elements and related components in a manner that results in reducing their capacity to perform as intended or that results in increased maintenance or decreased operational life or safety. Operational Elements include the following:
 - 1. Air or smoke barriers.
 - 2. Fire-protection systems.
 - 3. Control systems.
 - 4. Communication systems.
 - 5. Conveying systems.
 - 6. Electrical wiring systems.
 - 7. Operating systems of special construction in Division 13 Sections.
- D. Miscellaneous Elements: Do not cut and patch elements or related components in a manner that could change their load-carrying capacity, that results in reducing their capacity to perform as intended, or that results in increased maintenance or decreased operational life or safety. Miscellaneous Elements include the following:
 - 1. Water, moisture, or vapor barriers.
 - 2. Membranes and flashings.

3. Exterior curtain-wall construction.
4. Equipment supports.
5. Piping, ductwork, vessels, and equipment.
6. Noise- and vibration-control elements and systems.

- E. Visual Requirements: Do not cut and patch construction in a manner that results in visual evidence of cutting and patching. Do not cut and patch construction exposed on the exterior or in occupied spaces in a manner that would, in Architect's opinion, reduce the building's aesthetic qualities. Remove and replace construction that has been cut and patched in a visually unsatisfactory manner.

1.4 WARRANTY

- A. Existing Warranties: Remove, replace, patch, and repair materials and surfaces cut or damaged during cutting and patching operations, by methods and with materials so as not to void existing warranties.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 MATERIALS

- A. General: Comply with requirements specified in other Sections of these Specifications.
- B. Existing and In-Place Materials: Use materials identical to existing materials. For exposed surfaces, use materials that visually match existing adjacent surfaces to the fullest extent possible.
1. If identical materials are unavailable or cannot be used, use materials that, when installed, shall match the visual and functional performance of existing materials.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine surfaces to be cut and patched and conditions under which cutting and patching are to be performed.
1. Compatibility: Before patching, verify compatibility with and suitability of substrates, including compatibility with existing finishes or primers.
 2. Proceed with installation only after unsafe or unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.2 PREPARATION

- A. Temporary Support: Provide temporary support of Work to be cut.
- B. Protection: Protect existing construction during cutting and patching to prevent damage.
Provide protection from adverse weather conditions for portions of Project that might be exposed during cutting and patching operations.
- C. Adjoining Areas: Avoid interference with use of adjoining areas or interruption of free passage to adjoining areas.
- D. Existing Services: Where existing services are required to be removed, relocated, or

abandoned, bypass such services before cutting to prevent interruption of services to occupied areas.

1. If existing services to occupied areas must be interrupted, coordinate and receive approval of the interruption of services prior to starting work.

3.3 PERFORMANCE

- A. General: Employ skilled workers to perform cutting and patching. Proceed with cutting and patching at the earliest feasible time, and complete without delay.
 1. Cut existing construction to provide for installation of other components or performance of other construction, and subsequently patch as required to restore surfaces to their original condition.
- B. Cutting: Cut existing construction by sawing, drilling, breaking, chipping, grinding, and similar operations, including excavation, using methods least likely to damage elements retained or adjoining construction. If possible, review proposed procedures with original Installer; comply with original Installer's written recommendations.
 1. In general, use hand or small power tools designed for sawing and grinding, not hammering and chopping. Cut holes and slots as small as possible, neatly to size required, and with minimum disturbance of adjacent surfaces. Temporarily cover openings when not in use.
 2. Existing Finished Surfaces: Cut or drill from the exposed or finished side into concealed surfaces.
 3. Concrete and Masonry: Cut using a cutting machine, such as an abrasive saw or a diamond core drill.
 4. Excavating and Backfilling: Comply with requirements in applicable Division 31 Sections where required by cutting and patching operations.
 5. Mechanical and Electrical Services: Cut off pipe or conduit in walls or partitions to be removed. Cap, valve, or plug and seal remaining portion of pipe or conduit to prevent entrance of moisture or other foreign matter after cutting.
 6. Proceed with patching after construction operations requiring cutting are complete.
- C. Patching: Patch construction by filling, repairing, refinishing, closing up, and similar operations following performance of other Work. Patch with durable seams that are as invisible as possible. Provide materials and comply with installation requirements specified in other Sections of these Specifications.
 1. Inspection: Where feasible, test and inspect patched areas after completion to demonstrate integrity of installation.
 2. Exposed Finishes: Restore exposed finishes of patched areas and extend finish restoration into retained adjoining construction in a manner that shall eliminate evidence of patching and refinishing.
 - a. Clean piping, conduit, and similar features before applying paint or other finishing materials.
 - b. Restore damaged pipe covering to its original condition.
 3. Floors and Walls: Where walls or partitions that are removed extend one finished area into another, patch and repair floor and wall surfaces in the new space. Provide an even surface of uniform finish, color, texture, and appearance. Remove existing floor and wall coverings and replace with new materials, if necessary, to achieve uniform color and appearance.
 - a. Where patching occurs in a painted surface, apply primer and

intermediate paint coats over the patch and apply final paint coat over entire unbroken surface containing the patch. Provide additional coats until patch blends with adjacent surfaces.

4. Ceilings: Patch, repair, or rehang existing ceilings as necessary to provide an even-plane surface of uniform appearance.
 5. Exterior Building Enclosure: Patch components in a manner that restores enclosure to a weathertight condition.
- D. Cleaning: Clean areas and spaces where cutting and patching are performed. Completely remove paint, mortar, oils, putty, and similar materials.

END OF SECTION

SECTION 01 7413 – PROGRESS CLEARING

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 SUMMARY

- A. The Contractor shall generally maintain the project site in a clean, orderly fashion, free of materials in areas that are not expressly designated as staging or material storage areas.

PART 2 – PRODUCTS (NOT USED)

PART 3 -

EXECUTION

3.1 CLEAN-UP

- A. Immediately upon installation of any portion of the work, the Contractor shall restore all fills, topsoil, and utilities to their location and condition prior to construction.
- B. The Contractor shall install, maintain, and keep clean all erosion control devices as shown on the plans and Contract Documents.
- C. Immediately upon installation of any block in length of work herein contemplated, the Contractor shall remove all materials, tools, debris, excess excavated material, and equipment; and restore the site in a manner satisfactory to the Engineer.
- D. Clean-up and restoration of service line transfers shall be made immediately following each transfer installation.

END OF SECTION

SECTION 01 7419 CONSTRUCTION WASTE MANAGEMENT AND DISPOSAL

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General Conditions and other Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section includes administrative and procedural requirements for the following:
 1. Salvaging nonhazardous and construction waste.
 2. Recycling nonhazardous and construction waste.
 3. Disposing of nonhazardous and construction waste.

1.3 DEFINITIONS

- A. Construction Waste: Building and site improvement materials and other solid waste resulting from construction, remodeling, renovation, or repair operations. Construction waste includes packaging.
- B. Disposal: Removal off-site of demolition and construction waste and subsequent sale, recycle, reuse, or deposit in landfill or incinerator acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction.
- C. Recycle: Recovery of demolition or construction waste for subsequent processing in preparation for reuse.

1.4 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Practice efficient waste management in the use of materials in the course of the Work. Use all reasonable means to divert construction and demolition waste from landfills and incinerators. Facilitate recycling and salvage of materials, including the following:
 1. Construction Waste:
 - a. Wood sheet materials.
 - b. Wood trim.
 - c. Metals.
 - d. Insulation.
 - e. Carpet and pad.
 - f. Gypsum board.
 - g. Piping.
 - h. Electrical conduit.
 - i. Packaging: Regardless of salvage/recycle goal indicated in "General" Paragraph above, salvage or recycle 100 percent of the following uncontaminated packaging materials:
 - 1) Paper.
 - 2) Cardboard.
 - 3) Boxes.
 - 4) Plastic sheet and film.

- 5) Polystyrene packaging.
- 6) Wood crates.
- 7) Plastic pails.

1.5 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Recycling and Processing Facility Records: Indicate receipt and acceptance of recyclable waste by recycling and processing facilities licensed to accept them. Include manifests, weight tickets, receipts, and invoices.
- B. Landfill and Incinerator Disposal Records: Indicate receipt and acceptance of waste by landfills and incinerator facilities licensed to accept them. Include manifests, weight tickets, receipts, and invoices.
- C. Statement of Refrigerant Recovery: Signed by refrigerant recovery technician responsible for recovering refrigerant, stating that all refrigerant that was present was recovered and that recovery was performed according to EPA regulations. Include name and address of technician and date refrigerant was recovered.

1.6 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Regulatory Requirements: Comply with hauling and disposal regulations of authorities having jurisdiction.
- B. Waste Management Conference: Conduct a conference at the Project site in accord with 01 3100 Project Management and Coordination. Review methods and procedures related to waste management including, but not limited to, the following:
 1. Review and discuss waste management plan including responsibilities of waste management coordinator.
 2. Review requirements for documenting quantities of each type of waste and its disposition.
 3. Review and finalize procedures for materials separation and verify availability of containers and bins needed to avoid delays.
 4. Review procedures for periodic waste collection and transportation to recycling and disposal facilities.
 5. Review waste management requirements for each trade.

1.7 WASTE MANAGEMENT PLAN

- A. Waste Reduction Work Plan: List each type of waste and whether it will be salvaged, recycled, or disposed of in landfill or incinerator. Include points of waste generation, total quantity of each type of waste, quantity for each means of recovery, and handling and transportation procedures.
 1. Recycled Materials: Include list of local receivers and processors and type of recycled materials each will accept. Include names, addresses, and telephone numbers.
 2. Disposed Materials: Indicate how and where materials will be disposed of. Include name, address, and telephone number of each landfill and incinerator facility.
 3. Handling and Transportation Procedures: Include method that will be used for separating recyclable waste including sizes of containers, container labeling, and designated location where materials separation will be performed.

4. Submit work plan to the Architect within 15 working days of receipt of the notice to proceed.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS (Not Used)

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 RECYCLING CONSTRUCTION WASTE, GENERAL

- A. General: Recycle paper and beverage containers used by on-site workers.
- B. Recycling Incentives: Revenues, savings, rebates, tax credits, and other incentives received for recycling waste materials shall accrue to Contractor.
- C. Preparation of Waste: Prepare and maintain recyclable waste materials according to recycling or reuse facility requirements. Maintain materials free of dirt, adhesives, solvents, petroleum contamination, and other substances deleterious to the recycling process.
- D. Procedures: Separate recyclable waste from other waste materials, trash, and debris. Separate recyclable waste by type at Project site to the maximum extent practical according to approved construction waste management plan.
 1. Provide appropriately marked containers or bins for controlling recyclable waste until removed from Project site. Include list of acceptable and unacceptable materials at each container and bin.
 - a. Inspect containers and bins for contamination and remove contaminated materials if found.
 2. Stockpile processed materials on-site without intermixing with other materials. Place, grade, and shape stockpiles to drain surface water. Cover to prevent windblown dust.
 3. Stockpile materials away from construction area. Do not store within drip line of remaining trees.
 4. Store components off the ground and protect from the weather.
 5. Remove recyclable waste from Owner's property and transport to recycling receiver or processor.

3.2 RECYCLING CONSTRUCTION WASTE

- A. Packaging:
 1. Cardboard and Boxes: Break down packaging into flat sheets. Bundle and store in a dry location.
 2. Polystyrene Packaging: Separate and bag materials.
 3. Pallets: As much as possible, require deliveries using pallets to remove pallets from Project site. For pallets that remain on-site, break down pallets into component wood pieces and comply with requirements for recycling wood.
 4. Crates: Break down crates into component wood pieces and comply with requirements for recycling wood.
- B. Wood Materials:
 1. Clean Cut-Offs of Lumber: Grind or chip into small pieces.
 2. Clean Sawdust: Bag sawdust that does not contain painted or treated wood.
- C. Gypsum Board: Stack large clean pieces on wood pallets or in container and store in a

dry location.

1. Clean Gypsum Board: Grind scraps of clean gypsum board using small mobile chipper or hammer mill. Screen out paper after grinding.

3.3 DISPOSAL OF WASTE

- A. General: Except for items or materials to be salvaged, recycled, or otherwise reused, remove waste materials from Project site and legally dispose of them in a landfill or incinerator acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction.
 1. Except as otherwise specified, do not allow waste materials that are to be disposed of accumulate on-site.
 2. Remove and transport debris in a manner that will prevent spillage on adjacent surfaces and areas.
- B. Burning: Do not burn waste materials.
- C. Disposal: Remove waste materials from Owner's property and legally dispose of them.

END OF SECTION

SECTION 01 7420 – REMOVAL OF CONDEMNED MATERIALS AND STRUCTURES

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 SUMMARY

- A. The Contractor shall remove from the site of the work, without delay, all rejected and condemned materials or structures of any kind brought to or incorporated in the work.

PART 2 – PRODUCTS (NOT USED)

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 REMOVAL OF CONDEMNED MATERIALS AND STRUCTURES

- A. The Contractor shall remove from the site of the work, without delay, all rejected and condemned materials or structures of any kind brought to or incorporated in the work, and upon his failure to do so, or to make satisfactory progress in so doing, within forty-eight (48) hours after the service of a written notice from the Architect/Engineer ordering such removal, the condemned material or structure may be removed by the Owner and the cost of such removal to be taken out of the money that may be due or may become due the Contractor on account of or by virtue of this Contract. No such rejected or condemned material shall again be offered for use by the Contractor under this or any other Contract under this project.

END OF SECTION

SECTION 01 7700 - CLOSEOUT PROCEDURES

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General Conditions and other Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section includes administrative and procedural requirements for contract closeout, including, but not limited to, the following:
 - 1. Substantial Completion procedures.
 - 2. Final Completion procedures.
 - 3. Warranties.
 - 4. Final cleaning.
 - 5. Repair of the Work.
- B. Related Requirements:
 - 1. Division 01 Section "Photographic Documentation" for submitting final completion construction photographic documentation.
 - 2. Division 01 Section "Operation and Maintenance Data" for operation and maintenance manual requirements.
 - 3. Divisions 02 through 34 Sections for specific closeout and special cleaning requirements for the Work in those Sections.

1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Contractor's List of Incomplete Items: Initial submittal at Substantial Completion.
- B. Certified List of Incomplete Items: Final submittal at Final Completion.

1.4 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

- A. Certificates of Release: From authorities having jurisdiction.
- B. Certificate of Insurance: For continuing coverage.
- C. Field Report: For pest control inspection as required.

1.5 MAINTENANCE MATERIAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Schedule of Maintenance Material Items: For maintenance material submittal items specified in other Sections.

1.6 SUBSTANTIAL COMPLETION PROCEDURES

- A. Contractor's List of Incomplete Items: Prepare and submit a list of items to be completed and corrected (Contractor's punch list), indicating the value of each item on the list and reasons why the Work is incomplete.

- B. Submittals Prior to Substantial Completion: Complete the following a minimum of 5 working days prior to requesting inspection for determining date of Substantial Completion. List items below that are incomplete at time of request.
1. Certificates of Release: Obtain and submit releases from authorities having jurisdiction permitting Owner unrestricted use of the Work and access to services and utilities. Include occupancy permits, operating certificates, and similar releases.
 2. Submit closeout submittals specified in other Division 01 Sections, including project record documents, operation and maintenance manuals, final completion construction photographic documentation, damage or settlement surveys, property surveys, and similar final record information.
 3. Submit closeout submittals specified in individual Divisions 02 through 34 Sections, including specific warranties, workmanship bonds, maintenance service agreements, final certifications, and similar documents.
 4. Submit test/adjust/balance records.
 5. Submit changeover information related to Owner's occupancy, use, operation, and maintenance.
- C. Procedures Prior to Substantial Completion: Complete the following a minimum of 5 working days prior to requesting inspection for determining date of Substantial Completion. List items below that are incomplete at time of request. Advise Owner of pending insurance changeover requirements.
1. Make final changeover of permanent locks and deliver keys to Owner. Advise Owner's personnel of changeover in security provisions.
 2. Complete startup and testing of systems and equipment.
 3. Perform preventive maintenance on equipment used prior to Substantial Completion.
 4. Advise Owner of changeover in heat and other utilities.
 5. Participate with Owner in conducting inspection and walkthrough with local emergency responders.
 6. Terminate and remove temporary facilities from Project site, along with mockups, construction tools, and similar elements as required.
 7. Complete final cleaning requirements, including touchup painting.
 8. Touch up and otherwise repair and restore marred exposed finishes to eliminate visual defects.
- D. Inspection: Submit a written request for inspection to determine Substantial Completion a minimum of 5 working days prior to date the work will be completed and ready for final inspection and tests. On receipt of request, Architect will either proceed with inspection or notify Contractor of unfulfilled requirements. Architect will prepare the Certificate of Substantial Completion after inspection or will notify Contractor of items, either on Contractor's list or additional items identified by Architect, that must be completed or corrected before certificate will be issued.
1. Reinspection: Request reinspection when the Work identified in previous inspections as incomplete is completed or corrected. Should a second or additional reinspection be made necessary by incomplete work, the Contractor will be responsible for the associated costs.
 2. Results of completed inspection will form the basis of requirements for final completion.

1.7 FINAL COMPLETION PROCEDURES

- A. Submittals Prior to Final Completion: Before requesting final inspection for determining final completion, complete the following:
1. Submit a final Application for Payment and separate Application for Payment of Retainage (if applicable).
 2. Certified List of Incomplete Items: Submit certified copy of Architect's Substantial Completion inspection list of items to be completed or corrected (punch list), endorsed and dated by Architect. Certified copy of the list shall state that each item has been completed or otherwise resolved for acceptance.
 3. Certificate of Insurance: Submit evidence of final, continuing insurance coverage complying with insurance requirements.
 4. Submit pest-control final inspection report if required.
- B. Inspection: Submit a written request for final inspection to determine acceptance a minimum of 5 working days prior to date the work will be completed and ready for final inspection and tests. On receipt of request, Architect will either proceed with inspection or notify Contractor of unfulfilled requirements. Architect will prepare a final Certificate for Payment after inspection or will notify Contractor of construction that must be completed or corrected before certificate will be issued.
1. Reinspection: Request reinspection when the Work identified in previous inspections as incomplete is completed or corrected. Should a second or additional reinspection be made necessary by incomplete work, the Contractor will be responsible for the associated costs.

1.8 LIST OF INCOMPLETE ITEMS (PUNCH LIST)

- A. Organization of List: Include name and identification of each space and area affected by construction operations for incomplete items and items needing correction including, if necessary, areas disturbed by Contractor that are outside the limits of construction. The list shall indicate the value of each item on the list and reasons why the Work is incomplete.
1. Organize list of spaces in sequential order, starting with exterior areas first and proceeding from lowest floor to highest floor.
 2. Organize items applying to each space by major element, including categories for ceiling, individual walls, floors, equipment, and building systems.
 3. Include the following information at the top of each page:
 - a. Project name.
 - b. Date.
 - c. Name of Architect.
 - d. Name of Contractor.
 - e. Page number.
 4. Submit list of incomplete items in the following format:
 - a. MS Excel electronic file. Architect will return annotated file.
 - b. PDF electronic file. Architect will return annotated file.

1.9 SUBMITTAL OF PROJECT WARRANTIES

- A. Time of Submittal: Submit written warranties on request of Architect for designated portions of the Work where commencement of warranties other than date of Substantial Completion is indicated, or when delay in submittal of warranties might limit Owner's rights under warranty.

- B. Partial Occupancy: Submit properly executed warranties within 15 working days of completion of designated portions of the Work that are completed and occupied or used by Owner during construction period by separate agreement with Contractor.
- C. Organize warranty documents into an orderly sequence based on the table of contents of Project Manual.
 - 1. Bind warranties and bonds in heavy-duty, three-ring, vinyl-covered, loose-leaf binders, thickness as necessary to accommodate contents, and sized to receive 8-1/2-by-11-inch (215-by-280-mm) paper.
 - 2. Provide heavy paper dividers with plastic-covered tabs for each separate warranty. Mark tab to identify the product or installation. Provide a typed description of the product or installation, including the name of the product and the name, address, and telephone number of Installer.
 - 3. Identify each binder on the front and spine with the typed or printed title "WARRANTIES," Project name, and name of Contractor.
 - 4. Warranty Electronic File: Scan warranties and bonds and assemble complete warranty and bond submittal package into a single indexed electronic PDF file with links enabling navigation to each item. Provide bookmarked table of contents at beginning of document.
- D. Provide additional copies of each warranty to include in operation and maintenance manuals.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 MATERIALS

- A. Cleaning Agents: Use cleaning materials and agents recommended by manufacturer or fabricator of the surface to be cleaned. Do not use cleaning agents that are potentially hazardous to health or property or that might damage finished surfaces.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 FINAL CLEANING

- A. General: Perform final cleaning. Conduct cleaning and waste-removal operations to comply with local laws and ordinances and Federal and local environmental and antipollution regulations.
- B. Cleaning: Employ experienced workers or professional cleaners for final cleaning. Clean each surface or unit to condition expected in an average commercial building cleaning and maintenance program. Comply with manufacturer's written instructions.
 - 1. Complete the following cleaning operations before requesting inspection for certification of Substantial Completion for entire Project or for a designated portion of Project:
 - a. Clean Project site, yard, and grounds, in areas disturbed by construction activities, including landscape development areas, of rubbish, waste material, litter, and other foreign substances.
 - b. Sweep paved areas broom clean. Remove petrochemical spills, stains, and other foreign deposits.
 - c. Rake grounds that are neither planted nor paved to a smooth, even-textured surface.

- d. Remove tools, construction equipment, machinery, and surplus material from Project site.
- e. Remove snow and ice to provide safe access to building.
- f. Clean exposed exterior and interior hard-surfaced finishes to a dirt-free condition, free of stains, films, and similar foreign substances. Avoid disturbing natural weathering of exterior surfaces. Restore reflective surfaces to their original condition.
- g. Remove debris and surface dust from limited access spaces, including roofs, plenums, shafts, trenches, equipment vaults, manholes, attics, and similar spaces.
- h. Sweep concrete floors broom clean in unoccupied spaces.
- i. Vacuum carpet and similar soft surfaces, removing debris and excess nap; clean according to manufacturer's recommendations if visible soil or stains remain.
- j. Clean transparent materials, including mirrors and glass in doors and windows. Remove glazing compounds and other noticeable, vision-obscuring materials. Polish mirrors and glass, taking care not to scratch surfaces.
- k. Remove labels that are not permanent.
- l. Wipe surfaces of mechanical and electrical equipment, elevator equipment, and similar equipment. Remove excess lubrication, paint and mortar droppings, and other foreign substances.
- m. Clean plumbing fixtures to a sanitary condition, free of stains, including stains resulting from water exposure.
- n. Replace disposable air filters and clean permanent air filters. Clean exposed surfaces of diffusers, registers, and grills.
- o. Clean ducts, blowers, and coils if units were operated without filters during construction or that display contamination with particulate matter on inspection.
 - 1) Clean HVAC system in compliance with NADCA Standard 1992-01. Provide written report on completion of cleaning.
- p. Clean light fixtures, lamps, globes, and reflectors to function with full efficiency.
- q. Leave Project clean and ready for occupancy.

3.2 REPAIR OF THE WORK

- A. Complete repair and restoration operations before requesting inspection for determination of Substantial Completion.
- B. Repair or remove and replace defective construction. Repairing includes replacing defective parts, refinishing damaged surfaces, touching up with matching materials, and properly adjusting operating equipment. Where damaged or worn items cannot be repaired or restored, provide replacements. Remove and replace operating components that cannot be repaired. Restore damaged construction and permanent facilities used during construction to specified condition.
 - 1. Remove and replace chipped, scratched, and broken glass, reflective surfaces, and other damaged transparent materials.
 - 2. Touch up and otherwise repair and restore marred or exposed finishes and surfaces. Replace finishes and surfaces that already show evidence of repair or restoration.
 - a. Do not paint over "UL" and other required labels and identification, including mechanical and electrical nameplates. Remove paint applied to required labels and identification.

3. Replace parts subject to operating conditions during construction that may impede operation or reduce longevity.
4. Replace burned-out bulbs, bulbs noticeably dimmed by hours of use, and defective and noisy starters in fluorescent and mercury vapor fixtures to comply with requirements for new fixtures.

END OF SECTION

SECTION 01 7823 - OPERATION AND MAINTENANCE DATA

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General Conditions and other Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section includes administrative and procedural requirements for preparing operation and maintenance manuals, including the following:
 1. Operation and maintenance documentation directory.
 2. Emergency manuals.
 3. Operation manuals for systems, subsystems, and equipment.
 4. Product maintenance manuals.
 5. Systems and equipment maintenance manuals.
- B. Related Requirements:
 1. Division 01 Section "Closeout Procedures" for submitting copies of submittals for operation and maintenance manuals.
 2. Divisions 02 through 34 Sections for specific operation and maintenance manual requirements for the Work in those Sections.

1.3 DEFINITIONS

- A. System: An organized collection of parts, equipment, or subsystems united by regular interaction.
- B. Subsystem: A portion of a system with characteristics similar to a system.

1.4 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

- A. Manual Content: Operations and maintenance manual content is specified in individual Specification Sections to be reviewed at the time of Section submittals. Submit reviewed manual content formatted and organized as required by this Section and Division 1.
 1. Architect will determine whether content of operations and maintenance submittals are acceptable.
 2. Where applicable, clarify and update reviewed manual content to correspond to revisions and field conditions.
- B. Format: Submit operations and maintenance manuals in the following format:
 1. PDF electronic file. Assemble each manual into a composite electronically indexed file. Submit on digital media acceptable to Architect.
 - a. Name each indexed document file in composite electronic index with applicable item name. Include a complete electronically linked operation and maintenance directory.
 - b. Enable inserted reviewer comments on draft submittals.

- C. Initial Manual Submittal: Submit draft copy of each manual at least 30 working days before commencing demonstration and training. Architect and Commissioning Authority (where applicable) will determine whether general scope and content of manual are acceptable.
- D. Final Manual Submittal: Submit each manual in final form prior to requesting inspection for Substantial Completion and at least 15 working days before commencing demonstration and training. Architect and Commissioning Authority (where applicable) will return copy with comments.
 - 1. Correct or revise each manual to comply with Architect's and Commissioning Authority's comments. Submit copies of each corrected manual within 15 working days of receipt of Architect's and Commissioning Authority's (where applicable) comments and prior to commencing demonstration and training.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 OPERATION AND MAINTENANCE DOCUMENTATION DIRECTORY

- A. Directory: Prepare a single, comprehensive directory of emergency, operation, and maintenance data and materials, listing items and their location to facilitate ready access to desired information. Include a section in the directory for each of the following:
 - 1. List of documents.
 - 2. List of systems.
 - 3. List of equipment.
 - 4. Table of contents.
- B. List of Systems and Subsystems: List systems alphabetically. Include references to operation and maintenance manuals that contain information about each system.
- C. List of Equipment: List equipment for each system, organized alphabetically by system. For pieces of equipment not part of system, list alphabetically in separate list.
- D. Tables of Contents: Include a table of contents for each emergency, operation, and maintenance manual.
- E. Identification: In the documentation directory and in each operation and maintenance manual, identify each system, subsystem, and piece of equipment with same designation used in the Contract Documents. If no designation exists, assign a designation according to ASHRAE Guideline 4, "Preparation of Operating and Maintenance Documentation for Building Systems."

2.2 REQUIREMENTS FOR EMERGENCY, OPERATION, AND MAINTENANCE MANUALS

- A. Organization: Unless otherwise indicated, organize each manual into a separate section for each system and subsystem, and a separate section for each piece of equipment not part of a system. Each manual shall contain the following materials, in the order listed:
 - 1. Title page.
 - 2. Table of contents.
 - 3. Manual contents.
- B. Title Page: Include the following information:

1. Subject matter included in manual.
 2. Name and address of Project.
 3. Name and address of Owner.
 4. Date of submittal.
 5. Name and contact information for Contractor.
 6. Name and contact information for Construction Manager.
 7. Name and contact information for Architect.
 8. Name and contact information for Commissioning Authority.
 9. Names and contact information for major consultants to the Architect that designed the systems contained in the manuals.
 10. Cross-reference to related systems in other operation and maintenance manuals.
- C. Table of Contents: List each product included in manual, identified by product name, indexed to the content of the volume, and cross-referenced to Specification Section number in Project Manual.
1. If operation or maintenance documentation requires more than one volume to accommodate data, include comprehensive table of contents for all volumes in each volume of the set.
- D. Manual Contents: Organize into sets of manageable size. Arrange contents alphabetically by system, subsystem, and equipment. If possible, assemble instructions for subsystems, equipment, and components of one system into a single binder.
- E. Manuals, Electronic Files: Submit manuals in the form of a multiple file composite electronic PDF file for each manual type required.
1. Electronic Files: Use electronic files prepared by manufacturer where available. Where scanning of paper documents is required, configure scanned file for minimum readable file size.
 2. File Names and Bookmarks: Enable bookmarking of individual documents based on file names. Name document files to correspond to system, subsystem, and equipment names used in manual directory and table of contents. Group documents for each system and subsystem into individual composite bookmarked files, then create composite manual, so that resulting bookmarks reflect the system, subsystem, and equipment names in a readily navigated file tree. Configure electronic manual to display bookmark panel on opening file.

2.3 EMERGENCY MANUALS

- A. Content: Organize manual into a separate section for each of the following:
1. Type of emergency.
 2. Emergency instructions.
 3. Emergency procedures.
- B. Type of Emergency: Where applicable for each type of emergency indicated below, include instructions and procedures for each system, subsystem, piece of equipment, and component:
1. Fire.
 2. Flood.
 3. Gas leak.
 4. Water leak.
 5. Power failure.
 6. Water outage.

7. System, subsystem, or equipment failure.
 8. Chemical release or spill.
- C. Emergency Instructions: Describe and explain warnings, trouble indications, error messages, and similar codes and signals. Include responsibilities of Owner's operating personnel for notification of Installer, supplier, and manufacturer to maintain warranties.
- D. Emergency Procedures: Include the following, as applicable:
1. Instructions on stopping.
 2. Shutdown instructions for each type of emergency.
 3. Operating instructions for conditions outside normal operating limits.
 4. Required sequences for electric or electronic systems.
 5. Special operating instructions and procedures.

2.4 OPERATION MANUALS

- A. Content: In addition to requirements in this Section, include operation data required in individual Specification Sections and the following information:
1. System, subsystem, and equipment descriptions. Use designations for systems and equipment indicated on Contract Documents.
 2. Performance and design criteria if Contractor has delegated design responsibility.
 3. Operating standards.
 4. Operating procedures.
 5. Operating logs.
 6. Wiring diagrams.
 7. Control diagrams.
 8. Piped system diagrams.
 9. Precautions against improper use.
 10. License requirements including inspection and renewal dates.
- B. Descriptions: Include the following:
1. Product name and model number. Use designations for products indicated on Contract Documents.
 2. Manufacturer's name.
 3. Equipment identification with serial number of each component.
 4. Equipment function.
 5. Operating characteristics.
 6. Limiting conditions.
 7. Performance curves.
 8. Engineering data and tests.
 9. Complete nomenclature and number of replacement parts.
- C. Operating Procedures: Include the following, as applicable:
1. Startup procedures.
 2. Equipment or system break-in procedures.
 3. Routine and normal operating instructions.
 4. Regulation and control procedures.
 5. Instructions on stopping.
 6. Normal shutdown instructions.
 7. Seasonal and weekend operating instructions.
 8. Required sequences for electric or electronic systems.

9. Special operating instructions and procedures.

D. Systems and Equipment Controls: Describe the sequence of operation, and diagram controls as installed.

E. Piped Systems: Diagram piping as installed, and identify color-coding where required for identification.

2.5 PRODUCT MAINTENANCE MANUALS

A. Content: Organize manual into a separate section for each product, material, and finish. Include source information, product information, maintenance procedures, repair materials and sources, and warranties and bonds, as described below.

B. Source Information: List each product included in manual, identified by product name and arranged to match manual's table of contents. For each product, list name, address, and telephone number of Installer or supplier and maintenance service agent, and cross-reference Specification Section number and title in Project Manual and drawing or schedule designation or identifier where applicable.

C. Product Information: Include the following, as applicable:

1. Product name and model number.
2. Manufacturer's name.
3. Color, pattern, and texture.
4. Material and chemical composition.
5. Reordering information for specially manufactured products.

D. Maintenance Procedures: Include manufacturer's written recommendations and the following:

1. Inspection procedures.
2. Types of cleaning agents to be used and methods of cleaning.
3. List of cleaning agents and methods of cleaning detrimental to product.
4. Schedule for routine cleaning and maintenance.
5. Repair instructions.

E. Repair Materials and Sources: Include lists of materials and local sources of materials and related services.

F. Warranties and Bonds: Include copies of warranties and bonds and lists of circumstances and conditions that would affect validity of warranties or bonds.

1. Include procedures to follow and required notifications for warranty claims.

2.6 SYSTEMS AND EQUIPMENT MAINTENANCE MANUALS

A. Content: For each system, subsystem, and piece of equipment not part of a system, include source information, manufacturers' maintenance documentation, maintenance procedures, maintenance and service schedules, spare parts list and source information, maintenance service contracts, and warranty and bond information, as described below.

B. Source Information: List each system, subsystem, and piece of equipment included in manual, identified by product name and arranged to match manual's table of contents. For each product, list name, address, and telephone number of Installer or

supplier and maintenance service agent, and cross-reference Specification Section number and title in Project Manual and drawing or schedule designation or identifier where applicable.

- C. **Manufacturers' Maintenance Documentation:** Manufacturers' maintenance documentation including the following information for each component part or piece of equipment:
 - 1. Standard maintenance instructions and bulletins.
 - 2. Drawings, diagrams, and instructions required for maintenance, including disassembly and component removal, replacement, and assembly.
 - 3. Identification and nomenclature of parts and components.
 - 4. List of items recommended to be stocked as spare parts.

- D. **Maintenance Procedures:** Include the following information and items that detail essential maintenance procedures:
 - 1. Test and inspection instructions.
 - 2. Troubleshooting guide.
 - 3. Precautions against improper maintenance.
 - 4. Disassembly; component removal, repair, and replacement; and reassembly instructions.
 - 5. Aligning, adjusting, and checking instructions.
 - 6. Demonstration and training video recording, if available.

- E. **Maintenance and Service Schedules:** Include service and lubrication requirements, list of required lubricants for equipment, and separate schedules for preventive and routine maintenance and service with standard time allotment.
 - 1. **Scheduled Maintenance and Service:** Tabulate actions for daily, weekly, monthly, quarterly, semiannual, and annual frequencies.
 - 2. **Maintenance and Service Record:** Include manufacturers' forms for recording maintenance.

- F. **Spare Parts List and Source Information:** Include lists of replacement and repair parts, with parts identified and cross-referenced to manufacturers' maintenance documentation and local sources of maintenance materials and related services.

- G. **Maintenance Service Contracts:** Include copies of maintenance agreements with name and telephone number of service agent.

- H. **Warranties and Bonds:** Include copies of warranties and bonds and lists of circumstances and conditions that would affect validity of warranties or bonds.
 - 1. Include procedures to follow and required notifications for warranty claims.
 - 2. Identify any warranties that start on a day other than the date of substantial completion.
 - 3. Refer to Division 01 Section "Closeout Procedures" for submittal of project warranties.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 MANUAL PREPARATION

- A. **Operation and Maintenance Documentation Directory:** Prepare a separate manual that provides an organized reference to emergency, operation, and maintenance manuals.

- B. Emergency Manual: Assemble a complete set of emergency information indicating procedures for use by emergency personnel and by Owner's operating personnel for types of emergencies indicated.
- C. Product Maintenance Manual: Assemble a complete set of maintenance data indicating care and maintenance of each product, material, and finish incorporated into the Work.
- D. Operation and Maintenance Manuals: Assemble a complete set of operation and maintenance data indicating operation and maintenance of each system, subsystem, and piece of equipment not part of a system.
 - 1. Engage a factory-authorized service representative to assemble and prepare information for each system, subsystem, and piece of equipment not part of a system.
 - 2. Prepare a separate manual for each system and subsystem, in the form of an instructional manual for use by Owner's operating personnel.
- E. Manufacturers' Data: Where manuals contain manufacturers' standard printed data, include only sheets pertinent to product or component installed. Mark each sheet to identify each product or component incorporated into the Work. If data include more than one item in a tabular format, identify each item using appropriate references from the Contract Documents. Identify data applicable to the Work and delete references to information not applicable.
 - 1. Prepare supplementary text if manufacturers' standard printed data are not available and where the information is necessary for proper operation and maintenance of equipment or systems.
- F. Drawings: Prepare drawings supplementing manufacturers' printed data to illustrate the relationship of component parts of equipment and systems and to illustrate control sequence and flow diagrams. Coordinate these drawings with information contained in record Drawings to ensure correct illustration of completed installation.
 - 1. Do not use original project record documents as part of operation and maintenance manuals.
 - 2. Comply with requirements of newly prepared record Drawings in Division 01 Section "Project Record Documents."
- G. Comply with Division 01 Section "Closeout Procedures" for schedule for submitting operation and maintenance documentation.

END OF SECTION

SECTION 01 7839 - PROJECT RECORD DOCUMENTS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General Conditions and other Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section includes administrative and procedural requirements for project record documents, including the following:
 - 1. Record Drawings.
 - 2. Record Specifications.
 - 3. Record Product Data.
- B. Related Requirements:
 - 1. Application for payment
 - 2. Division 01 Section "Closeout Procedures" for general closeout procedures.
 - 3. Division 01 Section "Operation and Maintenance Data" for operation and maintenance manual requirements.
 - 4. Divisions 02 through 34 Sections for specific requirements for project record documents of the Work in those Sections.

1.3 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

- A. Record Drawings: Comply with the following:
 - 1. Number of Copies: Submit one set(s) of marked-up record prints.
 - 2. Number of Copies: Submit copies of record Drawings as follows:
 - a. Initial Submittal:
 - 1) Submit one paper-copy set(s) of marked-up record prints.
 - 2) Submit PDF electronic files of scanned record prints and one of file prints.
 - 3) Architect will indicate whether general scope of changes, additional information recorded, and quality of drafting are acceptable.
 - b. Final Submittal:
 - 1) Submit PDF electronic files of scanned record prints and one set of prints.
 - 2) Print each drawing, whether or not changes and additional information were recorded.
- B. Record Specifications: Submit annotated PDF electronic files of Project's Specifications, including addenda and contract modifications.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 RECORD DRAWINGS

- A. Record Prints: Maintain one set of marked-up paper copies of the Contract Drawings and Shop Drawings, incorporating new and revised drawings as modifications are issued.

1. Preparation: Mark record prints to show the actual installation where installation varies from that shown originally. Require individual or entity who obtained record data, whether individual or entity is Installer, Subcontractor, or similar entity, to provide information for preparation of corresponding marked-up record prints.
 - a. Give particular, timely attention to information on concealed elements that would be difficult to identify or measure and record later.
 - b. Accurately record information in an acceptable drawing technique.
 - c. Record data as soon as possible after obtaining it.
 - d. Record and check the markup before enclosing concealed installations.
 - e. Cross-reference record prints to corresponding archive photographic documentation.
 2. Content: Types of items requiring marking include, but are not limited to, the following:
 - a. Dimensional changes to Drawings.
 - b. Revisions to details shown on Drawings.
 - c. Depths of foundations below first floor.
 - d. Locations and depths of underground utilities.
 - e. Revisions to routing of piping and conduits.
 - f. Revisions to electrical circuitry.
 - g. Actual equipment locations.
 - h. Duct size and routing.
 - i. Locations of concealed internal utilities.
 - j. Changes made by Change Order.
 - k. Changes made following Architect's written orders.
 - l. Details not on the original Contract Drawings.
 - m. Field records for variable and concealed conditions.
 - n. Record information on the Work that is shown only schematically.
 3. Mark the Contract Drawings and Shop Drawings completely and accurately. Use personnel proficient at recording graphic information in production of marked-up record prints.
 4. Mark record sets with erasable, red-colored pencil. Use other colors to distinguish between changes for different categories of the Work at same location.
 5. Mark important additional information that was either shown schematically or omitted from original Drawings.
 6. Note Construction Change Directive numbers, alternate numbers, Change Order numbers, and similar identification, where applicable.
- B. Record Digital Data Files: Immediately before inspection for Certificate of Substantial Completion, review marked-up record prints with Architect. When authorized, prepare a full set of corrected digital data files of the Contract Drawings, as follows:
1. Format: Same digital data software program, version, and operating system as the original Contract Drawings or equal approved by Architect.
 2. Format: DWG, Version 2016, Microsoft Windows operating system.
 3. Format: Annotated PDF electronic file with comment function enabled.
 4. Incorporate changes and additional information previously marked on record prints. Delete, redraw, and add details and notations where applicable.
 5. Refer instances of uncertainty to Architect for resolution.
 6. Architect will furnish Contractor one set of digital data files of the Contract Drawings for use in recording information.
 - a. Record markups in separate layers.

- C. Format: Identify and date each record Drawing; include the designation "PROJECT RECORD DRAWING" in a prominent location that does not block any information.
 - 1. Record Prints: Organize record prints and newly prepared record Drawings into manageable sets. Bind each set with durable paper cover sheets. Include identification on cover sheets.
 - 2. Format: Annotated PDF electronic file with comment function enabled.
 - 3. Record Digital Data Files: Organize digital data information into separate electronic files that correspond to each sheet of the Contract Drawings. Name each file with the sheet identification. Include identification in each digital data file.
 - 4. Identification: As follows:
 - a. Project name.
 - b. Date.
 - c. Designation "PROJECT RECORD DRAWINGS."
 - d. Name of Architect.
 - e. Name of Contractor.

2.2 RECORD SPECIFICATIONS

- A. Preparation: Mark Specifications to indicate the actual product installation where installation varies from that indicated in Specifications, addenda, and contract modifications.
 - 1. Give particular attention to information on concealed products and installations that cannot be readily identified and recorded later.
 - 2. Mark copy with the proprietary name and model number of products, materials, and equipment furnished, including substitutions and product options selected.
 - 3. Record the name of manufacturer, supplier, Installer, and other information necessary to provide a record of selections made.
 - 4. For each principal product, indicate whether record Product Data has been submitted in operation and maintenance manuals instead of submitted as record Product Data.
 - 5. Note related Change Orders, record Product Data and record Drawings where applicable.
- B. Format: Submit record Specifications as annotated PDF electronic file or scanned PDF electronic file(s) of marked-up paper copy of Specifications.

2.3 RECORD PRODUCT DATA

- A. Preparation: Mark Product Data to indicate the actual product installation where installation varies substantially from that indicated in Product Data submittal.
 - 1. Give particular, timely attention to information on concealed products and installations that cannot be readily identified and recorded later.
 - 2. Include significant changes in the product delivered to Project site and changes in manufacturer's written instructions for installation.
 - 3. Note related Change Orders, record Specifications, and record Drawings where applicable.
- B. Format: Submit record Product Data as scanned PDF electronic file(s) of marked-up paper copy of Product Data.
 - 1. Include record Product Data directory organized by Specification Section number and title, electronically linked to each item of record Product Data.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 RECORDING AND MAINTENANCE

- A. Recording: Maintain one copy of each submittal during the construction period for project record document purposes. Post changes and revisions to project record documents as they occur; do not wait until end of Project.
- B. Maintenance of Record Documents and Samples: Store record documents and Samples in the field office apart from the Contract Documents used for construction. Do not use project record documents for construction purposes. Maintain record documents in good order and in a clean, dry, legible condition, protected from deterioration and loss. Provide access to project record documents for Architect's reference during normal working hours.

END OF SECTION

SECTION 01 8113 – INDOOR AIR QUALITY

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SECTION INCLUDES

- B. Building Flush-Out

PART 2 – PRODUCTS (NOT USED)

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 CONSTRUCTION IAQ PLAN BEFORE OCCUPANCY

- A. After construction ends, prior to occupancy and with all interior finishes installed, perform a building flush-out.
- B. Flush for at least 48 hours total; the hours may be non-consecutive if necessary.
- C. Keep operable windows and interior doors open and run HVAC system fan (or large portable commercial fan) continuously or flush building with HVAC system fans and exhaust fans (or large portable commercial fans) operating continuously at the highest flow rate.
- D. Use additional temporary large portable commercial fans to circulate air within the building.
- E. Replace air filtration media immediately prior to occupancy.

END OF SECTION

SECTION 02 4119 – SELECTIVE DEMOLITION

PART 1 – GENERAL

1.1 SECTION INCLUDES

- A. Selective demolition of building elements for alteration purposes.
- B. Section 01 7419 - Construction Waste Management and Disposal: Limitations on disposal of removed materials; requirements for recycling.

PART 2 – PRODUCTS (not used)

PART 3 – EXECUTION

3.1 SCOPE

- A. Remove portions of the existing building as shown in the Drawings.
- B. Remove other items indicated, for salvage and relocation.

3.2 GENERAL PROCEDURES AND PROJECT CONDITIONS

- A. Comply with applicable codes and regulations for demolition operations and safety of adjacent structures and the public.
 - 1. Take precautions to prevent catastrophic or uncontrolled collapse of structures to be removed; do not allow worker or public access within range of potential collapse of unstable structures.
 - 2. Provide, erect, and maintain temporary barriers and security devices.
 - 3. Conduct operations to minimize effects on and interference with adjacent structures and occupants.
 - 4. Conduct operations to minimize obstruction of public and private entrances and exits; do not obstruct required exits at any time; protect persons using entrances and exits from removal operations.
- B. Do not begin removal until receipt of notification to proceed from Owner.
- C. Protect existing structures and other elements that are not to be removed.
 - 1. Provide bracing and shoring.
- D. Perform demolition in a manner that maximizes salvage and recycling of materials.
 - 1. Comply with requirements of Section 01 7419 - Waste Management.
 - 2. Dismantle existing construction and separate materials.

3. Set aside reusable, recyclable, and salvageable materials; store and deliver to collection point or point of reuse.

3.3 EXISTING UTILITIES

- A. Coordinate work with utility companies; notify before starting work and comply with their requirements; obtain required permits.
- B. Protect existing utilities to remain from damage.
- C. Do not close, shut off, or disrupt existing utility branches or take-offs that are in use without at least 5 days prior written notification to Owner.
- D. Locate and mark utilities to remain; mark using highly visible tags or flags, with identification of utility type; protect from damage due to subsequent construction, using substantial barricades if necessary.
- E. Remove exposed piping, valves, meters, equipment, supports, and foundations of disconnected and abandoned utilities.

3.4 SELECTIVE DEMOLITION FOR ALTERATIONS

- A. Drawings showing existing construction and utilities are based on casual field observation and existing record documents only.
 1. Verify that construction and utility arrangements are as shown.
 2. Report discrepancies to Architect before disturbing existing installation.
 3. Beginning of demolition work constitutes acceptance of existing conditions that would be apparent upon examination prior to starting demolition.
- B. Remove existing work as indicated and as required to accomplish new work.
 1. Remove items indicated on drawings.
- C. Services (Including but not limited to HVAC, Plumbing, Fire Protection, Electrical, and Telecommunications): Remove existing systems and equipment as indicated.
 1. Maintain existing active systems that are to remain in operation; maintain access to equipment and operational components.
 2. Verify that abandoned services serve only abandoned facilities before removal.
 3. Remove abandoned pipe, ducts, conduits, and equipment, including those above accessible ceilings; remove back to source of supply where possible, otherwise cap stub and tag with identification.
- D. Protect existing work to remain.
 1. Prevent movement of structure; provide shoring and bracing if necessary.
 2. Perform cutting to accomplish removals neatly and as specified for cutting new work.
 3. Repair adjacent construction and finishes damaged during removal work.

4. Patch as specified for patching new work.

3.5 DEBRIS AND WASTE REMOVAL

- A. Remove debris, junk, and trash from site.
- B. Remove from site all materials not to be reused on site; comply with requirements of Section 01 7419 - Waste Management.
- C. Leave site in clean condition, ready for subsequent work.
- D. Clean up spillage and wind-blown debris from public and private lands.

3.6 SCHEDULE

- A. Items to be Salvaged for Reinstallation:
 1. Handrails
 2. Wood Trim
 3. Interior wood wall slats

END OF SECTION

SECTION 07 2100 - THERMAL INSULATION (ADD ALTERNATE)

PART 1 – GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including Division 1 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SECTION INCLUDES

- A. Board insulation at perimeter foundation walls within crawl space.
- B. Batt insulation for filling the ends of joist bays within crawl space.

1.3 RELATED REQUIREMENTS

- A. Section 07 2126 - Blown Insulation.

1.4 REFERENCE STANDARDS

- A. ASTM C578 - Standard Specification for Rigid, Cellular Polystyrene Thermal Insulation; 2017a.
- B. ASTM C552 - Standard Specification for Cellular Glass Thermal Insulation; 2016a.
- C. ASTM C553 - Standard Specification for Mineral Fiber Blanket Thermal Insulation for Commercial and Industrial Applications; 2013.

1.5 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: Provide data on product characteristics and performance criteria for each product indicated.
- B. Schedule: Submit schedule indicating product type and location.

1.6 FIELD CONDITIONS

- A. Do not install insulation adhesives when temperature or weather conditions are detrimental to successful installation.

PART 2 – PRODUCTS

2.1 APPLICATIONS

- A. Insulation at Perimeter of Foundation: Expanded polystyrene board.
- B. Insulation between Ends of Joist Bays: Batt insulation with no vapor retarder.

2.2 FOAM BOARD INSULATION MATERIALS

- A. Expanded Polystyrene (EPS) Board Insulation: ASTM C578, Type XI; with the following characteristics:
 - 1. Flame Spread Index (FSI): Class A - 0 to 25, when tested in accordance with ASTM E84.

2. Smoke Developed Index (SDI): 450 or less, when tested in accordance with ASTM E84.
3. Board Thickness: 2 inches (50 mm).
4. Thermal Resistance: R-value of 9 or greater.
5. Manufacturers:
 - a. AFM Corp: www.r-control.com.
 - b. Diversifoam Products: www.diversifoam.com.
 - c. Insulfoam LLC: www.insulfoam.com/#sle.
 - d. Mar-flex Waterproofing & Building Products: www.mar-flex.com/#sle.

2.3 BATT INSULATION MATERIALS

- A. Where batt insulation is indicated, either glass fiber or mineral fiber batt insulation may be used, at Contractor's option.
- B. Glass Fiber Batt Insulation: Flexible preformed batt or blanket, complying with ASTM C665; friction fit.
 1. Combustibility: Non-combustible, when tested in accordance with ASTM E136, except for facing, if any.
 2. Formaldehyde Content: Zero.
 3. Thermal Resistance: R-value of 9 or greater.
 4. Manufacturers:
 - a. CertainTeed Corporation: www.certainteed.com.
 - b. Johns Manville: www.jm.com.
 - c. Owens Corning Corporation; EcoTouch PINK FIBERGLAS Insulation: www.ocbuildingspec.com/#sle.
- C. Mineral Fiber Batt Insulation: Flexible or semi-rigid preformed batt or blanket, complying with ASTM C665; friction fit; unfaced flame spread index of 0 (zero) when tested in accordance with ASTM E84.
 1. Smoke Developed Index: 0 (zero), when tested in accordance with ASTM E84.
 2. Thermal Resistance: R-value of 9 or greater.
 3. Manufacturers:
 - a. Johns Manville; MinWool Sound Attenuation Fire Batts: www.jm.com/#sle.
 - b. Knauf Insulation; EcoBatt Insulation: www.knaufinsulation.com/#sle.
 - c. Thermafiber, Inc; SAFB: www.thermafiber.com/#sle.

2.4 ACCESSORIES

- A. Adhesive: Vapor retarder type, trowel consistency; fire retardant, compatible with insulation and substrate.

PART 3 – EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Verify that substrate, adjacent materials, and insulation materials are dry and that substrates are ready to receive insulation.
- B. Verify substrate surfaces are flat, free of honeycomb, fins, irregularities, or materials or substances that may impede adhesive bond.

3.2 BOARD INSTALLATION AT FOUNDATION PERIMETER

- A. Apply adhesive to back of boards.
- B. Install boards horizontally on foundation perimeter/crawl space walls.
- C. Wrap boards over stem wall and back to rim joist.
- C. Cut and fit insulation tightly to protrusions or interruptions to the insulation plane.

3.3 BATT INSTALLATION

- A. Install insulation in accordance with manufacturer's instructions.
- B. Install in crawl space joist bay spaces without gaps or voids. Do not compress insulation.
- C. Trim insulation neatly to fit spaces. Insulate miscellaneous gaps and voids.
- D. Fit insulation tightly in cavities and tightly to exterior side of mechanical and electrical services within the plane of the insulation.

END OF SECTION

SECTION 07 2126 - BLOWN INSULATION

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 SECTION INCLUDES

- A. Exterior Walls: Loose insulation pneumatically placed and poured into wall spaces through access holes.
- B. Attic: Loose insulation pneumatically placed and poured into joist spaces.

1.2 REFERENCE STANDARDS

- A. ASTM C739 - Standard Specification for Cellulosic Fiber Loose-Fill Thermal Insulation; 2017.
- B. ASTM C1015 - Standard Practice for Installation of Cellulosic and Mineral Fiber Loose-Fill Thermal Insulation; 2017.

1.3 SYSTEM DESCRIPTION

- A. Materials of This Section: Provide continuity of thermal barrier at building enclosure elements.

1.4 SUBMITTALS

- A. See Section 01 3000 – Administrative Requirements, for submittal procedures.
- B. Product Data: Provide data on product characteristics, performance criteria, limitations.
- C. Manufacturer's Installation Instructions: Indicate procedure for preparation and installation.

PART 2 – PRODUCTS

2.1 MANUFACTURERS

- A. Blown Insulation:
 - 1. CertainTeed Corporation: www.certainteed.com.
 - 2. GreenFiber: www.greenfiber.com.

3. Johns Manville: www.jm.com.
4. Substitutions: See Section 01 – Substitution Procedures.

2.2 MATERIALS

- A. Loose Fill Insulation: ASTM C739, cellulose fiber type, bulk for pneumatic placement.
 1. Thermal Conductivity: 0.27 BTU in/(hr sq ft deg F) (0.0389 W/(m K)).
 2. Installed Wall Thickness: Full cavity.
 3. Total Thermal Resistance at Attic: R-value of 40.0 (deg F hr sq ft)/Btu.
- B. Ventilation Baffles: Formed plastic.

PART 3 – EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Verify that substrate, adjacent materials, and insulation are dry and ready to receive insulation.
- B. Verify that light fixtures have thermal cut-out device to restrict over-heating in soffit or ceiling spaces.
- C. Verify spaces are unobstructed to allow placement of insulation.

3.2 INSTALLATION

- A. Install insulation and ventilation baffle in accordance with ASTM C1015 and manufacturer's instructions.
- B. Place insulation pneumatically to completely fill stud and joist spaces.
- C. Place insulation against baffles. Do not impede natural attic ventilation to soffit.
- D. Completely fill intended spaces. Leave no gaps or voids.
- E. Repair insulation access ports. Refinish to match existing adjacent.

3.3 CLEANING

- A. Remove loose insulation residue.

3.4 SCHEDULES

- A. Existing Exterior Walls: Pneumatically placed into wall stud spaces, full width of cavity.
- B. Attic Spaces: Pour insulation between ceiling joists to achieve an R-value of 40.

END OF SECTION

SECTION 09 2900 - GYPSUM BOARD

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SECTION INCLUDES

- A. Interior gypsum board.
- B. Tile backing panels.

1.3 DELIVERY, STORAGE AND HANDLING

- A. Store materials inside under cover and keep them dry and protected against weather, condensation, direct sunlight, construction traffic, and other potential causes of damage. Stack panels flat and supported on risers on a flat platform to prevent sagging.

1.4 FIELD CONDITIONS

- A. Environmental Limitations: Comply with ASTM C 840 requirements or gypsum board manufacturer's written recommendations, whichever are more stringent.
- B. Do not install paper-faced gypsum panels until installation areas are enclosed and conditioned.
- C. Do not install panels that are wet, those that are moisture damaged, and those that are mold damaged.
 - 1. Indications that panels are wet or moisture damaged include, but are not limited to, discoloration, sagging, or irregular shape.
 - 2. Indications that panels are mold damaged include, but are not limited to, fuzzy or splotchy surface contamination and discoloration.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Fire-Resistance-Rated Assemblies: For fire-resistance-rated assemblies, provide materials and construction identical to those tested in assembly indicated according to ASTM E 119 by an independent testing agency.

2.2 GYPSUM BOARD, GENERAL

- A. Recycled Content of Gypsum Panel Products: Postconsumer recycled content plus one-half of preconsumer recycled content not less than 5 percent.
- B. Size: Provide maximum lengths and widths available that will minimize joints in each area and that correspond with support system indicated.

2.3 INTERIOR GYPSUM BOARD

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following or approved equal:
 - 1. Basis of Design: American Gypsum.
- B. Substitutions: See Section 01 – Substitution Procedures.
- C. Gypsum Board, Type X: ASTM C 1396/C 1396M.
 - 1. Thickness: 5/8 inch.
 - 2. Long Edges: Tapered.
- D. Moisture- and Mold-Resistant Gypsum Board: ASTM C 1396/C 1396M. With moisture- and mold-resistant core and paper surfaces.
 - 1. Core: 5/8 inch.
 - 2. Long Edges: Tapered.
 - 3. Mold Resistance: ASTM D 3273, score of 10.
 - 4. Locations: Wet wall locations, full wall area.

2.4 TILE BACKING PANELS

- A. Glass-Mat, Water-Resistant Backing Board: ASTM C 1178/C 1178M, with manufacturer's standard edges.
 - 1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the following:
 - a. CertainTeed Corp.; GlasRoc Tile Backer.
 - b. Georgia-Pacific Gypsum LLC; DensShield Tile Backer.
 - 2. Core: 5/8 inch, Type X.
 - 3. Mold Resistance: ASTM D 3273, score of 10.

2.5 TRIM ACCESSORIES

- A. Interior Trim: ASTM C 1047.
 - 1. Material: Galvanized or aluminum-coated steel sheet or rolled zinc.
 - 2. Shapes:
 - a. Cornerbead.
 - b. LC-Bead: J-shaped; exposed long flange receives joint compound.
 - c. L-Bead: L-shaped; exposed long flange receives joint compound.
 - d. U-Bead: J-shaped; exposed short flange does not receive joint compound.
 - e. Reveal Bead: shape as indicated on Drawings;
 - f. Expansion (control) joint.

2.6 JOINT TREATMENT MATERIALS

- A. General: Comply with ASTM C 475/C 475M.
- B. Joint Tape:
 - 1. Interior Gypsum Board: Paper.
 - 2. Tile Backing Panels: As recommended by panel manufacturer.

- C. Joint Compound for Interior Gypsum Board: For each coat use formulation that is compatible with other compounds applied on previous or for successive coats.
 - 1. Prefilling: At open joints, rounded or beveled panel edges, and damaged surface areas, use setting-type taping compound.
 - 2. Embedding and First Coat: For embedding tape and first coat on joints, fasteners, and trim flanges, use drying-type, all-purpose compound.
 - a. Use setting-type compound for installing paper-faced metal trim accessories.
 - 3. Fill Coat: For second coat, use drying-type, all-purpose compound.
 - 4. Finish Coat: For third coat, use drying-type, all-purpose compound.
 - 5. Skim Coat: For final coat of Level 5 finish, use drying-type, all-purpose compound or high-build interior coating product designed for application by airless sprayer and to be used instead of skim coat to produce Level 5 finish as approved by Architect.

- D. Joint Compound for Tile Backing Panels:
 - 1. Glass-Mat, Water-Resistant Backing Panel: As recommended by backing panel manufacturer.

2.7 AUXILIARY MATERIALS

- A. General: Provide auxiliary materials that comply with referenced installation standards and manufacturer's written recommendations.
- B. Laminating Adhesive: Adhesive or joint compound recommended for directly adhering gypsum panels to continuous substrate.
 - 1. Laminating adhesive shall have a VOC content of 50 g/L or less when calculated according to 40 CFR 59, Subpart D (EPA Method 24).
- C. Steel Drill Screws: ASTM C 1002, unless otherwise indicated.
 - 1. Use screws complying with ASTM C 954 for fastening panels to steel members from 0.033 to 0.112 inch thick.
 - 2. For fastening cementitious backer units, use screws of type and size recommended by panel manufacturer.
- D. Sound Attenuation Blankets: ASTM C 665, Type I (blankets without membrane facing) produced by combining thermosetting resins with mineral fibers manufactured from glass, slag wool, or rock wool.
 - 1. Fire-Resistance-Rated Assemblies: Comply with mineral-fiber requirements of assembly.
 - 2. Recycled Content of Blankets: Postconsumer recycled content plus one-half of preconsumer recycled content not less than 30 percent.
 - 3. Sustainability: Formaldehyde Free.
 - 4. Fill: Full wall cavity.
- E. Acoustical Joint Sealant: Manufacturer's standard nonsag, paintable, nonstaining latex sealant complying with ASTM C 834. Product effectively reduces airborne sound transmission through perimeter joints and openings in building construction as demonstrated by testing representative assemblies according to ASTM E 90.
 - 1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the following or approved equal:

- a. Accumetric LLC; BOSS 824 Acoustical Sound Sealant.
 - b. Grabber Construction Products; Acoustical Sealant GSCSF.
 - c. Pecora Corporation; AC-20 FTR.
 - d. Specified Technologies, Inc.; Smoke N Sound Acoustical Sealant.
 - e. USG Corporation; SHEETROCK Acoustical Sealant.
2. Acoustical joint sealant shall have a VOC content of 250 g/L or less when calculated according to 40 CFR 59, Subpart D (EPA Method 24).
- F. Firestop and Acoustic Putty Pads for Electrical Boxes: Listed intumescent moldable firestop putty pads. Product: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the following or approved equal:
1. Hilti Corporation; CP 617 6" x 7" Putty Pad or CP 617L 7" x 7" Putty Pad.
 2. Specified Technologies Inc. (STI); SpecSeal Series SSP Putty Pad.
- G. Firestop Inserts for Electrical Boxes: Listed intumescent firestop inserts. Product: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the following or approved equal:
1. A/D Fire Protection Systems; A/D FireBarrier Inserts.
 2. Rectorseal; Metacauld Box Guard.
 3. Specified Technologies Inc. (STI); SpecSeal Series Powershield Electrical Box Inserts.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine areas and substrates including welded hollow-metal frames and framing, with Installer present, for compliance with requirements and other conditions affecting performance.
- B. Examine panels before installation. Reject panels that are wet, moisture damaged, and mold damaged.
- C. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.2 APPLYING AND FINISHING PANELS, GENERAL

- A. Comply with ASTM C 840.
- B. Install ceiling panels across framing to minimize the number of abutting end joints and to avoid abutting end joints in central area of each ceiling. Stagger abutting end joints of adjacent panels not less than one framing member.
- C. Install panels with face side out. Butt panels together for a light contact at edges and ends with not more than 1/16 inch of open space between panels. Do not force into place.
- D. Locate edge and end joints over supports, except in ceiling applications where intermediate supports or gypsum board back-blocking is provided behind end joints. Do not place tapered edges against cut edges or ends. Stagger vertical joints on opposite sides of partitions. Do not make joints other than control joints at corners of framed openings.

- E. Form control and expansion joints with space between edges of adjoining gypsum panels.
- F. Cover both faces of support framing with gypsum panels in concealed spaces (above ceilings, etc., except in chases braced internally).
 - 1. Unless concealed application is indicated or required for sound, air, or smoke ratings, coverage may be accomplished with scraps of not less than 8 sq. ft. in area.
 - 2. Fit gypsum panels around ducts, pipes, and conduits.
 - 3. Where partitions intersect structural members projecting below underside of floor/roof slabs and decks, cut gypsum panels to fit profile formed by structural members; allow 1/4- to 3/8-inch- wide joints to install sealant.
- G. Isolate perimeter of gypsum board applied to non-load-bearing partitions at structural abutments, except floors. Provide 1/4- to 1/2-inch- wide spaces at these locations and trim edges with edge trim where edges of panels are exposed. Seal joints between edges and abutting structural surfaces with acoustical sealant.
- H. Attachment to Steel Framing: Attach panels so leading edge or end of each panel is attached to open (unsupported) edges of stud flanges first.
- I. STC-Rated Assemblies: Seal construction at perimeters, behind control joints, and at openings and penetrations with a continuous bead of acoustical sealant. Install acoustical sealant at both faces of partitions at perimeters and through penetrations. Comply with ASTM C 919 and with manufacturer's written recommendations for locating edge trim and closing off sound-flanking paths around or through assemblies, including sealing partitions above acoustical ceilings.
- J. Install sound attenuation blankets before installing gypsum panels unless blankets are readily installed after panels have been installed on one side.

3.3 APPLYING INTERIOR GYPSUM BOARD

- A. Install interior gypsum board in the following locations:
 - 1. Type X: All horizontal and vertical surfaces unless indicated otherwise.
 - 2. Moisture- and Mold-Resistant Type: At all wet locations, entire wall.
- B. Single-Layer Application:
 - 1. On ceilings, apply gypsum panels before wall/partition board application to greatest extent possible and at right angles to framing unless otherwise indicated.
 - 2. On partitions/walls, apply gypsum panels vertically (parallel to framing) unless otherwise indicated or required by fire-resistance-rated assembly, and minimize end joints.
 - a. Stagger abutting end joints not less than one framing member in alternate courses of panels.
 - b. At high walls, install panels horizontally.
 - 3. On Z-furring members, apply gypsum panels vertically (parallel to framing) with no end joints. Locate edge joints over furring members.
 - 4. Fastening Methods: Apply gypsum panels to supports with steel drill screws.
- C. Multilayer Application:

1. On ceilings, apply gypsum board indicated for base layers before applying base layers on walls/partitions; apply face layers in same sequence. Apply base layers at right angles to framing members and offset face-layer joints one framing member, 16 inches minimum, from parallel base-layer joints, unless otherwise indicated.
2. On partitions/walls, apply gypsum board indicated for base layers and face layers vertically (parallel to framing) with joints of base layers located over stud or furring member and face-layer joints offset at least one stud or furring member with base-layer joints, unless otherwise indicated. Stagger joints on opposite sides of partitions.
3. On Z-furring members, apply base layer vertically (parallel to framing) and face layer either vertically (parallel to framing) or horizontally (perpendicular to framing) with vertical joints offset at least one furring member. Locate edge joints of base layer over furring members.
4. Fastening Methods: Fasten base layers and face layers separately to supports with screws.

- D. Laminating to Substrate: Where gypsum panels are indicated as directly adhered to a substrate (other than studs, joists, furring members, or base layer of gypsum board), comply with gypsum board manufacturer's written recommendations and temporarily brace or fasten gypsum panels until fastening adhesive has set.

3.4 APPLYING TILE BACKING PANELS

- A. Glass-Mat, Water-Resistant Backing Panels: Comply with manufacturer's written installation instructions and install at locations indicated to receive tile. Install with 1/4-inch gap where panels abut other construction or penetrations.
- B. Where tile backing panels abut other types of panels in same plane, shim surfaces to produce a uniform plane across panel surfaces.

3.5 INSTALLING TRIM ACCESSORIES

- A. General: For trim with back flanges intended for fasteners, attach to framing with same fasteners used for panels. Otherwise, attach trim according to manufacturer's written instructions.
- B. Control Joints: Install control joints at locations indicated on Drawings and according to ASTM C 840 and in specific locations approved by Architect for visual effect.
- C. Interior Trim: Install in the following locations:
1. Cornerbead: Use at outside corners unless otherwise indicated.
 2. LC-Bead: Use at exposed panel edges.
 3. L-Bead: Use where indicated on Drawings.
 4. U-Bead: Use at exposed panel edges and where indicated.
 5. Reveal Bead: Use where indicated on Drawings.

3.6 FINISHING GYPSUM BOARD

- A. General: Treat gypsum board joints, interior angles, edge trim, control joints, penetrations, fastener heads, surface defects, and elsewhere as required to prepare

gypsum board surfaces for decoration. Promptly remove residual joint compound from adjacent surfaces.

- B. Prefill open joints, rounded or beveled edges, and damaged surface areas.
- C. Apply joint tape over gypsum board joints, except for trim products specifically indicated as not intended to receive tape.
- D. Gypsum Board Finish Levels: Finish panels to levels indicated below and according to ASTM C 840:
 - 1. Level 1: Ceiling plenum areas, concealed areas, and where indicated.
 - 2. Level 2: Panels that are substrate for tile and where indicated on Drawings.
 - 3. Level 5: At panel surfaces that will be exposed to view unless otherwise indicated.
- E. Glass-Mat Faced Panels: Finish according to manufacturer's written instructions.

3.7 PROTECTION

- A. Protect adjacent surfaces from drywall compound and promptly remove from floors and other non-drywall surfaces. Repair surfaces stained, marred, or otherwise damaged during drywall application.
- B. Protect installed products from damage from weather, condensation, direct sunlight, construction, and other causes during remainder of the construction period.
- C. Remove and replace panels that are wet, moisture damaged, and mold damaged.
 - 1. Indications that panels are wet or moisture damaged include, but are not limited to, discoloration, sagging, or irregular shape.
 - 2. Indications that panels are mold damaged include, but are not limited to, fuzzy or splotchy surface contamination and discoloration.

END OF SECTION

SECTION 09 3000 - TILING

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SECTION INCLUDES

- A. Tile, setting material, and grout.

1.3 RELATED SECTIONS

- A. Division 09 Section "Gypsum Board" for glass-mat, water-resistant backer board.

1.4 DEFINITIONS

- A. General: Definitions in the ANSI A108 series of tile installation standards and in ANSI A137.1 apply to Work of this Section unless otherwise specified.

1.5 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Static Coefficient of Friction: For tile installed on walkway surfaces, provide products with the following values as determined by testing identical products per ASTM C 1028:
 - 1. Level Surfaces: Minimum 0.6.
 - 2. Step Treads: Minimum 0.5.
 - 3. Ramp Surfaces: Minimum 0.8.
- B. Dynamic Coefficient of Friction: For tile installed on walkway surfaces, provide products with the following values as determined by testing identical products per ANSI A137.1 DCOF AcuTest procedure:
 - 1. Level Surfaces: Minimum 0.42.
 - 2. Step Treads: Minimum 0.42.
 - 3. Ramp Surfaces: Industry minimum standard.
- C. Setting Adhesives and Grouts: Must meet SCAQMD Rule 1168.

1.6 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product indicated.
- B. Sustainability Submittal:
 - 1. Product Data: For sealants, including printed statement of VOC content.
- C. Samples for Verification:
 - 1. Full-size units of each type and composition of tile and for each color and finish required. For ceramic mosaic tile in color blend patterns, provide full sheets of each color blend.

1.7 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Source Limitations for Tile: Obtain tile of each type and color or finish from one source or producer.
 - 1. Obtain tile of each type and color or finish from same production run and of consistent quality in appearance and physical properties for each contiguous area.
- B. Source Limitations for Setting and Grouting Materials: Obtain ingredients of a uniform quality for each mortar, adhesive, and grout component from one manufacturer and each aggregate from one source or producer.
- C. Preinstallation Conference: Conduct conference at Project site.
 - 1. Review requirements in ANSI A108.01 for substrates and for preparation by other trades.

1.8 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Deliver and store packaged materials in original containers with seals unbroken and labels intact until time of use. Comply with requirements in ANSI A137.1 for labeling tile packages.
- B. Store tile and cementitious materials on elevated platforms, under cover, and in a dry location.
- C. Store aggregates where grading and other required characteristics can be maintained and contamination can be avoided.
- D. Store liquid materials in unopened containers and protected from freezing.
- E. Handle tile that has temporary protective coating on exposed surfaces to prevent coated surfaces from contacting backs or edges of other units. If coating does contact bonding surfaces of tile, remove coating from bonding surfaces before setting tile.

1.9 PROJECT CONDITIONS

- A. Environmental Limitations: Do not install tile until construction in spaces is complete and ambient temperature and humidity conditions are maintained at the levels indicated in referenced standards and manufacturer's written instructions.

1.10 EXTRA MATERIALS

- A. Furnish extra materials that match and are from same production runs as products installed and that are packaged with protective covering for storage and identified with labels describing contents.
 - 1. Tile and Trim Units: Furnish quantity of full-size units equal to 3 percent of amount installed for each type, composition, color, pattern, and size indicated.
 - 2. Grout: Furnish quantity of grout equal to 3 percent of amount installed for each type, composition, and color indicated.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 PRODUCTS, GENERAL

- A. ANSI Standards for Tile Installation Materials: Provide materials complying with ANSI A108.02, ANSI standards referenced in other Part 2 articles, ANSI standards referenced by TCNA installation methods specified in tile installation schedules, and other requirements specified.
- B. Factory Blending: For tile exhibiting color variations within ranges, blend tile in factory and package so tile units taken from one package show same range in colors as those taken from other packages and match approved Samples.
- C. Mounting: For factory-mounted tile, provide back- or edge-mounted tile assemblies as standard with manufacturer unless otherwise indicated.
 - 1. Where tile is indicated for installation in wet areas, do not use back- or edge-mounted tile assemblies unless tile manufacturer specifies in writing that this type of mounting is suitable for installation indicated and has a record of successful in-service performance.

2.2 TILE PRODUCTS

- A. Tile Type:
 - 1. Basis-of-Design Product: See Applied Finish Legend on Drawings for manufacturer and product.
 - 2. Grout Color: See Applied Finish Legend on Drawings for manufacturer and product.

2.3 SETTING MATERIALS

- A. Latex-Portland Cement Mortar (Thin Set): ANSI A118.4 with minimum 300 psi shear bond strength.
 - 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
 - a. Custom Building Products.
 - b. Laticrete International, Inc.
 - c. MAPEI Corporation.
 - d. TEC; a subsidiary of H. B. Fuller Company.
 - 2. For wall applications, provide mortar that complies with requirements for nonsagging mortar in addition to the other requirements in ANSI A118.4.

2.4 GROUT MATERIALS

- A. Water-Cleanable Epoxy Grout: ANSI A118.3.
 - 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
 - a. Custom Building Products.
 - b. Laticrete International, Inc.
 - c. MAPEI Corporation.

- d. TEC; a subsidiary of H. B. Fuller Company.

2.5 ELASTOMERIC SEALANTS

- A. General: Provide sealants, primers, backer rods, and other sealant accessories.
 - 1. Use sealants that have a VOC content of 250 g/L or less when calculated according to 40 CFR 59, Subpart D (EPA Method 24).
 - 2. Use primers, backer rods, and sealant accessories recommended by sealant manufacturer.
- B. Colors: See Applied Finish Legend on Drawings.
- C. One-Part, Mildew-Resistant Silicone Sealant: ASTM C 920; Type S; Grade NS; Class 25; Uses NT, G, A, and, as applicable to nonporous joint substrates indicated, O; formulated with fungicide, intended for sealing interior porcelain tile joints and other nonporous substrates that are subject to in-service exposures of high humidity and extreme temperatures.
 - 1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, available products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
 - a. Dow Corning Corporation; Dow Corning 786.
 - b. GE Silicones; a division of GE Specialty Materials; Sanitary 1700.
 - c. Laticrete International, Inc.; Latacil Tile & Stone Sealant.
 - d. Pecora Corporation; Pecora 898 Sanitary Silicone Sealant.
 - e. Tremco Incorporated; Tremsil 600 White.

2.6 MISCELLANEOUS MATERIALS

- A. Trowelable Underlayments and Patching Compounds: Latex-modified, portland cement-based formulation provided or approved by manufacturer of tile-setting materials for installations indicated.
- B. Tile Cleaner: A neutral cleaner capable of removing soil and residue without harming tile and grout surfaces, specifically approved for materials and installations indicated by tile and grout manufacturers.

2.7 MIXING MORTARS AND GROUT

- A. Mix mortars and grouts to comply with referenced standards and mortar and grout manufacturers' written instructions.
- B. Add materials, water, and additives in accurate proportions.
- C. Obtain and use type of mixing equipment, mixer speeds, mixing containers, mixing time, and other procedures to produce mortars and grouts of uniform quality with optimum performance characteristics for installations indicated.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine substrates, areas, and conditions where tile will be installed, with Installer present, for compliance with requirements for installation tolerances and other

conditions affecting performance of installed tile.

1. Verify that substrates for setting tile are firm, dry, clean, free of coatings that are incompatible with tile-setting materials including curing compounds and other substances that contain soap, wax, oil, or silicone; and comply with flatness tolerances required by ANSI A108.01 for installations indicated.
2. Verify that concrete substrates for tile floors installed with bonded mortar bed or thin-set mortar comply with surface finish requirements in ANSI A108.01 for installations indicated.
 - a. Verify that surfaces that received a steel trowel finish have been mechanically scarified.
 - b. Verify that protrusions, bumps, and ridges have been removed by sanding or grinding.
3. Verify that installation of grounds, anchors, recessed frames, electrical and mechanical units of work, and similar items located in or behind tile has been completed.
4. Verify that joints and cracks in tile substrates are coordinated with tile joint locations; if not coordinated, adjust joint locations in consultation with Architect.

B. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.2 PREPARATION

- A. Fill cracks, holes, and depressions in substrates for tile floors installed with thin-set mortar with trowelable leveling and patching compound specifically recommended by tile-setting material manufacturer.
- B. Where indicated, prepare substrates to receive waterproofing by applying a reinforced mortar bed that complies with ANSI A108.1A and is sloped 1/4 inch per foot toward drains.
- C. Blending: For tile exhibiting color variations, verify that tile has been factory blended and packaged so tile units taken from one package show same range of colors as those taken from other packages and match approved Samples. If not factory blended, either return to manufacturer or blend tiles at Project site before installing.

3.3 TILE INSTALLATION

- A. Comply with TCNA's "Handbook for Ceramic, Glass, and Stone Tile Installation" for TCNA installation methods specified in tile installation schedules. Comply with parts of the ANSI A108 Series "Specifications for Installation of Ceramic Tile" that are referenced in TCNA installation methods, specified in tile installation schedules, and apply to types of setting and grouting materials used.
 1. For the following installations, follow procedures in the ANSI A108 Series of tile installation standards for providing 95 percent mortar coverage:
 - a. Tile floors in wet areas.
 - b. Tile floors composed of tiles 8 by 8 inches or larger.
 - c. Tile floors composed of rib-backed tiles.
- B. Extend tile work into recesses and under or behind equipment and fixtures to form complete covering without interruptions unless otherwise indicated. Terminate work neatly at obstructions, edges, and corners without disrupting pattern or joint alignments.

- C. Accurately form intersections and returns. Perform cutting and drilling of tile without marring visible surfaces. Carefully grind cut edges of tile abutting trim, finish, or built-in items for straight aligned joints. Fit tile closely to electrical outlets, piping, fixtures, and other penetrations so plates, collars, or covers overlap tile.
- D. Jointing Pattern: Lay tile in grid pattern unless otherwise indicated on drawings. Lay out tile work and center tile fields in both directions in each space or on each wall area. Lay out tile work to minimize the use of pieces that are less than half of a tile. Provide uniform joint widths unless otherwise indicated.
 - 1. Where adjoining tiles on floor, base, walls, or trim are specified or indicated to be same size, align joints.
 - 2. Where tiles are specified or indicated to be whole integer multiples of adjoining tiles on floor, base, walls, or trim, align joints unless otherwise indicated.
- E. Joint Widths: Unless otherwise indicated, install tile with 1/8 inch joint widths.
- F. Expansion Joints: Provide expansion joints and other sealant-filled joints, including control, contraction, and isolation joints, where indicated. Form joints during installation of setting materials, mortar beds, and tile. Do not saw-cut joints after installing tiles.
 - 1. Locate joints as indicated on drawings. If not indicated, as directed by Architect, and as follows.
 - 2. Where joints occur in concrete substrates, locate joints in tile surfaces directly above them.
 - 3. Prepare joints and apply sealants to comply with requirements in Division 07 Section "Joint Sealants."
 - 4. Comply with requirements of the TCNA Handbook for Ceramic, Glass, and Stone Tile Installation; "EJ171 - Movement Joint Guidelines for Ceramic, Glass, and Stone."
- G. Metal Edge Strips: Install at locations indicated in Article 2.8.

3.4 WATERPROOFING INSTALLATION

- A. Install waterproofing to comply with ANSI A108.13 and manufacturer's written instructions to produce waterproof membrane of uniform thickness and bonded securely to substrate.
- B. Do not install tile or setting materials over waterproofing until waterproofing has cured and been tested to determine that it is watertight.

3.5 CRACK ISOLATION MEMBRANE INSTALLATION

- A. Install crack isolation membrane to comply with ANSI A108.17 and manufacturer's written instructions to produce membrane of uniform thickness and bonded securely to substrate.
- B. Do not install tile or setting materials over crack isolation membrane until membrane has cured.

3.6 CLEANING AND PROTECTING

- A. Cleaning: On completion of placement and grouting, clean all ceramic tile surfaces so they are free of foreign matter.
 - 1. Remove epoxy and latex-portland cement grout residue from tile as soon as possible.
 - 2. Clean grout smears and haze from tile according to tile and grout manufacturer's written instructions but no sooner than 10 days after installation. Use only cleaners recommended by tile and grout manufacturers and only after determining that cleaners are safe to use by testing on samples of tile and other surfaces to be cleaned. Protect metal surfaces and plumbing fixtures from effects of cleaning. Flush surfaces with clean water before and after cleaning.
 - 3. Remove temporary protective coating by method recommended by coating manufacturer and that is acceptable to tile and grout manufacturer. Trap and remove coating to prevent drain clogging.
- B. Protect installed tile work with kraft paper or other heavy covering during construction period to prevent staining, damage, and wear. If recommended by tile manufacturer, apply coat of neutral protective cleaner to completed tile walls and floors.
- C. Prohibit foot and wheel traffic from tiled floors for at least seven days after grouting is completed.
- D. Before final inspection, remove protective coverings and rinse neutral protective cleaner from tile surfaces.

END OF SECTION

SECTION 09 9723 – CONCRETE SEALERS

PART 1 – GENERAL

1.1 SUMMARY

- A. This Section specifies an applied sealer for horizontal cast-in-place concrete surfaces.

1.2 SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: Submit manufacturer's product data and installation instructions.

1.3 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Manufacturer: Minimum 5 years experience producing concrete coatings.
- B. Installer: Licensed installers experienced and trained in the use of specified products.
- C. Suitability of Substrate: Concrete surface must be clean and dry with all stains, oil, grease, dust and dirt removed prior to application. A thorough pressure washing is highly recommended.
- D. Regulatory Requirements: Comply with requirements of authorities having jurisdiction and applicable codes at the location of the project.

1.4 DELIVERY, STORAGE AND HANDLING

- A. Deliver materials and products in unopened factory labeled packages. Protect from damage.
- B. Store in a safe place, out of direct sunlight. Keep containers tightly sealed. Do not allow product to freeze. Use within manufacturer's recommended shelf life, approximately 12 months.

PART 2 – PRODUCTS

2.1 MATERIALS

- A. Concrete Sealer: High-performance, non-yellowing, clear acrylic-based sealer by Concrete Coatings Inc., 1105 North 1600 West, Layton, UT 84041, 800-443-2871, www.concretecoatingsinc.com. Provide the following:
 - 1. Sealer with Gloss Finish: CCI GemKote 350, with 350 g/L VOC.
 - 2. Performance: Concrete sealers shall meet or exceed the following:

- a. Coverage: As recommended by manufacturer.
- b. Moisture Retention, Test ASTM C 309: 0.21 kg/m² at 200 ft² per gallon and 0.32 kg/m² at 300 ft² per gallon.
- c. Gasoline Resistance: Slight dulling after 15-minute exposure (ponding).
- d. Tg: 50°C.
- e. Tukon Hardness: 30 minutes at 180°F, 9.3; 30 minutes at 300°F, 13.7.
- f. Pencil Hardness: 30 minutes at 180°F, F; 30 minutes at 300°F, H.
- g. Spray Conditions, Viscosity: 19 seconds, No. 2 Zhan cup.
- h. Abrasion Resistance: 160 mg lost, CS-17 wheel, 1000 g load, 1000 cycles

PART 3 – EXECUTION

3.1 PREPARATION

- A. Inspection: Prior to start of application, inspect existing conditions to ensure surfaces are suitable for installation including the following:
 1. Concrete has cured for a minimum of 28 days prior to application of sealer.
 2. Surface is completely free of sealers, oils, dirt, paint, alkali, penetrating sealers and foreign materials that would prevent the sealer from penetrating the concrete surface.
 3. Concrete has been swept clean.

3.2 APPLICATION

- A. Concrete Sealer: Strictly comply with manufacturer's installation recommendations including the following.
 1. Clean surface as recommended by manufacturer.
 2. All concrete flatwork designated as being sealed in the plans and specifications shall be sealed with 2-3 even coats of sealer, at the rate of approximately 150 to 200 square feet per gallon.

3.3 CLEANING AND PROTECTION

- A. Protection: Do not cover, but protect floor area from paint and other contaminants that could inhibit the sealer.

END OF SECTION

SECTION 10 4413 - FIRE EXTINGUISHER CABINETS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SECTION INCLUDES

- A. Fire protection cabinets for the following:
 - 1. Portable fire extinguishers and accessories.

1.3 RELATED SECTIONS

- A. Division 10 Section "Fire Extinguishers."

1.4 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product indicated. Include construction details, material descriptions, dimensions of individual components and profiles, and finishes for fire protection cabinets.
 - 1. Fire Protection Cabinets: Include roughing-in dimensions, details showing mounting methods, relationships of box and trim to surrounding construction, door hardware, cabinet type, trim style, and panel style.

1.5 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

- A. Maintenance Data: For fire protection cabinets to include in maintenance manuals.

1.6 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Fire-Rated, Fire Protection Cabinets: Listed and labeled to comply with requirements in ASTM E 814 for fire-resistance rating of walls where they are installed.

1.7 COORDINATION

- A. Coordinate size of fire protection cabinets to ensure that type and capacity of fire extinguishers indicated are accommodated.
- B. Coordinate sizes and locations of fire protection cabinets with wall depths.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 MATERIALS

- A. Stainless Steel
- B. Tempered Float Glass: ASTM C 1048, Kind FT, Condition A, Type I, Quality q3, 3 mm thick, Class 1 (clear).

2.2 FIRE PROTECTION CABINET

- A. Cabinet Type: Suitable for fire extinguisher.
 - 1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the following or approved equal:
 - a. Basis of Design: Ambassador Series by J. L. Industries Inc, a division of Activar Construction Products Group; Academy Series.
- B. Substitutions: See Section 01 – Substitution Procedures.
- C. Cabinet Construction: Nonrated unless indicated otherwise.
- D. Cabinet Material: Stainless Steel.
 - 1. Shelf: Same metal and finish as cabinet.
- E. Recessed Cabinet: Cabinet box recessed in walls of sufficient depth to suit style of trim indicated.
 - 1. Model 1016G17, 1 1/2" Square Trim with Concealed Flange: Surface of surrounding wall finishes flush with exterior finished surface of cabinet frame and door, without overlapping trim attached to cabinet. Provide recessed flange, of same material as box, attached to box to act as drywall bead.
- F. Surface Mount Cabinet: Cabinet box with exposed trim face.
 - 1. Model 1013G17, Square Trim.
- G. Cabinet Trim Material: Stainless Steel.
- H. Door Material: Stainless Steel.
- I. Cabinet Finish: White Powder-Coat Finish.
- J. Door Style: Full glass panel with pull and lock.
- K. Door Glazing: Tempered float glass (clear).
- L. Door Hardware: Manufacturer's standard door-operating hardware of proper type for cabinet type, trim style, and door material and style indicated.
 - 1. Provide projecting lever handle with cam-action latch.
 - 2. Provide concealed hinge permitting door to open 180 degrees.
- M. Accessories:
 - 1. Mounting Bracket: Manufacturer's standard steel, designed to secure fire extinguisher to fire protection cabinet, of sizes required for types and capacities of fire extinguishers indicated, with plated or baked-enamel finish.
 - 2. Door Lock: Cam lock that allows door to be opened during emergency by pulling sharply on door handle.
 - 3. Identification: Lettering complying with authorities having jurisdiction for letter style, size, spacing, and location.
 - a. Identify fire extinguisher in fire protection cabinet with the words "FIRE EXTINGUISHER."
 - 1) Location: Applied to cabinet door.
 - 2) Application Process: Die cut lettering.
 - 3) Lettering Color: White.

- 4) Orientation: Vertical.

2.3 FABRICATION

- A. Fire Protection Cabinets: Provide manufacturer's standard box (tub) with trim, frame, door, and hardware to suit cabinet type, trim style, and door style indicated.
 1. Weld joints and grind smooth.
 2. Provide factory-drilled mounting holes.
 3. Prepare doors and frames to receive locks.
 4. Install door locks at factory.
- B. Cabinet Doors: Fabricate doors according to manufacturer's standards, from materials indicated and coordinated with cabinet types and trim styles selected.
 1. Fabricate door frames with tubular stiles and rails and hollow-metal design, minimum 1/2 inch thick.
 2. Fabricate door frames of one-piece construction with edges flanged.
 3. Miter and weld perimeter door frames.
- C. Cabinet Trim: Fabricate cabinet trim in one piece with corners mitered, welded, and ground smooth.

2.4 GENERAL FINISH REQUIREMENTS

- A. Comply with NAAMM's "Metal Finishes Manual for Architectural and Metal Products" for recommendations for applying and designating finishes.
- B. Protect mechanical finishes on exposed surfaces of fire protection cabinets from damage by applying a strippable, temporary protective covering before shipping.
- C. Finish fire protection cabinets after assembly.
- D. Appearance of Finished Work: Noticeable variations in same piece are not acceptable. Variations in appearance of adjoining components are acceptable if they are within the range of approved Samples and are assembled or installed to minimize contrast.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine walls and partitions for suitable framing depth and blocking where recessed cabinets will be installed.
- B. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.2 INSTALLATION

- A. General: Install fire protection cabinets in locations and at mounting heights indicated or, if not indicated, at heights acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction.
- B. Fire Protection Cabinets: Fasten cabinets to structure, square and plumb.
 1. Unless otherwise indicated, provide recessed fire protection cabinets. If wall

thickness is not adequate for recessed cabinets, provide semirecessed fire protection cabinets. Verify location with Architect prior to wall preparation.

2. Fasten mounting brackets to inside surface of fire protection cabinets, square and plumb.

- C. Identification: Apply lettering at locations indicated.

3.3 ADJUSTING AND CLEANING

- A. Remove temporary protective coverings and strippable films, if any, as fire protection cabinets are installed unless otherwise indicated in manufacturer's written installation instructions.
- B. Adjust fire protection cabinet doors to operate easily without binding. Verify that integral locking devices operate properly.
- C. On completion of fire protection cabinet installation, clean interior and exterior surfaces as recommended by manufacturer.
- D. Touch up marred finishes, or replace fire protection cabinets that cannot be restored to factory-finished appearance. Use only materials and procedures recommended or furnished by fire protection cabinet and mounting bracket manufacturers.
- E. Replace fire protection cabinets that have been damaged or have deteriorated beyond successful repair by finish touchup or similar minor repair procedures.

END OF SECTION

SECTION 21 0517 - SLEEVES AND SLEEVE SEALS FOR FIRE-SUPPRESSION PIPING

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
 - 1. Sleeves.
 - 2. Stack-sleeve fittings.
 - 3. Sleeve-seal systems.
 - 4. Sleeve-seal fittings.
 - 5. Grout.

1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product indicated.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 SLEEVES

- A. Cast-Iron Wall Pipes: Cast or fabricated of cast or ductile iron and equivalent to ductile-iron pressure pipe, with plain ends and integral waterstop unless otherwise indicated.
- B. Galvanized-Steel Wall Pipes: ASTM A 53/A 53M, Schedule 40, with plain ends and welded steel collar; zinc coated.
- C. Galvanized-Steel-Pipe Sleeves: ASTM A 53/A 53M, Type E, Grade B, Schedule 40, zinc coated, with plain ends.
- D. PVC-Pipe Sleeves: ASTM D 1785, Schedule 40.
- E. Galvanized-Steel-Sheet Sleeves: 0.0239-inch minimum thickness; round tube closed with welded longitudinal joint.
- F. Molded-PE or -PP Sleeves: Removable, tapered-cup shaped, and smooth outer surface with nailing flange for attaching to wooden forms.
- G. Molded-PVC Sleeves: With nailing flange for attaching to wooden forms.

2.2 STACK-SLEEVE FITTINGS

- A. Manufacturers:
 - 1. Jay R. Smith Mfg. Co.
 - 2. Zurn Industries, LLC
 - 3. (Owner Selection)
- B. Description: Manufactured, cast-iron sleeve with integral clamping flange. Include clamping ring, bolts, and nuts for membrane flashing.
 - 1. Underdeck Clamp: Clamping ring with setscrews.

2.3 SLEEVE-SEAL SYSTEMS

- A. Manufacturers:
 - 1. Advanced Products and Systems, Inc.
 - 2. CALPICO, Inc.
 - 3. Metraflex Company
 - 4. (Owner Selection)
- B. Description: Modular sealing-element unit, designed for field assembly, for filling annular space between piping and sleeve.
 - 1. Sealing Elements: NBR interlocking links shaped to fit surface of pipe. Include type and number required for pipe material and size of pipe.
 - 2. Pressure Plates: Carbon steel.
 - 3. Connecting Bolts and Nuts: Carbon steel, with corrosion-resistant coating of length required to secure pressure plates to sealing elements.

2.4 SLEEVE-SEAL FITTINGS

- A. Manufacturers:
 - 1. Advanced Products and Systems, Inc.
 - 2. CALPICO, Inc.
 - 3. Metraflex Company
 - 4. (Owner Selection)
- B. Description: Manufactured plastic, sleeve-type, waterstop assembly made for imbedding in concrete slab or wall. Unit has plastic or rubber waterstop collar with center opening to match piping OD.

2.5 GROUT

- A. Standard: ASTM C 1107/C 1107M, Grade B, post-hardening and volume-adjusting, dry, hydraulic-cement grout.
- B. Characteristics: Nonshrink; recommended for interior and exterior applications.
- C. Design Mix: 5000-psi, 28-day compressive strength.

- D. Packaging: Premixed and factory packaged.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 SLEEVE INSTALLATION

- A. Install sleeves for piping passing through penetrations in floors, partitions, roofs, and walls.
- B. For sleeves that will have sleeve-seal system installed, select sleeves of size large enough to provide 1-inch annular clear space between piping and concrete slabs and walls.
 - 1. Sleeves are not required for core-drilled holes.
- C. Install sleeves in concrete floors, concrete roof slabs, and concrete walls as new slabs and walls are constructed.
 - 1. Permanent sleeves are not required for holes in slabs formed by molded-PE or -PP sleeves.
 - 2. Cut sleeves to length for mounting flush with both surfaces.
 - a. Exception: Extend sleeves installed in floors of mechanical equipment areas or other wet areas 2 inches above finished floor level.
 - 3. Using grout, seal the space outside of sleeves in slabs and walls without sleeve-seal system.
- D. Install sleeves for pipes passing through interior partitions.
 - 1. Cut sleeves to length for mounting flush with both surfaces.
 - 2. Install sleeves that are large enough to provide 1/4-inch annular clear space between sleeve and pipe or pipe insulation.
 - 3. Seal annular space between sleeve and piping or piping insulation; use joint sealants appropriate for size, depth, and location of joint. Comply with requirements for sealants specified in Section 07 9200 "Joint Sealants."
- E. Fire-Barrier Penetrations: Maintain indicated fire rating of walls, partitions, ceilings, and floors at pipe penetrations. Seal pipe penetrations with firestop materials. Comply with requirements for firestopping specified in Section 07 8413 "Penetration Firestopping."

3.2 STACK-SLEEVE-FITTING INSTALLATION

- A. Install stack-sleeve fittings in new slabs as slabs are constructed.
 - 1. Install fittings that are large enough to provide 1/4-inch annular clear space between sleeve and pipe or pipe insulation.
 - 2. Secure flashing between clamping flanges for pipes penetrating floors with membrane waterproofing. Comply with requirements for flashing specified in Section 07 6200 "Sheet Metal Flashing and Trim."

3. Install section of cast-iron soil pipe to extend sleeve to 2 inches above finished floor level.
 4. Extend cast-iron sleeve fittings below floor slab as required to secure clamping ring if ring is specified.
 5. Using grout, seal the space around outside of stack-sleeve fittings.
- B. Fire-Barrier Penetrations: Maintain indicated fire rating of floors at pipe penetrations. Seal pipe penetrations with firestop materials. Comply with requirements for firestopping specified in Section 07 8413 "Penetration Firestopping."

3.3 SLEEVE-SEAL-SYSTEM INSTALLATION

- A. Install sleeve-seal systems in sleeves in exterior concrete walls and slabs-on-grade at service piping entries into building.
- B. Select type, size, and number of sealing elements required for piping material and size and for sleeve ID or hole size. Position piping in center of sleeve. Center piping in penetration, assemble sleeve-seal system components, and install in annular space between piping and sleeve. Tighten bolts against pressure plates that cause sealing elements to expand and make a watertight seal.

3.4 SLEEVE-SEAL-FITTING INSTALLATION

- A. Install sleeve-seal fittings in new walls and slabs as they are constructed.
- B. Assemble fitting components of length to be flush with both surfaces of concrete slabs and walls. Position waterstop flange to be centered in concrete slab or wall.
- C. Secure nailing flanges to concrete forms.
- D. Using grout, seal the space around outside of sleeve-seal fittings.

3.5 SLEEVE AND SLEEVE-SEAL SCHEDULE

- A. Use sleeves and sleeve seals for the following piping-penetration applications:
 1. Exterior Concrete Walls above Grade:
 - a. Piping Smaller Than NPS 6: Sleeve-seal fittings.
 - b. Piping NPS 6 and Larger: Galvanized-steel-pipe sleeves with sleeve-seal system.
 2. Exterior Concrete Walls below Grade:
 - a. Piping Smaller Than NPS 6: Sleeve-seal fittings.
 - 1) Select sleeve size to allow for 1-inch annular clear space between piping and sleeve for installing sleeve-seal system.
 - b. Piping NPS 6 Galvanized-steel-pipe sleeves with sleeve-seal system.

- 1) Select sleeve size to allow for 1-inch annular clear space between piping and sleeve for installing sleeve-seal system.
3. Concrete Slabs-on-Grade:
 - a. Piping Smaller Than NPS 6: Sleeve-seal fittings.
 - 1) Select sleeve size to allow for 1-inch annular clear space between piping and sleeve for installing sleeve-seal system.
 - b. Piping NPS 6 Galvanized-steel-pipe sleeves with sleeve-seal system.
 - 1) Select sleeve size to allow for 1-inch annular clear space between piping and sleeve for installing sleeve-seal system.
4. Concrete Slabs above Grade:
 - a. Piping Smaller Than NPS 6: PVC-pipe sleeves.
 - b. Piping NPS 6 PVC-pipe sleeves.
5. Interior Partitions:
 - a. Piping Smaller Than NPS 6 PVC-pipe sleeves.
 - b. Piping NPS 6 and Larger: Galvanized-steel-sheet sleeves.

END OF SECTION

SECTION 21 2200 - CLEAN-AGENT FIRE-EXTINGUISHING SYSTEMS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
 - 1. Piping and piping specialties.
 - 2. Extinguishing-agent containers.
 - 3. Extinguishing agent.
 - 4. Detection and alarm devices.
 - 5. Control and alarm panels.
 - 6. Accessories.
 - 7. Connection devices for and wiring between system components.
 - 8. Connection devices for power and integration into building's fire-alarm system.

1.3 DEFINITIONS

- A. ATS: Acceptance Testing Specifications.
- B. EPO: Emergency Power Off.

1.4 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product indicated.
- B. Sustainable Design Submittals:
- C. Shop Drawings: For clean-agent fire-extinguishing system signed and sealed by a qualified professional engineer.
 - 1. Include plans, elevations, sections, details, and attachments to other work.
 - 2. Include design calculations.
 - 3. Detail equipment assemblies and indicate dimensions, weights, loads, required clearances, method of field assembly, components, and location and size of each field connection.
 - 4. Wiring Diagrams: For power, signal, and control wiring.
- D. Delegated-Design Submittal: For clean-agent fire-extinguishing system signed and sealed by the qualified professional engineer.

1. Indicate compliance with performance requirements and design criteria, including analysis data.
2. Include design calculations for weight, volume, and concentration of extinguishing agent required for each hazard area.
3. Indicate the Following on Reflected Ceiling Plans:
 - a. Ceiling penetrations and ceiling-mounted items.
 - b. Extinguishing-agent containers if mounted above floor, piping and discharge nozzles, detectors, and accessories.
 - c. Method of attaching hangers to building structure.
 - d. Other ceiling-mounted items including light fixtures, diffusers, grilles, speakers, sprinklers, and access panels.
4. Indicate the Following on Occupied Work Area Plans:
 - a. Controls and alarms.
 - b. Extinguishing-agent containers, piping and discharge nozzles if mounted in space, detectors, and accessories.
 - c. Equipment and furnishings.
5. Indicate the Following on Access Floor Space Plans:
 - a. Extinguishing-agent containers, piping and discharge nozzles, detectors, and accessories.
 - b. Method of supporting piping.
6. Indicate the Following on Ceiling Plans:
 - a. Extinguishing-agent containers, piping and discharge nozzles, detectors, and accessories.
 - b. Method of supporting piping.
 - c. Other equipment located in the ceiling space that is being protected including sprinkler piping, HVAC equipment, raceways, or conduit.

1.5 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Coordination Drawings: Sprinkler systems, drawn to scale, on which the following items are shown and coordinated with each other, using input from Installers of the items involved:
 1. Domestic water piping.
 2. Items Penetrating Finished Ceiling Include the Following:
 - a. Lighting fixtures.
 - b. Air outlets and inlets.
- B. Permit Approved Drawings: Working plans, prepared according to NFPA 2001, that have been approved by authorities having jurisdiction. Include design calculations.
- C. Seismic Qualification Certificates: For extinguishing-agent containers and control panels from manufacturer.

1. Basis for Certification: Indicate whether withstand certification is based on actual test of assembled components or on calculation.
2. Dimensioned Outline Drawings of Equipment Unit: Identify center of gravity and locate and describe mounting and anchorage provisions.
3. Detailed description of equipment anchorage devices on which the certification is based and their installation requirements.

D. Field quality-control reports.

1.6 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

- A. Operation and Maintenance Data: For special agent system to include in emergency, operation, and maintenance manuals.

1.7 MAINTENANCE MATERIAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Furnish extra materials that match products installed and that are packaged with protective covering for storage and identified with labels describing contents. Deliver extra materials to Owner.

1. Detection Devices: Not less than 20 percent of amount of each type installed.
2. Container Valves: Not less than 10 percent of amount of each size and type installed.
3. Nozzles: Not less than 20 percent of amount of each type installed.
4. Extinguishing Agent: Not less than 100 percent of amount installed in largest hazard area. Include pressure-rated containers with valves.

1.8 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.
- B. FM Global Compliance: Provide components that are FM Approved and that are listed in FM Global's "Approval Guide."
- C. UL Compliance: Provide equipment listed in UL's "Fire Protection Equipment Directory."

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 CLEAN-AGENT SYSTEMS

- A. Cease Fire
- B. Description: Clean-agent fire-extinguishing system shall be an engineered system for total flooding of the hazard area including the room cavity above the ceiling, below the ceiling, and below the raised floor. System includes separate zones above and below the ceiling and beneath the raised floor. If smoke is detected below the raised

floor, extinguishing agent shall be discharged in the underfloor zone only. If smoke is detected below the ceiling, extinguishing agent shall be discharged in zones above and below the ceiling and below the floor. If smoke is detected above the ceiling, extinguishing agent shall be discharged in the zone above the ceiling only.

- C. Delegated Design: Design clean-agent fire-extinguishing system and obtain approval from authorities having jurisdiction. Design system for Class A, B, and C fires as appropriate for areas being protected, and include safety factor. Use clean agent indicated and in concentration suitable for normally occupied areas.
- D. Performance Requirements: Discharge HFC 227ea within 10 seconds and maintain 7.1 percent concentration by volume at 70 deg F for 10-minute holding time in hazard areas.
 - 1. HFC 227ea concentration in hazard areas greater than 9.0 percent immediately after discharge or less than 5.8 percent throughout holding time will not be accepted without written authorization from Owner and authorities having jurisdiction.
 - 2. System Capabilities: Minimum 620-psig calculated working pressure and 360-psig initial charging pressure.
- E. Performance Requirements: Discharge FK-5-1-12 within 10 seconds and maintain 6.6 percent concentration by volume at 70 deg F for 10-minute holding time in hazard areas.
 - 1. FK-5-1-12 concentration in hazard areas greater than 10.0 percent immediately after discharge or less than 6.5 percent throughout holding time will not be accepted without written authorization from Owner and authorities having jurisdiction.
 - 2. System Capabilities: Minimum 620-psig calculated working pressure and 360-psig initial charging pressure.
- F. Performance Requirements: Discharge IG-541 within 60 seconds and maintain 38 percent concentration by volume at 70 deg F for 10-minute holding time in hazard areas.
 - 1. IG-541 concentration in hazard areas greater than 40 percent immediately after discharge or less than 32 percent throughout holding time will not be accepted without written authorization from Owner and authorities having jurisdiction.
 - 2. System Capabilities: Minimum 2175-psig calculated working pressure upstream from orifice union, minimum 1000-psig calculated working pressure downstream from orifice union, and 2175-psig initial charging pressure.
- G. Cross-Zoned Detection: Devices located in two separate zones. Sound alarm on activating single-detection device, and discharge extinguishing agent on actuating single-detection device in other zone.
- H. Verified Detection: Devices located in single zone. Sound alarm on activating single-detection device, and discharge extinguishing agent on actuating second-detection device.
- I. System Operating Sequence:

1. Actuating First Detector: Visual indication on annunciator panel. Energize audible and visual alarms (slow pulse), shut down air-conditioning and ventilating systems serving protected area, close doors in protected area, and send signal to fire-alarm system.
 2. Actuating Second Detector: Visual indication on annunciator panel. Energize audible and visual alarms (fast pulse), shut down power to protected equipment, start time delay for extinguishing-agent discharge for 30 seconds, and discharge extinguishing agent. Extinguishing-agent discharge will operate audible alarms and strobe lights inside and outside the protected area.
- J. System Operating Sequence: System shall be cross-zoned, air-sampling detectors and photoelectric detectors reporting to a fully programmable microprocessor-based control panel programmed to operate as follows:
1. If one photoelectric detector and air-sampling detector reaches the third detection level (Fire 1), agent discharge will be initiated as described for the third detection level (Fire 1) below.
 2. Air-Sampling System:
 - a. First Detection Level (Alert): Mild audible and visual indication on annunciator panel. Strobe lights flash slowly in the protected area.
 - b. Second Detection Level (Action): Strong audible and visual indication on annunciator panel. Strobe lights flash rapidly in the protected area.
 - c. Third Detection Level (Fire 1): Strong audible and visual indication on annunciator panel. Energize horn(s), bell(s), and strobe light(s) in the protected area and outside entry doors. Shut down air-conditioning and ventilating systems serving the protected area, and close doors in the protected area. Send signal to fire-alarm system, initiate 30-second time delay for extinguishing-agent discharge, and discharge extinguishing agent. At agent discharge, terminate power to equipment in the protected area. Fourth Detection Level (Fire 2): Same as Fire 1.
- K. Manual stations shall immediately discharge extinguishing agent when activated.
- L. Operating abort switches will delay extinguishing-agent discharge while being activated, and switches must be reset to prevent agent discharge. Release of hand pressure on the switch will cause agent discharge if the time delay has expired.
- M. EPO: Will terminate power to protected equipment immediately on actuation.
- N. Low-Agent Pressure Switch: Initiate trouble alarm if sensing less than set pressure.
- O. Power Transfer Switch: Transfer from normal to stand-by power source.
- 2.2 PIPING MATERIALS
- A. See ["HFC 227ea Agent Piping Applications"] ["IG-541 Agent Piping Applications"] ["FK-5-1-12 Agent Piping Applications"] Article for applications of pipe, tube, fitting, and joining materials.
 - B. Piping, Valves, and Discharge Nozzles: Comply with types and standards listed in NFPA 2001, Section "Distribution," for charging pressure of system.

2.3 PIPE AND FITTINGS

- A. Steel Pipe: ASTM A 53/A 53M, Type S, Grade B or ASTM A 106/A 106M,; Schedule 40, Schedule 80, and Schedule 160, seamless steel pipe.
 - 1. Threaded Fittings:
 - a. Malleable-Iron Fittings: ASME B16.3, Class 300.
 - b. Flanges and Flanged Fittings: ASME B16.5, Class 300 unless Class 600 is indicated.
 - c. Fittings Working Pressure: 620 psig minimum.
 - d. Flanged Joints: Class 300 minimum.
 - 2. Forged-Steel Welding Fittings: ASME B16.11, Class 3000, socket pattern.
 - 3. Steel, Grooved-End Fittings: FM Approved and NRTL listed, ASTM A 47/A 47M malleable iron or ASTM A 536 ductile iron, with dimensions matching steel pipe and ends factory grooved according to AWWA C606.
- B. Pipe-Flange Gasket Materials: Suitable for chemical and thermal conditions of piping system contents.
 - 1. ASME B16.21, nonmetallic, flat, asbestos-free, 1/8-inch maximum thickness unless thickness or specific material is indicated.
- C. Flange Bolts and Nuts: ASME B18.2.1, carbon steel.
- D. Welding Filler Metals: Comply with AWS D10.12M/D10.12 for welding materials appropriate for wall thickness and chemical analysis of steel pipe being welded.
- E. Steel, Keyed Couplings: UL 213, AWWA C606, approved or listed for clean-agent service, and matching steel-pipe dimensions. Include ASTM A 536, ductile-iron housing, rubber gasket, and steel bolts and nuts.

2.4 VALVES

- A. General Valve Requirements:
 - 1. UL listed or FM Approved for use in fire-protection systems.
 - 2. Compatible with type of clean agent used.
- B. Container Valves: With rupture disc or solenoid and manual-release lever, capable of immediate and total agent discharge and suitable for intended flow capacity.
- C. Valves in Sections of Closed Piping and Manifolds: Fabricate to prevent entrapment of liquid, or install valve and separate pressure relief device.
- D. Valves in Manifolds: Check valve; installed to prevent loss of extinguishing agent when container is removed from manifold.

2.5 EXTINGUISHING-AGENT CONTAINERS

- A. Description: Steel tanks complying with ASME Boiler and Pressure Vessel Code: Section VIII, for unfired pressure vessels. Include minimum working-pressure rating that matches system charging pressure, valve, pressure switch, and pressure gage.
 - 1. Finish: Red, enamel or epoxy paint.
 - 2. Manifold: Fabricate with valves, pressure switches, and connections for multiple storage containers, as indicated.
 - 3. Manifold: Fabricate with valves, pressure switches, selector switch, and connections for main- and reserve-supply banks of multiple storage containers.
 - 4. Storage-Tank Brackets: Factory- or field-fabricated retaining brackets consisting of steel straps and channels; suitable for container support, maintenance, and tank refilling or replacement.

2.6 FIRE-EXTINGUISHING CLEAN AGENT

- A. HFC 227ea Clean Agent: Heptafluoropropane.
- B. FK-5-1-12 Clean Agent: Dodecafluoro-2-methylpentan-3-one.
- C. IG-541 Clean Agent: Mixture of nitrogen, argon, and carbon dioxide inert gases.

2.7 DISCHARGE NOZZLES

- A. Equipment manufacturer's standard one-piece brass or aluminum alloy of type, size, discharge pattern, and capacity required for application.

2.8 MANIFOLD AND ORIFICE UNIONS

- A. Description: NRTL-listed device with minimum 2175-psig pressure rating, to control flow and reduce pressure of IG-541 gas in piping.
 - 1. NPS 2 and Smaller: Piping assembly with orifice, sized for system design requirements.
 - 2. NPS 2-1/2 and Larger: Piping assembly with nipple, sized for system design requirements.

2.9 CONTROL PANELS

- A. Description: FM Approved or NRTL listed, including equipment and features required for testing, supervising, and operating fire-extinguishing system.
- B. Power Requirements: 120/240-V ac; with electrical contacts for connection to system components and fire-alarm system, and transformer or rectifier as needed to produce power at voltage required for accessories and alarm devices.
- C. Enclosure: NEMA ICS 6, Type 1, enameled-steel cabinet.

1. Mounting: Surface.
- D. Supervised Circuits: Separate circuits for each independent hazard area.
1. Detection circuits equal to the required number of zones, or addressable devices assigned to the required number of zones.
 2. Manual pull-station circuit.
 3. Alarm circuit.
 4. Release circuit.
 5. Abort circuit.
 6. EPO circuit.
- E. Control-Panel Features:
1. Electrical contacts for shutting down fans, activating dampers, and operating system electrical devices.
 2. Automatic switchover to standby power at loss of primary power.
 3. Storage container, low-pressure indicator.
 4. Service disconnect to interrupt system operation for maintenance with visual status indication on the annunciator panel.
- F. Annunciator Panel: Graphic type showing protected, hazard-area plans, as well as locations of detectors and abort, EPO, and manual stations. Include lamps to indicate device-initiating alarm, electrical contacts for connection to control panel, and stainless-steel or aluminum enclosure.
- G. Standby Power: Sealed lead calcium batteries with capacity to operate system for 24 hours and alarm for minimum of 15 minutes. Include automatic battery charger that has a varying charging rate between trickle and high depending on battery voltage, and that is capable of maintaining batteries fully charged. Include manual voltage control, dc voltmeter, dc ammeter, electrical contacts for connection to control panel, automatic transfer switch, and suitable enclosure.

2.10 DETECTION DEVICES

- A. General Requirements for Detection Devices:
1. Comply with NFPA 2001, NFPA 72, and UL 268.
 2. 24-V dc, nominal.
- B. Photoelectric Detectors: LED light source and silicon photodiode receiving element.
- C. Signals to the Central Fire Alarm Control Panel: Any type of local system trouble is reported to the central fire alarm control panel as a composite "trouble" signal. Alarms on each system zone are individually reported to the central fire alarm control panel as separately identified zones.

2.11 MANUAL STATIONS

- A. General Description: Surface FM Approved or NRTL listed, with clear plastic hinged cover, 120-V ac or low voltage compatible with controls. Include contacts for connection to control panel.
- B. Manual Release: "MANUAL RELEASE" caption, and red finish. Unit can manually discharge extinguishing agent with operating device that remains engaged until unlocked.
- C. Abort Switch: "ABORT" caption, momentary contact, with green finish.
- D. EPO Switch: "EPO" caption, with yellow finish.

2.12 SWITCHES

- A. Description: FM Approved or NRTL listed, where available, [120-V] <Insert value> ac or low voltage compatible with controls. Include contacts for connection to control panel.
 - 1. Low-Agent Pressure Switches: Pneumatic operation.
 - 2. Power Transfer Switches: Key-operation selector, for transfer of release circuit signal from main supply to reserve supply.
 - 3. Door Closers: Magnetic retaining and release device or electrical interlock to cause the door operator to drive the door closed.

2.13 ALARM DEVICES

- A. Description: Listed and labeled by an NRTL or FM Approved, low voltage, and surface mounting. Comply with requirements in Section 28 3111 "Digital, Addressable Fire-Alarm System" or Section 28 3112 "Zoned (DC Loop) Fire-Alarm System" for alarm and monitoring devices.
- B. Bells: Minimum 6-inch diameter.
- C. Horns: 90 to 94 dBA.
- D. Strobe Lights: Translucent lens, with "FIRE" or similar caption.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine areas and conditions, with Installer present, for compliance with hazard-area leakage requirements, installation tolerances, and other conditions affecting work performance.
- B. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.2 HFC 227ea AGENT PIPING APPLICATIONS

- A. Flanged pipe and fittings and flanged joints may be used to connect to specialties and accessories and where required for maintenance.
- B. NPS 2 and Smaller: Schedule 40, steel pipe; malleable-iron threaded fittings; and threaded joints.
- C. NPS 2-1/2 and Larger: Schedule 40, steel pipe.

3.3 IG-541 AGENT PIPING APPLICATIONS

- A. Piping between Storage Containers and Orifice Union: Schedule 10, steel pipe.
- B. Piping Downstream from Orifice Union: Schedule 40, steel pipe

3.4 FK-5-1-12 AGENT PIPING APPLICATIONS

- A. Flanged pipe and fittings and flanged joints may be used to connect to specialties and accessories and where required for maintenance.
- B. NPS 2 and Smaller: Schedule 40, steel pipe; malleable-iron threaded fittings; and threaded joints.
- C. NPS 2-1/2 and Larger: Schedule 40, steel pipe.

3.5 CLEAN-AGENT PIPING INSTALLATION

- A. Install clean-agent extinguishing piping and other components level and plumb, according to manufacturers' written instructions.
- B. Grooved Piping Joints: Groove pipe ends according to AWWA C606 dimensions. Assemble grooved-end steel pipe and steel, grooved-end fittings with steel, keyed couplings and lubricant according to manufacturer's written instructions.
- C. Install extinguishing-agent containers anchored to substrate.
- D. Install pipe and fittings, valves, and discharge nozzles according to requirements listed in NFPA 2001, Section "Distribution."
 - 1. Install valves designed to prevent entrapment of liquid, or install pressure relief devices in valved sections of piping systems.
 - 2. Support piping using supports and methods according to NFPA 13.
 - 3. Install seismic restraints for extinguishing-agent containers and piping systems.
 - 4. Install control panels, detection system components, alarms, and accessories, complying with requirements of NFPA 2001, Section "Detection, Actuation, and Control Systems," as required for supervised system application.

3.6 CONNECTIONS

- A. Drawings indicate general arrangement of piping, fittings, and specialties.
- B. Where installing piping adjacent to equipment, allow space for service and maintenance.
- C. Connect electrical devices to control panel and to building's fire-alarm system. Electrical power, wiring, and devices are specified in Section 28 3111 "Digital, Addressable Fire-Alarm System" or Section 28 3112 "Zoned (DC Loop) Fire-Alarm System."

3.7 IDENTIFICATION

- A. Identify system components and equipment. Comply with requirements for identification specified in Section 26 0553 "Identification for Electrical Systems."
- B. Identify piping, extinguishing-agent containers, other equipment, and panels according to NFPA 2001.
- C. Install signs at entry doors for protected areas to warn occupants that they are entering a room protected with a clean-agent fire-extinguishing system.
- D. Install signs at entry doors to advise persons outside the room the meaning of the horn(s), bell(s), and strobe light(s) outside the protected space.

3.8 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Testing Agency: Engage a qualified testing agency to perform tests and inspections.
- B. Manufacturer's Field Service: Engage a factory-authorized service representative to inspect, test, and adjust components, assemblies, and equipment installations, including connections.
- C. Perform tests and inspections.
 - 1. Manufacturer's Field Service: Engage a factory-authorized service representative to inspect components, assemblies, and equipment installations, including connections, and to assist in testing.
- D. Tests and Inspections:
 - 1. After installing clean-agent extinguishing piping system and after electrical circuitry has been energized, test for compliance with requirements.
 - 2. Perform each electrical test and visual and mechanical inspection stated in NETA ATS, Sections "Inspection and Test Procedures" and "System Function Tests." Certify compliance with test parameters.
 - 3. Leak Test: After installation, charge system and test for leaks. Repair leaks and retest until no leaks exist.
 - 4. Operational Test: After electrical circuitry has been energized, start units to confirm proper motor rotation and unit operation. Remove malfunctioning units, replace with new units, and retest.

5. Test and adjust controls and safeties. Replace damaged and malfunctioning controls and equipment.

E. Units will be considered defective if they do not pass tests and inspections.

F. Prepare test and inspection reports.

3.9 CLEANING

- A. Each pipe section shall be cleaned internally after preparation and before assembly by means of swabbing, using a suitable nonflammable cleaner. Pipe network shall be free of particulate matter and oil residue before installing nozzles or discharge devices.

3.10 SYSTEM FILLING

A. Preparation:

1. Verify that piping system installation is completed and cleaned.
2. Check for complete enclosure integrity.
3. Check operation of ventilation and exhaust systems.

B. Filling Procedures:

1. Fill extinguishing-agent containers with extinguishing agent, and pressurize to indicated charging pressure.
2. Install filled extinguishing-agent containers.
3. Energize circuits.
4. Adjust operating controls.

3.11 DEMONSTRATION

- A. Train Owner's maintenance personnel to adjust, operate, and maintain clean-agent fire-extinguishing systems.

END OF SECTION

SECTION 22 0513 - COMMON MOTOR REQUIREMENTS FOR PLUMBING EQUIPMENT

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 SUMMARY

- A. Section includes general requirements for single-phase and polyphase, general-purpose, horizontal, small and medium, squirrel-cage induction motors for use on ac power systems up to 600 V and installed at equipment manufacturer's factory or shipped separately by equipment manufacturer for field installation.

1.2 COORDINATION

- A. Coordinate features of motors, installed units, and accessory devices to be compatible with the following:
 - 1. Motor controllers.
 - 2. Torque, speed, and horsepower requirements of the load.
 - 3. Ratings and characteristics of supply circuit and required control sequence.
 - 4. Ambient and environmental conditions of installation location.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 GENERAL MOTOR REQUIREMENTS

- A. Comply with NEMA MG 1 unless otherwise indicated.
- B. Comply with IEEE 841 for severe-duty motors.

2.2 MOTOR CHARACTERISTICS

- A. Duty: Continuous duty at ambient temperature of 40 deg C and at altitude of 3300 feet above sea level.
- B. Capacity and Torque Characteristics: Sufficient to start, accelerate, and operate connected loads at designated speeds, at installed altitude and environment, with indicated operating sequence, and without exceeding nameplate ratings or considering service factor.

2.3 POLYPHASE MOTORS

- A. Description: NEMA MG 1, Design B, medium induction motor.
- B. Efficiency: Energy efficient, as defined in NEMA MG 1.
- C. Service Factor: 1.15.

- D. Multispeed Motors: Variable torque.
 - 1. For motors with 2:1 speed ratio, consequent pole, single winding.
 - 2. For motors with other than 2:1 speed ratio, separate winding for each speed.
- E. Multispeed Motors: Separate winding for each speed.
- F. Rotor: Random-wound, squirrel cage.
- G. Bearings: Regreasable, shielded, antifriction ball bearings suitable for radial and thrust loading.
- H. Temperature Rise: Match insulation rating.
- I. Insulation: Class F.
- J. Code Letter Designation:
 - 1. Motors 15 HP and Larger: NEMA starting Code F or Code G.
 - 2. Motors Smaller than 15 HP: Manufacturer's standard starting characteristic.
- K. Enclosure Material: Cast iron for motor frame sizes 324T and larger; rolled steel for motor frame sizes smaller than 324T.

2.4 POLYPHASE MOTORS WITH ADDITIONAL REQUIREMENTS

- A. Motors Used with Reduced-Voltage and Multispeed Controllers: Match wiring connection requirements for controller with required motor leads. Provide terminals in motor terminal box, suited to control method.
- B. Motors Used with Variable Frequency Controllers: Ratings, characteristics, and features coordinated with and approved by controller manufacturer.
 - 1. Windings: Copper magnet wire with moisture-resistant insulation varnish, designed and tested to resist transient spikes, high frequencies, and short time rise pulses produced by pulse-width modulated inverters.
 - 2. Energy- and Premium-Efficient Motors: Class B temperature rise; Class F insulation.
 - 3. Inverter-Duty Motors: Class F temperature rise; Class H insulation.
 - 4. Thermal Protection: Comply with NEMA MG 1 requirements for thermally protected motors.
- C. Severe-Duty Motors: Comply with IEEE 841, with 1.15 minimum service factor.

2.5 SINGLE-PHASE MOTORS

- A. Motors larger than 1/20 hp shall be one of the following, to suit starting torque and requirements of specific motor application:
 - 1. Permanent-split capacitor.
 - 2. Split phase.
 - 3. Capacitor start, inductor run.
 - 4. Capacitor start, capacitor run.
- B. Multispeed Motors: Variable-torque, permanent-split-capacitor type.

- C. Bearings: Prelubricated, antifriction ball bearings or sleeve bearings suitable for radial and thrust loading.
- D. Motors 1/20 HP and Smaller: Shaded-pole type.
- E. Thermal Protection: Internal protection to automatically open power supply circuit to motor when winding temperature exceeds a safe value calibrated to temperature rating of motor insulation. Thermal-protection device shall automatically reset when motor temperature returns to normal range.

PART 3 - EXECUTION (Not Applicable)

END OF SECTION

SECTION 22 0516 - EXPANSION FITTINGS AND LOOPS FOR PLUMBING PIPING

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
 - 1. Metal-bellows packless expansion joints.
 - 2. Pipe loops and swing connections.
 - 3. Alignment guides and anchors.

1.3 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Compatibility: Products shall be suitable for piping service fluids, materials, working pressures, and temperatures.
- B. Capability: Products to absorb 200 percent of maximum axial movement between anchors.

1.4 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product indicated.
- B. Delegated-Design Submittal: For each anchor and alignment guide indicated to comply with performance requirements and design criteria, including analysis data signed and sealed by the qualified professional engineer responsible for their preparation.
 - 1. Design Calculations: Calculate requirements for thermal expansion of piping systems and for selecting and designing expansion joints, loops, and swing connections.
 - 2. Anchor Details: Detail fabrication of each anchor indicated. Show dimensions and methods of assembly and attachment to building structure.
 - 3. Alignment Guide Details: Detail field assembly and attachment to building structure.
 - 4. Schedule: Indicate type, manufacturer's number, size, material, pressure rating, end connections, and location for each expansion joint.

1.5 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Welding certificates.
- B. Product Certificates: For each type of expansion joint, from manufacturer.

1.6 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

- A. Maintenance Data: For expansion joints to include in maintenance manuals.

1.7 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Welding Qualifications: Qualify procedures and personnel according to the following:
1. AWS D1.1/D1.1M, "Structural Welding Code - Steel."
 2. ASME Boiler and Pressure Vessel Code: Section IX.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 PACKLESS EXPANSION JOINTS

- A. Metal-Bellows Packless Expansion Joints:
1. Basis-of-Design Product: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide product indicated on Drawings or comparable product by one of the following:
 - a. Flex-Hose Co., Inc.
 - b. Flexicraft Industries.
 - c. Flex Pression Ltd.
 - d. Flex-Weld, Inc.
 - e. Flo Fab inc.
 - f. Hyspan Precision Products, Inc.
 - g. Metraflex, Inc.
 - h. Twin City Hose.
 2. Standards: ASTM F 1120 and EJMA's "Standards of the Expansion Joint Manufacturers Association, Inc."
 3. Type: Circular, corrugated bellows with external tie rods.
 4. Minimum Pressure Rating: 175 psig unless otherwise indicated.
 5. Configuration: Single joint with base and class(es) unless otherwise indicated.
 6. Expansion Joints for Copper Tubing: Single- or multi-ply phosphor-bronze bellows, copper pipe ends, and brass shrouds.
 - a. End Connections for Copper Tubing NPS 2 and Smaller: Solder joint or threaded.
 - b. End Connections for Copper Tubing NPS 2-1/2 to NPS 4: Solder joint or threaded.
 - c. End Connections for Copper Tubing NPS 5 and Larger: Flanged.

2.2 ALIGNMENT GUIDES AND ANCHORS

- A. Alignment Guides:
1. Basis-of-Design Product: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide product indicated on Drawings or comparable product by one of the following:
 - a. Flex-Hose Co., Inc.
 - b. Flexicraft Industries.
 - c. Flex-Weld, Inc.
 - d. Hyspan Precision Products, Inc.
 - e. Metraflex, Inc.
 - f. Twin City Hose.

2. Description: Steel, factory-fabricated alignment guide, with bolted two-section outer cylinder and base for attaching to structure; with two-section guiding spider for bolting to pipe.
- B. Anchor Materials:
1. Steel Shapes and Plates: ASTM A 36/A 36M.
 2. Bolts and Nuts: ASME B18.10 or ASTM A 183, steel hex head.
 3. Washers: ASTM F 844, steel, plain, flat washers.
 4. Mechanical Fasteners: Insert-wedge-type stud with expansion plug anchor for use in hardened portland cement concrete, with tension and shear capacities appropriate for application.
 - a. Stud: Threaded, zinc-coated carbon steel.
 - b. Expansion Plug: Zinc-coated steel.
 - c. Washer and Nut: Zinc-coated steel.
 5. Chemical Fasteners: Insert-type-stud, bonding-system anchor for use with hardened portland cement concrete, with tension and shear capacities appropriate for application.
 - a. Bonding Material: ASTM C 881/C 881M, Type IV, Grade 3, two-component epoxy resin suitable for surface temperature of hardened concrete where fastener is to be installed.
 - b. Stud: ASTM A 307, zinc-coated carbon steel with continuous thread on stud unless otherwise indicated.
 - c. Washer and Nut: Zinc-coated steel.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXPANSION-JOINT INSTALLATION

- A. Install expansion joints of sizes matching sizes of piping in which they are installed.
- B. Install metal-bellows expansion joints according to EJMA's "Standards of the Expansion Joint Manufacturers Association, Inc."

3.2 PIPE LOOP AND SWING CONNECTION INSTALLATION

- A. Install pipe loops cold-sprung in tension or compression as required to partly absorb tension or compression produced during anticipated change in temperature.
- B. Connect risers and branch connections to mains with at least five pipe fittings including tee in main.
- C. Connect risers and branch connections to terminal units with at least four pipe fittings including tee in riser.
- D. Connect mains and branch connections to terminal units with at least four pipe fittings including tee in main.

3.3 ALIGNMENT-GUIDE AND ANCHOR INSTALLATION

- A. Install alignment guides to guide expansion and to avoid end-loading and torsional stress.

- B. Install one guide(s) on each side of pipe expansion fittings and loops. Install guides nearest to expansion joint not more than four pipe diameters from expansion joint.
- C. Attach guides to pipe and secure guides to building structure.
- D. Install anchors at locations to prevent stresses from exceeding those permitted by ASME B31.9 and to prevent transfer of loading and stresses to connected equipment.
- E. Anchor Attachments:
 - 1. Anchor Attachment to Black-Steel Pipe: Attach by welding. Comply with ASME B31.9 and ASME Boiler and Pressure Vessel Code: Section IX, "Welding and Brazing Qualifications."
 - 2. Anchor Attachment to Galvanized-Steel Pipe: Attach with pipe hangers. Use MSS SP-69, Type 42, riser clamp welded to anchor.
 - 3. Anchor Attachment to Copper Tubing: Attach with pipe hangers. Use MSS SP-69, Type 24, U-bolts bolted to anchor.
- F. Fabricate and install steel anchors by welding steel shapes, plates, and bars. Comply with ASME B31.9 and AWS D1.1/D1.1M.
 - 1. Anchor Attachment to Steel Structural Members: Attach by welding.
 - 2. Anchor Attachment to Concrete Structural Members: Attach by fasteners. Follow fastener manufacturer's written instructions.
- G. Use grout to form flat bearing surfaces for guides and anchors attached to concrete.

END OF SECTION

SECTION 22 0517 - SLEEVES AND SLEEVE SEALS FOR PLUMBING PIPING

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
 - 1. Sleeves.
 - 2. Sleeve-seal systems.
 - 3. Grout.

1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product indicated.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 SLEEVES

- A. Cast-Iron Wall Pipes: Cast or fabricated of cast or ductile iron and equivalent to ductile-iron pressure pipe, with plain ends and integral waterstop unless otherwise indicated.
- B. Galvanized-Steel Wall Pipes: ASTM A 53/A 53M, Schedule 40, with plain ends and welded steel collar; zinc coated.
- C. Galvanized-Steel-Pipe Sleeves: ASTM A 53/A 53M, Type E, Grade B, Schedule 40, zinc coated, with plain ends.
- D. PVC-Pipe Sleeves: ASTM D 1785, Schedule 40.
- E. Galvanized-Steel-Sheet Sleeves: 0.0239-inch minimum thickness; round tube closed with welded longitudinal joint.

2.2 SLEEVE-SEAL SYSTEMS

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
 - 1. Advance Products & Systems, Inc.

2. CALPICO, Inc.
3. Metraflex Company (The).
4. Pipeline Seal and Insulator, Inc.
5. Proco Products, Inc.

- B. Description: Modular sealing-element unit, designed for field assembly, for filling annular space between piping and sleeve.
1. Sealing Elements: NBR interlocking links shaped to fit surface of pipe. Include type and number required for pipe material and size of pipe.
 2. Pressure Plates: Carbon steel.
 3. Connecting Bolts and Nuts: Carbon steel, with corrosion-resistant coating, of length required to secure pressure plates to sealing elements.

2.3 GROUT

- A. Standard: ASTM C 1107/C 1107M, Grade B, post-hardening and volume-adjusting, dry, hydraulic-cement grout.
- B. Characteristics: Nonshrink; recommended for interior and exterior applications.
- C. Design Mix: 5000-psi, 28-day compressive strength.
- D. Packaging: Premixed and factory packaged.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 SLEEVE INSTALLATION

- A. Install sleeves for piping passing through penetrations in floors, partitions, roofs, and walls.
- B. For sleeves that will have sleeve-seal system installed, select sleeves of size large enough to provide 1-inch annular clear space between piping and concrete slabs and walls.
1. Sleeves are not required for core-drilled holes.
- C. Install sleeves in concrete floors, concrete roof slabs, and concrete walls as new slabs and walls are constructed.
1. Cut sleeves to length for mounting flush with both surfaces.
 - a. Exception: Extend sleeves installed in floors of mechanical equipment areas or other wet areas 2 inches above finished floor level.
 2. Using grout, seal the space outside of sleeves in slabs and walls without sleeve-seal system.
- D. Install sleeves for pipes passing through interior partitions.
1. Cut sleeves to length for mounting flush with both surfaces.
 2. Install sleeves that are large enough to provide 1/4-inch annular clear space between sleeve and pipe or pipe insulation.

3. Seal annular space between sleeve and piping or piping insulation; use joint sealants appropriate for size, depth, and location of joint. Comply with requirements for sealants specified in Section 07 9200 "Joint Sealants."

- E. Fire-Barrier Penetrations: Maintain indicated fire rating of walls, partitions, ceilings, and floors at pipe penetrations. Seal pipe penetrations with firestop materials. Comply with requirements for firestopping specified in Section 07 8413 "Penetration Firestopping."

3.2 SLEEVE-SEAL-SYSTEM INSTALLATION

- A. Install sleeve-seal systems in sleeves in exterior concrete walls and slabs-on-grade at service piping entries into building.
- B. Select type, size, and number of sealing elements required for piping material and size and for sleeve ID or hole size. Position piping in center of sleeve. Center piping in penetration, assemble sleeve-seal system components, and install in annular space between piping and sleeve. Tighten bolts against pressure plates that cause sealing elements to expand and make a watertight seal.

3.3 SLEEVE AND SLEEVE-SEAL SCHEDULE

- A. Use sleeves and sleeve seals for the following piping-penetration applications:
 1. Exterior Concrete Walls above Grade:
 - a. Piping Smaller Than NPS 6: Galvanized-steel wall sleeves.
 - b. Piping NPS 6 and Larger: Galvanized-steel wall sleeves.
 2. Exterior Concrete Walls below Grade:
 - a. Piping Smaller Than NPS 6: Cast-iron wall sleeves with sleeve-seal system.
 - 1) Select sleeve size to allow for 1-inch annular clear space between piping and sleeve for installing sleeve-seal system.
 - b. Piping NPS 6 and Larger: Cast-iron wall sleeves with sleeve-seal system.
 - 1) Select sleeve size to allow for 1-inch annular clear space between piping and sleeve for installing sleeve-seal system.
 3. Concrete Slabs above Grade:
 - a. Piping Smaller Than NPS 6: Galvanized-steel-pipe sleeves.
 - b. Piping NPS 6 and Larger: Galvanized-steel-pipe sleeves.
 4. Interior Partitions:
 - a. Piping Smaller Than NPS 6: Galvanized-steel-pipe sleeves.
 - b. Piping NPS 6 and Larger: Galvanized-steel-sheet sleeves.

END OF SECTION

SECTION 22 0518 - ESCUTCHEONS FOR PLUMBING PIPING

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
 - 1. Escutcheons.
 - 2. Floor plates.

1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product indicated.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 ESCUTCHEONS

- A. One-Piece, Cast-Brass Type: With polished, chrome-plated finish and setscrew fastener.
- B. One-Piece, Deep-Pattern Type: Deep-drawn, box-shaped brass with chrome-plated finish and spring-clip fasteners.
- C. One-Piece, Stamped-Steel Type: With chrome-plated finish and spring-clip fasteners.
- D. Split-Casting Brass Type: With polished, chrome-plated finish and with concealed hinge and setscrew.
- E. Split-Plate, Stamped-Steel Type: With chrome-plated finish, concealed and exposed-rivet hinge, and spring-clip fasteners.

2.2 FLOOR PLATES

- A. One-Piece Floor Plates: Cast-iron flange with holes for fasteners.
- B. Split-Casting Floor Plates: Cast brass with concealed hinge.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 INSTALLATION

- A. Install escutcheons for piping penetrations of walls, ceilings, and finished floors.
- B. Install escutcheons with ID to closely fit around pipe, tube, and insulation of insulated piping and with OD that completely covers opening.
 - 1. Escutcheons for New Piping:
 - a. Piping with Fitting or Sleeve Protruding from Wall: One-piece, deep-pattern type.
 - b. Chrome-Plated Piping: One-piece, cast-brass type with polished, chrome-plated finish.
 - c. Insulated Piping: One-piece, stamped-steel type.
 - d. Bare Piping at Wall and Floor Penetrations in Finished Spaces: One-piece, cast-brass type with polished, chrome-plated finish.
 - e. Bare Piping at Ceiling Penetrations in Finished Spaces: One-piece, cast-brass type with polished, chrome-plated finish.
 - f. Bare Piping in Unfinished Service Spaces: One-piece, cast-brass type with polished, chrome-plated finish.
 - g. Bare Piping in Equipment Rooms: One-piece, cast-brass type with polished, chrome-plated finish.
 - 2. Escutcheons for Existing Piping:
 - a. Chrome-Plated Piping: Split-casting brass type with polished, chrome-plated finish.
 - b. Insulated Piping: Split-plate, stamped-steel type with concealed or exposed-rivet hinge.
 - c. Bare Piping at Wall and Floor Penetrations in Finished Spaces: Split-casting brass type with polished, chrome-plated finish.
 - d. Bare Piping at Wall and Floor Penetrations in Finished Spaces: Split-plate, stamped-steel type with concealed or exposed-rivet hinge.
 - e. Bare Piping at Ceiling Penetrations in Finished Spaces: Split-casting brass type with polished, chrome-plated finish.
 - f. Bare Piping at Ceiling Penetrations in Finished Spaces: Split-plate, stamped-steel type with concealed or exposed-rivet hinge.
 - g. Bare Piping in Unfinished Service Spaces: Split-casting brass type with polished, chrome-plated finish.
 - h. Bare Piping in Unfinished Service Spaces: Split-plate, stamped-steel type with concealed or exposed-rivet hinge.
 - i. Bare Piping in Equipment Rooms: Split-casting brass type with polished, chrome-plated finish.
 - j. Bare Piping in Equipment Rooms: Split-plate, stamped-steel type with concealed or exposed-rivet hinge.
- C. Install floor plates for piping penetrations of equipment-room floors.
- D. Install floor plates with ID to closely fit around pipe, tube, and insulation of piping and with OD that completely covers opening.

1. New Piping: One-piece, floor-plate type.
2. Existing Piping: Split-casting, floor-plate type.

3.2 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Replace broken and damaged escutcheons and floor plates using new materials.

END OF SECTION

SECTION 22 0523 - GENERAL-DUTY VALVES FOR PLUMBING PIPING

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:

1. Bronze angle valves.
2. Bronze ball valves.
3. Iron, single-flange butterfly valves.
4. Bronze swing check valves.
5. Iron swing check valves.
6. Iron gate valves.
7. Iron globe valves.
8. Chainwheels.

- B. Related Sections:

1. Section 22 0553 "Identification for Plumbing Piping and Equipment" for valve tags and schedules.
2. Section 22 1113 "Facility Water Distribution Piping" for valves applicable only to this piping.
3. Section 22 1116 "Domestic Water Piping" for valves applicable only to this piping.
4. Section 22 1513 "General-Service Compressed-Air Piping" for valves applicable only to this piping.
5. Section 22 6113 "Compressed-Air Piping for Laboratory and Healthcare Facilities" for valves applicable only to this piping.
6. Section 22 6213 "Vacuum Piping for Laboratory and Healthcare Facilities" for valves applicable only to this piping.
7. Section 22 6313 "Gas Piping for Laboratory and Healthcare Facilities" for valves applicable only to this piping.

1.3 DEFINITIONS

- A. CWP: Cold working pressure.
- B. EPDM: Ethylene propylene copolymer rubber.
- C. NBR: Acrylonitrile-butadiene, Buna-N, or nitrile rubber.
- D. NRS: Nonrising stem.

- E. OS&Y: Outside screw and yoke.
- F. RS: Rising stem.
- G. SWP: Steam working pressure.

1.4 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of valve indicated.

1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Source Limitations for Valves: Obtain each type of valve from single source from single manufacturer.
- B. ASME Compliance:
 - 1. ASME B16.10 and ASME B16.34 for ferrous valve dimensions and design criteria.
 - 2. ASME B31.1 for power piping valves.
 - 3. ASME B31.9 for building services piping valves.
- C. NSF Compliance: NSF 61 for valve materials for potable-water service.

1.6 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Prepare valves for shipping as follows:
 - 1. Protect internal parts against rust and corrosion.
 - 2. Protect threads, flange faces, grooves, and weld ends.
 - 3. Set angle, gate, and globe valves closed to prevent rattling.
 - 4. Set ball and plug valves open to minimize exposure of functional surfaces.
 - 5. Set butterfly valves closed or slightly open.
 - 6. Block check valves in either closed or open position.
- B. Use the following precautions during storage:
 - 1. Maintain valve end protection.
 - 2. Store valves indoors and maintain at higher than ambient dew point temperature. If outdoor storage is necessary, store valves off the ground in watertight enclosures.
- C. Use sling to handle large valves; rig sling to avoid damage to exposed parts. Do not use handwheels or stems as lifting or rigging points.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 GENERAL REQUIREMENTS FOR VALVES

- A. Refer to valve schedule articles for applications of valves.
- B. Valve Pressure and Temperature Ratings: Not less than indicated and as required for system pressures and temperatures.
- C. Valve Sizes: Same as upstream piping unless otherwise indicated.
- D. Valve Actuator Types:
 - 1. Gear Actuator: For quarter-turn valves NPS 8 and larger.
 - 2. Handwheel: For valves other than quarter-turn types.
 - 3. Handlever: For quarter-turn valves NPS 6 and smaller except plug valves.
 - 4. Chainwheel: Device for attachment to valve handwheel, stem, or other actuator; of size and with chain for mounting height, as indicated in the "Valve Installation" Article.
- E. Valves in Insulated Piping: With 2-inch stem extensions and the following features:
 - 1. Gate Valves: With rising stem.
 - 2. Ball Valves: With extended operating handle of non-thermal-conductive material, and protective sleeve that allows operation of valve without breaking the vapor seal or disturbing insulation.
 - 3. Butterfly Valves: With extended neck.
- F. Valve-End Connections:
 - 1. Flanged: With flanges according to ASME B16.1 for iron valves.
 - 2. Grooved: With grooves according to AWWA C606.
 - 3. Solder Joint: With sockets according to ASME B16.18.
 - 4. Threaded: With threads according to ASME B1.20.1.
- G. Valve Bypass and Drain Connections: MSS SP-45.

2.2 BRONZE ANGLE VALVES

- A. Class 125, Bronze Angle Valves with Nonmetallic Disc:
 - 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
 - a. American Valve, Inc.
 - b. NIBCO INC.
 - 2. Description:
 - a. Standard: MSS SP-80, Type 2.

- b. CWP Rating: 200 psig.
- c. Body Material: ASTM B 62, bronze with integral seat and screw-in bonnet.
- d. Ends: Threaded.
- e. Stem: Bronze.
- f. Disc: PTFE or TFE.
- g. Packing: Asbestos free.
- h. Handwheel: Malleable iron, bronze, or aluminum.

2.3 BRONZE BALL VALVES

A. Two-Piece, Full-Port, Bronze Ball Valves with Bronze Trim:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - a. American Valve, Inc.
 - b. Conbraco Industries, Inc.; Apollo Valves.
 - c. Crane Co.; Crane Valve Group; Crane Valves.
 - d. Hammond Valve.
 - e. Milwaukee Valve Company.
 - f. NIBCO INC.
 - g. Watts Regulator Co.; a division of Watts Water Technologies, Inc.
2. Description:
 - a. Standard: MSS SP-110.
 - b. SWP Rating: 150 psig.
 - c. CWP Rating: 600 psig.
 - d. Body Design: Two piece.
 - e. Body Material: Bronze.
 - f. Ends: Threaded.
 - g. Seats: PTFE or TFE.
 - h. Stem: Bronze.
 - i. Ball: Chrome-plated brass.
 - j. Port: Full.

2.4 IRON, SINGLE-FLANGE BUTTERFLY VALVES

A. 200 CWP, Iron, Single-Flange Butterfly Valves with EPDM Seat and Aluminum-Bronze Disc:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - a. Conbraco Industries, Inc.; Apollo Valves.
 - b. Cooper Cameron Valves; a division of Cooper Cameron Corporation.
 - c. Crane Co.; Crane Valve Group; Jenkins Valves.
 - d. Crane Co.; Crane Valve Group; Stockham Division.
 - e. Hammond Valve.
 - f. Milwaukee Valve Company.
 - g. NIBCO INC.
 - h. Watts Regulator Co.; a division of Watts Water Technologies, Inc.

2. Description:
 - a. Standard: MSS SP-67, Type I.
 - b. CWP Rating: 200 psig.
 - c. Body Design: Lug type; suitable for bidirectional dead-end service at rated pressure without use of downstream flange.
 - d. Body Material: ASTM A 126, cast iron or ASTM A 536, ductile iron.
 - e. Seat: EPDM.
 - f. Stem: One- or two-piece stainless steel.
 - g. Disc: Aluminum bronze.

2.5 BRONZE SWING CHECK VALVES

A. Class 125, Bronze Swing Check Valves with Nonmetallic Disc:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - a. Crane Co.; Crane Valve Group; Crane Valves.
 - b. Crane Co.; Crane Valve Group; Jenkins Valves.
 - c. Crane Co.; Crane Valve Group; Stockham Division.
 - d. Hammond Valve.
 - e. Milwaukee Valve Company.
 - f. NIBCO INC.
 - g. Watts Regulator Co.; a division of Watts Water Technologies, Inc.
2. Description:
 - a. Standard: MSS SP-80, Type 4.
 - b. CWP Rating: 200 psig.
 - c. Body Design: Horizontal flow.
 - d. Body Material: ASTM B 62, bronze.
 - e. Ends: Threaded.
 - f. Disc: PTFE or TFE.

2.6 IRON SWING CHECK VALVES

A. Class 125, Iron Swing Check Valves with Nonmetallic-to-Metal Seats:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - a. Crane Co.; Crane Valve Group; Crane Valves.
 - b. Crane Co.; Crane Valve Group; Stockham Division.
 - c. Hammond Valve.
 - d. NIBCO INC.
 - e. Watts Regulator Co.; a division of Watts Water Technologies, Inc.
2. Description:
 - a. Standard: MSS SP-71, Type I.

- b. CWP Rating: 200 psig.
- c. Body Design: Clear or full waterway.
- d. Body Material: ASTM A 126, gray iron with bolted bonnet.
- e. Ends: Flanged.
- f. Trim: Composition.
- g. Seat Ring: Bronze.
- h. Disc Holder: Bronze.
- i. Disc: PTFE or TFE.
- j. Gasket: Asbestos free.

2.7 IRON GATE VALVES

A. Class 125, NRS, Iron Gate Valves:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - a. Crane Co.; Crane Valve Group; Crane Valves.
 - b. Crane Co.; Crane Valve Group; Jenkins Valves.
 - c. Crane Co.; Crane Valve Group; Stockham Division.
 - d. Hammond Valve.
 - e. Milwaukee Valve Company.
 - f. NIBCO INC.
 - g. Watts Regulator Co.; a division of Watts Water Technologies, Inc.
2. Description:
 - a. Standard: MSS SP-70, Type I.
 - b. CWP Rating: 200 psig.
 - c. Body Material: ASTM A 126, gray iron with bolted bonnet.
 - d. Ends: Flanged.
 - e. Trim: Bronze.
 - f. Disc: Solid wedge.
 - g. Packing and Gasket: Asbestos free.

2.8 IRON GLOBE VALVES

A. Class 125, Iron Globe Valves:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - a. Crane Co.; Crane Valve Group; Crane Valves.
 - b. Crane Co.; Crane Valve Group; Jenkins Valves.
 - c. Crane Co.; Crane Valve Group; Stockham Division.
 - d. Hammond Valve.
 - e. Milwaukee Valve Company.
 - f. NIBCO INC.
 - g. Watts Regulator Co.; a division of Watts Water Technologies, Inc.
2. Description:

- a. Standard: MSS SP-85, Type I.
- b. CWP Rating: 200 psig.
- c. Body Material: ASTM A 126, gray iron with bolted bonnet.
- d. Ends: Flanged.
- e. Trim: Bronze.
- f. Packing and Gasket: Asbestos free.

2.9 CHAINWHEELS

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
 1. Babbitt Steam Specialty Co.
 2. Roto Hammer Industries.
 3. Trumbull Industries.
- B. Description: Valve actuation assembly with sprocket rim, brackets, and chain.
 1. Brackets: Type, number, size, and fasteners required to mount actuator on valve.
 2. Attachment: For connection to butterfly valve stems.
 3. Sprocket Rim with Chain Guides: Ductile iron, of type and size required for valve.
 4. Chain: Hot-dip, galvanized steel, of size required to fit sprocket rim.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine valve interior for cleanliness, freedom from foreign matter, and corrosion. Remove special packing materials, such as blocks, used to prevent disc movement during shipping and handling.
- B. Operate valves in positions from fully open to fully closed. Examine guides and seats made accessible by such operations.
- C. Examine threads on valve and mating pipe for form and cleanliness.
- D. Examine mating flange faces for conditions that might cause leakage. Check bolting for proper size, length, and material. Verify that gasket is of proper size, that its material composition is suitable for service, and that it is free from defects and damage.
- E. Do not attempt to repair defective valves; replace with new valves.

3.2 VALVE INSTALLATION

- A. Install valves with unions or flanges at each piece of equipment arranged to allow service, maintenance, and equipment removal without system shutdown.
- B. Locate valves for easy access and provide separate support where necessary.

- C. Install valves in horizontal piping with stem at or above center of pipe.
- D. Install valves in position to allow full stem movement.
- E. Install chainwheels on operators for butterfly, gate, and globe valves NPS 4 and larger and more than 96 inches above floor. Extend chains to 60 inches above finished floor.
- F. Install check valves for proper direction of flow and as follows:
 - 1. Swing Check Valves: In horizontal position with hinge pin level.

3.3 ADJUSTING

- A. Adjust or replace valve packing after piping systems have been tested and put into service but before final adjusting and balancing. Replace valves if persistent leaking occurs.

3.4 GENERAL REQUIREMENTS FOR VALVE APPLICATIONS

- A. If valve applications are not indicated, use the following:
 - 1. Shutoff Service: Ball, butterfly, or gate valves.
 - 2. Butterfly Valve Dead-End Service: Single-flange (lug) type.
 - 3. Throttling Service: Globe, ball, or butterfly valves.
 - 4. Pump-Discharge Check Valves:
 - a. NPS 2 and Smaller: Bronze swing check valves with nonmetallic disc.
 - b. NPS 2-1/2 and Larger for Domestic Water: Iron swing check valves with lever and weight or with spring.
- B. If valves with specified SWP classes or CWP ratings are not available, the same types of valves with higher SWP classes or CWP ratings may be substituted.
- C. Select valves, except wafer types, with the following end connections:
 - 1. For Copper Tubing, NPS 2 and Smaller: Threaded ends except where solder-joint valve-end option is indicated in valve schedules below.
 - 2. For Copper Tubing, NPS 2-1/2 to NPS 4: Flanged ends except where threaded valve-end option is indicated in valve schedules below.
 - 3. For Steel Piping, NPS 2 and Smaller: Threaded ends.
 - 4. For Steel Piping, NPS 2-1/2 to NPS 4: Flanged ends except where threaded valve-end option is indicated in valve schedules below.
 - 5. For Steel Piping, NPS 5 and Larger: Flanged ends.

3.5 DOMESTIC, HOT- AND COLD-WATER VALVE SCHEDULE

- A. Pipe NPS 2 and Smaller:
 - 1. Bronze Valves: May be provided with solder-joint ends instead of threaded ends.
 - 2. Bronze Angle Valves: Class 125, nonmetallic disc.

3. Ball Valves: Two piece, full port, bronze with bronze trim.
 4. Bronze Swing Check Valves: Class 125, nonmetallic disc.
- B. Pipe NPS 2-1/2 and Larger:
1. Iron Valves, NPS 2-1/2 to NPS 4: May be provided with threaded ends instead of flanged ends.
 2. Iron, Single-Flange Butterfly Valves: 200 CWP, EPDM seat, aluminum-bronze disc.
 3. Iron Swing Check Valves: Class 125, nonmetallic-to-metal seats.
 4. Iron Gate Valves: Class 125, NRS.
 5. Iron Globe Valves: Class 125.

END OF SECTION

SECTION 22 0529 - HANGERS AND SUPPORTS FOR PLUMBING PIPING

AND EQUIPMENT PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
 - 1. Metal pipe hangers and supports.
 - 2. Trapeze pipe hangers.
 - 3. Metal framing systems.
 - 4. Thermal-hanger shield inserts.
 - 5. Fastener systems.
 - 6. Pipe stands.
 - 7. Pipe positioning systems.
 - 8. Equipment supports.
- B. Related Sections:
 - 1. Section 05 5000 "Metal Fabrications" for structural-steel shapes and plates for trapeze hangers for pipe and equipment supports.
 - 2. Section 22 0516 "Expansion Fittings and Loops for Plumbing Piping" for pipe guides and anchors.
 - 3. Section 22 0548 "Vibration and Seismic Controls for Plumbing Piping and Equipment" for vibration isolation devices.

1.3 DEFINITIONS

- A. MSS: Manufacturers Standardization Society of The Valve and Fittings Industry Inc.

1.4 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Delegated Design: Design trapeze pipe hangers and equipment supports, including comprehensive engineering analysis by a qualified professional engineer, using performance requirements and design criteria indicated.

1.5 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product indicated.
- B. Shop Drawings: Show fabrication and installation details and include calculations for the following; include Product Data for components:
 - 1. Trapeze pipe hangers.

2. Metal framing systems.
3. Pipe stands.
4. Equipment supports.

1.6 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Welding certificates.

1.7 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Structural Steel Welding Qualifications: Qualify procedures and personnel according to AWS D1.1/D1.1M, "Structural Welding Code - Steel."
- B. Pipe Welding Qualifications: Qualify procedures and operators according to ASME Boiler and Pressure Vessel Code.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 METAL PIPE HANGERS AND SUPPORTS

- A. Carbon-Steel Pipe Hangers and Supports:
 1. Description: MSS SP-58, Types 1 through 58, factory-fabricated components.
 2. Galvanized Metallic Coatings: Pregalvanized or hot dipped.
 3. Nonmetallic Coatings: Plastic coating, jacket, or liner.
 4. Padded Hangers: Hanger with fiberglass or other pipe insulation pad or cushion to support bearing surface of piping.
 5. Hanger Rods: Continuous-thread rod, nuts, and washer made of carbon steel.
- B. Copper Pipe Hangers:
 1. Description: MSS SP-58, Types 1 through 58, copper-coated-steel, factory-fabricated components.
 2. Hanger Rods: Continuous-thread rod, nuts, and washer made of copper-coated steel.

2.2 TRAPEZE PIPE HANGERS

- A. Description: MSS SP-69, Type 59, shop- or field-fabricated pipe-support assembly made from structural carbon-steel shapes with MSS SP-58 carbon-steel hanger rods, nuts, saddles, and U-bolts.

2.3 METAL FRAMING SYSTEMS

- A. MFMA Manufacturer Metal Framing Systems:
 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
 - a. Allied Tube & Conduit.
 - b. Cooper B-Line, Inc.
 - c. Flex-Strut Inc.

- d. GS Metals Corp.
- e. Thomas & Betts Corporation.
- f. Unistrut Corporation; Tyco International, Ltd.
- g. Wesanco, Inc.
2. Description: Shop- or field-fabricated pipe-support assembly for supporting multiple parallel pipes.
3. Standard: MFMA-4.
4. Channels: Continuous slotted steel channel with inturred lips.
5. Channel Nuts: Formed or stamped steel nuts or other devices designed to fit into channel slot and, when tightened, prevent slipping along channel.
6. Hanger Rods: Continuous-thread rod, nuts, and washer made of carbon steel.
7. Metallic Coating: Electroplated zinc.

2.4 THERMAL-HANGER SHIELD INSERTS

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
 1. Carpenter & Paterson, Inc.
 2. Clement Support Services.
 3. ERICO International Corporation.
 4. National Pipe Hanger Corporation.
 5. PHS Industries, Inc.
 6. Pipe Shields, Inc.; a subsidiary of Piping Technology & Products, Inc.
 7. Piping Technology & Products, Inc.
 8. Rilco Manufacturing Co., Inc.
 9. Value Engineered Products, Inc.
- B. Insulation-Insert Material for Cold Piping: ASTM C 552, Type II cellular glass with 100-psig or ASTM C 591, Type VI, Grade 1 polyisocyanurate with 125-psig minimum compressive strength and vapor barrier.
- C. Insulation-Insert Material for Hot Piping: Water-repellent treated, ASTM C 533, Type I calcium silicate with 100-psig or ASTM C 591, Type VI, Grade 1 polyisocyanurate with 125-psig minimum compressive strength.
- D. For Trapeze or Clamped Systems: Insert and shield shall cover entire circumference of pipe.
- E. For Clevis or Band Hangers: Insert and shield shall cover lower 180 degrees of pipe.
- F. Insert Length: Extend 2 inches beyond sheet metal shield for piping operating below ambient air temperature.

2.5 FASTENER SYSTEMS

- A. Powder-Actuated Fasteners: Threaded-steel stud, for use in hardened portland cement concrete with pull-out, tension, and shear capacities appropriate for supported loads and building materials where used.
- B. Mechanical-Expansion Anchors: Insert-wedge-type, zinc-coated steel anchors, for use in hardened portland cement concrete; with pull-out, tension, and shear capacities appropriate for supported loads and building materials where used.

2.6 PIPE STANDS

- A. General Requirements for Pipe Stands: Shop- or field-fabricated assemblies made of manufactured corrosion-resistant components to support roof-mounted piping.
- B. Compact Pipe Stand: One-piece plastic unit with integral-rod roller, pipe clamps, or V-shaped cradle to support pipe, for roof installation without membrane penetration.
- C. Low-Type, Single-Pipe Stand: One-piece plastic base unit with plastic roller, for roof installation without membrane penetration.
- D. High-Type, Single-Pipe Stand:
 - 1. Description: Assembly of base, vertical and horizontal members, and pipe support, for roof installation without membrane penetration.
 - 2. Base: Plastic.
 - 3. Vertical Members: Two or more cadmium-plated-steel or stainless-steel, continuous-thread rods.
 - 4. Horizontal Member: Cadmium-plated-steel or stainless-steel rod with plastic or stainless-steel, roller-type pipe support.
- E. High-Type, Multiple-Pipe Stand:
 - 1. Description: Assembly of bases, vertical and horizontal members, and pipe supports, for roof installation without membrane penetration.
 - 2. Bases: One or more; plastic.
 - 3. Vertical Members: Two or more protective-coated-steel channels.
 - 4. Horizontal Member: Protective-coated-steel channel.
 - 5. Pipe Supports: Galvanized-steel, clevis-type pipe hangers.
- F. Curb-Mounting-Type Pipe Stands: Shop- or field-fabricated pipe supports made from structural- steel shapes, continuous-thread rods, and rollers, for mounting on permanent stationary roof curb.

2.7 PIPE POSITIONING SYSTEMS

- A. Description: IAPMO PS 42, positioning system of metal brackets, clips, and straps for positioning piping in pipe spaces; for plumbing fixtures in commercial applications.

2.8 EQUIPMENT SUPPORTS

- A. Description: Welded, shop- or field-fabricated equipment support made from structural carbon- steel shapes.

2.9 MISCELLANEOUS MATERIALS

- A. Structural Steel: ASTM A 36/A 36M, carbon-steel plates, shapes, and bars; black and galvanized.
- B. Grout: ASTM C 1107, factory-mixed and -packaged, dry, hydraulic-cement, nonshrink and nonmetallic grout; suitable for interior and exterior applications.
 - 1. Properties: Nonstaining, noncorrosive, and nongaseous.
 - 2. Design Mix: 5000-psi, 28-day compressive strength.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 HANGER AND SUPPORT INSTALLATION

- A. Metal Pipe-Hanger Installation: Comply with MSS SP-69 and MSS SP-89. Install hangers, supports, clamps, and attachments as required to properly support piping from the building structure.
- B. Metal Trapeze Pipe-Hanger Installation: Comply with MSS SP-69 and MSS SP-89. Arrange for grouping of parallel runs of horizontal piping, and support together on field-fabricated trapeze pipe hangers.
 - 1. Pipes of Various Sizes: Support together and space trapezes for smallest pipe size or install intermediate supports for smaller diameter pipes as specified for individual pipe hangers.
 - 2. Field fabricate from ASTM A 36/A 36M, carbon-steel shapes selected for loads being supported. Weld steel according to AWS D1.1/D1.1M.
- C. Metal Framing System Installation: Arrange for grouping of parallel runs of piping, and support together on field-assembled metal framing systems.
- D. Thermal-Hanger Shield Installation: Install in pipe hanger or shield for insulated piping.
- E. Fastener System Installation:
 - 1. Install powder-actuated fasteners for use in lightweight concrete or concrete slabs less than 4 inches thick in concrete after concrete is placed and completely cured. Use operators that are licensed by powder-actuated tool manufacturer. Install fasteners according to powder-actuated tool manufacturer's operating manual.
 - 2. Install mechanical-expansion anchors in concrete after concrete is placed and completely cured. Install fasteners according to manufacturer's written instructions.
- F. Pipe Stand Installation:
 - 1. Pipe Stand Types except Curb-Mounted Type: Assemble components and mount on smooth roof surface. Do not penetrate roof membrane.
 - 2. Curb-Mounted-Type Pipe Stands: Assemble components or fabricate pipe stand and mount on permanent, stationary roof curb. See Section 07 7200 "Roof Accessories" for curbs.
- G. Pipe Positioning-System Installation: Install support devices to make rigid supply and waste piping connections to each plumbing fixture.
- H. Install hangers and supports complete with necessary attachments, inserts, bolts, rods, nuts, washers, and other accessories.
- I. Equipment Support Installation: Fabricate from welded-structural-steel shapes.
- J. Install hangers and supports to allow controlled thermal movement of piping systems, to permit freedom of movement between pipe anchors, and to facilitate action of expansion joints, expansion loops, expansion bends, and similar units.
- K. Install building attachments within concrete slabs or attach to structural steel. Install additional attachments at concentrated loads, including valves, flanges, and strainers, NPS 2-1/2 and larger and at changes in direction of piping. Install concrete inserts before concrete is placed; fasten inserts to forms and install reinforcing bars through openings at top of inserts.

- L. Load Distribution: Install hangers and supports so that piping live and dead loads and stresses from movement will not be transmitted to connected equipment.
- M. Pipe Slopes: Install hangers and supports to provide indicated pipe slopes and to not exceed maximum pipe deflections allowed by ASME B31.9 for building services piping.
- N. Insulated Piping:
 - 1. Attach clamps and spacers to piping.
 - a. Piping Operating above Ambient Air Temperature: Clamp may project through insulation.
 - b. Piping Operating below Ambient Air Temperature: Use thermal-hanger shield insert with clamp sized to match OD of insert.
 - c. Do not exceed pipe stress limits allowed by ASME B31.9 for building services piping.
 - 2. Install MSS SP-58, Type 39, protection saddles if insulation without vapor barrier is indicated. Fill interior voids with insulation that matches adjoining insulation.
 - a. Option: Thermal-hanger shield inserts may be used. Include steel weight-distribution plate for pipe NPS 4 and larger if pipe is installed on rollers.
 - 3. Install MSS SP-58, Type 40, protective shields on cold piping with vapor barrier. Shields shall span an arc of 180 degrees.
 - a. Option: Thermal-hanger shield inserts may be used. Include steel weight-distribution plate for pipe NPS 4 and larger if pipe is installed on rollers.
 - 4. Shield Dimensions for Pipe: Not less than the following:
 - a. NPS 1/4 to NPS 3-1/2: 12 inches long and 0.048 inch thick.
 - b. NPS 4: 12 inches long and 0.06 inch thick.
 - c. NPS 5 and NPS 6: 18 inches long and 0.06 inch thick.
 - d. NPS 8 to NPS 14: 24 inches long and 0.075 inch thick.
 - e. NPS 16 to NPS 24: 24 inches long and 0.105 inch thick.
 - 5. Pipes NPS 8 and Larger: Include wood or reinforced calcium-silicate-insulation inserts of length at least as long as protective shield.
 - 6. Thermal-Hanger Shields: Install with insulation same thickness as piping insulation.

3.2 EQUIPMENT SUPPORTS

- A. Fabricate structural-steel stands to suspend equipment from structure overhead or to support equipment above floor.
- B. Grouting: Place grout under supports for equipment and make bearing surface smooth.

3.3 METAL FABRICATIONS

- A. Cut, drill, and fit miscellaneous metal fabrications for trapeze pipe hangers and equipment supports.
- B. Fit exposed connections together to form hairline joints. Field weld connections that cannot be shop welded because of shipping size limitations.
- C. Field Welding: Comply with AWS D1.1/D1.1M procedures for shielded, metal arc welding; appearance and quality of welds; and methods used in correcting welding work; and with the following:
 - 1. Use materials and methods that minimize distortion and develop strength and corrosion resistance of base metals.

2. Obtain fusion without undercut or overlap.
3. Remove welding flux immediately.
4. Finish welds at exposed connections so no roughness shows after finishing and so contours of welded surfaces match adjacent contours.

3.4 ADJUSTING

- A. Hanger Adjustments: Adjust hangers to distribute loads equally on attachments and to achieve indicated slope of pipe.
- B. Trim excess length of continuous-thread hanger and support rods to 1-1/2 inches.

3.5 PAINTING

- A. Touchup: Clean field welds and abraded areas of shop paint. Paint exposed areas immediately after erecting hangers and supports. Use same materials as used for shop painting. Comply with SSPC-PA 1 requirements for touching up field-painted surfaces.
 1. Apply paint by brush or spray to provide a minimum dry film thickness of 2.0 mils.
- B. Touchup: Cleaning and touchup painting of field welds, bolted connections, and abraded areas of shop paint on miscellaneous metal are specified in Section 09 9123 "Interior Painting."
- C. Galvanized Surfaces: Clean welds, bolted connections, and abraded areas and apply galvanizing-repair paint to comply with ASTM A 780.

3.6 HANGER AND SUPPORT SCHEDULE

- A. Specific hanger and support requirements are in Sections specifying piping systems and equipment.
- B. Comply with MSS SP-69 for pipe-hanger selections and applications that are not specified in piping system Sections.
- C. Use hangers and supports with galvanized metallic coatings for piping and equipment that will not have field-applied finish.
- D. Use nonmetallic coatings on attachments for electrolytic protection where attachments are in direct contact with copper tubing.
- E. Use carbon-steel pipe hangers and supports, metal trapeze pipe hangers, and metal framing systems and attachments for general service applications.
- F. Use stainless-steel pipe hangers and stainless-steel or corrosion-resistant attachments for hostile environment applications.
- G. Use copper-plated pipe hangers and copper attachments for copper piping and tubing.
- H. Use padded hangers for piping that is subject to scratching.
- I. Use thermal-hanger shield inserts for insulated piping and tubing.

- J. Horizontal-Piping Hangers and Supports: Unless otherwise indicated and except as specified in piping system Sections, install the following types:
1. Adjustable, Steel Clevis Hangers (MSS Type 1): For suspension of noninsulated or insulated, stationary pipes NPS 1/2 to NPS 30.
 2. Carbon- or Alloy-Steel, Double-Bolt Pipe Clamps (MSS Type 3): For suspension of pipes NPS 3/4 to NPS 36, requiring clamp flexibility and up to 4 inches of insulation.
 3. Steel Pipe Clamps (MSS Type 4): For suspension of cold and hot pipes NPS 1/2 to NPS 24 if little or no insulation is required.
 4. U-Bolts (MSS Type 24): For support of heavy pipes NPS 1/2 to NPS 30.
 5. Clips (MSS Type 26): For support of insulated pipes not subject to expansion or contraction.
 6. Pipe Saddle Supports (MSS Type 36): For support of pipes NPS 4 to NPS 36, with steel-pipe base stanchion support and cast-iron floor flange or carbon-steel plate.
 7. Pipe Stanchion Saddles (MSS Type 37): For support of pipes NPS 4 to NPS 36, with steel-pipe base stanchion support and cast-iron floor flange or carbon-steel plate, and with U-bolt to retain pipe.
 8. Adjustable Pipe Saddle Supports (MSS Type 38): For stanchion-type support for pipes NPS 2- 1/2 to NPS 36 if vertical adjustment is required, with steel-pipe base stanchion support and cast-iron floor flange.
 9. Single-Pipe Rolls (MSS Type 41): For suspension of pipes NPS 1 to NPS 30, from two rods if longitudinal movement caused by expansion and contraction might occur.
 10. Adjustable Roller Hangers (MSS Type 43): For suspension of pipes NPS 2-1/2 to NPS 24, from single rod if horizontal movement caused by expansion and contraction might occur.
 11. Complete Pipe Rolls (MSS Type 44): For support of pipes NPS 2 to NPS 42 if longitudinal movement caused by expansion and contraction might occur but vertical adjustment is not necessary.
 12. Pipe Roll and Plate Units (MSS Type 45): For support of pipes NPS 2 to NPS 24 if small horizontal movement caused by expansion and contraction might occur and vertical adjustment is not necessary.
 13. Adjustable Pipe Roll and Base Units (MSS Type 46): For support of pipes NPS 2 to NPS 30 if vertical and lateral adjustment during installation might be required in addition to expansion and contraction.
- K. Vertical-Piping Clamps: Unless otherwise indicated and except as specified in piping system Sections, install the following types:
1. Extension Pipe or Riser Clamps (MSS Type 8): For support of pipe risers NPS 3/4 to NPS 24.
 2. Carbon- or Alloy-Steel Riser Clamps (MSS Type 42): For support of pipe risers NPS 3/4 to NPS 24 if longer ends are required for riser clamps.
- L. Hanger-Rod Attachments: Unless otherwise indicated and except as specified in piping system Sections, install the following types:
1. Steel Clevises (MSS Type 14): For 120 to 450 deg F piping installations.
 2. Swivel Turnbuckles (MSS Type 15): For use with MSS Type 11, split pipe rings.
 3. Malleable-Iron Sockets (MSS Type 16): For attaching hanger rods to various types of building attachments.
 4. Steel Weldless Eye Nuts (MSS Type 17): For 120 to 450 deg F piping installations.
- M. Building Attachments: Unless otherwise indicated and except as specified in piping system Sections, install the following types:
1. Steel or Malleable Concrete Inserts (MSS Type 18): For upper attachment to

- suspend pipe hangers from concrete ceiling.
 2. Top-Beam C-Clamps (MSS Type 19): For use under roof installations with bar-joint construction, to attach to top flange of structural shape.
 3. Side-Beam or Channel Clamps (MSS Type 20): For attaching to bottom flange of beams, channels, or angles.
 4. Center-Beam Clamps (MSS Type 21): For attaching to center of bottom flange of beams.
 5. Welded Beam Attachments (MSS Type 22): For attaching to bottom of beams if loads are considerable and rod sizes are large.
 6. C-Clamps (MSS Type 23): For structural shapes.
 7. Top-Beam Clamps (MSS Type 25): For top of beams if hanger rod is required tangent to flange edge.
 8. Side-Beam Clamps (MSS Type 27): For bottom of steel I-beams.
 9. Steel-Beam Clamps with Eye Nuts (MSS Type 28): For attaching to bottom of steel I-beams for heavy loads.
 10. Linked-Steel Clamps with Eye Nuts (MSS Type 29): For attaching to bottom of steel I-beams for heavy loads, with link extensions.
 11. Malleable-Beam Clamps with Extension Pieces (MSS Type 30): For attaching to structural steel.
 12. Welded-Steel Brackets: For support of pipes from below or for suspending from above by using clip and rod. Use one of the following for indicated loads:
 - a. Light (MSS Type 31): 750 lb.
 - b. Medium (MSS Type 32): 1500 lb.
 - c. Heavy (MSS Type 33): 3000 lb.
 13. Side-Beam Brackets (MSS Type 34): For sides of steel or wooden beams.
 14. Plate Lugs (MSS Type 57): For attaching to steel beams if flexibility at beam is required.
 15. Horizontal Travelers (MSS Type 58): For supporting piping systems subject to linear horizontal movement where headroom is limited.
- N. Saddles and Shields: Unless otherwise indicated and except as specified in piping system Sections, install the following types:
1. Steel-Pipe-Covering Protection Saddles (MSS Type 39): To fill interior voids with insulation that matches adjoining insulation.
 2. Protection Shields (MSS Type 40): Of length recommended in writing by manufacturer to prevent crushing insulation.
 3. Thermal-Hanger Shield Inserts: For supporting insulated pipe.
- O. Spring Hangers and Supports: Unless otherwise indicated and except as specified in piping system Sections, install the following types:
1. Restraint-Control Devices (MSS Type 47): Where indicated to control piping movement.
 2. Spring Cushions (MSS Type 48): For light loads if vertical movement does not exceed 1-1/4 inches.
 3. Spring-Cushion Roll Hangers (MSS Type 49): For equipping Type 41, roll hanger with springs.
 4. Spring Sway Braces (MSS Type 50): To retard sway, shock, vibration, or thermal expansion in piping systems.
 5. Variable-Spring Hangers (MSS Type 51): Preset to indicated load and limit variability factor to 25 percent to allow expansion and contraction of piping system from hanger.
 6. Variable-Spring Base Supports (MSS Type 52): Preset to indicated load and limit variability factor to 25 percent to allow expansion and contraction of piping system from base support.

7. Variable-Spring Trapeze Hangers (MSS Type 53): Preset to indicated load and limit variability factor to 25 percent to allow expansion and contraction of piping system from trapeze support.
8. Constant Supports: For critical piping stress and if necessary to avoid transfer of stress from one support to another support, critical terminal, or connected equipment. Include auxiliary stops for erection, hydrostatic test, and load-adjustment capability. These supports include the following types:
 - a. Horizontal (MSS Type 54): Mounted horizontally.
 - b. Vertical (MSS Type 55): Mounted vertically.
 - c. Trapeze (MSS Type 56): Two vertical-type supports and one trapeze member.
- P. Comply with MSS SP-69 for trapeze pipe-hanger selections and applications that are not specified in piping system Sections.
- Q. Comply with MFMA-103 for metal framing system selections and applications that are not specified in piping system Sections.
- R. Use powder-actuated fasteners or mechanical-expansion anchors instead of building attachments where required in concrete construction.
- S. Use pipe positioning systems in pipe spaces behind plumbing fixtures to support supply and waste piping for plumbing fixtures.

END OF SECTION

SECTION 22 0553 - IDENTIFICATION FOR PLUMBING PIPING AND

EQUIPMENT PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
 - 1. Equipment labels.
 - 2. Warning signs and labels.
 - 3. Pipe labels.
 - 4. Stencils.
 - 5. Valve tags.
 - 6. Warning tags.

1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product indicated.
- B. Samples: For color, letter style, and graphic representation required for each identification material and device.
- C. Equipment Label Schedule: Include a listing of all equipment to be labeled with the proposed content for each label.
- D. Valve numbering scheme.
- E. Valve Schedules: For each piping system to include in maintenance manuals.

1.4 COORDINATION

- A. Coordinate installation of identifying devices with completion of covering and painting of surfaces where devices are to be applied.
- B. Coordinate installation of identifying devices with locations of access panels and doors.
- C. Install identifying devices before installing acoustical ceilings and similar concealment.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 EQUIPMENT LABELS

- A. Metal Labels for Equipment:
1. Material and Thickness: Aluminum, 0.032-inch minimum thickness, and having predrilled or stamped holes for attachment hardware.
 2. Minimum Label Size: Length and width vary for required label content, but not less than 2-1/2 by 3/4 inch.
 3. Minimum Letter Size: 1/4 inch for name of units if viewing distance is less than 24 inches, 1/2 inch for viewing distances up to 72 inches, and proportionately larger lettering for greater viewing distances. Include secondary lettering two-thirds to three-fourths the size of principal lettering.
 4. Fasteners: Stainless-steel rivets or self-tapping screws.
 5. Adhesive: Contact-type permanent adhesive, compatible with label and with substrate.
- B. Plastic Labels for Equipment:
1. Material and Thickness: Multilayer, multicolor, plastic labels for mechanical engraving, 1/16 inch thick, and having predrilled holes for attachment hardware.
 2. Letter Color: White.
 3. Background Color: Black.
 4. Maximum Temperature: Able to withstand temperatures up to 160 deg F.
 5. Minimum Label Size: Length and width vary for required label content, but not less than 2-1/2 by 3/4 inch.
 6. Minimum Letter Size: 1/4 inch for name of units if viewing distance is less than 24 inches, 1/2 inch for viewing distances up to 72 inches, and proportionately larger lettering for greater viewing distances. Include secondary lettering two-thirds to three-fourths the size of principal lettering.
 7. Fasteners: Stainless-steel rivets or self-tapping screws.
 8. Adhesive: Contact-type permanent adhesive, compatible with label and with substrate.
- C. Label Content: Include equipment's Drawing designation or unique equipment number, Drawing numbers where equipment is indicated (plans, details, and schedules), plus the Specification Section number and title where equipment is specified.
- D. Equipment Label Schedule: For each item of equipment to be labeled, on 8-1/2-by-11-inch bond paper. Tabulate equipment identification number and identify Drawing numbers where equipment is indicated (plans, details, and schedules), plus the Specification Section number and title where equipment is specified. Equipment schedule shall be included in operation and maintenance data.

2.2 WARNING SIGNS AND LABELS

- A. Material and Thickness: Multilayer, multicolor, plastic labels for mechanical engraving, 1/16 inch thick, and having predrilled holes for attachment hardware.
- B. Letter Color: Black.

- C. Background Color: Yellow.
- D. Maximum Temperature: Able to withstand temperatures up to 160 deg F.
- E. Minimum Label Size: Length and width vary for required label content, but not less than 2-1/2 by 3/4 inch.
- F. Minimum Letter Size: 1/4 inch for name of units if viewing distance is less than 24 inches, 1/2 inch for viewing distances up to 72 inches, and proportionately larger lettering for greater viewing distances. Include secondary lettering two-thirds to three-fourths the size of principal lettering.
- G. Fasteners: Stainless-steel rivets or self-tapping screws.
- H. Adhesive: Contact-type permanent adhesive, compatible with label and with substrate.
- I. Label Content: Include caution and warning information, plus emergency notification instructions.

2.3 PIPE LABELS

- A. General Requirements for Manufactured Pipe Labels: Preprinted, color-coded, with lettering indicating service, and showing flow direction.
- B. Pretensioned Pipe Labels: Precoiled, semirigid plastic formed to cover full circumference of pipe and to attach to pipe without fasteners or adhesive.
- C. Self-Adhesive Pipe Labels: Printed plastic with contact-type, permanent-adhesive backing.
- D. Pipe Label Contents: Include identification of piping service using same designations or abbreviations as used on Drawings, pipe size, and an arrow indicating flow direction.
 - 1. Flow-Direction Arrows: Integral with piping system service lettering to accommodate both directions, or as separate unit on each pipe label to indicate flow direction.
 - 2. Lettering Size: At least 1-1/2 inches high.

2.4 STENCILS

- A. Stencils: Prepared with letter sizes according to ASME A13.1 for piping; and minimum letter height of 3/4 inch for access panel and door labels, equipment labels, and similar operational instructions.
 - 1. Stencil Material: Aluminum.
 - 2. Stencil Paint: Exterior, gloss, alkyd enamel black unless otherwise indicated. Paint may be in pressurized spray-can form.
 - 3. Identification Paint: Exterior, alkyd enamel in colors according to ASME A13.1 unless otherwise indicated.

2.5 VALVE TAGS

- A. Valve Tags: Stamped or engraved with 1/4-inch letters for piping system abbreviation and 1/2-inch numbers.
 - 1. Tag Material: Brass, 0.032-inch, Stainless steel, 0.025-inch, Aluminum, 0.032-inch, or anodized aluminum, 0.032-inch minimum thickness, and having predrilled or stamped holes for attachment hardware.
 - 2. Fasteners: Brass wire-link or beaded chain; or S-hook.
- B. Valve Schedules: For each piping system, on 8-1/2-by-11-inch bond paper. Tabulate valve number, piping system, system abbreviation (as shown on valve tag), location of valve (room or space), normal-operating position (open, closed, or modulating), and variations for identification. Mark valves for emergency shutoff and similar special uses.
 - 1. Valve-tag schedule shall be included in operation and maintenance data.

2.6 WARNING TAGS

- A. Warning Tags: Preprinted or partially preprinted, accident-prevention tags, of plasticized card stock with matte finish suitable for writing.
 - 1. Size: 3 by 5-1/4 inches minimum.
 - 2. Fasteners: Brass grommet and wire.
 - 3. Nomenclature: Large-size primary caption such as "DANGER," "CAUTION," or "DO NOT OPERATE."
 - 4. Color: Yellow background with black lettering.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 PREPARATION

- A. Clean piping and equipment surfaces of substances that could impair bond of identification devices, including dirt, oil, grease, release agents, and incompatible primers, paints, and encapsulants.

3.2 EQUIPMENT LABEL INSTALLATION

- A. Install or permanently fasten labels on each major item of mechanical equipment.
- B. Locate equipment labels where accessible and visible.

3.3 PIPE LABEL INSTALLATION

- A. Piping Color-Coding: Painting of piping is specified in Section 09 9123 "Interior Painting."
- B. Stenciled Pipe Label Option: Stenciled labels may be provided instead of manufactured pipe labels, at Installer's option. Install stenciled pipe labels with painted, color-coded bands or rectangles, complying with ASME A13.1, on each piping system.
 - 1. Identification Paint: Use for contrasting background.
 - 2. Stencil Paint: Use for pipe marking.
- C. Locate pipe labels where piping is exposed or above accessible ceilings in finished spaces; machine rooms; accessible maintenance spaces such as shafts, tunnels, and plenums; and exterior exposed locations as follows:

1. Near each valve and control device.
2. Near each branch connection, excluding short takeoffs for fixtures and terminal units. Where flow pattern is not obvious, mark each pipe at branch.
3. Near penetrations through walls, floors, ceilings, and inaccessible enclosures.
4. At access doors, manholes, and similar access points that permit view of concealed piping.
5. Near major equipment items and other points of origination and termination.
6. Spaced at maximum intervals of 50 feet along each run. Reduce intervals to 25 feet in areas of congested piping and equipment.
7. On piping above removable acoustical ceilings. Omit intermediately spaced labels.

D. Pipe Label Color Schedule:

1. Domestic Water Piping:
 - a. Background Color: Complying with ANSI 13.1.
 - b. Letter Color: Complying with ANSI 13.1.
2. Sanitary Waste and Storm Drainage Piping:
 - a. Background Color: Complying with ANSI 13.1.
 - b. Letter Color: Complying with ANSI 13.1.

3.4 VALVE-TAG INSTALLATION

- A. Install tags on valves and control devices in piping systems, except check valves; valves within factory-fabricated equipment units; shutoff valves; faucets; convenience and lawn-watering hose connections; and similar roughing-in connections of end-use fixtures and units. List tagged valves in a valve schedule.
- B. Valve-Tag Application Schedule: Tag valves according to size, shape, and color scheme and with captions similar to those indicated in the following subparagraphs:
 1. Valve-Tag Size and Shape:
 - a. Cold Water: 1-1/2 inches.
 - b. Hot Water: 1-1/2 inches.
 2. Valve-Tag Color:
 - a. Cold Water: Natural.
 - b. Hot Water: Natural.
 3. Letter Color:
 - a. Cold Water: Black.
 - b. Hot Water: Black.

3.5 WARNING-TAG INSTALLATION

- A. Write required message on, and attach warning tags to, equipment and other items where required.

END OF SECTION

SECTION 22 0719 - PLUMBING PIPING INSULATION

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section includes insulating the following plumbing piping services:
 - 1. Domestic cold-water piping.
 - 2. Domestic hot-water piping.
 - 3. Domestic recirculating hot-water piping.
 - 4. Domestic chilled-water piping for drinking fountains.
 - 5. Sanitary waste piping exposed to freezing conditions.
 - 6. Storm-water piping exposed to freezing conditions.
 - 7. Roof drains and rainwater leaders.
 - 8. Supplies and drains for handicap-accessible lavatories and sinks.
- B. Related Sections:
 - 1. Section 22 0716 "Plumbing Equipment Insulation."

1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product indicated. Include thermal conductivity, water-vapor permeance thickness, and jackets (both factory- and field-applied, if any).
- B. Shop Drawings: Include plans, elevations, sections, details, and attachments to other work.
 - 1. Detail application of protective shields, saddles, and inserts at hangers for each type of insulation and hanger.
 - 2. Detail attachment and covering of heat tracing inside insulation.
 - 3. Detail insulation application at pipe expansion joints for each type of insulation.
 - 4. Detail insulation application at elbows, fittings, flanges, valves, and specialties for each type of insulation.
 - 5. Detail removable insulation at piping specialties, equipment connections, and access panels.
 - 6. Detail application of field-applied jackets.
 - 7. Detail application at linkages of control devices.

1.4 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Qualification Data: For qualified Installer.
- B. Field quality-control reports.

1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Installer Qualifications: Skilled mechanics who have successfully completed an apprenticeship program or another craft training program certified by the Department of Labor, Bureau of Apprenticeship and Training.
- B. Surface-Burning Characteristics: For insulation and related materials, as determined by testing identical products according to ASTM E 84 by a testing agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction. Factory label insulation and jacket materials and adhesive, mastic, tapes, and cement material containers, with appropriate markings of applicable testing agency.
 - 1. Insulation Installed Indoors: Flame-spread index of 25 or less, and smoke-developed index of 50 or less.
 - 2. Insulation Installed Outdoors: Flame-spread index of 75 or less, and smoke-developed index of 150 or less.
- C. Comply with the following applicable standards and other requirements specified for miscellaneous components:
 - 1. Supply and Drain Protective Shielding Guards: ICC A117.1.

1.6 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Packaging: Insulation material containers shall be marked by manufacturer with appropriate ASTM standard designation, type and grade, and maximum use temperature.

1.7 COORDINATION

- A. Coordinate sizes and locations of supports, hangers, and insulation shields specified in Section 22 0529 "Hangers and Supports for Plumbing Piping and Equipment."
- B. Coordinate clearance requirements with piping Installer for piping insulation application. Before preparing piping Shop Drawings, establish and maintain clearance requirements for installation of insulation and field-applied jackets and finishes and for space required for maintenance.
- C. Coordinate installation and testing of heat tracing.

1.8 SCHEDULING

- A. Schedule insulation application after pressure testing systems and, where required, after installing and testing heat tracing. Insulation application may begin on segments that have satisfactory test results.
- B. Complete installation and concealment of plastic materials as rapidly as possible in each area of construction.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 INSULATION MATERIALS

- A. Products shall not contain asbestos, lead, mercury, or mercury compounds.
- B. Products that come in contact with stainless steel shall have a leachable chloride content of less than 50 ppm when tested according to ASTM C 871.
- C. Insulation materials for use on austenitic stainless steel shall be qualified as acceptable according to ASTM C 795.
- D. Foam insulation materials shall not use CFC or HCFC blowing agents in the manufacturing process.
- E. Flexible Elastomeric Insulation: Closed-cell, sponge- or expanded-rubber materials. Comply with ASTM C 534, Type I for tubular materials.
 - 1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the following:
 - a. Aeroflex USA, Inc.; Aerocel.
 - b. Armacell LLC; AP Armaflex.
 - c. K-Flex USA; Insul-Lock, Insul-Tube, and K-FLEX LS.
- F. Mineral-Fiber, Preformed Pipe Insulation:
 - 1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the following:
 - a. Fibrex Insulations Inc.; Coreplus 1200.
 - b. Johns Manville; Micro-Lok.
 - c. Knauf Insulation; 1000-Degree Pipe Insulation.
 - d. Owens Corning; Fiberglas Pipe Insulation.
 - 2. Type I, 850 Deg F Materials: Mineral or glass fibers bonded with a thermosetting resin. Comply with ASTM C 547, Type I, Grade A, with factory-applied ASJ. Factory-applied jacket requirements are specified in "Factory-Applied Jackets" Article.

2.2 ADHESIVES

- A. Materials shall be compatible with insulation materials, jackets, and substrates and for bonding insulation to itself and to surfaces to be insulated, unless otherwise indicated.
- B. Flexible Elastomeric and Polyolefin Adhesive: Comply with MIL-A-24179A, Type II, Class I.
 - 1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, available products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
 - a. Aeroflex USA, Inc.; Aeroseal.
 - b. Armacell LLC; Armaflex 520 Adhesive.
 - c. Foster Brand, Specialty Construction Brands, Inc., a business of H. B. Fuller Company; 85-75.
 - d. K-Flex USA; R-373 Contact Adhesive.
 - 2. For indoor applications, adhesive shall have a VOC content of 50 g/L or less when calculated according to 40 CFR 59, Subpart D (EPA Method 24).
- C. Mineral-Fiber Adhesive: Comply with MIL-A-3316C, Class 2, Grade A.
 - 1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, available products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
 - a. Childers Brand, Specialty Construction Brands, Inc., a business of H. B. Fuller Company; CP-127.
 - b. Eagle Bridges - Marathon Industries; 225.
 - c. Foster Brand, Specialty Construction Brands, Inc., a business of H. B. Fuller Company; 85-60/85-70.
 - d. Mon-Eco Industries, Inc.; 22-25.
 - 2. For indoor applications, adhesive shall have a VOC content of 80 g/L or less when calculated according to 40 CFR 59, Subpart D (EPA Method 24).
- D. ASJ Adhesive, and FSK Jacket Adhesive: Comply with MIL-A-3316C, Class 2, Grade A for bonding insulation jacket lap seams and joints.
 - 1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, available products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
 - a. Childers Brand, Specialty Construction Brands, Inc., a business of H. B. Fuller Company; CP-82.
 - b. Eagle Bridges - Marathon Industries; 225.
 - c. Foster Brand, Specialty Construction Brands, Inc., a business of H. B. Fuller Company; 85-20.
 - d. Mon-Eco Industries, Inc.; 22-25.
 - 2. For indoor applications, adhesive shall have a VOC content of 50 g/L or less when calculated according to 40 CFR 59, Subpart D (EPA Method 24).
- E. PVC Jacket Adhesive: Compatible with PVC jacket.

1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, available products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
 - a. Dow Corning Corporation; 739, Dow Silicone.
 - b. Johns Manville; Zeston Perma-Weld, CEEL-TITE Solvent Welding Adhesive.
 - c. P.I.C. Plastics, Inc.; Welding Adhesive.
 - d. Speedline Corporation; Polyco VP Adhesive.
2. For indoor applications, adhesive shall have a VOC content of 50 g/L or less when calculated according to 40 CFR 59, Subpart D (EPA Method 24).

2.3 MASTICS

- A. Materials shall be compatible with insulation materials, jackets, and substrates; comply with MIL-PRF-19565C, Type II.
 1. For indoor applications, use mastics that have a VOC content of 50 g/L or less when calculated according to 40 CFR 59, Subpart D (EPA Method 24).
- B. Vapor-Barrier Mastic: Water based; suitable for indoor use on below-ambient services.
 1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, available products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
 - a. Foster Brand, Specialty Construction Brands, Inc., a business of H. B. Fuller Company; 30-80/30-90.
 - b. Vimasco Corporation; 749.
 2. Water-Vapor Permeance: ASTM E 96/E 96M, Procedure B, 0.013 perm at 43-mil dry film thickness.
 3. Service Temperature Range: Minus 20 to plus 180 deg F.
 4. Solids Content: ASTM D 1644, 58 percent by volume and 70 percent by weight.
 5. Color: White.
- C. Breather Mastic: Water based; suitable for indoor and outdoor use on above-ambient services.
 1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, available products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
 - a. Childers Brand, Specialty Construction Brands, Inc., a business of H. B. Fuller Company; CP-10.
 - b. Eagle Bridges - Marathon Industries; 550.
 - c. Foster Brand, Specialty Construction Brands, Inc., a business of H. B. Fuller Company; 46-50.
 - d. Mon-Eco Industries, Inc.; 55-50.
 - e. Vimasco Corporation; WC-1/WC-5.
 2. Water-Vapor Permeance: ASTM F 1249, 1.8 perms at 0.0625-inch dry film thickness.
 3. Service Temperature Range: Minus 20 to plus 180 deg F.
 4. Solids Content: 60 percent by volume and 66 percent by weight.

5. Color: White.

2.4 SEALANTS

A. FSK and Metal Jacket Flashing Sealants:

1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, available products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
 - a. Childers Brand, Specialty Construction Brands, Inc., a business of H. B. Fuller Company; CP-76.
 - b. Eagle Bridges - Marathon Industries; 405.
 - c. Foster Brand, Specialty Construction Brands, Inc., a business of H. B. Fuller Company; 95-44.
 - d. Mon-Eco Industries, Inc.; 44-05.
2. Materials shall be compatible with insulation materials, jackets, and substrates.
3. Fire- and water-resistant, flexible, elastomeric sealant.
4. Service Temperature Range: Minus 40 to plus 250 deg F.
5. Color: Aluminum.
6. For indoor applications, sealants shall have a VOC content of 420 g/L or less when calculated according to 40 CFR 59, Subpart D (EPA Method 24).

B. ASJ Flashing Sealants, and Vinyl, PVDC, and PVC Jacket Flashing Sealants:

1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, available products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
 - a. Childers Brand, Specialty Construction Brands, Inc., a business of H. B. Fuller Company; CP-76.
2. Materials shall be compatible with insulation materials, jackets, and substrates.
3. Fire- and water-resistant, flexible, elastomeric sealant.
4. Service Temperature Range: Minus 40 to plus 250 deg F.
5. Color: White.
6. For indoor applications, sealants shall have a VOC content of 420 g/L or less when calculated according to 40 CFR 59, Subpart D (EPA Method 24).

2.5 FACTORY-APPLIED JACKETS

A. Insulation system schedules indicate factory-applied jackets on various applications. When factory-applied jackets are indicated, comply with the following:

1. ASJ: White, kraft-paper, fiberglass-reinforced scrim with aluminum-foil backing; complying with ASTM C 1136, Type I.
2. ASJ-SSL: ASJ with self-sealing, pressure-sensitive, acrylic-based adhesive covered by a removable protective strip; complying with ASTM C 1136, Type I.
3. FSK Jacket: Aluminum-foil, fiberglass-reinforced scrim with kraft-paper backing; complying with ASTM C 1136, Type II.

2.6 FIELD-APPLIED JACKETS

- A. Field-applied jackets shall comply with ASTM C 921, Type I, unless otherwise indicated.
- B. PVC Jacket: High-impact-resistant, UV-resistant PVC complying with ASTM D 1784, Class 16354-C; thickness as scheduled; roll stock ready for shop or field cutting and forming. Thickness is indicated in field-applied jacket schedules.
 - 1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, available products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
 - a. Johns Manville; Zeston.
 - b. P.I.C. Plastics, Inc.; FG Series.
 - c. Proto Corporation; LoSmoke.
 - d. Speedline Corporation; SmokeSafe.
 - 2. Adhesive: As recommended by jacket material manufacturer.
 - 3. Color: White.
 - 4. Factory-fabricated fitting covers to match jacket if available; otherwise, field fabricate.
 - a. Shapes: 45- and 90-degree, short- and long-radius elbows, tees, valves, flanges, unions, reducers, end caps, soil-pipe hubs, traps, mechanical joints, and P-trap and supply covers for lavatories.
- C. Metal Jacket:
 - 1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, available products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
 - a. Childers Brand, Specialty Construction Brands, Inc., a business of H. B. Fuller Company; Metal Jacketing Systems.
 - b. ITW Insulation Systems; Aluminum and Stainless Steel Jacketing.
 - c. RPR Products, Inc.; Insul-Mate.
 - 2. Aluminum Jacket: Comply with ASTM B 209, Alloy 3003, 3005, 3105, or 5005, Temper H-14.
 - a. Sheet and roll stock ready for shop or field sizing.
 - b. Finish and thickness are indicated in field-applied jacket schedules.
 - c. Moisture Barrier for Indoor Applications: 1-mil- thick, heat-bonded polyethylene and kraft paper.
 - d. Moisture Barrier for Outdoor Applications: 3-mil- thick, heat-bonded polyethylene and kraft paper.
 - e. Factory-Fabricated Fitting Covers:
 - 1) Same material, finish, and thickness as jacket.
 - 2) Preformed 2-piece or gore, 45- and 90-degree, short- and long-radius elbows.
 - 3) Tee covers.
 - 4) Flange and union covers.
 - 5) End caps.
 - 6) Beveled collars.

- 7) Valve covers.
- 8) Field fabricate fitting covers only if factory-fabricated fitting covers are not available.

- D. Underground Direct-Buried Jacket: 125-mil- thick vapor barrier and waterproofing membrane consisting of a rubberized bituminous resin reinforced with a woven-glass fiber or polyester scrim and laminated aluminum foil.
1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, available products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
 - a. Pittsburgh Corning Corporation; Pittwrap.
 - b. Polyguard Products, Inc.; Insulrap No Torch 125.

2.7 TAPES

- A. ASJ Tape: White vapor-retarder tape matching factory-applied jacket with acrylic adhesive, complying with ASTM C 1136.
1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, available products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
 - a. ABI, Ideal Tape Division; 428 AWF ASJ.
 - b. Avery Dennison Corporation, Specialty Tapes Division; Fasson 0836.
 - c. Compac Corporation; 104 and 105.
 - d. Venture Tape; 1540 CW Plus, 1542 CW Plus, and 1542 CW Plus/SQ.
 2. Width: 3 inches.
 3. Thickness: 11.5 mils.
 4. Adhesion: 90 ounces force/inch in width.
 5. Elongation: 2 percent.
 6. Tensile Strength: 40 lbf/inch in width.
 7. ASJ Tape Disks and Squares: Precut disks or squares of ASJ tape.
- B. PVC Tape: White vapor-retarder tape matching field-applied PVC jacket with acrylic adhesive; suitable for indoor and outdoor applications.
1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, available products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
 - a. ABI, Ideal Tape Division; 370 White PVC tape.
 - b. Compac Corporation; 130.
 - c. Venture Tape; 1506 CW NS.
 2. Width: 2 inches.
 3. Thickness: 6 mils.
 4. Adhesion: 64 ounces force/inch in width.
 5. Elongation: 500 percent.
 6. Tensile Strength: 18 lbf/inch in width.
- C. Aluminum-Foil Tape: Vapor-retarder tape with acrylic adhesive.

1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, available products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
 - a. ABI, Ideal Tape Division; 488 AWF.
 - b. Avery Dennison Corporation, Specialty Tapes Division; Fasson 0800.
 - c. Compac Corporation; 120.
 - d. Venture Tape; 3520 CW.
2. Width: 2 inches.
3. Thickness: 3.7 mils.
4. Adhesion: 100 ounces force/inch in width.
5. Elongation: 5 percent.
6. Tensile Strength: 34 lbf/inch in width.

2.8 SECUREMENTS

A. Bands:

1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, available products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
 - a. ITW Insulation Systems; Gerrard Strapping and Seals.
 - b. RPR Products, Inc.; Insul-Mate Strapping and Seals.
2. Aluminum: ASTM B 209, Alloy 3003, 3005, 3105, or 5005; Temper H-14, 0.020 inch thick, 3/4 inch wide with wing seal.

B. Staples: Outward-clinching insulation staples, nominal 3/4-inch- wide, stainless steel or Monel.

C. Wire: 0.062-inch soft-annealed, stainless steel.

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
 - a. C & F Wire.

2.9 PROTECTIVE SHIELDING GUARDS

A. Protective Shielding Pipe Covers,:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
 - a. Engineered Brass Company.
 - b. Insul-Tect Products Co.; a subsidiary of MVG Molded Products.
 - c. McGuire Manufacturing.
 - d. Plumberex.
 - e. Truebro; a brand of IPS Corporation.
 - f. Zurn Industries, LLC; Tubular Brass Plumbing Products Operation.

2. Description: Manufactured plastic wraps for covering plumbing fixture hot-water supply and trap and drain piping. Comply with Americans with Disabilities Act (ADA) requirements.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine substrates and conditions for compliance with requirements for installation tolerances and other conditions affecting performance of insulation application.
 1. Verify that systems to be insulated have been tested and are free of defects.
 2. Verify that surfaces to be insulated are clean and dry.
- B. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.2 PREPARATION

- A. Surface Preparation: Clean and dry surfaces to receive insulation. Remove materials that will adversely affect insulation application.
- B. Coordinate insulation installation with the trade installing heat tracing. Comply with requirements for heat tracing that apply to insulation.
- C. Mix insulating cements with clean potable water; if insulating cements are to be in contact with stainless-steel surfaces, use demineralized water.

3.3 GENERAL INSTALLATION REQUIREMENTS

- A. Install insulation materials, accessories, and finishes with smooth, straight, and even surfaces; free of voids throughout the length of piping including fittings, valves, and specialties.
- B. Install insulation materials, forms, vapor barriers or retarders, jackets, and thicknesses required for each item of pipe system as specified in insulation system schedules.
- C. Install accessories compatible with insulation materials and suitable for the service. Install accessories that do not corrode, soften, or otherwise attack insulation or jacket in either wet or dry state.
- D. Install insulation with longitudinal seams at top and bottom of horizontal runs.
- E. Install multiple layers of insulation with longitudinal and end seams staggered.
- F. Do not weld brackets, clips, or other attachment devices to piping, fittings, and specialties.
- G. Keep insulation materials dry during application and finishing.

- H. Install insulation with tight longitudinal seams and end joints. Bond seams and joints with adhesive recommended by insulation material manufacturer.
- I. Install insulation with least number of joints practical.
- J. Where vapor barrier is indicated, seal joints, seams, and penetrations in insulation at hangers, supports, anchors, and other projections with vapor-barrier mastic.
 - 1. Install insulation continuously through hangers and around anchor attachments.
 - 2. For insulation application where vapor barriers are indicated, extend insulation on anchor legs from point of attachment to supported item to point of attachment to structure. Taper and seal ends at attachment to structure with vapor-barrier mastic.
 - 3. Install insert materials and install insulation to tightly join the insert. Seal insulation to insulation inserts with adhesive or sealing compound recommended by insulation material manufacturer.
 - 4. Cover inserts with jacket material matching adjacent pipe insulation. Install shields over jacket, arranged to protect jacket from tear or puncture by hanger, support, and shield.
- K. Apply adhesives, mastics, and sealants at manufacturer's recommended coverage rate and wet and dry film thicknesses.
- L. Install insulation with factory-applied jackets as follows:
 - 1. Draw jacket tight and smooth.
 - 2. Cover circumferential joints with 3-inch- wide strips, of same material as insulation jacket. Secure strips with adhesive and outward clinching staples along both edges of strip, spaced 4 inches o.c.
 - 3. Overlap jacket longitudinal seams at least 1-1/2 inches. Install insulation with longitudinal seams at bottom of pipe. Clean and dry surface to receive self-sealing lap. Staple laps with outward clinching staples along edge at 4 inches o.c.
 - a. For below-ambient services, apply vapor-barrier mastic over staples.
 - 4. Cover joints and seams with tape, according to insulation material manufacturer's written instructions, to maintain vapor seal.
 - 5. Where vapor barriers are indicated, apply vapor-barrier mastic on seams and joints and at ends adjacent to pipe flanges and fittings.
- M. Cut insulation in a manner to avoid compressing insulation more than 75 percent of its nominal thickness.
- N. Finish installation with systems at operating conditions. Repair joint separations and cracking due to thermal movement.
- O. Repair damaged insulation facings by applying same facing material over damaged areas. Extend patches at least 4 inches beyond damaged areas. Adhere, staple, and seal patches similar to butt joints.
- P. For above-ambient services, do not install insulation to the following:

1. Vibration-control devices.
2. Testing agency labels and stamps.
3. Nameplates and data plates.
4. Cleanouts.

3.4 PENETRATIONS

- A. Insulation Installation at Roof Penetrations: Install insulation continuously through roof penetrations.
1. Seal penetrations with flashing sealant.
 2. For applications requiring only indoor insulation, terminate insulation above roof surface and seal with joint sealant. For applications requiring indoor and outdoor insulation, install insulation for outdoor applications tightly joined to indoor insulation ends. Seal joint with joint sealant.
 3. Extend jacket of outdoor insulation outside roof flashing at least 2 inches below top of roof flashing.
 4. Seal jacket to roof flashing with flashing sealant.
- B. Insulation Installation at Underground Exterior Wall Penetrations: Terminate insulation flush with sleeve seal. Seal terminations with flashing sealant.
- C. Insulation Installation at Aboveground Exterior Wall Penetrations: Install insulation continuously through wall penetrations.
1. Seal penetrations with flashing sealant.
 2. For applications requiring only indoor insulation, terminate insulation inside wall surface and seal with joint sealant. For applications requiring indoor and outdoor insulation, install insulation for outdoor applications tightly joined to indoor insulation ends. Seal joint with joint sealant.
 3. Extend jacket of outdoor insulation outside wall flashing and overlap wall flashing at least 2 inches.
 4. Seal jacket to wall flashing with flashing sealant.
- D. Insulation Installation at Interior Wall and Partition Penetrations (That Are Not Fire Rated): Install insulation continuously through walls and partitions.
- E. Insulation Installation at Fire-Rated Wall and Partition Penetrations: Install insulation continuously through penetrations of fire-rated walls and partitions.
1. Comply with requirements in Section 07 8413 "Penetration Firestopping" for firestopping and fire-resistive joint sealers.
- F. Insulation Installation at Floor Penetrations:
1. Pipe: Install insulation continuously through floor penetrations.
 2. Seal penetrations through fire-rated assemblies. Comply with requirements in Section 07 8413 "Penetration Firestopping."

3.5 GENERAL PIPE INSULATION INSTALLATION

- A. Requirements in this article generally apply to all insulation materials except where more specific requirements are specified in various pipe insulation material installation articles.
- B. Insulation Installation on Fittings, Valves, Strainers, Flanges, and Unions:
1. Install insulation over fittings, valves, strainers, flanges, unions, and other specialties with continuous thermal and vapor-retarder integrity unless otherwise indicated.
 2. Insulate pipe elbows using preformed fitting insulation or mitered fittings made from same material and density as adjacent pipe insulation. Each piece shall be butted tightly against adjoining piece and bonded with adhesive. Fill joints, seams, voids, and irregular surfaces with insulating cement finished to a smooth, hard, and uniform contour that is uniform with adjoining pipe insulation.
 3. Insulate tee fittings with preformed fitting insulation or sectional pipe insulation of same material and thickness as used for adjacent pipe. Cut sectional pipe insulation to fit. Butt each section closely to the next and hold in place with tie wire. Bond pieces with adhesive.
 4. Insulate valves using preformed fitting insulation or sectional pipe insulation of same material, density, and thickness as used for adjacent pipe. Overlap adjoining pipe insulation by not less than two times the thickness of pipe insulation, or one pipe diameter, whichever is thicker. For valves, insulate up to and including the bonnets, valve stuffing-box studs, bolts, and nuts. Fill joints, seams, and irregular surfaces with insulating cement.
 5. Insulate strainers using preformed fitting insulation or sectional pipe insulation of same material, density, and thickness as used for adjacent pipe. Overlap adjoining pipe insulation by not less than two times the thickness of pipe insulation, or one pipe diameter, whichever is thicker. Fill joints, seams, and irregular surfaces with insulating cement. Insulate strainers so strainer basket flange or plug can be easily removed and replaced without damaging the insulation and jacket. Provide a removable reusable insulation cover. For below-ambient services, provide a design that maintains vapor barrier.
 6. Insulate flanges and unions using a section of oversized preformed pipe insulation. Overlap adjoining pipe insulation by not less than two times the thickness of pipe insulation, or one pipe diameter, whichever is thicker.
 7. Cover segmented insulated surfaces with a layer of finishing cement and coat with a mastic. Install vapor-barrier mastic for below-ambient services and a breather mastic for above-ambient services. Reinforce the mastic with fabric-reinforcing mesh. Trowel the mastic to a smooth and well-shaped contour.
 8. For services not specified to receive a field-applied jacket except for flexible elastomeric and polyolefin, install fitted PVC cover over elbows, tees, strainers, valves, flanges, and unions. Terminate ends with PVC end caps. Tape PVC covers to adjoining insulation facing using PVC tape.
 9. Stencil or label the outside insulation jacket of each union with the word "union." Match size and color of pipe labels.
- C. Insulate instrument connections for thermometers, pressure gages, pressure temperature taps, test connections, flow meters, sensors, switches, and transmitters on insulated pipes. Shape insulation at these connections by tapering it to and around the connection with insulating cement and finish with finishing cement, mastic, and flashing sealant.

- D. Install removable insulation covers at locations indicated. Installation shall conform to the following:
1. Make removable flange and union insulation from sectional pipe insulation of same thickness as that on adjoining pipe. Install same insulation jacket as adjoining pipe insulation.
 2. When flange and union covers are made from sectional pipe insulation, extend insulation from flanges or union long at least two times the insulation thickness over adjacent pipe insulation on each side of flange or union. Secure flange cover in place with stainless-steel or aluminum bands. Select band material compatible with insulation and jacket.
 3. Construct removable valve insulation covers in same manner as for flanges, except divide the two-part section on the vertical center line of valve body.
 4. When covers are made from block insulation, make two halves, each consisting of mitered blocks wired to stainless-steel fabric. Secure this wire frame, with its attached insulation, to flanges with tie wire. Extend insulation at least 2 inches over adjacent pipe insulation on each side of valve. Fill space between flange or union cover and pipe insulation with insulating cement. Finish cover assembly with insulating cement applied in two coats. After first coat is dry, apply and trowel second coat to a smooth finish.
 5. Unless a PVC jacket is indicated in field-applied jacket schedules, finish exposed surfaces with a metal jacket.

3.6 INSTALLATION OF FLEXIBLE ELASTOMERIC INSULATION

- A. Seal longitudinal seams and end joints with manufacturer's recommended adhesive to eliminate openings in insulation that allow passage of air to surface being insulated.
- B. Insulation Installation on Pipe Flanges:
1. Install pipe insulation to outer diameter of pipe flange.
 2. Make width of insulation section same as overall width of flange and bolts, plus twice the thickness of pipe insulation.
 3. Fill voids between inner circumference of flange insulation and outer circumference of adjacent straight pipe segments with cut sections of sheet insulation of same thickness as pipe insulation.
 4. Secure insulation to flanges and seal seams with manufacturer's recommended adhesive to eliminate openings in insulation that allow passage of air to surface being insulated.
- C. Insulation Installation on Pipe Fittings and Elbows:
1. Install mitered sections of pipe insulation.
 2. Secure insulation materials and seal seams with manufacturer's recommended adhesive to eliminate openings in insulation that allow passage of air to surface being insulated.
- D. Insulation Installation on Valves and Pipe Specialties:
1. Install preformed valve covers manufactured of same material as pipe insulation when available.

2. When preformed valve covers are not available, install cut sections of pipe and sheet insulation to valve body. Arrange insulation to permit access to packing and to allow valve operation without disturbing insulation.
3. Install insulation to flanges as specified for flange insulation application.
4. Secure insulation to valves and specialties and seal seams with manufacturer's recommended adhesive to eliminate openings in insulation that allow passage of air to surface being insulated.

3.7 INSTALLATION OF MINERAL-FIBER INSULATION

A. Insulation Installation on Straight Pipes and Tubes:

1. Secure each layer of preformed pipe insulation to pipe with wire or bands and tighten bands without deforming insulation materials.
2. Where vapor barriers are indicated, seal longitudinal seams, end joints, and protrusions with vapor-barrier mastic and joint sealant.
3. For insulation with factory-applied jackets on above-ambient surfaces, secure laps with outward clinched staples at 6 inches o.c.
4. For insulation with factory-applied jackets on below-ambient surfaces, do not staple longitudinal tabs. Instead, secure tabs with additional adhesive as recommended by insulation material manufacturer and seal with vapor-barrier mastic and flashing sealant.

B. Insulation Installation on Pipe Flanges:

1. Install preformed pipe insulation to outer diameter of pipe flange.
2. Make width of insulation section same as overall width of flange and bolts, plus twice the thickness of pipe insulation.
3. Fill voids between inner circumference of flange insulation and outer circumference of adjacent straight pipe segments with mineral-fiber blanket insulation.
4. Install jacket material with manufacturer's recommended adhesive, overlap seams at least 1 inch, and seal joints with flashing sealant.

C. Insulation Installation on Pipe Fittings and Elbows:

1. Install preformed sections of same material as straight segments of pipe insulation when available.
2. When preformed insulation elbows and fittings are not available, install mitered sections of pipe insulation, to a thickness equal to adjoining pipe insulation. Secure insulation materials with wire or bands.

D. Insulation Installation on Valves and Pipe Specialties:

1. Install preformed sections of same material as straight segments of pipe insulation when available.
2. When preformed sections are not available, install mitered sections of pipe insulation to valve body.
3. Arrange insulation to permit access to packing and to allow valve operation without disturbing insulation.
4. Install insulation to flanges as specified for flange insulation application.

3.8 FIELD-APPLIED JACKET INSTALLATION

- A. Where FSK jackets are indicated, install as follows:
 - 1. Draw jacket material smooth and tight.
 - 2. Install lap or joint strips with same material as jacket.
 - 3. Secure jacket to insulation with manufacturer's recommended adhesive.
 - 4. Install jacket with 1-1/2-inch laps at longitudinal seams and 3-inch- wide joint strips at end joints.
 - 5. Seal openings, punctures, and breaks in vapor-retarder jackets and exposed insulation with vapor-barrier mastic.

- B. Where PVC jackets are indicated, install with 1-inch overlap at longitudinal seams and end joints. Seal with manufacturer's recommended adhesive.
 - 1. Apply two continuous beads of adhesive to seams and joints, one bead under lap and the finish bead along seam and joint edge.

- C. Where metal jackets are indicated, install with 2-inch overlap at longitudinal seams and end joints. Overlap longitudinal seams arranged to shed water. Seal end joints with weatherproof sealant recommended by insulation manufacturer. Secure jacket with stainless-steel bands 12 inches o.c. and at end joints.

3.9 FINISHES

- A. Insulation with ASJ, Glass-Cloth, or Other Paintable Jacket Material: Paint jacket with paint system identified below and as specified in Section 09 9113 "Exterior Painting" and Section 09 9123 "Interior Painting."
 - 1. Flat Acrylic Finish: Two finish coats over a primer that is compatible with jacket material and finish coat paint. Add fungicidal agent to render fabric mildew proof.
 - a. Finish Coat Material: Interior, flat, latex-emulsion size.

- B. Flexible Elastomeric Thermal Insulation: After adhesive has fully cured, apply two coats of insulation manufacturer's recommended protective coating.

- C. Color: Final color as selected by Architect. Vary first and second coats to allow visual inspection of the completed Work.

- D. Do not field paint aluminum or stainless-steel jackets.

3.10 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Perform tests and inspections.

- B. Tests and Inspections:
 - 1. Inspect pipe, fittings, strainers, and valves, randomly selected by Architect, by removing field-applied jacket and insulation in layers in reverse order of their

installation. Extent of inspection shall be limited to three locations of straight pipe, three locations of threaded fittings, three locations of welded fittings, two locations of threaded strainers, two locations of welded strainers, three locations of threaded valves, and three locations of flanged valves for each pipe service defined in the "Piping Insulation Schedule, General" Article.

- C. All insulation applications will be considered defective Work if sample inspection reveals noncompliance with requirements.

3.11 PIPING INSULATION SCHEDULE, GENERAL

- A. Acceptable preformed pipe and tubular insulation materials and thicknesses are identified for each piping system and pipe size range. If more than one material is listed for a piping system, selection from materials listed is Contractor's option.
- B. Items Not Insulated: Unless otherwise indicated, do not install insulation on the following:
 - 1. Drainage piping located in crawl spaces.
 - 2. Underground piping.
 - 3. Chrome-plated pipes and fittings unless there is a potential for personnel injury.

3.12 PIPING INSULATION SCHEDULE:

- A. Refer to drawings for schedule.

END OF SECTION

SECTION 22 1116 - DOMESTIC WATER PIPING

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:

- 1. Under-building-slab and aboveground domestic water pipes, tubes, and fittings inside buildings.

- B. Related Requirements:

- 1. Section 22 1113 "Facility Water Distribution Piping" for water-service piping outside the building from source to the point where water-service piping enters the building.

1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For transition fittings and dielectric fittings.

1.4 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. System purging and disinfecting activities report.
- B. Field quality-control reports.

1.5 FIELD CONDITIONS

- A. Interruption of Existing Water Service: Do not interrupt water service to facilities occupied by Owner or others unless permitted under the following conditions and then only after arranging to provide temporary water service according to requirements indicated:
 - 1. Notify Construction Manager and Owner no fewer than two days in advance of proposed interruption of water service.
 - 2. Do not interrupt water service without Construction Manager's and Owner's written permission.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 PIPING MATERIALS

- A. Comply with requirements in "Piping Schedule" Article for applications of pipe, tube, fitting materials, and joining methods for specific services, service locations, and pipe sizes.
- B. Potable-water piping and components shall comply with NSF 14 and NSF 61. Plastic piping components shall be marked with "NSF-pw."

2.2 COPPER TUBE AND FITTINGS

- A. Hard Copper Tube: ASTM B 88, Type L water tube, drawn temper.
- B. Soft Copper Tube: ASTM B 88, Type K water tube, annealed temper.
- C. Cast-Copper, Solder-Joint Fittings: ASME B16.18, pressure fittings.
- D. Wrought-Copper, Solder-Joint Fittings: ASME B16.22, wrought-copper pressure fittings.
- E. Bronze Flanges: ASME B16.24, Class 150, with solder-joint ends.
- F. Copper Unions:
 - 1. MSS SP-123.
 - 2. Cast-copper-alloy, hexagonal-stock body.
 - 3. Ball-and-socket, metal-to-metal seating surfaces.
 - 4. Solder-joint or threaded ends.

2.3 PEX TUBE AND FITTINGS

- A. PEX Distribution System: ASTM F 876 and ASTM F 877, Crosslinked polyethylene (PEX) manufactured by PEX-a or Engel method.
- B. Fittings for PEX Tube: ASTM F 1960 cold expansion fittings consisting of the appropriate ProPEX insert with corresponding ProPEX Ring.
- C. Manifold: Multiple-outlet, engineered plastic body with ProPEX outlet connections or Type L copper body with UNS 3600 series brass ProPEX outlet connections complying with ASTM F 877; with plastic or corrosion-resistant-metal valve for each outlet. All manifold shall come with the appropriate-sized ProPEX fittings on the manifold supply lines.
- D. Accessories
 - 1. Angle stops and straight stops that are compatible with PEX tubing are supplied by the PEX tubing manufacturer.
 - 2. Bend supports designed for maintaining tight radius bends are supplied by the PEX tubing manufacturer.

3. ProPEX expander tool to install the ASTM F1960 compatible fittings are supplied by the PEX tubing manufacturer.
4. The tubing manufacturer provides clips and/or PEX rails for supporting tubing runs.
5. All horizontal tubing hangers and riser clamps are epoxy-coated material.

E. Training: Installer must be trained and certified by the piping manufacturer.

F. Warranty: Provide limited warranty of up to 25 years when installed by a trained contractor and certified plumbing professional.

2.4 PIPING JOINING MATERIALS

A. Pipe-Flange Gasket Materials:

1. AWWA C110/A21.10, rubber, flat face, 1/8 inch thick or ASME B16.21, nonmetallic and asbestos free unless otherwise indicated.
2. Full-face or ring type unless otherwise indicated.

B. Metal, Pipe-Flange Bolts and Nuts: ASME B18.2.1, carbon steel unless otherwise indicated.

C. Solder Filler Metals: ASTM B 32, lead-free alloys.

D. Flux: ASTM B 813, water flushable.

E. Brazing Filler Metals: AWS A5.8/A5.8M, BCuP Series, copper-phosphorus alloys for general-duty brazing unless otherwise indicated.

F. Plastic, Pipe-Flange Gaskets, Bolts, and Nuts: Type and material recommended by piping system manufacturer unless otherwise indicated.

2.5 TRANSITION FITTINGS

A. General Requirements:

1. Same size as pipes to be joined.
2. Pressure rating at least equal to pipes to be joined.
3. End connections compatible with pipes to be joined.

B. Fitting-Type Transition Couplings: Manufactured piping coupling or specified piping system fitting.

2.6 DIELECTRIC FITTINGS

A. General Requirements: Assembly of copper alloy and ferrous materials with separating nonconductive insulating material. Include end connections compatible with pipes to be joined.

B. Dielectric Unions:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
 - a. Capitol Manufacturing Company; member of the Phoenix Forge Group.
 - b. Central Plastics Company.
 - c. Hart Industries International, Inc.
 - d. Jomar International.
 - e. Matco-Norca.
 - f. McDonald, A. Y. Mfg. Co.
 - g. Watts; a division of Watts Water Technologies, Inc.
 - h. Wilkins; a Zurn company.
 2. Standard: ASSE 1079.
 3. Pressure Rating: 125 psig minimum at 180 deg F.
 4. End Connections: Solder-joint copper alloy and threaded ferrous.
- C. Dielectric Flanges:
1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
 - a. Capitol Manufacturing Company; member of the Phoenix Forge Group.
 - b. Central Plastics Company.
 - c. Matco-Norca.
 - d. Watts; a division of Watts Water Technologies, Inc.
 - e. Wilkins; a Zurn company.
 2. Standard: ASSE 1079.
 3. Factory-fabricated, bolted, companion-flange assembly.
 4. Pressure Rating: 125 psig minimum at 180 deg F.
 5. End Connections: Solder-joint copper alloy and threaded ferrous; threaded solder-joint copper alloy and threaded ferrous.
- D. Dielectric-Flange Insulating Kits:
1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
 - a. Advance Products & Systems, Inc.
 - b. Calpico, Inc.
 - c. Central Plastics Company.
 - d. Pipeline Seal and Insulator, Inc.
 2. Nonconducting materials for field assembly of companion flanges.
 3. Pressure Rating: 150 psig.
 4. Gasket: Neoprene or phenolic.
 5. Bolt Sleeves: Phenolic or polyethylene.
 6. Washers: Phenolic with steel backing washers.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EARTHWORK

- A. Comply with requirements in Section 31 2000 "Earth Moving" for excavating, trenching, and backfilling.

3.2 PIPING INSTALLATION

- A. Drawing plans, schematics, and diagrams indicate general location and arrangement of domestic water piping. Indicated locations and arrangements are used to size pipe and calculate friction loss, expansion, and other design considerations. Install piping as indicated unless deviations to layout are approved on coordination drawings.
- B. Install copper tubing under building slab according to CDA's "Copper Tube Handbook."
- C. Install shutoff valve, hose-end drain valve, strainer, pressure gage, and test tee with valve inside the building at each domestic water-service entrance. Comply with requirements for pressure gages in Section 22 0519 "Meters and Gages for Plumbing Piping" and with requirements for drain valves and strainers in Section 22 1119 "Domestic Water Piping Specialties."
- D. Install shutoff valve immediately upstream of each dielectric fitting.
- E. Install water-pressure-reducing valves downstream from shutoff valves. Comply with requirements for pressure-reducing valves in Section 22 1119 "Domestic Water Piping Specialties."
- F. Install domestic water piping level and plumb.
- G. Install PEX piping with loop at each change of direction of more than 90 degrees.
- H. Install piping concealed from view and protected from physical contact by building occupants unless otherwise indicated and except in equipment rooms and service areas.
- I. Install piping indicated to be exposed and piping in equipment rooms and service areas at right angles or parallel to building walls. Diagonal runs are prohibited unless specifically indicated otherwise.
- J. Install piping above accessible ceilings to allow sufficient space for ceiling panel removal, and coordinate with other services occupying that space.
- K. Install piping to permit valve servicing.
- L. Install nipples, unions, special fittings, and valves with pressure ratings the same as or higher than the system pressure rating used in applications below unless otherwise indicated.
- M. Install piping free of sags and bends.

- N. Install fittings for changes in direction and branch connections.
- O. Install PEX piping with loop at each change of direction of more than 90 degrees.
- P. Install unions in copper tubing at final connection to each piece of equipment, machine, and specialty.
- Q. Install pressure gages on suction and discharge piping for each plumbing pump and packaged booster pump. Comply with requirements for pressure gages in Section 22 0519 "Meters and Gages for Plumbing Piping."
- R. Install thermostats in hot-water circulation piping. Comply with requirements for thermostats in Section 22 1123 "Domestic Water Pumps."
- S. Install thermometers on inlet and outlet piping from each water heater. Comply with requirements for thermometers in Section 22 0519 "Meters and Gages for Plumbing Piping."
- T. Install sleeves for piping penetrations of walls, ceilings, and floors. Comply with requirements for sleeves specified in Section 22 0517 "Sleeves and Sleeve Seals for Plumbing Piping."
- U. Install sleeve seals for piping penetrations of concrete walls and slabs. Comply with requirements for sleeve seals specified in Section 22 0517 "Sleeves and Sleeve Seals for Plumbing Piping."
- V. Install escutcheons for piping penetrations of walls, ceilings, and floors. Comply with requirements for escutcheons specified in Section 22 0518 "Escutcheons for Plumbing Piping."

3.3 JOINT CONSTRUCTION

- A. Ream ends of pipes and tubes and remove burrs. Bevel plain ends of steel pipe.
- B. Remove scale, slag, dirt, and debris from inside and outside of pipes, tubes, and fittings before assembly.
- C. Threaded Joints: Thread pipe with tapered pipe threads according to ASME B1.20.1. Cut threads full and clean using sharp dies. Ream threaded pipe ends to remove burrs and restore full ID. Join pipe fittings and valves as follows:
 - 1. Apply appropriate tape or thread compound to external pipe threads.
 - 2. Damaged Threads: Do not use pipe or pipe fittings with threads that are corroded or damaged.
- D. Brazed Joints for Copper Tubing: Comply with CDA's "Copper Tube Handbook," "Braze Joints" chapter.
- E. Soldered Joints for Copper Tubing: Apply ASTM B 813, water-flushable flux to end of tube. Join copper tube and fittings according to ASTM B 828 or CDA's "Copper Tube Handbook."

- F. Flanged Joints: Select appropriate asbestos-free, nonmetallic gasket material in size, type, and thickness suitable for domestic water service. Join flanges with gasket and bolts according to ASME B31.9.
- G. Joints for PEX Piping: Join with ProPEX PEX-a expansion fitting with ProPEX insert and ProPEX ring. All joints shall comply with manufacturer's requirements for warranty.
- H. Joints for Dissimilar-Material Piping: Make joints using adapters compatible with materials of both piping systems.

3.4 TRANSITION FITTING INSTALLATION

- A. Install transition couplings at joints of dissimilar piping.
- B. Transition Fittings in Underground Domestic Water Piping:
 - 1. Fittings for NPS 1-1/2 and Smaller: Fitting-type coupling.
 - 2. Fittings for NPS 2 and Larger: Sleeve-type coupling.
- C. Transition Fittings in Aboveground Domestic Water Piping NPS 2 and Smaller: Plastic-to-metal transition [fittings] or unions.

3.5 DIELECTRIC FITTING INSTALLATION

- A. Install dielectric fittings in piping at connections of dissimilar metal piping and tubing.
- B. Dielectric Fittings for NPS 2 and Smaller: Use dielectric unions.
- C. Dielectric Fittings for NPS 2-1/2 to NPS 4: Use dielectric flange kits.
- D. Dielectric Fittings for [NPS 5] and Larger: Use dielectric flange kits.

3.6 HANGER AND SUPPORT INSTALLATION

- A. Comply with requirements for pipe hanger, support products, and installation in Section 22 0529 "Hangers and Supports for Plumbing Piping and Equipment."
 - 1. Vertical Piping: MSS Type 8 or 42, clamps.
 - 2. Individual, Straight, Horizontal Piping Runs:
 - a. 100 Feet and Less: MSS Type 1, adjustable, steel clevis hangers.
 - b. Longer Than 100 Feet: MSS Type 43, adjustable roller hangers.
 - c. Longer Than 100 Feet if Indicated: MSS Type 49, spring cushion rolls.
 - 3. Multiple, Straight, Horizontal Piping Runs 100 Feet or Longer: MSS Type 44, pipe rolls. Support pipe rolls on trapeze.
 - 4. Base of Vertical Piping: MSS Type 52, spring hangers.
- B. Support vertical piping and tubing at base and at each floor.

- C. Rod diameter may be reduced one size for double-rod hangers, to a minimum of 3/8 inch.
- D. Install hangers for copper tubing with the following maximum horizontal spacing and minimum rod diameters:
 - 1. NPS 3/4 and Smaller: 60 inches with 3/8-inch rod.
 - 2. NPS 1 and NPS 1-1/4: 72 inches with 3/8-inch rod.
 - 3. NPS 1-1/2 and NPS 2: 96 inches with 3/8-inch rod.
 - 4. NPS 2-1/2: 108 inches with 1/2-inch rod.
 - 5. NPS 3 to NPS 5: 10 feet with 1/2-inch rod.
 - 6. NPS 6: 10 feet with 5/8-inch rod.
 - 7. NPS 8: 10 feet with 3/4-inch rod.
- E. Install supports for vertical copper tubing every 10 feet.
- F. Install vinyl-coated hangers for PEX piping with the following maximum horizontal spacing and minimum rod diameters:
 - 1. NPS 1 and Smaller: 32 inches with 3/8-inch rod.
- G. Install hangers for vertical PEX piping every 48 inches.
- H. Support piping and tubing not listed in this article according to MSS SP-69 and manufacturer's written instructions.

3.7 CONNECTIONS

- A. Drawings indicate general arrangement of piping, fittings, and specialties.
- B. When installing piping adjacent to equipment and machines, allow space for service and maintenance.
- C. Connect domestic water piping to exterior water-service piping. Use transition fitting to join dissimilar piping materials.
- D. Connect domestic water piping to water-service piping with shutoff valve; extend and connect to the following:
 - 1. Domestic Water Booster Pumps: Cold-water suction and discharge piping.
 - 2. Water Heaters: Cold-water inlet and hot-water outlet piping in sizes indicated, but not smaller than sizes of water heater connections.
 - 3. Plumbing Fixtures: Cold- and hot-water-supply piping in sizes indicated, but not smaller than that required by plumbing code.
 - 4. Equipment: Cold- and hot-water-supply piping as indicated, but not smaller than equipment connections. Provide shutoff valve and union for each connection. Use flanges instead of unions for NPS 2-1/2 and larger.

3.8 IDENTIFICATION

- A. Identify system components. Comply with requirements for identification materials and installation in Section 22 0553 "Identification for Plumbing Piping and Equipment."
- B. Label pressure piping with system operating pressure.

3.9 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Perform the following tests and inspections:
 - 1. Piping Inspections:
 - a. Do not enclose, cover, or put piping into operation until it has been inspected and approved by authorities having jurisdiction.
 - b. During installation, notify authorities having jurisdiction at least one day before inspection must be made. Perform tests specified below in presence of authorities having jurisdiction:
 - 1) Roughing-in Inspection: Arrange for inspection of piping before concealing or closing in after roughing in and before setting fixtures.
 - 2) Final Inspection: Arrange for authorities having jurisdiction to observe tests specified in "Piping Tests" Subparagraph below and to ensure compliance with requirements.
 - c. Reinspection: If authorities having jurisdiction find that piping will not pass tests or inspections, make required corrections and arrange for reinspection.
 - d. Reports: Prepare inspection reports and have them signed by authorities having jurisdiction.
 - 2. Piping Tests:
 - a. Fill domestic water piping. Check components to determine that they are not air bound and that piping is full of water.
 - b. Test for leaks and defects in new piping and parts of existing piping that have been altered, extended, or repaired. If testing is performed in segments, submit a separate report for each test, complete with diagram of portion of piping tested.
 - c. Leave new, altered, extended, or replaced domestic water piping uncovered and unconcealed until it has been tested and approved. Expose work that was covered or concealed before it was tested.
 - d. Cap and subject piping to static water pressure of 50 psig above operating pressure, without exceeding pressure rating of piping system materials. Isolate test source and allow it to stand for four hours. Leaks and loss in test pressure constitute defects that must be repaired.
 - e. Repair leaks and defects with new materials, and retest piping or portion thereof until satisfactory results are obtained.
 - f. Prepare reports for tests and for corrective action required.
- B. Domestic water piping will be considered defective if it does not pass tests and inspections.

- C. Prepare test and inspection reports.

3.10 ADJUSTING

- A. Perform the following adjustments before operation:
 - 1. Close drain valves, hydrants, and hose bibbs.
 - 2. Open shutoff valves to fully open position.
 - 3. Open throttling valves to proper setting.
 - 4. Adjust balancing valves in hot-water-circulation return piping to provide adequate flow.
 - a. Manually adjust ball-type balancing valves in hot-water-circulation return piping to provide hot-water flow in each branch.
 - b. Adjust calibrated balancing valves to flows indicated.
 - 5. Remove plugs used during testing of piping and for temporary sealing of piping during installation.
 - 6. Remove and clean strainer screens. Close drain valves and replace drain plugs.
 - 7. Remove filter cartridges from housings and verify that cartridges are as specified for application where used and are clean and ready for use.
 - 8. Check plumbing specialties and verify proper settings, adjustments, and operation.

3.11 CLEANING

- A. Clean and disinfect potable domestic water piping as follows:
 - 1. Purge new piping and parts of existing piping that have been altered, extended, or repaired before using.
 - 2. Use purging and disinfecting procedures prescribed by authorities having jurisdiction; if methods are not prescribed, use procedures described in either AWWA C651 or AWWA C652 or follow procedures described below:
 - a. Flush piping system with clean, potable water until dirty water does not appear at outlets.
 - b. Fill and isolate system according to either of the following:
 - 1) Fill system or part thereof with water/chlorine solution with at least 50 ppm of chlorine. Isolate with valves and allow to stand for 24 hours.
 - 2) Fill system or part thereof with water/chlorine solution with at least 200 ppm of chlorine. Isolate and allow to stand for three hours.
 - c. Flush system with clean, potable water until no chlorine is in water coming from system after the standing time.
 - d. Repeat procedures if biological examination shows contamination.
 - e. Submit water samples in sterile bottles to authorities having jurisdiction.
- B. Clean non-potable domestic water piping as follows:

1. Purge new piping and parts of existing piping that have been altered, extended, or repaired before using.
2. Use purging procedures prescribed by authorities having jurisdiction or; if methods are not prescribed, follow procedures described below:
 - a. Flush piping system with clean, potable water until dirty water does not appear at outlets.
 - b. Submit water samples in sterile bottles to authorities having jurisdiction. Repeat procedures if biological examination shows contamination.
- C. Prepare and submit reports of purging and disinfecting activities. Include copies of water-sample approvals from authorities having jurisdiction.
- D. Clean interior of domestic water piping system. Remove dirt and debris as work progresses.

3.12 PIPING SCHEDULE

- A. Transition and special fittings with pressure ratings at least equal to piping rating may be used in applications below unless otherwise indicated.
- B. Flanges and unions may be used for aboveground piping joints unless otherwise indicated.
- C. Fitting Option: Extruded-tee connections and brazed joints may be used on aboveground copper tubing.
- D. Under-building-slab, domestic water, building-service piping, NPS 3 and smaller, shall be the following:
 1. Soft copper tube, ASTM B 88, Type K ASTM B 88, Type L; no joints below slab.
- E. Under-building-slab, domestic water piping, NPS 2 and smaller, shall be the following:
 1. Soft copper tube, ASTM B 88, Type K; no joints below slab.
- F. Aboveground domestic water piping, NPS 2 and smaller, shall be one of the following:
 1. Hard copper tube, ASTM B 88, Type L; wrought-copper, solder-joint fittings; and soldered joints.
 2. Crosslinked polyethylene (PEX), PEX-a or Engel Method, ASTM F876 and ASTM F877; ASTM F1960 cold expansion fittings.
- G. Aboveground domestic water piping, NPS 2-1/2 to NPS 4, shall be the following:
 1. Hard copper tube, ASTM B 88, Type L; wrought-copper, solder-joint fittings; and soldered joints.
- H. Aboveground domestic water piping, NPS 5 to NPS 8, shall be the following:
 1. Hard copper tube, ASTM B 88, Type L; cast- or wrought-copper, solder-joint fittings; and soldered joints.

3.13 VALVE SCHEDULE

- A. Drawings indicate valve types to be used. Where specific valve types are not indicated, the following requirements apply:
 - 1. Shutoff Duty: Use ball or gate valves for piping NPS 2 and smaller. Use butterfly, ball, or gate valves with flanged ends for piping NPS 2-1/2 and larger.
 - 2. Throttling Duty: Use ball or globe valves for piping NPS 2 and smaller. Use butterfly or ball valves with flanged ends for piping NPS 2-1/2 and larger.
 - 3. Hot-Water Circulation Piping, Balancing Duty: Memory-stop balancing valves.
 - 4. Drain Duty: Hose-end drain valves.
- B. Use check valves to maintain correct direction of domestic water flow to and from equipment.
- C. Iron grooved-end valves may be used with grooved-end piping.

END OF SECTION

SECTION 22 1119 - DOMESTIC WATER PIPING SPECIALTIES

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:

1. Vacuum breakers.
2. Backflow preventers.
3. Water pressure-reducing valves.
4. Balancing valves.
5. Temperature-actuated, water mixing valves.
6. Strainers.
7. Outlet boxes.
8. Hose bibbs.
9. Wall hydrants.
10. Drain valves.
11. Water-hammer arresters.
12. Trap-seal primer valves.
13. Specialty valves.

- B. Related Requirements:

1. Section 22 0519 "Meters and Gages for Plumbing Piping" for thermometers, pressure gages, and flow meters in domestic water piping.
2. Section 22 1116 "Domestic Water Piping" for water meters.
3. Section 22 3200 "Domestic Water Filtration Equipment" for water filters in domestic water piping.
4. Section 22 4300 "Medical Plumbing Fixtures" for thermostatic mixing valves for sitz baths, thermostatic mixing-valve assemblies for hydrotherapy equipment, and outlet boxes for dialysis equipment.
5. Section 22 4500 "Emergency Plumbing Fixtures" for water tempering equipment.
6. Section 22 4713 "Drinking Fountains" for water filters for water coolers.
7. Section 22 4716 "Pressure Water Coolers" for water filters for water coolers.
8. Section 22 4723 "Remote Water Coolers" for water filters for water coolers.

1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product.
- B. Shop Drawings: For domestic water piping specialties.

1. Include diagrams for power, signal, and control wiring.

1.4 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Field quality-control reports.

1.5 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

- A. Operation and Maintenance Data: For domestic water piping specialties to include in emergency, operation, and maintenance manuals.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Minimum Working Pressure for Domestic Water Piping Specialties: 125 psig unless otherwise indicated.

2.2 VACUUM BREAKERS

- A. Pipe-Applied, Atmospheric-Type Vacuum Breakers:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:

- a. Ames Fire & Waterworks; a division of Watts Water Technologies, Inc.
- b. Cash Acme; a division of Reliance Worldwide Corporation.
- c. Conbraco Industries, Inc.
- d. FEBCO; a division of Watts Water Technologies, Inc.
- e. Rain Bird Corporation.
- f. Toro Company (The); Irrigation Div.
- g. Watts; a division of Watts Water Technologies, Inc.; Watts Regulator Company.
- h. Zurn Industries, LLC; Plumbing Products Group; Wilkins Water Control Products.

2. Standard: ASSE 1001.
3. Size: NPS 1/4 to NPS 3, as required to match connected piping.
4. Body: Bronze.
5. Inlet and Outlet Connections: Threaded.
6. Finish: Rough bronze.

- B. Hose-Connection Vacuum Breakers:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:

- a. Arrowhead Brass Products.
 - b. Cash Acme; a division of Reliance Worldwide Corporation.
 - c. Conbraco Industries, Inc.
 - d. Legend Valve.
 - e. MIFAB, Inc.
 - f. Prier Products, Inc.
 - g. Watts; a division of Watts Water Technologies, Inc.; Watts Regulator Company.
 - h. Woodford Manufacturing Company; a division of WCM Industries, Inc.
 - i. Zurn Industries, LLC; Plumbing Products Group; Light Commercial Products.
 - j. Zurn Industries, LLC; Plumbing Products Group; Wilkins Water Control Products.
2. Standard: ASSE 1011.
 3. Body: Bronze, nonremovable, with manual drain.
 4. Outlet Connection: Garden-hose threaded complying with ASME B1.20.7.
 5. Finish: Chrome or nickel plated.

2.3 BACKFLOW PREVENTERS

A. Reduced-Pressure-Principle Backflow Preventers:

1. Basis-of-Design Product: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide product indicated on Drawings or comparable product by one of the following:
 - a. Ames Fire & Waterworks; a division of Watts Water Technologies, Inc.
 - b. Conbraco Industries, Inc.
 - c. FEBCO; a division of Watts Water Technologies, Inc.
 - d. Flomatic Corporation.
 - e. Watts; a division of Watts Water Technologies, Inc.; Watts Regulator Company.
 - f. Zurn Industries, LLC; Plumbing Products Group; Wilkins Water Control Products.
2. Standard: ASSE 1013.
3. Operation: Continuous-pressure applications.
4. Pressure Loss: 12 psig maximum, through middle third of flow range.
5. Body: Bronze for NPS 2 and smaller; cast iron with interior lining that complies with AWWA C550 or that is FDA approved for NPS 2-1/2 and larger.
6. End Connections: Threaded for NPS 2 and smaller; flanged for NPS 2-1/2 and larger.
7. Configuration: Designed for horizontal, straight-through flow.
8. Accessories:
 - a. Valves NPS 2 and Smaller: Ball type with threaded ends on inlet and outlet.
 - b. Valves NPS 2-1/2 and Larger: Outside-screw and yoke-gate type with flanged ends on inlet and outlet.
 - c. Air-Gap Fitting: ASME A112.1.2, matching backflow-preventer connection.

B. Beverage-Dispensing-Equipment Backflow Preventers:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
 - a. Conbraco Industries, Inc.
 - b. Watts; a division of Watts Water Technologies, Inc.; Watts Regulator Company.
 - c. Zurn Industries, LLC; Plumbing Products Group; Wilkins Water Control Products.
2. Standard: ASSE 1022.
3. Operation: Continuous-pressure applications.
4. Size: NPS 1/4 or NPS 3/8.
5. Body: Stainless steel.
6. End Connections: Threaded.

C. Carbonated-Beverage-Dispenser, Dual-Check-Valve Backflow Preventers:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
 - a. Cash Acme; a division of Reliance Worldwide Corporation.
 - b. Lancer Corporation.
 - c. Watts; a division of Watts Water Technologies, Inc.; Watts Regulator Company.
2. Standard: ASSE 1032.
3. Operation: Continuous-pressure applications.
4. Size: NPS 1/4 or NPS 3/8.
5. Body: Stainless steel.
6. End Connections: Threaded.

D. Backflow-Preventer Test Kits:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - a. Conbraco Industries, Inc.
 - b. FEBCO; a division of Watts Water Technologies, Inc.
 - c. Flomatic Corporation.
 - d. Watts; a division of Watts Water Technologies, Inc.; Watts Regulator Company.
 - e. Zurn Industries, LLC; Plumbing Products Group; Wilkins Water Control Products.
2. Description: Factory calibrated, with gages, fittings, hoses, and carrying case with test-procedure instructions.

2.4 WATER PRESSURE-REDUCING VALVES

A. Water Regulators :

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
 - a. Cash Acme; a division of Reliance Worldwide Corporation.
 - b. Conbraco Industries, Inc.
 - c. Honeywell International Inc.
 - d. Watts; a division of Watts Water Technologies, Inc.; Watts Regulator Company.
 - e. Zurn Industries, LLC; Plumbing Products Group; Wilkins Water Control Products.
2. Standard: ASSE 1003.
3. Pressure Rating: Initial working pressure of 150 psig.
4. Body: Bronze for NPS 2 and smaller; cast iron with interior lining that complies with AWWA C550 or that is FDA approved for NPS 2-1/2 and NPS 3.
5. Valves for Booster Heater Water Supply: Include integral bypass.
6. End Connections: Threaded for NPS 2 and smaller; flanged for NPS 2-1/2 and NPS 3.

2.5 BALANCING VALVES

A. Memory-Stop Balancing Valves:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
 - a. Conbraco Industries, Inc.
 - b. Crane Co.; Crane Valve Group; Crane Valves.
 - c. Crane Co.; Crane Valve Group; Jenkins Valves.
 - d. Crane Co.; Crane Valve Group; Stockham Div.
 - e. Hammond Valve.
 - f. Milwaukee Valve Company.
 - g. NIBCO Inc.
 - h. Red-White Valve Corp.
2. Standard: MSS SP-110 for two-piece, copper-alloy ball valves.
3. Pressure Rating: 400-psig minimum CWP.
4. Size: NPS 2 or smaller.
5. Body: Copper alloy.
6. Port: Standard or full port.
7. Ball: Chrome-plated brass.
8. Seats and Seals: Replaceable.
9. End Connections: Solder joint or threaded.
10. Handle: Vinyl-covered steel with memory-setting device.

2.6 TEMPERATURE-ACTUATED, WATER MIXING VALVES

A. Primary, Thermostatic, Water Mixing Valves:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - a. Armstrong International, Inc.
 - b. Lawler Manufacturing Company, Inc.
 - c. Leonard Valve Company.
 - d. Powers; a division of Watts Water Technologies, Inc.
 - e. Symmons Industries, Inc.
 - f. Acorn Mfg.
2. Standard: ASSE 1017.
3. Pressure Rating: 125 psig minimum unless otherwise indicated.
4. Type: Cabinet-type, thermostatically controlled, water mixing valve.
5. Material: Bronze body with corrosion-resistant interior components.
6. Connections: Threaded union inlets and outlet.
7. Accessories: Manual temperature control, check stops on hot- and cold-water supplies, and adjustable, temperature-control handle.
8. Valve Finish: Chrome plated.
9. Piping Finish: Chrome plated.
10. Cabinet: Factory fabricated, stainless steel, for recessed mounting and with hinged, stainless-steel door.

B. Individual-Fixture, Water Tempering Valves:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by the following:
 - a. Cash Acme; a division of Reliance Worldwide Corporation.
 - b. Conbraco Industries, Inc.
 - c. Honeywell International Inc.
 - d. Lawler Manufacturing Company, Inc.
 - e. Leonard Valve Company.
 - f. Powers; a division of Watts Water Technologies, Inc.
 - g. Watts; a division of Watts Water Technologies, Inc.; Watts Regulator Company.
 - h. Zurn Industries, LLC; Plumbing Products Group; Wilkins Water Control Products.
 - i. Acorn Mfg.
2. Standard: ASSE 1016, thermostatically controlled, water tempering valve.
3. Pressure Rating: 125 psig minimum unless otherwise indicated.
4. Body: Bronze body with corrosion-resistant interior components.
5. Temperature Control: Adjustable.
6. Inlets and Outlet: Threaded.
7. Finish: Rough or chrome-plated bronze.

2.7 STRAINERS FOR DOMESTIC WATER PIPING

A. Y-Pattern Strainers:

1. Pressure Rating: 125 psig minimum unless otherwise indicated.

2. Body: Bronze for NPS 2 and smaller; cast iron with interior lining that complies with AWWA C550 or that is FDA approved, epoxy coated and for NPS 2-1/2 and larger.
3. End Connections: Threaded for NPS 2 and smaller; flanged for NPS 2-1/2 and larger.
4. Screen: Stainless steel with round perforations unless otherwise indicated.
5. Perforation Size:
 - a. Strainers NPS 2 and Smaller: 0.020 inch.
 - b. Strainers NPS 2-1/2 to NPS 4: 0.045 inch.
 - c. Strainers NPS 5 and Larger: 0.10 inch.
6. Drain: Factory-installed, hose-end drain valve.

2.8 OUTLET BOXES

A. Clothes Washer Outlet Boxes:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
 - a. Acorn Engineering Company.
 - b. Guy Gray Manufacturing Co., Inc.
 - c. IPS Corporation.
 - d. LSP Products Group, Inc.
 - e. Oatey.
 - f. Plastic Oddities.
 - g. Symmons Industries, Inc.
 - h. Watts; a division of Watts Water Technologies, Inc.; Watts Regulator Company.
 - i. Whitehall Manufacturing; a div. of Acorn Engineering Company.
 - j. Zurn Industries, LLC; Plumbing Products Group; Light Commercial Products.
2. Mounting: Recessed.
3. Material and Finish: Enameled-steel, epoxy-painted-steel, or plastic box and faceplate.
4. Faucet: Combination valved fitting or separate hot- and cold-water valved fittings complying with ASME A112.18.1. Include garden-hose thread complying with ASME B1.20.7 on outlets.
5. Supply Shutoff Fittings: NPS 1/2 gate, globe, or ball valves and NPS 1/2 copper, water tubing.
6. Drain: NPS 2 standpipe and P-trap for direct waste connection to drainage piping.
7. Inlet Hoses: Two 60-inch- long, rubber household clothes washer inlet hoses with female, garden-hose-thread couplings. Include rubber washers.
8. Drain Hose: One 48-inch- long, rubber household clothes washer drain hose with hooked end.

B. Icemaker Outlet Boxes:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
 - a. Acorn Engineering Company.
 - b. IPS Corporation.
 - c. LSP Products Group, Inc.
 - d. Oatey.
 - e. Plastic Oddities.
2. Mounting: Recessed.
3. Material and Finish: Enameled-steel, epoxy-painted-steel, or plastic box and faceplate.
4. Faucet: Valved fitting complying with ASME A112.18.1. Include NPS 1/2 or smaller copper tube outlet.
5. Supply Shutoff Fitting: NPS 1/2 gate, globe, or ball valve and NPS 1/2 copper, water tubing.

2.9 HOSE BIBBS

A. Hose Bibbs:

1. Standard: ASME A112.18.1 for sediment faucets.
2. Body Material: Bronze.
3. Seat: Bronze, replaceable.
4. Supply Connections: NPS 1/2 or NPS 3/4 threaded or solder-joint inlet.
5. Outlet Connection: Garden-hose thread complying with ASME B1.20.7.
6. Pressure Rating: 125 psig.
7. Vacuum Breaker: Integral nonremovable, drainable, hose-connection vacuum breaker complying with ASSE 1011.
8. Finish for Equipment Rooms: Rough bronze, or chrome or nickel plated.
9. Finish for Service Areas: Rough bronze.
10. Finish for Finished Rooms: Chrome or nickel plated.
11. Operation for Equipment Rooms: Wheel handle or operating key.
12. Operation for Service Areas: Wheel handle.
13. Operation for Finished Rooms: Wheel handle.
14. Include operating key with each operating-key hose bibb.
15. Include [integral] wall flange with each chrome- or nickel-plated hose bibb.

2.10 WALL HYDRANTS

A. Nonfreeze Wall Hydrants:

1. Basis-of-Design Product: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide product indicated on Drawings or comparable product by one of the following:
 - a. Josam Company.
 - b. MIFAB, Inc.
 - c. Smith, Jay R. Mfg. Co.; Division of Smith Industries, Inc.
 - d. Tyler Pipe; Wade Div.
 - e. Watts Drainage Products.
 - f. Woodford Manufacturing Company; a division of WCM Industries, Inc.

- g. Zurn Industries, LLC; Plumbing Products Group; Specification Drainage Products.
2. Standard: ASME A112.21.3M for concealed-outlet, self-draining wall hydrants.
3. Pressure Rating: 125 psig.
4. Operation: Loose key.
5. Casing and Operating Rod: Of length required to match wall thickness. Include wall clamp.
6. Inlet: NPS 3/4 or NPS 1.
7. Outlet: Concealed, with integral vacuum breaker and garden-hose thread complying with ASME B1.20.7.
8. Box: Deep, flush mounted with cover.
9. Box and Cover Finish: Polished nickel bronze.
10. Outlet: Exposed, with integral vacuum breaker and garden-hose thread complying with ASME B1.20.7.
11. Operating Keys(s): Two with each wall hydrant.

2.11 DRAIN VALVES

A. Ball-Valve-Type, Hose-End Drain Valves:

1. Standard: MSS SP-110 for standard-port, two-piece ball valves.
2. Pressure Rating: 400-psig minimum CWP.
3. Size: NPS 3/4.
4. Body: Copper alloy.
5. Ball: Chrome-plated brass.
6. Seats and Seals: Replaceable.
7. Handle: Vinyl-covered steel.
8. Inlet: Threaded or solder joint.
9. Outlet: Threaded, short nipple with garden-hose thread complying with ASME B1.20.7 and cap with brass chain.

2.12 WATER-HAMMER ARRESTERS

A. Water-Hammer Arresters:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
 - a. AMTROL, Inc.
 - b. Josam Company.
 - c. MIFAB, Inc.
 - d. Precision Plumbing Products, Inc.
 - e. Sioux Chief Manufacturing Company, Inc.
 - f. Smith, Jay R. Mfg. Co.; Division of Smith Industries, Inc.
 - g. Tyler Pipe; Wade Div.
 - h. Watts Drainage Products.
 - i. Zurn Industries, LLC; Plumbing Products Group; Specification Drainage Products.

2. Standard: ASSE 1010 or PDI-WH 201.
3. Type: Copper tube with piston.
4. Size: ASSE 1010, Sizes AA and A through F, or PDI-WH 201, Sizes A through F.

2.13 TRAP-SEAL PRIMER DEVICE

A. Supply-Type, Trap-Seal Primer Device:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - a. MIFAB, Inc.
 - b. Precision Plumbing Products, Inc.
 - c. Sioux Chief Manufacturing Company, Inc.
 - d. Smith, Jay R. Mfg. Co.; Division of Smith Industries, Inc.
 - e. Watts; a division of Watts Water Technologies, Inc.; Watts Regulator Company.
2. Standard: ASSE 1018.
3. Pressure Rating: 125 psig minimum.
4. Body: Bronze.
5. Inlet and Outlet Connections: NPS 1/2 threaded, union, or solder joint.
6. Gravity Drain Outlet Connection: NPS 1/2 threaded or solder joint.
7. Finish: Chrome plated, or rough bronze for units used with pipe or tube that is not chrome finished.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 INSTALLATION

- A. Install backflow preventers in each water supply to mechanical equipment and systems and to other equipment and water systems that may be sources of contamination. Comply with authorities having jurisdiction.
 1. Locate backflow preventers in same room as connected equipment or system.
 2. Install drain for backflow preventers with atmospheric-vent drain connection with air-gap fitting, fixed air-gap fitting, or equivalent positive pipe separation of at least two pipe diameters in drain piping and pipe-to-floor drain. Locate air-gap device attached to or under backflow preventer. Simple air breaks are unacceptable for this application.
 3. Do not install bypass piping around backflow preventers.
- B. Install water regulators with inlet and outlet shutoff valves and bypass with memory-stop balancing valve. Install pressure gages on inlet and outlet.
- C. Install water-control valves with inlet and outlet shutoff valves. Install pressure gages on inlet and outlet.
- D. Install balancing valves in locations where they can easily be adjusted.

- E. Install temperature-actuated, water mixing valves with check stops or shutoff valves on inlets and with shutoff valve on outlet.
 - 1. Install cabinet-type units recessed in or surface mounted on wall as specified.
- F. Install Y-pattern strainers for water on supply side of each control valve, water pressure-reducing valve, solenoid valve, and pump.
- G. Install outlet boxes recessed in wall or surface mounted on wall. Install 2-by-4-inch fire-retardant-treated-wood blocking, wall reinforcement between studs. Comply with requirements for fire-retardant-treated-wood blocking in Section 06 1000 "Rough Carpentry."
- H. Install draining-type post hydrants with 1 cu. yd. of crushed gravel around drain hole. Set post hydrants in concrete paving or in 1 cu. ft. of concrete block at grade.
- I. Set nonfreeze, nondraining-type post hydrants in concrete or pavement.
- J. Set freeze-resistant yard hydrants with riser pipe in concrete or pavement. Do not encase canister in concrete.
- K. Install water-hammer arresters in water piping according to PDI-WH 201.
- L. Install air vents at high points of water piping. Install drain piping and discharge onto floor drain.
- M. Install supply-type, trap-seal primer valves with outlet piping pitched down toward drain trap a minimum of 1 percent, and connect to floor-drain body, trap, or inlet fitting. Adjust valve for proper flow.

3.2 CONNECTIONS

- A. Comply with requirements for ground equipment in Section 26 0526 "Grounding and Bonding for Electrical Systems."
- B. Fire-retardant-treated-wood blocking is specified in Section 26 0519 "Low-Voltage Electrical Power Conductors and Cables" for electrical connections.

3.3 LABELING AND IDENTIFYING

- A. Equipment Nameplates and Signs: Install engraved plastic-laminate equipment nameplate or sign on or near each of the following:
 - 1. Intermediate atmospheric-vent backflow preventers.
 - 2. Reduced-pressure-principle backflow preventers.
 - 3. Carbonated-beverage-machine backflow preventers.
 - 4. Water pressure-reducing valves.
 - 5. Calibrated balancing valves.
 - 6. Primary, thermostatic, water mixing valves.
 - 7. Manifold, thermostatic, water mixing-valve assemblies.
 - 8. Primary water tempering valves.
 - 9. Outlet boxes.

10. Supply-type, trap-seal primer valves.

- B. Distinguish among multiple units, inform operator of operational requirements, indicate safety and emergency precautions, and warn of hazards and improper operations, in addition to identifying unit. Nameplates and signs are specified in Section 22 0553 "Identification for Plumbing Piping and Equipment."

3.4 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Perform the following tests and inspections:

1. Test each reduced-pressure-principle backflow preventer according to authorities having jurisdiction and the device's reference standard.

- B. Domestic water piping specialties will be considered defective if they do not pass tests and inspections.

- C. Prepare test and inspection reports.

3.5 ADJUSTING

- A. Set field-adjustable pressure set points of water pressure-reducing valves.

- B. Set field-adjustable flow set points of balancing valves.

- C. Set field-adjustable temperature set points of temperature-actuated, water mixing valves.

END OF SECTION

SECTION 22 1316 - SANITARY WASTE AND VENT PIPING

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:

- 1. Pipe, tube, and fittings.
- 2. Specialty pipe fittings.

- B. Related Sections:

- 1. Section 22 1313 "Facility Sanitary Sewers" for sanitary sewerage piping and structures outside the building.

1.3 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Components and installation shall be capable of withstanding the following minimum working pressure unless otherwise indicated:

- 1. Soil, Waste, and Vent Piping: 10-foot head of water.

1.4 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product indicated.

1.5 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Field quality-control reports.

1.6 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Piping materials shall bear label, stamp, or other markings of specified testing agency.
- B. Comply with NSF/ANSI 14, "Plastics Piping Systems Components and Related Materials," for plastic piping components. Include marking with "NSF-dwv" for plastic drain, waste, and vent piping and "NSF-sewer" for plastic sewer piping.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 PIPING MATERIALS

- A. Comply with requirements in "Piping Schedule" Article for applications of pipe, tube, fitting materials, and joining methods for specific services, service locations, and pipe sizes.

2.2 HUB-AND-SPIGOT, CAST-IRON SOIL PIPE AND FITTINGS

- A. Pipe and Fittings: ASTM A 74, Service and Extra Heavy class(es).
- B. Gaskets: ASTM C 564, rubber.

2.3 HUBLESS, CAST-IRON SOIL PIPE AND FITTINGS

- A. Pipe and Fittings: ASTM A 888 or CISPI 301.
- B. CISPI, Hubless-Piping Couplings:
 - 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
 - a. ANACO-Husky.
 - b. Dallas Specialty & Mfg. Co.
 - c. Ferco Inc.
 - d. Matco-Norca, Inc.
 - e. MIFAB, Inc.
 - f. Mission Rubber Company; a division of MCP Industries, Inc.
 - g. Stant.
 - h. Tyler Pipe.
 - 2. Standards: ASTM C 1277 and CISPI 310.
 - 3. Description: Stainless-steel corrugated shield with stainless-steel bands and tightening devices; and ASTM C 564, rubber sleeve with integral, center pipe stop.
- C. Heavy-Duty, Hubless-Piping Couplings:
 - 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
 - a. ANACO-Husky.
 - b. Clamp-All Corp.
 - c. Dallas Specialty & Mfg. Co.
 - d. MIFAB, Inc.
 - e. Mission Rubber Company; a division of MCP Industries, Inc.
 - f. Stant.
 - g. Tyler Pipe.

2. Standards: ASTM C 1277 and ASTM C 1540.
3. Description: Stainless-steel shield with stainless-steel bands and tightening devices; and ASTM C 564, rubber sleeve with integral, center pipe stop.

2.4 PVC PIPE AND FITTINGS

- A. Solid-Wall PVC Pipe: ASTM D 2665, drain, waste, and vent.
- B. PVC Socket Fittings: ASTM D 2665, made to ASTM D 3311, drain, waste, and vent patterns and to fit Schedule 40 pipe.
- C. Adhesive Primer: ASTM F 656.
 1. Adhesive primer shall have a VOC content of 550 g/L or less when calculated according to 40 CFR 59, Subpart D (EPA Method 24).
 2. Adhesive primer shall comply with the testing and product requirements of the California Department of Health Services' "Standard Practice for the Testing of Volatile Organic Emissions from Various Sources Using Small-Scale Environmental Chambers."
- D. Solvent Cement: ASTM D 2564.
 1. PVC solvent cement shall have a VOC content of 510 g/L or less when calculated according to 40 CFR 59, Subpart D (EPA Method 24).
 2. Solvent cement shall comply with the testing and product requirements of the California Department of Health Services' "Standard Practice for the Testing of Volatile Organic Emissions from Various Sources Using Small-Scale Environmental Chambers."

2.5 SPECIALTY PIPE FITTINGS

- A. Transition Couplings:
 1. General Requirements: Fitting or device for joining piping with small differences in OD's or of different materials. Include end connections same size as and compatible with pipes to be joined.
 2. Fitting-Type Transition Couplings: Manufactured piping coupling or specified piping system fitting.
 3. Unshielded, Nonpressure Transition Couplings:
 - a. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
 - 1) Dallas Specialty & Mfg. Co.
 - 2) Fernco Inc.
 - 3) Mission Rubber Company; a division of MCP Industries, Inc.
 - 4) Plastic Oddities; a division of Diverse Corporate Technologies, Inc.
 - b. Standard: ASTM C 1173.

- c. Description: Elastomeric, sleeve-type, reducing or transition pattern. Include shear ring and corrosion-resistant-metal tension band and tightening mechanism on each end.
 - d. Sleeve Materials:
 - 1) For Cast-Iron Soil Pipes: ASTM C 564, rubber.
 - 2) For Plastic Pipes: ASTM F 477, elastomeric seal or ASTM D 5926, PVC.
 - 3) For Dissimilar Pipes: ASTM D 5926, PVC or other material compatible with pipe materials being joined.
4. Shielded, Nonpressure Transition Couplings:
- a. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
 - 1) Cascade Waterworks Mfg. Co.
 - 2) Mission Rubber Company; a division of MCP Industries, Inc.
 - b. Standard: ASTM C 1460.
 - c. Description: Elastomeric or rubber sleeve with full-length, corrosion-resistant outer shield and corrosion-resistant-metal tension band and tightening mechanism on each end.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EARTH MOVING

- A. Comply with requirements for excavating, trenching, and backfilling specified in Section 31 2000 "Earth Moving."

3.2 PIPING INSTALLATION

- A. Drawing plans, schematics, and diagrams indicate general location and arrangement of piping systems. Indicated locations and arrangements were used to size pipe and calculate friction loss, expansion, pump sizing, and other design considerations. Install piping as indicated unless deviations to layout are approved on coordination drawings.
- B. Install piping in concealed locations unless otherwise indicated and except in equipment rooms and service areas.
- C. Install piping indicated to be exposed and piping in equipment rooms and service areas at right angles or parallel to building walls. Diagonal runs are prohibited unless specifically indicated otherwise.
- D. Install piping above accessible ceilings to allow sufficient space for ceiling panel removal.
- E. Install piping to permit valve servicing.

- F. Install piping at indicated slopes.
- G. Install piping free of sags and bends.
- H. Install fittings for changes in direction and branch connections.
- I. Install piping to allow application of insulation.
- J. Make changes in direction for soil and waste drainage and vent piping using appropriate branches, bends, and long-sweep bends. Sanitary tees and short-sweep 1/4 bends may be used on vertical stacks if change in direction of flow is from horizontal to vertical. Use long-turn, double Y-branch and 1/8-bend fittings if two fixtures are installed back to back or side by side with common drain pipe. Straight tees, elbows, and crosses may be used on vent lines. Do not change direction of flow more than 90 degrees. Use proper size of standard increasers and reducers if pipes of different sizes are connected. Reducing size of drainage piping in direction of flow is prohibited.
- K. Lay buried building drainage piping beginning at low point of each system. Install true to grades and alignment indicated, with unbroken continuity of invert. Place hub ends of piping upstream. Install required gaskets according to manufacturer's written instructions for use of lubricants, cements, and other installation requirements. Maintain swab in piping and pull past each joint as completed.
- L. Install soil and waste drainage and vent piping at the following minimum slopes unless otherwise indicated:
 - 1. Building Sanitary Drain: 2 percent downward in direction of flow for piping NPS 3 and smaller; 1 percent downward in direction of flow for piping NPS 4 and larger.
 - 2. Horizontal Sanitary Drainage Piping: 2 percent downward in direction of flow.
 - 3. Vent Piping: 1 percent down toward vertical fixture vent or toward vent stack.
- M. Install cast-iron soil piping according to CISPI's "Cast Iron Soil Pipe and Fittings Handbook," Chapter IV, "Installation of Cast Iron Soil Pipe and Fittings."
- N. Install aboveground PVC piping according to ASTM D 2665.
- O. Install engineered soil and waste drainage and vent piping systems as follows:
 - 1. Combination Waste and Vent: Comply with standards of authorities having jurisdiction.
- P. Plumbing Specialties:
 - 1. Install backwater valves in sanitary waster gravity-flow piping. Comply with requirements for backwater valves specified in Section 22 1319 "Sanitary Waste Piping Specialties."
 - 2. Install cleanouts at grade and extend to where building sanitary drains connect to building sanitary sewers in sanitary drainage gravity-flow piping. Install cleanout fitting with closure plug inside the building in sanitary drainage force-main piping. Comply with requirements for cleanouts specified in Section 22 1319 "Sanitary Waste Piping Specialties."

3. Install drains in sanitary drainage gravity-flow piping. Comply with requirements for drains specified in Section 22 1319 "Sanitary Waste Piping Specialties."

Q. Do not enclose, cover, or put piping into operation until it is inspected and approved by authorities having jurisdiction.

R. Install sleeves for piping penetrations of walls, ceilings, and floors. Comply with requirements for sleeves specified in Section 22 0517 "Sleeves and Sleeve Seals for Plumbing Piping."

S. Install sleeve seals for piping penetrations of concrete walls and slabs. Comply with requirements for sleeve seals specified in Section 22 0517 "Sleeves and Sleeve Seals for Plumbing Piping."

T. Install escutcheons for piping penetrations of walls, ceilings, and floors. Comply with requirements for escutcheons specified in Section 22 0518 "Escutcheons for Plumbing Piping."

3.3 JOINT CONSTRUCTION

A. Join hub-and-spigot, cast-iron soil piping with gasket joints according to CISPI's "Cast Iron Soil Pipe and Fittings Handbook" for compression joints.

B. Join hubless, cast-iron soil piping according to CISPI 310 and CISPI's "Cast Iron Soil Pipe and Fittings Handbook" for hubless-piping coupling joints.

C. Plastic, Nonpressure-Piping, Solvent-Cement Joints: Clean and dry joining surfaces. Join pipe and fittings according to the following:

1. Comply with ASTM F 402 for safe-handling practice of cleaners, primers, and solvent cements.
2. PVC Piping: Join according to ASTM D 2855 and ASTM D 2665 Appendixes.

3.4 SPECIALTY PIPE FITTING INSTALLATION

A. Transition Couplings:

1. Install transition couplings at joints of piping with small differences in OD's.
2. In Drainage Piping: Shielded, nonpressure transition couplings.

3.5 HANGER AND SUPPORT INSTALLATION

A. Comply with requirements for seismic-restraint devices specified in Section 22 0548 "Vibration and Seismic Controls for Plumbing Piping and Equipment."

B. Comply with requirements for pipe hanger and support devices and installation specified in Section 22 0529 "Hangers and Supports for Plumbing Piping and Equipment."

1. Install carbon-steel pipe hangers for horizontal piping in noncorrosive environments.

2. Install carbon-steel pipe support clamps for vertical piping in noncorrosive environments.
 3. Vertical Piping: MSS Type 8 or Type 42, clamps.
 4. Install individual, straight, horizontal piping runs:
 - a. 100 Feet and Less: MSS Type 1, adjustable, steel clevis hangers.
 - b. Longer Than 100 Feet: MSS Type 43, adjustable roller hangers.
 - c. Longer Than 100 Feet if Indicated: MSS Type 49, spring cushion rolls.
 5. Multiple, Straight, Horizontal Piping Runs 100 Feet or Longer: MSS Type 44, pipe rolls. Support pipe rolls on trapeze.
 6. Base of Vertical Piping: MSS Type 52, spring hangers.
- C. Support horizontal piping and tubing within 12 inches of each fitting and coupling.
- D. Support vertical piping and tubing at base and at each floor.
- E. Rod diameter may be reduced one size for double-rod hangers, with 3/8-inch minimum rods.
- F. Install hangers for cast-iron soil piping with the following maximum horizontal spacing and minimum rod diameters:
1. NPS 1-1/2 and NPS 2: 60 inches with 3/8-inch rod.
 2. NPS 3: 60 inches with 1/2-inch rod.
 3. NPS 4 and NPS 5: 60 inches with 5/8-inch rod.
 4. NPS 6 and NPS 8: 60 inches with 3/4-inch rod.
 5. NPS 10 and NPS 12: 60 inches with 7/8-inch rod.
 6. Spacing for 10-foot lengths may be increased to 10 feet. Spacing for fittings is limited to 60 inches.
- G. Install supports for vertical cast-iron soil piping every 15 feet.
- H. Install hangers for PVC piping with the following maximum horizontal spacing and minimum rod diameters:
1. NPS 1-1/2 and NPS 2: 48 inches with 3/8-inch rod.
 2. NPS 3: 48 inches with 1/2-inch rod.
 3. NPS 4 and NPS 5: 48 inches with 5/8-inch rod.
 4. NPS 6 and NPS 8: 48 inches with 3/4-inch rod.
 5. NPS 10 and NPS 12: 48 inches with 7/8-inch rod.
- I. Install supports for vertical PVC piping every 48 inches.
- J. Support piping and tubing not listed above according to MSS SP-69 and manufacturer's written instructions.
- 3.6 CONNECTIONS
- A. Drawings indicate general arrangement of piping, fittings, and specialties.

- B. Connect soil and waste piping to exterior sanitary sewerage piping. Use transition fitting to join dissimilar piping materials.
- C. Connect drainage and vent piping to the following:
 - 1. Plumbing Fixtures: Connect drainage piping in sizes indicated, but not smaller than required by plumbing code.
 - 2. Plumbing Fixtures and Equipment: Connect atmospheric vent piping in sizes indicated, but not smaller than required by authorities having jurisdiction.
 - 3. Plumbing Specialties: Connect drainage and vent piping in sizes indicated, but not smaller than required by plumbing code.
 - 4. Install test tees (wall cleanouts) in conductors near floor and floor cleanouts with cover flush with floor.
 - 5. Install horizontal backwater valves in pit with pit cover flush with floor.
 - 6. Comply with requirements for backwater valves, cleanouts, and drains specified in Section 22 1319 "Sanitary Waste Piping Specialties."
 - 7. Equipment: Connect drainage piping as indicated. Provide shutoff valve if indicated and union for each connection. Use flanges instead of unions for connections NPS 2-1/2 and larger.
- D. Where installing piping adjacent to equipment, allow space for service and maintenance of equipment.
- E. Make connections according to the following unless otherwise indicated:
 - 1. Install unions, in piping NPS 2 and smaller, adjacent to each valve and at final connection to each piece of equipment.
 - 2. Install flanges, in piping NPS 2-1/2 and larger, adjacent to flanged valves and at final connection to each piece of equipment.

3.7 IDENTIFICATION

- A. Identify exposed sanitary waste and vent piping. Comply with requirements for identification specified in Section 22 0553 "Identification for Plumbing Piping and Equipment."

3.8 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. During installation, notify authorities having jurisdiction at least 24 hours before inspection must be made. Perform tests specified below in presence of authorities having jurisdiction.
 - 1. Roughing-in Inspection: Arrange for inspection of piping before concealing or closing-in after roughing-in and before setting fixtures.
 - 2. Final Inspection: Arrange for final inspection by authorities having jurisdiction to observe tests specified below and to ensure compliance with requirements.
- B. Reinspection: If authorities having jurisdiction find that piping will not pass test or inspection, make required corrections and arrange for reinspection.

- C. Reports: Prepare inspection reports and have them signed by authorities having jurisdiction.
- D. Test sanitary drainage and vent piping according to procedures of authorities having jurisdiction or, in absence of published procedures, as follows:
 - 1. Test for leaks and defects in new piping and parts of existing piping that have been altered, extended, or repaired. If testing is performed in segments, submit separate report for each test, complete with diagram of portion of piping tested.
 - 2. Leave uncovered and unconcealed new, altered, extended, or replaced drainage and vent piping until it has been tested and approved. Expose work that was covered or concealed before it was tested.
 - 3. Roughing-in Plumbing Test Procedure: Test drainage and vent piping except outside leaders on completion of roughing-in. Close openings in piping system and fill with water to point of overflow, but not less than 10-foot head of water. From 15 minutes before inspection starts to completion of inspection, water level must not drop. Inspect joints for leaks.
 - 4. Finished Plumbing Test Procedure: After plumbing fixtures have been set and traps filled with water, test connections and prove they are gastight and watertight. Plug vent-stack openings on roof and building drains where they leave building. Introduce air into piping system equal to pressure of 1-inch wg. Use U-tube or manometer inserted in trap of water closet to measure this pressure. Air pressure must remain constant without introducing additional air throughout period of inspection. Inspect plumbing fixture connections for gas and water leaks.
 - 5. Repair leaks and defects with new materials and retest piping, or portion thereof, until satisfactory results are obtained.
 - 6. Prepare reports for tests and required corrective action.

3.9 CLEANING AND PROTECTION

- A. Clean interior of piping. Remove dirt and debris as work progresses.
- B. Protect drains during remainder of construction period to avoid clogging with dirt and debris and to prevent damage from traffic and construction work.
- C. Place plugs in ends of uncompleted piping at end of day and when work stops.
- D. Exposed PVC Piping: Protect plumbing vents exposed to sunlight with two coats of water-based latex paint.

3.10 PIPING SCHEDULE

- A. Flanges and unions may be used on aboveground pressure piping unless otherwise indicated.
- B. Aboveground, soil and waste piping NPS 4 and smaller shall be the following:
 - 1. Hubless, cast-iron soil pipe and fittings; hubless-piping couplings; and coupled joints.
 - 2. Solid-wall PVC pipe, PVC socket fittings, and solvent-cemented joints.
 - 3. Dissimilar Pipe-Material Couplings: Shielded, nonpressure transition couplings.

- C. Aboveground, soil and waste piping NPS 5 and larger shall be the following:
 - 1. Hubless, cast-iron soil pipe and fittings; hubless-piping couplings; and coupled joints.
 - 2. Solid-wall PVC pipe, PVC socket fittings, and solvent-cemented joints.
 - 3. Dissimilar Pipe-Material Couplings: Shielded, nonpressure transition couplings.

- D. Aboveground, vent piping NPS 4 and smaller shall be the following:
 - 1. Hubless, cast-iron soil pipe and fittings; hubless-piping couplings; and coupled joints.
 - 2. Solid-wall PVC pipe, PVC socket fittings, and solvent-cemented joints.
 - 3. Dissimilar Pipe-Material Couplings: Shielded, nonpressure transition couplings.

- E. Aboveground, vent piping NPS 5 and larger shall be the following:
 - 1. Hubless, cast-iron soil pipe and fittings; hubless-piping couplings; and coupled joints.
 - 2. Solid-wall PVC pipe, PVC socket fittings, and solvent-cemented joints.
 - 3. Dissimilar Pipe-Material Couplings: Shielded, nonpressure transition couplings.

- F. Underground, soil, waste, and vent piping NPS 4 and smaller shall be the following:
 - 1. Service class, cast-iron soil piping; gaskets; and gasketed joints.
 - 2. Solid wall PVC pipe, PVC socket fittings, and solvent-cemented joints.
 - 3. Dissimilar Pipe-Material Couplings: Shielded, nonpressure transition couplings.

- G. Underground, soil and waste piping NPS 5 and larger shall be the following:
 - 1. Service class, cast-iron soil piping; gaskets; and gasketed joints.
 - 2. Hubless, cast-iron soil pipe and fittings; hubless-piping couplings; coupled joints.
 - 3. Solid-wall PVC pipe; PVC socket fittings; and solvent-cemented joints.
 - 4. Dissimilar Pipe-Material Couplings: Shielded, nonpressure transition couplings.

END OF SECTION

SECTION 22 1319 - SANITARY WASTE PIPING SPECIALTIES

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
 - 1. Cleanouts.
 - 2. Floor drains.
 - 3. Air-admittance valves.
 - 4. Miscellaneous sanitary drainage piping specialties.

1.3 DEFINITIONS

- A. ABS: Acrylonitrile-butadiene-styrene plastic.
- B. FRP: Fiberglass-reinforced plastic.
- C. HDPE: High-density polyethylene plastic.
- D. PE: Polyethylene plastic.
- E. PP: Polypropylene plastic.
- F. PVC: Polyvinyl chloride plastic.

1.4 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product indicated. Include rated capacities, operating characteristics, and accessories.

1.5 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Field quality-control reports.

1.6 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

- A. Operation and Maintenance Data: For drainage piping specialties to include in emergency, operation, and maintenance manuals.

1.7 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Drainage piping specialties shall bear label, stamp, or other markings of specified testing agency.
- B. Comply with NSF 14, "Plastics Piping Components and Related Materials," for plastic sanitary piping specialty components.

1.8 COORDINATION

- A. Coordinate size and location of concrete bases. Cast anchor-bolt inserts into bases. Concrete, reinforcement, and formwork requirements are specified in Section 03 3000 "Cast-in-Place Concrete."
- B. Coordinate size and location of roof penetrations.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 CLEANOUTS

A. Exposed Metal Cleanouts:

1. ASME A112.36.2M, Cast-Iron Cleanouts:

- a. Basis-of-Design Product: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide product indicated on Drawings or comparable product by one of the following:

- 1) Josam Company.
- 2) MIFAB, Inc.
- 3) Smith, Jay R. Mfg. Co.
- 4) Tyler Pipe.
- 5) Watts Drainage Products.
- 6) Zurn Plumbing Products Group.

- 2. Standard: ASME A112.36.2M for cast iron for cleanout test tee.
- 3. Size: Same as connected drainage piping
- 4. Body Material: Hub-and-spigot, cast-iron soil pipe T-branch or hubless, cast-iron soil pipe test tee as required to match connected piping.
- 5. Closure: Countersunk or raised-head, brass or cast-iron plug.
- 6. Closure Plug Size: Same as or not more than one size smaller than cleanout size.

B. Metal Floor Cleanouts:

1. ASME A112.36.2M, Cast-Iron Cleanouts:

- a. Basis-of-Design Product: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide product indicated on Drawings or comparable product by one of the following:

- 1) Josam Company.
- 2) Smith, Jay R. Mfg. Co.

- 3) Tyler Pipe.
- 4) Watts Drainage Products.
- 5) Zurn Plumbing Products Group.

2. Standard: ASME A112.36.2M for adjustable housing cleanout.
3. Size: Same as connected branch.
4. Type: Adjustable housing.
5. Body or Ferrule: Cast iron.
6. Closure: Brass plug with straight threads and gasket.
7. Adjustable Housing Material: Cast iron.
8. Frame and Cover Material and Finish: Nickel-bronze, copper alloy.
9. Frame and Cover Shape: Round.
10. Top Loading Classification: Heavy Duty.
11. Riser: ASTM A 74, Service class, cast-iron drainage pipe fitting and riser to cleanout.
12. Standard: ASME A112.3.1.
13. Size: Same as connected branch.
14. Housing: Stainless steel.
15. Closure: Stainless steel with seal.
16. Riser: Stainless-steel drainage pipe fitting to cleanout.

C. Cast-Iron Wall Cleanouts:

1. Basis-of-Design Product: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide product indicated on Drawings or comparable product by one of the following:
 - a. Josam Company; Josam Div.
 - b. MIFAB, Inc.
 - c. Smith, Jay R. Mfg. Co.
 - d. Tyler Pipe; Wade Div.
 - e. Watts Drainage Products.
 - f. Zurn Plumbing Products Group; Specification Drainage Operation.
2. Standard: ASME A112.36.2M. Include wall access.
3. Size: Same as connected drainage piping.
4. Body: Hub-and-spigot, cast-iron soil pipe T-branch or hubless, cast-iron soil pipe test tee as required to match connected piping.
5. Closure: Countersunk, brass or cast-iron plug.
6. Closure Plug Size: Same as or not more than one size smaller than cleanout size.
7. Wall Access Coverplate: Round, flat, stainless-steel cover plate with screw.
8. Wall Access: Square, nickel-bronze, copper-alloy, or stainless-steel wall-installation frame and cover.

2.2 FLOOR DRAINS

A. Cast-Iron Floor Drains:

1. Basis-of-Design Product: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide product indicated on Drawings or comparable product by one of the following:
 - a. Josam Company; Josam Div.
 - b. MIFAB, Inc.
 - c. Smith, Jay R. Mfg. Co.
 - d. Tyler Pipe; Wade Div.
 - e. Watts Drainage Products.

- f. Zurn Plumbing Products Group; Specification Drainage Operation.
 2. Standard: ASME A112.6.3.
 3. Pattern: Floor drain.
 4. Body Material: Gray iron.
 5. Top of Body and Strainer Finish: Polished bronze.
 6. Funnel: Refer to Drawings.
 7. Trap Material: Cast iron.
 8. Trap Pattern: Deep-seal P-trap.
 9. Trap Features: Trap-seal primer valve drain connection.

2.3 AIR-ADMITTANCE VALVES

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
 - a. Ayrlett, LLC.
 - b. Durgo, Inc.
 - c. Oatey.
 - d. ProSet Systems Inc.
 - e. RectorSeal.
 - f. Studor, Inc.
2. Standard: ASSE 1051, Type A for single fixture or Type B for branch piping.
3. Housing: Plastic.
4. Operation: Mechanical sealing diaphragm.
5. Size: Same as connected fixture or branch vent piping.

B. Stack Air-Admittance Valves:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
 - a. Durgo, Inc.
 - b. Oatey.
 - c. Studor, Inc.
2. Standard: ASSE 1050 for vent stacks.
3. Housing: Plastic.
4. Operation: Mechanical sealing diaphragm.
5. Size: Same as connected stack vent or vent stack.

2.4 MISCELLANEOUS SANITARY DRAINAGE PIPING SPECIALTIES

A. Open Drains:

1. Description: Shop or field fabricate from ASTM A 74, Service class, hub-and-spigot, cast-iron, soil-pipe fittings. Include P-trap, hub-and-spigot riser section; and where required, increaser fitting joined with ASTM C 564, rubber gaskets.

2. Size: Same as connected waste piping.
- B. Deep-Seal Traps:
1. Description: Cast-iron or bronze casting, with inlet and outlet matching connected piping and cleanout trap-seal primer valve connection.
 2. Size: Same as connected waste piping.
 - a. NPS 2: 4-inch- minimum water seal.
 - b. NPS 2-1/2 and Larger: 5-inch- minimum water seal.
- C. Floor-Drain, Trap-Seal Primer Fittings:
1. Description: Cast iron, with threaded inlet and threaded or spigot outlet, and trap-seal primer valve connection.
 2. Size: Same as floor drain outlet with NPS 1/2 side inlet.
- D. Air-Gap Fittings:
1. Standard: ASME A112.1.2, for fitting designed to ensure fixed, positive air gap between installed inlet and outlet piping.
 2. Body: Bronze or cast iron.
 3. Inlet: Opening in top of body.
 4. Outlet: Larger than inlet.
 5. Size: Same as connected waste piping and with inlet large enough for associated indirect waste piping.
- E. Expansion Joints:
1. Standard: ASME A112.21.2M.
 2. Body: Cast iron with bronze sleeve, packing, and gland.
 3. End Connections: Matching connected piping.
 4. Size: Same as connected soil, waste, or vent piping.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 INSTALLATION

- A. Install cleanouts in aboveground piping and building drain piping according to the following, unless otherwise indicated:
1. Size same as drainage piping up to NPS 4. Use NPS 4 for larger drainage piping unless larger cleanout is indicated.
 2. Locate at each change in direction of piping greater than 45 degrees.
 3. Locate at minimum intervals of 50 feet for piping NPS 4 and smaller and 100 feet for larger piping.
 4. Locate at base of each vertical soil and waste stack.
- B. For floor cleanouts for piping below floors, install cleanout deck plates with top flush with finished floor.

- C. For cleanouts located in concealed piping, install cleanout wall access covers, of types indicated, with frame and cover flush with finished wall.
- D. Install floor drains at low points of surface areas to be drained. Set grates of drains flush with finished floor, unless otherwise indicated.
 - 1. Position floor drains for easy access and maintenance.
 - 2. Set floor drains below elevation of surrounding finished floor to allow floor drainage. Set with grates depressed according to the following drainage area radii:
 - a. Radius, 30 Inches or Less: Equivalent to 1 percent slope, but not less than 1/4-inch total depression.
 - b. Radius, 30 to 60 Inches: Equivalent to 1 percent slope.
 - c. Radius, 60 Inches or Larger: Equivalent to 1 percent slope, but not greater than 1-inch total depression.
 - 3. Install floor-drain flashing collar or flange so no leakage occurs between drain and adjoining flooring. Maintain integrity of waterproof membranes where penetrated.
 - 4. Install individual traps for floor drains connected to sanitary building drain, unless otherwise indicated.
- E. Install fixture air-admittance valves on fixture drain piping.
- F. Install stack air-admittance valves at top of stack vent and vent stack piping.
- G. Install flashing fittings on sanitary stack vents and vent stacks that extend through roof.
- H. Assemble open drain fittings and install with top of hub 2 inches above floor.
- I. Install deep-seal traps on floor drains and other waste outlets, if indicated.
- J. Install floor-drain, trap-seal primer fittings on inlet to floor drains that require trap-seal primer connection.
 - 1. Exception: Fitting may be omitted if trap has trap-seal primer connection.
 - 2. Size: Same as floor drain inlet.
- K. Install air-gap fittings on draining-type backflow preventers and on indirect-waste piping discharge into sanitary drainage system.
- L. Install sleeve flashing device with each riser and stack passing through floors with waterproof membrane.
- M. Install vent caps on each vent pipe passing through roof.
- N. Install expansion joints on vertical stacks and conductors. Position expansion joints for easy access and maintenance.
- O. Install wood-blocking reinforcement for wall-mounting-type specialties.

- P. Install traps on plumbing specialty drain outlets. Omit traps on indirect wastes unless trap is indicated.

3.2 CONNECTIONS

- A. Comply with requirements in Section 22 1316 "Sanitary Waste and Vent Piping" for piping installation requirements. Drawings indicate general arrangement of piping, fittings, and specialties.
- B. Install piping adjacent to equipment to allow service and maintenance.

3.3 PROTECTION

- A. Protect drains during remainder of construction period to avoid clogging with dirt or debris and to prevent damage from traffic or construction work.
- B. Place plugs in ends of uncompleted piping at end of each day or when work stops.

END OF SECTION

SECTION 22 1323-SANITARY WASTE INTERCEPTORS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
 - 1. Grease interceptors.
 - 2. Solids interceptors.

1.3 DEFINITIONS

- A. FRP: Fiberglass-reinforced plastic.
- B. PP: Polypropylene plastic.

1.4 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of interceptor indicated. Include materials of fabrication, dimensions, rated capacities, retention capacities, operating characteristics, size and location of each pipe connection, furnished specialties, and accessories.
- B. Shop Drawings: For each type and size of precast-concrete interceptor indicated.
 - 1. Include materials of construction, dimensions, rated capacities, retention capacities, location and size of each pipe connection, furnished specialties, and accessories.

1.5 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Coordination Drawings: Interceptors, drawn to scale, on which the following items are shown and coordinated with each other, based on input from Installers of the items involved:
 - 1. Interceptors.
 - 2. Piping connections. Include size, location, and elevation of each.
 - 3. Interface with underground structures and utility services.

2.1 GREASE INTERCEPTORS

- A. Grease Interceptors: Precast concrete complying with ASTM C 913.
1. Include rubber-gasketed joints, manholes, compartments or baffles, and piping or openings to retain grease and to permit wastewater flow.
 2. Structural Design Loads:
 - a. Heavy-Traffic Load: Comply with ASTM C 890, A-16 (ASSHTO HS20-44).
 3. Steps: Individual FRP steps, FRP ladder, or ASTM A 615/A 615M, deformed, 1/2-inch steel reinforcing rods encased in ASTM D 4101, PP, wide enough to allow worker to place both feet on one step and designed to prevent lateral slippage off step. Cast or anchor steps into sidewalls at 12- to 16-inch intervals. Omit steps if total depth from floor of interceptor to finished grade is less than 60 inches
 4. Grade Rings: Reinforced-concrete rings, 6- to 9-inch total thickness, to match diameter of manhole frame and cover.
 5. Manhole Frames and Covers: Ferrous; 24-inch ID by 7- to 9-inch riser with 4-inch minimum width flange and 26-inch diameter cover.
 - a. Ductile Iron: ASTM A 536, Grade 60-40-18, unless otherwise indicated.
 - b. Gray Iron: ASTM A 48, Class 35, unless otherwise indicated.
 - c. Include indented top design with lettering cast into cover, using wording equivalent to "GREASE INTERCEPTOR."

2.2 SOLIDS INTERCEPTORS

- A. Solids Interceptors: Precast concrete complying with ASTM C 913.
1. Include rubber-gasketed joints, manholes, compartments or baffles, and piping or openings to retain grease and to permit wastewater flow.
 2. Structural Design Loads:
 - a. Heavy-Traffic Load: Comply with ASTM C 890, A-16 (ASSHTO HS20-44).
 3. Steps: Individual FRP steps, FRP ladder, or ASTM A 615/A 615M, deformed, 1/2-inch steel reinforcing rods encased in ASTM D 4101, PP, wide enough to allow worker to place both feet on one step and designed to prevent lateral slippage off step. Cast or anchor steps into sidewalls at 12- to 16-inch intervals. Omit steps if total depth from floor of interceptor to finished grade is less than 60 inches
 4. Grade Rings: Reinforced-concrete rings, 6- to 9-inch total thickness, to match diameter of manhole frame and cover.
 5. Manhole Frames and Covers: Ferrous; 24-inch ID by 7- to 9-inch riser with 4-inch minimum width flange and 26-inch diameter cover.
 - a. Ductile Iron: ASTM A 536, Grade 60-40-18, unless otherwise indicated.
 - b. Gray Iron: ASTM A 48, Class 35, unless otherwise indicated.
 - c. Include indented top design with lettering cast into cover, using wording equivalent to "GREASE INTERCEPTOR."

2.3 PRECAST-CONCRETE MANHOLE RISERS

- A. Precast-Concrete Manhole Risers: ASTM C 913, with rubber-gasket joints.

1. Structural Design Loads:

- a. Heavy-Traffic Load: Comply with ASTM C 890, A-16 (ASHTO HS20-44).
 2. Length: From top of underground concrete structure to grade.
 3. Riser Sections: 3-inch minimum thickness and 36-inch diameter.
 4. Top Section: Eccentric cone, unless otherwise indicated. Include top of cone to match grade ring size.
 5. Gaskets: ASTM C 443 rubber.
 6. Steps: Individual FRP steps, FRP ladder, or ASTM A 615/A 615M, deformed, 1/2-inch steel reinforcing rods encased in ASTM D 4101, PP, wide enough to allow worker to place both feet on one step and designed to prevent lateral slippage off step. Cast or anchor steps into sidewalls at 12- to 16-inch intervals.
- B. Grade Rings: Reinforced-concrete rings, 6- to 9-inch total thickness, diameter matching manhole frame and cover, and height as required to adjust the manhole frame and cover to indicated elevation and slope.
- C. Manhole Frames and Covers: Ferrous; 24-inch ID by 7- to 9-inch riser with 4-inch minimum width flange and 26-inch diameter cover.
1. Ductile Iron: ASTM A 536, Grade 60-40-18, unless otherwise indicated.
 2. Gray Iron: ASTM A 48, Class 35, unless otherwise indicated.
 3. Include indented top design with lettering cast into cover, using wording equivalent to the following:
 - a. Grease Interceptors in Sanitary Sewerage System: "GREASE INTERCEPTOR."
 - b. Solids Interceptors in Sanitary Sewerage System: "SOLIDS INTERCEPTOR."

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EARTHWORK

- A. Excavating, trenching, and backfilling are specified in Section 31 2000 "Earth Moving."

3.2 INSTALLATION

- A. Install precast-concrete interceptors according to ASTM C 891. Set level and plumb.
- B. Install manhole risers from top of underground concrete interceptors to manholes and gratings at finished grade.
- C. Set tops of manhole frames and covers flush with finished surface in pavements. Set tops 3 inches above finish surface elsewhere, unless otherwise indicated.
- D. Set tops of grating frames and grates flush with finished surface.
- E. Set interceptors level and plumb.

3.3 CONNECTIONS

- A. Piping installation requirements are specified in Section 22 1316 "Sanitary Waste and Vent Piping." Drawings indicate general arrangement of piping, fittings, and specialties.

- B. Make piping connections between interceptors and piping systems.

3.4 IDENTIFICATION

- A. Identification materials and installation are specified in Section 31 2000 "Earth Moving." Arrange for installation of green warning tapes directly over piping and at outside edges of underground interceptors.
 - 1. Use warning tapes or detectable warning tape over ferrous piping.
 - 2. Use detectable warning tape over nonferrous piping and over edges of underground structures.

END OF SECTION

SECTION 22 3300 - ELECTRIC, DOMESTIC-WATER HEATERS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:

1. Commercial, electric, domestic-water booster heaters.
2. Thermostat-control, electric, tankless, domestic-water heaters.
3. Domestic-water heater accessories.

1.2 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

A. Seismic Performance: Commercial domestic-water heaters shall withstand the effects of earthquake motions determined according to [ASCE/SEI 7] <Insert requirement>.

1. The term "withstand" means "the unit will remain in place without separation of any parts from the device when subjected to the seismic forces specified[**and the unit will be fully operational after the seismic event**]."

1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For each type and size of domestic-water heater indicated.

B. LEED Submittals:

1. Product Data for Prerequisite EA 2: Documentation indicating that units comply with applicable requirements in ASHRAE/IESNA 90.1, Section 7, "Service Water Heating."

C. Shop Drawings:

1. Wiring Diagrams: For power, signal, and control wiring.

1.4 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

A. Seismic Qualification Certificates: For commercial domestic-water heaters, accessories, and components, from manufacturer.

B. Domestic-Water Heater Labeling: Certified and labeled by testing agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction.

C. Source quality-control reports.

D. Field quality-control reports.

- E. Warranty: Sample of special warranty.

1.5 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

- A. Operation and maintenance data.

1.6 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.
- B. ASHRAE/IESNA Compliance: Applicable requirements in ASHRAE/IESNA 90.1.
- C. ASME Compliance: Where ASME-code construction is indicated, fabricate and label commercial, domestic-water heater storage tanks to comply with ASME Boiler and Pressure Vessel Code: Section VIII, Division 1.
- D. NSF Compliance: Fabricate and label equipment components that will be in contact with potable water to comply with NSF 61, "Drinking Water System Components - Health Effects."

1.7 WARRANTY

- A. Special Warranty: Manufacturer's standard form in which manufacturer agrees to repair or replace components of electric, domestic-water heaters that fail in materials or workmanship within specified warranty period.

- 1. Warranty Periods: From date of Substantial Completion.

- a. Commercial, Electric, Domestic-Water Booster Heaters:

- 1) Controls and Other Components: **Three** years.

- b. Commercial, Electric, Storage, Domestic-Water Heaters:

- 1) Storage Tank: **Three** years.
- 2) Controls and Other Components: **Three** years.

- c. Commercial, Light-Duty, Storage, Electric, Domestic-Water Heaters:

- 1) Storage Tank: **Three** years.
- 2) Controls and Other Components: **Three** years.

- d. Residential, Electric, Storage, Domestic-Water Heaters:

- 1) Storage Tank: **Five** years.
- 2) Controls and Other Components: **Two** years.

- e. Electric, Tankless, Domestic-Water Heaters: **One** year.

- f. Compression Tanks: **Five** years.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 COMMERCIAL, ELECTRIC, domestic-WATER HEATERS

A. Commercial, Electric, Domestic-Water Booster Heaters:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, **[provide products by one of the following] [available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following]:**
2. Basis-of-Design Product: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide **product indicated on Drawings** or comparable product by one of the following:
 - a. Bradford White Corporation.
 - b. Coates Heater Company, Inc.
 - c. Electric Heater Company (The).
 - d. Hatco Corporation.
 - e. HESco Industries, Inc.
 - f. Lochinvar Corporation.
 - g. Rheem Manufacturing Company.
 - h. Smith, A. O. Water Products Co.; a division of A. O. Smith Corporation.
3. Standard: UL 1453.
4. Tank Construction: **[Corrosion-resistant metal] [or] [steel]**.
 - a. Tappings: ASME B1.20.1 pipe thread.
 - b. Pressure Rating: **150 psig (1035 kPa)**.
 - c. Interior Finish: Comply with NSF 61 barrier materials for potable-water tank linings, including extending lining material into tappings.
5. Factory-Installed Tank Appurtenances:
 - a. Anode Rod: Replaceable magnesium.
 - b. Drain Valve: Corrosion-resistant metal complying with ASSE 1005.
 - c. Insulation: Comply with ASHRAE/IESNA 90.1.
 - d. Jacket: Rectangular shaped, with stainless-steel front panel, unless otherwise indicated.
 - e. Heating Elements: Electric, screw-in or bolt-on immersion type arranged in multiples of three.
 - 1) Option: Booster heaters with total of 9 kW or less may have two or three elements.
 - f. Temperature Control: Adjustable thermostat, to setting of at least **180 deg F (82 deg C)**.
 - g. Safety Controls: High-temperature-limit and low-water cutoff devices or systems.
 - h. Relief Valve: ASME rated and stamped for combination temperature-and-pressure relief valve. Include relieving capacity at least as great as heat input, and include pressure setting less than domestic-water heater

working-pressure rating. Select relief valve with sensing element that extends into storage tank.

- i. Gages: Combination temperature-and-pressure type or separate thermometer and pressure gage.
6. Special Requirements: NSF 5 construction with **[brackets for undercounter]** installation.

2.2 ELECTRIC, TANKLESS, domestic-WATER HEATERS

A. Thermostat-Control, Electric, Tankless, Domestic-Water Heaters:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, **[provide products by one of the following]** :
2. Basis-of-Design Product: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide **[product indicated on Drawings]** or comparable product by one of the following:
 - a. [Bosch Water Heating](#).
 - b. [Chronomite Laboratories, Inc.](#)
 - c. [E-Tankless Water Heaters Corp.](#)
 - d. [Keltech, Inc.](#)
 - e. [Niagara Industries, Inc.](#)
3. Standard: UL 499 for electric, tankless, (domestic-water heater) heating appliance.
4. Construction: Copper piping or tubing complying with NSF 61 barrier materials for potable water, without storage capacity.
 - a. Connections: ASME B1.20.1 pipe thread.
 - b. Pressure Rating: **[150 psig (1035 kPa)] <150>**.
 - c. Heating Element: Resistance heating system.
 - d. Temperature Control: Thermostat.
 - e. Safety Control: High-temperature-limit cutoff device or system.
 - f. Jacket: Aluminum or steel with enameled finish or plastic.
5. Support: Bracket for wall mounting.

2.3 domestic-WATER HEATER ACCESSORIES

A. Domestic-Water Compression Tanks:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, **[provide products by one of the following]** :
2. Basis-of-Design Product: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide **[product indicated on Drawings]** or comparable product by one of the following:
 - a. [AMTROL Inc.](#)
 - b. [Flexcon Industries](#).
 - c. [Honeywell International Inc.](#)
 - d. [Pentair Pump Group \(The\); Myers](#).
 - e. [Smith, A. O. Water Products Co.; a division of A. O. Smith Corporation](#).

- f. [State Industries.](#)
 - g. [Taco, Inc.](#)
- 3. Description: Steel pressure-rated tank constructed with welded joints and factory-installed butyl-rubber diaphragm. Include air precharge to minimum system-operating pressure at tank.
 - 4. Construction:
 - a. Tappings: Factory-fabricated steel, welded to tank before testing and labeling. Include ASME B1.20.1 pipe thread.
 - b. Interior Finish: Comply with NSF 61 barrier materials for potable-water tank linings, including extending finish into and through tank fittings and outlets.
 - c. Air-Charging Valve: Factory installed.
 - B. Drain Pans: Corrosion-resistant metal with raised edge. Comply with ANSI/CSA LC 3. Include dimensions not less than base of domestic-water heater, and include drain outlet not less than **NPS 3/4 (DN 20)** with ASME B1.20.1 pipe threads or with ASME B1.20.7 garden-hose threads.
 - C. Piping-Type Heat Traps: Field-fabricated piping arrangement according to ASHRAE/IESNA 90.1 [**or ASHRAE 90.2**].
 - D. Heat-Trap Fittings: ASHRAE 90.2.
 - E. Pressure-Reducing Valves: ASSE 1003 for water. Set at **25-psig- (172.5-kPa-)** maximum outlet pressure unless otherwise indicated.
 - F. Combination Temperature-and-Pressure Relief Valves: ASME rated and stamped. Include relieving capacity at least as great as heat input, and include pressure setting less than domestic-water heater working-pressure rating. Select relief valves with sensing element that extends into storage tank.
 - G. Pressure Relief Valves: ASME rated and stamped. Include pressure setting less than domestic-water heater working-pressure rating.
 - H. Vacuum Relief Valves: ANSI Z21.22/CSA 4.4.
 - I. Shock Absorbers: ASSE 1010 or PDI-WH 201, Size A water hammer arrester.
 - J. Domestic-Water Heater Stands: Manufacturer's factory-fabricated steel stand for floor mounting, capable of supporting domestic-water heater and water. Include dimension that will support bottom of domestic-water heater a minimum of **18 inches (457 mm)** above the floor.
 - K. Domestic-Water Heater Mounting Brackets: Manufacturer's factory-fabricated steel bracket for wall mounting, capable of supporting domestic-water heater and water.
- 2.4 SOURCE QUALITY CONTROL
- A. Factory Tests: Test and inspect domestic-water heaters specified to be ASME-code construction, according to ASME Boiler and Pressure Vessel Code.

- B. Hydrostatically test[**commercial**] domestic-water heaters to minimum of one and one-half times pressure rating before shipment.
- C. Electric, domestic-water heaters will be considered defective if they do not pass tests and inspections. Comply with requirements in Section 01 4000 "Quality Requirements" for retesting and reinspecting requirements and Section 01 7300 "Execution" for requirements for correcting the Work.
- D. Prepare test and inspection reports.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 DOMESTIC-WATER HEATER INSTALLATION

- A. Commercial, Electric, Domestic-Water Heater Mounting: Install commercial, electric, domestic-water heaters on concrete base. Comply with requirements for concrete bases specified in [**Section 03 3000 "Cast-in-Place Concrete."**] [**Section 03 3053 "Miscellaneous Cast-in-Place Concrete."**]
 - 1. Exception: Omit concrete bases for commercial, electric, domestic-water heaters if installation on stand, bracket, suspended platform, or directly on floor is indicated.
 - 2. Maintain manufacturer's recommended clearances.
 - 3. Arrange units so controls and devices that require servicing are accessible.
 - 4. Install dowel rods to connect concrete base to concrete floor. Unless otherwise indicated, install dowel rods on **18-inch (450-mm)** centers around the full perimeter of concrete base.
 - 5. For supported equipment, install epoxy-coated anchor bolts that extend through concrete base and anchor into structural concrete floor.
 - 6. Place and secure anchorage devices. Use setting drawings, templates, diagrams, instructions, and directions furnished with items to be embedded.
 - 7. Install anchor bolts to elevations required for proper attachment to supported equipment.
 - 8. Anchor domestic-water heaters to substrate.
- B. Residential, Electric, Domestic-Water Heater Mounting: Install residential, electric, domestic-water heaters [**on domestic-water heater mounting bracket**].
 - 1. Maintain manufacturer's recommended clearances.
 - 2. Arrange units so controls and devices that require servicing are accessible.
 - 3. Place and secure anchorage devices. Use setting drawings, templates, diagrams, instructions, and directions furnished with items to be embedded.
 - 4. Install anchor bolts to elevations required for proper attachment to supported equipment.
 - 5. Anchor domestic-water heaters to substrate.
- C. Electric, Tankless, Domestic-Water Heater Mounting: Install electric, tankless, domestic-water heaters[**at least 18 inches (457 mm) above floor**] on wall bracket.
 - 1. Maintain manufacturer's recommended clearances.
 - 2. Arrange units so controls and devices that require servicing are accessible.

3. Place and secure anchorage devices. Use setting drawings, templates, diagrams, instructions, and directions furnished with items to be embedded.
 4. Install anchor bolts to elevations required for proper attachment to supported equipment.
 5. Anchor domestic-water heaters to substrate.
- D. Install electric, domestic-water heaters level and plumb, according to layout drawings, original design, and referenced standards. Maintain manufacturer's recommended clearances. Arrange units so controls and devices needing service are accessible.
1. Install shutoff valves on domestic-water-supply piping to domestic-water heaters and on domestic-hot-water outlet piping. Comply with requirements for shutoff valves specified in Section 22 0523 "General-Duty Valves for Plumbing Piping."
- E. Install commercial, electric, domestic-water heaters with seismic-restraint devices. Comply with requirements for seismic-restraint devices specified in Section 22 0548 "Vibration and Seismic Controls for Plumbing Piping and Equipment."
- F. Install combination temperature-and-pressure relief valves in top portion of storage tanks. Use relief valves with sensing elements that extend into tanks. Extend commercial-water-heater relief-valve outlet, with drain piping same as domestic-water piping in continuous downward pitch, and discharge by positive air gap onto closest floor drain.
- G. Install [**combination temperature-and-**]pressure relief valves in water piping for electric, domestic-water heaters without storage. Extend commercial-water-heater relief-valve outlet, with drain piping same as domestic-water piping in continuous downward pitch, and discharge by positive air gap onto closest floor drain.
- H. Install water-heater drain piping as indirect waste to spill by positive air gap into open drains or over floor drains. Install hose-end drain valves at low points in water piping for electric, domestic-water heaters that do not have tank drains. Comply with requirements for hose-end drain valves specified in Section 22 1119 "Domestic Water Piping Specialties."
- I. Install thermometers on outlet piping of electric, domestic-water heaters. Comply with requirements for thermometers specified in Section 22 0519 "Meters and Gages for Plumbing Piping."
- J. Install pressure-reducing valve with integral bypass relief valve in electric, domestic-water booster-heater inlet piping and water hammer arrester in booster-heater outlet piping. Set pressure-reducing valve for outlet pressure of **[25 psig (172 kPa)]** <Insert value>. Comply with requirements for pressure-reducing valves and water hammer arresters specified in Section 22 1119 "Domestic Water Piping Specialties."
- K. Install piping-type heat traps on inlet and outlet piping of electric, domestic-water heater storage tanks without integral or fitting-type heat traps.
- L. Fill electric, domestic-water heaters with water.
- M. Charge domestic-water compression tanks with air.

3.2 CONNECTIONS

- A. Comply with requirements for piping specified in Section 22 1116 "Domestic Water Piping." Drawings indicate general arrangement of piping, fittings, and specialties.
- B. Where installing piping adjacent to electric, domestic-water heaters, allow space for service and maintenance of water heaters. Arrange piping for easy removal of domestic-water heaters.

3.3 IDENTIFICATION

- A. Identify system components. Comply with requirements for identification specified in Section 22 0553 "Identification for Plumbing Piping and Equipment."

3.4 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Perform tests and inspections.
 - 1. Manufacturer's Field Service: Engage a factory-authorized service representative to inspect components, assemblies, and equipment installations, including connections, and to assist in testing.
 - 2. Leak Test: After installation, charge system and test for leaks. Repair leaks and retest until no leaks exist.
 - 3. Operational Test: After electrical circuitry has been energized, start units to confirm proper operation.
 - 4. Test and adjust controls and safeties. Replace damaged and malfunctioning controls and equipment.
- B. Electric, domestic-water heaters will be considered defective if they do not pass tests and inspections. Comply with requirements in Section 01 4000 "Quality Requirements" for retesting and reinspecting requirements and Section 01 7300 "Execution" for requirements for correcting the Work.
- C. Prepare test and inspection reports.

END OF SECTION

SECTION 22 4213.13 - COMMERCIAL WATER CLOSETS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
 - 1. Water closets.
 - 2. Flushometer valves.
 - 3. Toilet seats.

1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product.
 - 1. Include construction details, material descriptions, dimensions of individual components and profiles, and finishes for water closets.
 - 2. Include rated capacities, operating characteristics, electrical characteristics, and furnished specialties and accessories.
- B. Shop Drawings: Include diagrams for power, signal, and control wiring.

1.4 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

- A. Operation and Maintenance Data: For flushometer valves and electronic sensors to include in operation and maintenance manuals.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 FLOOR-MOUNTED, BOTTOM-OUTLET WATER CLOSETS

- A. Water Closets: Floor mounted, bottom outlet, top spud.
 - 1. Basis-of-Design Product: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide product indicated on Drawings.
 - 2. Bowl:
 - a. Standards: ASME A112.19.2/CSA B45.1 and ASME A112.19.5.
 - b. Material: Vitreous china.

- c. Type: Siphon jet.
 - d. Style: Flushometer valve.
 - e. Rim Contour: Elongated.
 - f. Water Consumption: 1.28 gal. per flush.
 - g. Spud Size and Location: NPS 1-1/2; top.
 - h. Color: White.
3. Bowl-to-Drain Connecting Fitting: ASTM A 1045 or ASME A112.4.3.

2.2 WALL-MOUNTED WATER CLOSETS

- A. Water Closets: Wall mounted, top spud, accessible.
 1. Basis-of-Design Product: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide product indicated on Drawings.
 2. Bowl:
 - a. Standards: ASME A112.19.2/CSA B45.1 and ASME A112.19.5.
 - b. Material: Vitreous china.
 - c. Type: Siphon jet.
 - d. Style: Flushometer valve.
 - e. Height: Standard.
 - f. Rim Contour: Elongated.
 - g. Water Consumption: 1.28 gal. per flush.
 - h. Spud Size and Location: NPS 1-1/2; top.
 3. Support:
 - a. Standard: ASME A112.6.1M.
 - b. Description: Waste-fitting assembly as required to match drainage piping material and arrangement with faceplates, couplings gaskets, and feet; bolts and hardware matching fixture. Include additional extension coupling, faceplate, and feet for installation in wide pipe space.

2.3 FLUSHOMETER VALVES

- A. Lever-Handle, Diaphragm Flushometer Valves:
 1. Basis-of-Design Product: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide product indicated on Drawings or comparable product by one of the following:
 - a. Sloan Valve Company.
 - b. Zurn Industries, LLC; Commercial Brass and Fixtures.
 - c. Kohler Co.
 2. Standard: ASSE 1037.
 3. Minimum Pressure Rating: 125 psig.
 4. Features: Include integral check stop and backflow-prevention device.
 5. Material: Brass body with corrosion-resistant components.
 6. Exposed Flushometer-Valve Finish: Chrome plated.
 7. Panel Finish: Chrome plated or stainless steel.
 8. Style: Exposed.
 9. Consumption: 1.28 gal. per flush.
 10. Minimum Inlet: NPS 1.

11. Minimum Outlet: NPS 1-1/4.
- B. Lever-Handle, Piston Flushometer Valves:
1. Basis-of-Design Product: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide product indicated on Drawings or comparable product by one of the following:
 - a. Sloan Valve Company.
 - b. TOTO USA, INC.
 - c. Kohler Co.
 - d. Zurn Industries, LLC; Commercial Brass and Fixtures..
 2. Standard: ASSE 1037.
 3. Minimum Pressure Rating: 125 psig.
 4. Features: Include integral check stop and backflow-prevention device.
 5. Material: Brass body with corrosion-resistant components.
 6. Exposed Flushometer-Valve Finish: Chrome plated.
 7. Panel Finish: Chrome plated or stainless steel.
 8. Style: Exposed.
 9. Consumption: 1.28 gal. per flush.
 10. Minimum Inlet: NPS 1.
 11. Minimum Outlet: NPS 1-1/4.
- C. Hard-Wired, Solenoid-Actuator, Flushometer Valves:
1. Basis-of-Design Product: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide product indicated on Drawings or comparable product by one of the following:
 - a. Sloan Valve Company.
 - b. TOTO USA, INC.
 - c. Kohler Co.
 - d. Zurn Industries, LLC; Commercial Brass and Fixtures..
 2. Standard: ASSE 1037.
 3. Minimum Pressure Rating: 125 psig.
 4. Features: Include integral check stop and backflow-prevention device.
 5. Material: Brass body with corrosion-resistant components.
 6. Exposed Flushometer-Valve Finish: Chrome plated.
 7. Panel Finish: Chrome plated or stainless steel.
 8. Style: Exposed.
 9. Actuator: Solenoid complying with UL 1951, and listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.
 10. Trip Mechanism: Hard-wired electronic sensor complying with UL 1951, and listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.
 11. Consumption: 1.28 gal. per flush.
 12. Minimum Inlet: NPS 1.
 13. Minimum Outlet: NPS 1-1/4.
- D. Battery-Powered, Solenoid-Actuator, Flushometer Valves:
1. Basis-of-Design Product: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide product indicated on Drawings or comparable product by one of the following:
 - a. Kohler Co.
 - b. Sloan Valve Company.
 - c. TOTO USA, INC.

- d. Zurn Industries, LLC; Commercial Brass and Fixtures.
 2. Standard: ASSE 1037.
 3. Minimum Pressure Rating: 125 psig.
 4. Features: Include integral check stop and backflow-prevention device.
 5. Material: Brass body with corrosion-resistant components.
 6. Exposed Flushometer-Valve Finish: Chrome plated.
 7. Panel Finish: Chrome plated or stainless steel.
 8. Style: Exposed.
 9. Actuator: Solenoid complying with UL 1951, and listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.
 10. Trip Mechanism: Battery-powered electronic sensor complying with UL 1951, and listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.
 11. Consumption: 1.28 gal. per flush.
 12. Minimum Inlet: NPS 1.
 13. Minimum Outlet: NPS 1-1/4.

2.4 TOILET SEATS

A. Toilet Seats:

1. Basis-of-Design Product: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide product indicated on Drawings or comparable product by one of the following:
 - a. American Standard America.
 - b. Bemis Manufacturing Company.
 - c. Centoco Manufacturing Corporation.
 - d. Jones Stephens Corp.; Comfort Seat Brand.
 - e. Kohler Co.
 - f. Olsonite Seat Co.
 - g. TOTO USA, INC.
 - h. Zurn Industries, LLC; Commercial Brass and Fixtures.
2. Standard: IAPMO/ANSI Z124.5.
3. Material: Plastic.
4. Type: Commercial (Standard).
5. Shape: Elongated rim, open front.
6. Hinge: Self-sustaining, check.
7. Hinge Material: Noncorroding metal.
8. Seat Cover: Not required.
9. Color: White.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine roughing-in of water supply and sanitary drainage and vent piping systems to verify actual locations of piping connections before water-closet installation.

- B. Examine walls and floors for suitable conditions where water closets will be installed.
- C. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.2 INSTALLATION

A. Water-Closet Installation:

1. Install level and plumb according to roughing-in drawings.
2. Install floor-mounted water closets on bowl-to-drain connecting fitting attachments to piping or building substrate.
3. Install accessible, wall-mounted water closets at mounting height for handicapped/elderly, according to ICC/ANSI A117.1.

B. Support Installation:

1. Install supports, affixed to building substrate, for floor-mounted, back-outlet water closets.
2. Use carrier supports with waste-fitting assembly and seal.
3. Install floor-mounted, back-outlet water closets attached to building floor substrate, onto waste-fitting seals; and attach to support.
4. Install wall-mounted, back-outlet water-closet supports with waste-fitting assembly and waste-fitting seals; and affix to building substrate.

C. Flushometer-Valve Installation:

1. Install flushometer-valve, water-supply fitting on each supply to each water closet.
2. Attach supply piping to supports or substrate within pipe spaces behind fixtures.
3. Install lever-handle flushometer valves for accessible water closets with handle mounted on open side of water closet.
4. Install actuators in locations that are easy for people with disabilities to reach.
5. Install fresh batteries in battery-powered, electronic-sensor mechanisms.

D. Install toilet seats on water closets.

E. Wall Flange and Escutcheon Installation:

1. Install wall flanges or escutcheons at piping wall penetrations in exposed, finished locations and within cabinets and millwork.
2. Install deep-pattern escutcheons if required to conceal protruding fittings.
3. Comply with escutcheon requirements specified in Section 22 0518 "Escutcheons for Plumbing Piping."

F. Joint Sealing:

1. Seal joints between water closets and walls and floors using sanitary-type, one-part, mildew-resistant silicone sealant.
2. Match sealant color to water-closet color.
3. Comply with sealant requirements specified in Section 07 9200 "Joint Sealants."

3.3 CONNECTIONS

- A. Connect water closets with water supplies and soil, waste, and vent piping. Use size fittings required to match water closets.
- B. Comply with water piping requirements specified in Section 22 1116 "Domestic Water Piping."
- C. Comply with soil and waste piping requirements specified in Section 22 1316 "Sanitary Waste and Vent Piping."
- D. Where installing piping adjacent to water closets, allow space for service and maintenance.

3.4 ADJUSTING

- A. Operate and adjust water closets and controls. Replace damaged and malfunctioning water closets, fittings, and controls.
- B. Adjust water pressure at flushometer valves to produce proper flow.
- C. Install fresh batteries in battery-powered, electronic-sensor mechanisms.

3.5 CLEANING AND PROTECTION

- A. Clean water closets and fittings with manufacturers' recommended cleaning methods and materials.
- B. Install protective covering for installed water closets and fittings.
- C. Do not allow use of water closets for temporary facilities unless approved in writing by Owner.

END OF SECTION

SECTION 22 4216.13 - COMMERCIAL LAVATORIES

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
 - 1. Lavatories.
 - 2. Faucets.

1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product.
 - 1. Include construction details, material descriptions, dimensions of individual components and profiles, and finishes for lavatories.
 - 2. Include rated capacities, operating characteristics, electrical characteristics, and furnished specialties and accessories.
- B. Shop Drawings: Include diagrams for power, signal, and control wiring of automatic faucets.

1.4 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Coordination Drawings: Counter cutout templates for mounting of counter-mounted lavatories.

1.5 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

- A. Operation and Maintenance Data: For lavatories and faucets to include in operation and maintenance manuals.
 - 1. In addition to items specified in Section 01 7823 "Operation and Maintenance Data," include the following:
 - a. Servicing and adjustments of automatic faucets.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 VITREOUS-CHINA, COUNTER-MOUNTED LAVATORIES

- A. Lavatory: Self-rimming, vitreous china, counter mounted.
 - 1. Basis-of-Design Product: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide product indicated on Drawings.
 - 2. Fixture:
 - a. Standard: ASME A112.19.2/CSA B45.1.
 - b. Type: Self-rimming for above-counter mounting.
 - c. Faucet-Hole Location: Top.
 - d. Color: White.
 - e. Mounting Material: Sealant.
- B. Lavatory: Vitreous china, undercounter mounted.
 - 1. Basis-of-Design Product: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide product indicated on Drawings.
 - 2. Fixture:
 - a. Standard: ASME A112.19.2/CSA B45.1.
 - b. Type: For undercounter mounting.
 - c. Faucet-Hole Punching: No holes.
 - d. Faucet-Hole Location: On countertop.
 - e. Color: White.
 - f. Mounting Material: Sealant and undercounter mounting kit.

2.2 VITREOUS-CHINA, WALL-MOUNTED LAVATORIES

- A. Lavatory: Ledge back, vitreous china, wall mounted.
 - 1. Basis-of-Design Product: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide product indicated on Drawings.
 - 2. Fixture:
 - a. Standard: ASME A112.19.2/CSA B45.1.
 - b. Type: For wall hanging.
 - c. Faucet-Hole Location: Top.
 - d. Color: White.
 - e. Mounting Material: Chair carrier.
 - 3. Support: ASME A112.6.1M, Type II, concealed-arm lavatory carrier with escutcheons. Include rectangular, steel uprights.
- B. Lavatory: Wheelchair, vitreous china, wall mounted.
 - 1. Basis-of-Design Product: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide product indicated on Drawings.
 - 2. Fixture:

- a. Standard: ASME A112.19.2/CSA B45.1.
 - b. Type: Slab or wheelchair.
 - c. Nominal Size: Rectangular, 27 by 20 inches.
 - d. Faucet-Hole Location: Top.
 - e. Color: White.
 - f. Mounting: For concealed-arm carrier.
3. Support: ASME A112.6.1M, Type II, concealed-arm lavatory carrier with rectangular, steel uprights.

2.3 SOLID-BRASS, MANUALLY OPERATED FAUCETS

- A. NSF Standard: Comply with NSF/ANSI 61, "Drinking Water System Components - Health Effects," for faucet materials that will be in contact with potable water.
- B. Lavatory Faucets: Manual-type,, commercial, solid-brass valve.
 1. Basis-of-Design Product: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide product indicated on Drawings or comparable product by one of the following:
 - a. American Standard America.
 - b. Bradley Corporation.
 - c. Chicago Faucets.
 - d. Delta Faucet Company.
 - e. Elkay Manufacturing Co.
 - f. Grohe America, Inc.
 - g. Just Manufacturing.
 - h. Kohler Co.
 - i. Moen Incorporated.
 - j. Speakman Company.
 - k. T & S Brass and Bronze Works, Inc.
 - l. Zurn Industries, LLC; Commercial Brass and Fixtures.
 - m. Sloan.
 2. Standard: ASME A112.18.1/CSA B125.1.
 3. General: Include hot- and cold-water indicators; coordinate faucet inlets with supplies and fixture hole punchings; coordinate outlet with spout and fixture receptor.
 4. Body Material: Commercial, solid brass.
 5. Finish: Polished chrome plate.
 6. Maximum Flow Rate: 0.5 gpm.
 7. Spout: Rigid, gooseneck type.
 8. Spout Outlet: Aerator.

2.4 SOLID-BRASS, AUTOMATICALLY OPERATED LAVATORY FAUCETS

- A. NSF Standard: Comply with NSF/ANSI 61, "Drinking Water System Components - Health Effects," for faucet materials that will be in contact with potable water.
- B. Lavatory Faucets: Automatic-type, battery-powered, electronic-sensor-operated, mixing, solid-brass valve.

1. Basis-of-Design Product: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide product indicated on Drawings or comparable product by one of the following:
 - a. American Standard America.
 - b. Bradley Corporation.
 - c. Chicago Faucets.
 - d. Grohe America, Inc.
 - e. Kohler Co.
 - f. Moen Incorporated.
 - g. Sloan Valve Company.
 - h. Speakman Company.
 - i. T & S Brass and Bronze Works, Inc.
 - j. TOTO USA, INC.
 - k. Zurn Industries, LLC; Commercial Brass and Fixtures.
2. Standards: ASME A112.18.1/CSA B125.1 and UL 1951.
3. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.
4. General: Include hot- and cold-water indicators; coordinate faucet inlets with supplies and fixture hole punchings; coordinate outlet with spout and fixture receptor.
5. Body Type: Single hole.
6. Body Material: Commercial, solid brass.
7. Finish: Polished chrome plate.
8. Maximum Flow Rate: 0.5 gpm.
9. Mounting Type: Deck, concealed.
10. Spout: Rigid type.
11. Spout Outlet: Aerator.

2.5 SUPPLY FITTINGS

- A. NSF Standard: Comply with NSF/ANSI 61, "Drinking Water System Components - Health Effects," for supply-fitting materials that will be in contact with potable water.
- B. Standard: ASME A112.18.1/CSA B125.1.
- C. Supply Piping: Chrome-plated-brass pipe or chrome-plated copper tube matching water-supply piping size. Include chrome-plated-brass or stainless-steel wall flange.
- D. Supply Stops: Chrome-plated-brass, one-quarter-turn, ball-type or compression valve with inlet connection matching supply piping.
- E. Operation: Loose key.
- F. Risers:
 1. NPS 1/2.
 2. Chrome-plated, rigid-copper-pipe and brass straight or offset tailpieces riser.

2.6 WASTE FITTINGS

- A. Standard: ASME A112.18.2/CSA B125.2.
- B. Drain: Grid type with NPS 1-1/4 offset and straight tailpiece.
- C. Trap:
 - 1. Size: NPS 1-1/2 by NPS 1-1/4.
 - 2. Material: Chrome-plated, two-piece, cast-brass trap and swivel elbow with 0.032-inch-thick brass tube to wall; and chrome-plated, brass or steel wall flange.
 - 3. Material: Stainless-steel, two-piece trap and swivel elbow with 0.012-inch-thick stainless-steel tube to wall; and stainless-steel wall flange.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine roughing-in of water supply and sanitary drainage and vent piping systems to verify actual locations of piping connections before lavatory installation.
- B. Examine counters and walls for suitable conditions where lavatories will be installed.
- C. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.2 INSTALLATION

- A. Install lavatories level and plumb according to roughing-in drawings.
- B. Install supports, affixed to building substrate, for wall-mounted lavatories.
- C. Install accessible wall-mounted lavatories at handicapped/elderly mounting height for people with disabilities or the elderly, according to ICC/ANSI A117.1.
- D. Install wall flanges or escutcheons at piping wall penetrations in exposed, finished locations. Use deep-pattern escutcheons if required to conceal protruding fittings. Comply with escutcheon requirements specified in Section 22 0518 "Escutcheons for Plumbing Piping."
- E. Seal joints between lavatories, counters, and walls using sanitary-type, one-part, mildew-resistant silicone sealant. Match sealant color to fixture color. Comply with sealant requirements specified in Section 07 9200 "Joint Sealants."
- F. Install protective shielding pipe covers and enclosures on exposed supplies and waste piping of accessible lavatories. Comply with requirements in Section 22 0719 "Plumbing Piping Insulation."

3.3 CONNECTIONS

- A. Connect fixtures with water supplies, stops, and risers, and with traps, soil, waste, and vent piping. Use size fittings required to match fixtures.
- B. Comply with water piping requirements specified in Section 22 1116 "Domestic Water Piping."
- C. Comply with soil and waste piping requirements specified in Section 22 1316 "Sanitary Waste and Vent Piping."

3.4 ADJUSTING

- A. Operate and adjust lavatories and controls. Replace damaged and malfunctioning lavatories, fittings, and controls.
- B. Adjust water pressure at faucets to produce proper flow.
- C. Install fresh batteries in battery-powered, electronic-sensor mechanisms.

3.5 CLEANING AND PROTECTION

- A. After completing installation of lavatories, inspect and repair damaged finishes.
- B. Clean lavatories, faucets, and other fittings with manufacturers' recommended cleaning methods and materials.
- C. Provide protective covering for installed lavatories and fittings.
- D. Do not allow use of lavatories for temporary facilities unless approved in writing by Owner.

END OF SECTION

SECTION 22 4216.16-COMMERCIAL SINKS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
 - 1. Sink faucets.
 - 2. Supply fittings.
 - 3. Waste fittings.

1.2 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product.

1.3 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Coordination Drawings: Counter cutout templates for mounting of counter-mounted lavatories.

1.4 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

- A. Maintenance data.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 SINK FAUCETS

- A. NSF Standard: Comply with NSF/ANSI 61, "Drinking Water System Components - Health Effects," for faucet-spout materials that will be in contact with potable water.
- B. Sink Faucets: Manual type, two-lever-handle mixing valve.
 - 1. Commercial, Solid-Brass Faucets:
 - a. Basis-of-Design Product: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide product indicated on Drawings or comparable product by one of the following:
 - 1) American Standard America.
 - 2) Bradley Corporation.
 - 3) Chicago Faucets.
 - 4) Eljer, Inc.
 - 5) Elkay Manufacturing Co.
 - 6) Just Manufacturing.
 - 7) Kohler Co.
 - 8) Moen Commercial.
 - 9) T & S Brass and Bronze Works, Inc.
 - 10) Zurn Plumbing Products Group.
 - 2. General-Duty, Solid-Brass Faucets:

- a. Basis-of-Design Product: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide product indicated on Drawings or comparable product by one of the following:
 - 1) American Standard America.
 - 2) Bradley Corporation.
 - 3) Chicago Faucets.
 - 4) Eljer, Inc.
 - 5) Elkay Manufacturing Co.
 - 6) Just Manufacturing.
 - 7) Kohler Co.
 - 8) Moen Commercial.
 - 9) T & S Brass and Bronze Works, Inc.
 - 10) Zurn Plumbing Products Group.
3. Copper- or Brass-Underbody Faucets:
 - a. Basis-of-Design Product: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide product indicated on Drawings or comparable product by one of the following:
 - 1) American Standard America.
 - 2) Bradley Corporation.
 - 3) Chicago Faucets.
 - 4) Eljer, Inc.
 - 5) Elkay Manufacturing Co.
 - 6) Just Manufacturing.
 - 7) Kohler Co.
 - 8) Moen Commercial.
 - 9) T & S Brass and Bronze Works, Inc.
 - 10) Zurn Plumbing Products Group.
 4. Standard: ASME A112.18.1/CSA B125.1.
 5. General: Include hot- and cold-water indicators; coordinate faucet inlets with supplies and fixture hole punchings; coordinate outlet with spout and sink receptor.

2.2 SUPPLY FITTINGS

- A. NSF Standard: Comply with NSF/ANSI 61, "Drinking Water System Components - Health Effects," for supply-fitting materials that will be in contact with potable water.
- B. Standard: ASME A112.18.1/CSA B125.1.
- C. Supply Piping: Chrome-plated brass pipe or chrome-plated copper tube matching water-supply piping size. Include chrome-plated brass or stainless-steel wall flange.
- D. Supply Stops: Chrome-plated brass, one-quarter-turn, ball-type or compression valve with inlet connection matching supply piping.
- E. Operation: Loose key.
- F. Risers:

1. NPS 1/2
2. ASME A112.18.6, braided or corrugated stainless-steel flexible hose.

2.3 WASTE FITTINGS

- A. Standard: ASME A112.18.2/CSA B125.2.
- B. Drain: Grid type with NPS 1-1/2 offset and straight tailpiece.
- C. Trap:
 1. Size: NPS 1-1/2.
 2. Material: Chrome-plated, two-piece, cast-brass trap and swivel elbow with 0.032-inch- thick brass tube to wall; and chrome-plated brass or steel wall flange.
 3. Material: Stainless-steel, two-piece trap and swivel elbow with 0.012-inch- thick stainless-steel tube to wall; and stainless-steel wall flange.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine roughing-in of water supply and sanitary drainage and vent piping systems to verify actual locations of piping connections before sink installation.
- B. Examine walls, floors, and counters for suitable conditions where sinks will be installed.
- C. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.2 INSTALLATION

- A. Install sinks level and plumb according to roughing-in drawings.
- B. Install supports, affixed to building substrate, for wall-hung sinks.
- C. Install accessible wall-mounted sinks at handicapped/elderly mounting height according to ICC/ANSI A117.1.
- D. Set floor-mounted sinks in leveling bed of cement grout.
- E. Install water-supply piping with stop on each supply to each sink faucet.
 1. Exception: Use ball, gate, or globe valves if supply stops are not specified with sink. Comply with valve requirements specified in Section 22 0523 "General-Duty Valves for Plumbing Piping."
 2. Install stops in locations where they can be easily reached for operation.
- F. Install wall flanges or escutcheons at piping wall penetrations in exposed, finished locations. Use deep-pattern escutcheons if required to conceal protruding fittings. Comply with escutcheon requirements specified in Section 22 0518 "Escutcheons for Plumbing Piping."

- G. Seal joints between sinks and counters, floors, and walls using sanitary-type, one-part, mildew-resistant silicone sealant. Match sealant color to fixture color. Comply with sealant requirements specified in Section 07 9200 "Joint Sealants."
- H. Install protective shielding pipe covers and enclosures on exposed supplies and waste piping of accessible sinks. Comply with requirements in Section 22 0719 "Plumbing Piping Insulation."

3.3 CONNECTIONS

- A. Connect sinks with water supplies, stops, and risers, and with traps, soil, waste, and vent piping. Use size fittings required to match fixtures.
- B. Comply with water piping requirements specified in Section 22 1116 "Domestic Water Piping."
- C. Comply with soil and waste piping requirements specified in Section 22 1316 "Sanitary Waste and Vent Piping."

3.4 ADJUSTING

- A. Operate and adjust sinks and controls. Replace damaged and malfunctioning sinks, fittings, and controls.
- B. Adjust water pressure at faucets to produce proper flow.

3.5 CLEANING AND PROTECTION

- A. After completing installation of sinks, inspect and repair damaged finishes.
- B. Clean sinks, faucets, and other fittings with manufacturers' recommended cleaning methods and materials.
- C. Provide protective covering for installed sinks and fittings.
- D. Do not allow use of sinks for temporary facilities unless approved in writing by Owner.

END OF SECTION

SECTION 23 0513-COMMON MOTOR REQUIREMENTS FOR HVAC EQUIPMENT

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 SUMMARY

- A. Section includes general requirements for single-phase and polyphase, general-purpose, horizontal, small and medium, squirrel-cage induction motors for use on ac power systems up to 600 V and installed at equipment manufacturer's factory or shipped separately by equipment manufacturer for field installation.

1.2 COORDINATION

- A. Coordinate features of motors, installed units, and accessory devices to be compatible with the following:
 - 1. Motor controllers.
 - 2. Torque, speed, and horsepower requirements of the load.
 - 3. Ratings and characteristics of supply circuit and required control sequence.
 - 4. Ambient and environmental conditions of installation location.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 GENERAL MOTOR REQUIREMENTS

- A. Comply with NEMA MG 1 unless otherwise indicated.

2.2 MOTOR CHARACTERISTICS

- A. Duty: Continuous duty at ambient temperature of 40 deg C and at altitude of 3300 feet above sea level.
- B. Capacity and Torque Characteristics: Sufficient to start, accelerate, and operate connected loads at designated speeds, at installed altitude and environment, with indicated operating sequence, and without exceeding nameplate ratings or considering service factor.

2.3 POLYPHASE MOTORS

- A. Description: NEMA MG 1, Design B, medium induction motor.
- B. Efficiency: Energy efficient, as defined in NEMA MG 1.
- C. Service Factor: 1.15.
- D. Multispeed Motors: Variable torque.
 - 1. For motors with 2:1 speed ratio, consequent pole, single winding.
 - 2. For motors with other than 2:1 speed ratio, separate winding for each speed.

- E. Rotor: Random-wound, squirrel cage.
- F. Bearings: Regreasable, shielded, antifriction ball bearings suitable for radial and thrust loading.
- G. Temperature Rise: Match insulation rating.
- H. Insulation: Class F.
- I. Code Letter Designation:
 - 1. Motors 15 HP and Larger: NEMA starting Code F or Code G.
 - 2. Motors Smaller than 15 HP: Manufacturer's standard starting characteristic.
- J. Enclosure Material: Cast iron for motor frame sizes 324T and larger; rolled steel for motor frame sizes smaller than 324T.

2.4 POLYPHASE MOTORS WITH ADDITIONAL REQUIREMENTS

- A. Motors Used with Reduced-Voltage and Multispeed Controllers: Match wiring connection requirements for controller with required motor leads. Provide terminals in motor terminal box, suited to control method.
- B. Motors Used with Variable Frequency Controllers: Ratings, characteristics, and features coordinated with and approved by controller manufacturer.
 - 1. Windings: Copper magnet wire with moisture-resistant insulation varnish, designed and tested to resist transient spikes, high frequencies, and short time rise pulses produced by pulse-width modulated inverters.
 - 2. Energy- and Premium-Efficient Motors: Class B temperature rise; Class F insulation.
 - 3. Inverter-Duty Motors: Class F temperature rise; Class H insulation.
 - 4. Thermal Protection: Comply with NEMA MG 1 requirements for thermally protected motors.

2.5 SINGLE-PHASE MOTORS

- A. Motors larger than 1/20 hp shall be one of the following, to suit starting torque and requirements of specific motor application:
 - 1. Permanent-split capacitor.
 - 2. Split phase.
 - 3. Capacitor start, inductor run.
 - 4. Capacitor start, capacitor run.
- B. Multispeed Motors: Variable-torque, permanent-split-capacitor type.
- C. Bearings: Prelubricated, antifriction ball bearings or sleeve bearings suitable for radial and thrust loading.
- D. Motors 1/20 HP and Smaller: Shaded-pole type.
- E. Thermal Protection: Internal protection to automatically open power supply circuit to motor when winding temperature exceeds a safe value calibrated to temperature

rating of motor insulation. Thermal-protection device shall automatically reset when motor temperature returns to normal range.

PART 3 - EXECUTION (Not Applicable)

END OF SECTION

SECTION 23 0517-SLEEVES AND SLEEVE SEALS FOR HVAC PIPING

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
 - 1. Sleeves.
 - 2. Sleeve-seal systems.
 - 3. Grout.

1.2 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product indicated.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 SLEEVES

- A. Cast-Iron Wall Pipes: Cast or fabricated of cast or ductile iron and equivalent to ductile-iron pressure pipe, with plain ends and integral waterstop unless otherwise indicated.
- B. Galvanized-Steel Wall Pipes: ASTM A 53/A 53M, Schedule 40, with plain ends and welded steel collar; zinc coated.
- C. Galvanized-Steel-Pipe Sleeves: ASTM A 53/A 53M, Type E, Grade B, Schedule 40, zinc coated, with plain ends.
- D. PVC-Pipe Sleeves: ASTM D 1785, Schedule 40.
- E. Galvanized-Steel-Sheet Sleeves: 0.0239-inch minimum thickness; round tube closed with welded longitudinal joint.

2.2 SLEEVE-SEAL SYSTEMS

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
 - 1. Advance Products & Systems, Inc.
 - 2. CALPICO, Inc.
 - 3. Metraflex Company (The).
 - 4. Pipeline Seal and Insulator, Inc.
 - 5. Proco Products, Inc.
- B. Description: Modular sealing-element unit, designed for field assembly, for filling annular space between piping and sleeve.

1. Sealing Elements: EPDM-rubber interlocking links shaped to fit surface of pipe. Include type and number required for pipe material and size of pipe.
2. Pressure Plates: Plastic.
3. Connecting Bolts and Nuts: Carbon steel, with corrosion-resistant coating, of length required to secure pressure plates to sealing elements.

2.3 GROUT

- A. Standard: ASTM C 1107/C 1107M, Grade B, post-hardening and volume-adjusting, dry, hydraulic-cement grout.
- B. Characteristics: Nonshrink; recommended for interior and exterior applications.
- C. Design Mix: 5000-psi, 28-day compressive strength.
- D. Packaging: Premixed and factory packaged.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 SLEEVE INSTALLATION

- A. Install sleeves for piping passing through penetrations in floors, partitions, roofs, and walls.
- B. For sleeves that will have sleeve-seal system installed, select sleeves of size large enough to provide 1-inch annular clear space between piping and concrete slabs and walls.
 1. Sleeves are not required for core-drilled holes.
- C. Install sleeves in concrete floors, concrete roof slabs, and concrete walls as new slabs and walls are constructed.
 1. Cut sleeves to length for mounting flush with both surfaces.
 - a. Exception: Extend sleeves installed in floors of mechanical equipment areas or other wet areas 2 inches above finished floor level.
 2. Using grout, seal the space outside of sleeves in slabs and walls without sleeve-seal system.
- D. Install sleeves for pipes passing through interior partitions.
 1. Cut sleeves to length for mounting flush with both surfaces.
 2. Install sleeves that are large enough to provide 1/4-inch annular clear space between sleeve and pipe or pipe insulation.
 3. Seal annular space between sleeve and piping or piping insulation; use joint sealants appropriate for size, depth, and location of joint. Comply with requirements for sealants specified in Section 07 9200 "Joint Sealants."

- E. Fire-Barrier Penetrations: Maintain indicated fire rating of walls, partitions, ceilings, and floors at pipe penetrations. Seal pipe penetrations with firestop materials. Comply with requirements for firestopping specified in Section 07 8413 "Penetration Firestopping."

3.2 SLEEVE-SEAL-SYSTEM INSTALLATION

- A. Install sleeve-seal systems in sleeves in exterior concrete walls and slabs-on-grade at service piping entries into building.
- B. Select type, size, and number of sealing elements required for piping material and size and for sleeve ID or hole size. Position piping in center of sleeve. Center piping in penetration, assemble sleeve-seal system components, and install in annular space between piping and sleeve. Tighten bolts against pressure plates that cause sealing elements to expand and make a watertight seal.

3.3 SLEEVE AND SLEEVE-SEAL SCHEDULE

- A. Use sleeves and sleeve seals for the following piping-penetration applications:
 - 1. Exterior Concrete Walls above Grade:
 - a. Piping Smaller Than NPS 6: Galvanized-steel wall sleeves.
 - b. Piping NPS 6 and Larger: Galvanized-steel wall sleeves.
 - 2. Exterior Concrete Walls below Grade:
 - a. Piping Smaller Than NPS 6: Molded non-metallic high density polyethylene (HDPE) wall sleeves with sleeve-seal system.
 - 1) Select sleeve size to allow for 1-inch annular clear space between piping and sleeve for installing sleeve-seal system.
 - b. Piping NPS 6 and Larger: Molded non-metallic high density polyethylene (HDPE) wall sleeves with sleeve-seal system.
 - 1) Select sleeve size to allow for 1-inch annular clear space between piping and sleeve for installing sleeve-seal system.
 - 3. Concrete Slabs above Grade:
 - a. Piping Smaller Than NPS 6: Galvanized-steel-pipe sleeves.
 - b. Piping NPS 6 and Larger: Galvanized-steel-pipe sleeves.
 - 4. Interior Partitions:
 - a. Piping Smaller Than NPS 6: Galvanized-steel-pipe sleeves.
 - b. Piping NPS 6 and Larger: Galvanized-steel-sheet sleeves.

END OF SECTION

SECTION 23 0518-ESCUTCHEONS FOR HVAC PIPING

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
 - 1. Escutcheons.
 - 2. Floor plates.

1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product indicated.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 ESCUTCHEONS

- A. One-Piece, Cast-Brass Type: With polished, chrome-plated finish and setscrew fastener.
- B. One-Piece, Deep-Pattern Type: Deep-drawn, box-shaped brass with chrome-plated finish and spring-clip fasteners.
- C. One-Piece, Stamped-Steel Type: With chrome-plated finish and spring-clip fasteners.
- D. Split-Casting Brass Type: With polished, chrome-plated finish and with concealed hinge and setscrew.
- E. Split-Plate, Stamped-Steel Type: With chrome-plated finish, concealed and exposed-rivet hinge, and spring-clip fasteners.

2.2 FLOOR PLATES

- A. One-Piece Floor Plates: Cast-iron flange with holes for fasteners.
- B. Split-Casting Floor Plates: Cast brass with concealed hinge.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 INSTALLATION

- A. Install escutcheons for piping penetrations of walls, ceilings, and finished floors.
- B. Install escutcheons with ID to closely fit around pipe, tube, and insulation of piping and with OD that completely covers opening.
 - 1. Escutcheons for New Piping:
 - a. Piping with Fitting or Sleeve Protruding from Wall: One-piece, deep-pattern type.
 - b. Chrome-Plated Piping: One-piece, cast-brass type with polished, chrome-plated finish.
 - c. Insulated Piping: One-piece, stamped-steel type.
 - d. Bare Piping at Wall and Floor Penetrations in Finished Spaces: One-piece, cast-brass type with polished, chrome-plated finish.
 - e. Bare Piping at Ceiling Penetrations in Finished Spaces: One-piece, cast-brass type with polished, chrome-plated finish.
 - f. Bare Piping in Unfinished Service Spaces: One-piece, cast-brass type with polished, chrome-plated finish.
 - g. Bare Piping in Equipment Rooms: One-piece, cast-brass type with polished, chrome-plated finish.
 - 2. Escutcheons for Existing Piping:
 - a. Chrome-Plated Piping: Split-casting brass type with polished, chrome-plated finish.
 - b. Insulated Piping: Split-plate, stamped-steel type with concealed or exposed-riquet hinge.
 - c. Bare Piping at Wall and Floor Penetrations in Finished Spaces: Split-casting brass type with polished, chrome-plated finish.
 - d. Bare Piping at Wall and Floor Penetrations in Finished Spaces: Split-plate, stamped-steel type with concealed or exposed-riquet hinge.
 - e. Bare Piping at Ceiling Penetrations in Finished Spaces: Split-casting brass type with polished, chrome-plated finish.
 - f. Bare Piping at Ceiling Penetrations in Finished Spaces: Split-plate, stamped-steel type with concealed or exposed-riquet hinge.
 - g. Bare Piping in Unfinished Service Spaces: Split-casting brass type with polished, chrome-plated finish.
 - h. Bare Piping in Unfinished Service Spaces: Split-plate, stamped-steel type with concealed or exposed-riquet hinge.
 - i. Bare Piping in Equipment Rooms: Split-casting brass type with polished, chrome-plated finish.
 - j. Bare Piping in Equipment Rooms: Split-plate, stamped-steel type with concealed or exposed-riquet hinge.
- C. Install floor plates for piping penetrations of equipment-room floors.
- D. Install floor plates with ID to closely fit around pipe, tube, and insulation of piping and with OD that completely covers opening.

1. New Piping: One-piece, floor-plate type.
2. Existing Piping: Split-casting, floor-plate type.

3.2 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Replace broken and damaged escutcheons and floor plates using new materials.

END OF SECTION

SECTION 23 0529-HANGERS AND SUPPORTS FOR HVAC PIPING AND EQUIPMENT

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
 - 1. Metal pipe hangers and supports.
 - 2. Trapeze pipe hangers.
 - 3. Fastener systems.
 - 4. Equipment supports.

1.2 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product indicated.
- B. Shop Drawings: Show fabrication and installation details and include calculations for the following; include Product Data for components:
 - 1. Trapeze pipe hangers.
 - 2. Equipment supports.
- C. Delegated-Design Submittal: For trapeze hangers indicated to comply with performance requirements and design criteria, including analysis data signed and sealed by the qualified professional engineer responsible for their preparation.

1.3 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Welding certificates.

1.4 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Structural Steel Welding Qualifications: Qualify procedures and personnel according to AWS D1.1/D1.1M, "Structural Welding Code - Steel."
- B. Pipe Welding Qualifications: Qualify procedures and operators according to ASME Boiler and Pressure Vessel Code.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 METAL PIPE HANGERS AND SUPPORTS

- A. Carbon-Steel Pipe Hangers and Supports:
 - 1. Description: MSS SP-58, Types 1 through 58, factory-fabricated components.
 - 2. Galvanized Metallic Coatings: Pregalvanized or hot dipped.
 - 3. Nonmetallic Coatings: Plastic coating, jacket, or liner.
 - 4. Padded Hangers: Hanger with fiberglass or other pipe insulation pad or cushion to support bearing surface of piping.
 - 5. Hanger Rods: Continuous-thread rod, nuts, and washer made of carbon steel.

B. Copper Pipe Hangers:

1. Description: MSS SP-58, Types 1 through 58, copper-coated-steel, factory-fabricated components.
2. Hanger Rods: Continuous-thread rod, nuts, and washer made of copper-coated steel.

2.2 TRAPEZE PIPE HANGERS

- A. Description: MSS SP-69, Type 59, shop- or field-fabricated pipe-support assembly made from structural carbon-steel shapes with MSS SP-58 carbon-steel hanger rods, nuts, saddles, and U-bolts.

2.3 FASTENER SYSTEMS

- A. Powder-Actuated Fasteners: Threaded-steel stud, for use in hardened portland cement concrete with pull-out, tension, and shear capacities appropriate for supported loads and building materials where used.
- B. Mechanical-Expansion Anchors: Insert-wedge-type, zinc-coated steel anchors, for use in hardened portland cement concrete; with pull-out, tension, and shear capacities appropriate for supported loads and building materials where used.

2.4 EQUIPMENT SUPPORTS

- A. Description: Welded, shop- or field-fabricated equipment support made from structural carbon-steel shapes.

2.5 MISCELLANEOUS MATERIALS

- A. Structural Steel: ASTM A 36/A 36M, carbon-steel plates, shapes, and bars; black and galvanized.
- B. Grout: ASTM C 1107, factory-mixed and -packaged, dry, hydraulic-cement, nonshrink and nonmetallic grout; suitable for interior and exterior applications.
1. Properties: Nonstaining, noncorrosive, and nongaseous.
 2. Design Mix: 5000-psi, 28-day compressive strength.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 HANGER AND SUPPORT INSTALLATION

- A. Metal Pipe-Hanger Installation: Comply with MSS SP-69 and MSS SP-89. Install hangers, supports, clamps, and attachments as required to properly support piping from the building structure.
- B. Metal Trapeze Pipe-Hanger Installation: Comply with MSS SP-69 and MSS SP-89. Arrange for grouping of parallel runs of horizontal piping, and support together on field-fabricated trapeze pipe hangers.

1. Pipes of Various Sizes: Support together and space trapezes for smallest pipe size or install intermediate supports for smaller diameter pipes as specified for individual pipe hangers.
 2. Field fabricate from ASTM A 36/A 36M, carbon-steel shapes selected for loads being supported. Weld steel according to AWS D1.1/D1.1M.
- C. Fastener System Installation:
1. Install powder-actuated fasteners for use in lightweight concrete or concrete slabs less than 4 inches thick in concrete after concrete is placed and completely cured. Use operators that are licensed by powder-actuated tool manufacturer. Install fasteners according to powder-actuated tool manufacturer's operating manual.
 2. Install mechanical-expansion anchors in concrete after concrete is placed and completely cured. Install fasteners according to manufacturer's written instructions.
- D. Install hangers and supports complete with necessary attachments, inserts, bolts, rods, nuts, washers, and other accessories.
- E. Equipment Support Installation: Fabricate from welded-structural-steel shapes.
- F. Install hangers and supports to allow controlled thermal movement of piping systems, to permit freedom of movement between pipe anchors, and to facilitate action of expansion joints, expansion loops, expansion bends, and similar units.
- G. Install lateral bracing with pipe hangers and supports to prevent swaying.
- H. Install building attachments within concrete slabs or attach to structural steel. Install additional attachments at concentrated loads, including valves, flanges, and strainers, NPS 2-1/2 and larger and at changes in direction of piping. Install concrete inserts before concrete is placed; fasten inserts to forms and install reinforcing bars through openings at top of inserts.
- I. Load Distribution: Install hangers and supports so that piping live and dead loads will not be transmitted to connected equipment.
- J. Pipe Slopes: Install hangers and supports to provide indicated pipe slopes and to not exceed maximum pipe deflections allowed by ASME B31.9 for building services piping.
- K. Insulated Piping:
1. Attach clamps and spacers to piping.
 - a. Piping Operating above Ambient Air Temperature: Clamp may project through insulation.
 - b. Piping Operating below Ambient Air Temperature: Use thermal-hanger shield insert with clamp sized to match OD of insert.
 - c. Do not exceed pipe stress limits allowed by ASME B31.9 for building services piping.
 2. Install MSS SP-58, Type 39, protection saddles if insulation without vapor barrier is indicated. Fill interior voids with insulation that matches adjoining insulation.

- a. Option: Thermal-hanger shield inserts may be used. Include steel weight-distribution plate for pipe NPS 4 and larger if pipe is installed on rollers.
3. Install MSS SP-58, Type 40, protective shields on cold piping with vapor barrier. Shields shall span an arc of 180 degrees.
 - a. Option: Thermal-hanger shield inserts may be used. Include steel weight-distribution plate for pipe NPS 4 and larger if pipe is installed on rollers.
4. Shield Dimensions for Pipe: Not less than the following:
 - a. NPS 1/4 to NPS 3-1/2: 12 inches long and 0.048 inch thick.
 - b. NPS 4: 12 inches long and 0.06 inch thick.
 - c. NPS 5 and NPS 6: 18 inches long and 0.06 inch thick.
 - d. NPS 8 to NPS 14: 24 inches long and 0.075 inch thick.
 - e. NPS 16 to NPS 24: 24 inches long and 0.105 inch thick.
5. Pipes NPS 8 and Larger: Include wood or reinforced calcium-silicate-insulation inserts of length at least as long as protective shield.
6. Thermal-Hanger Shields: Install with insulation same thickness as piping insulation.

3.2 EQUIPMENT SUPPORTS

- A. Fabricate structural-steel stands to suspend equipment from structure overhead or to support equipment above floor.
- B. Grouting: Place grout under supports for equipment and make bearing surface smooth.
- C. Provide lateral bracing, to prevent swaying, for equipment supports.

3.3 METAL FABRICATIONS

- A. Cut, drill, and fit miscellaneous metal fabrications for trapeze pipe hangers and equipment supports.
- B. Fit exposed connections together to form hairline joints. Field weld connections that cannot be shop welded because of shipping size limitations.
- C. Field Welding: Comply with AWS D1.1/D1.1M procedures for shielded, metal arc welding; appearance and quality of welds; and methods used in correcting welding work; and with the following:
 1. Use materials and methods that minimize distortion and develop strength and corrosion resistance of base metals.
 2. Obtain fusion without undercut or overlap.
 3. Remove welding flux immediately.
 4. Finish welds at exposed connections so no roughness shows after finishing and so contours of welded surfaces match adjacent contours.

3.4 ADJUSTING

- A. Hanger Adjustments: Adjust hangers to distribute loads equally on attachments and to achieve indicated slope of pipe.
- B. Trim excess length of continuous-thread hanger and support rods to 1-1/2 inches.

3.5 PAINTING

- A. Touchup: Clean field welds and abraded areas of shop paint. Paint exposed areas immediately after erecting hangers and supports. Use same materials as used for shop painting. Comply with SSPC-PA 1 requirements for touching up field-painted surfaces.
 - 1. Apply paint by brush or spray to provide a minimum dry film thickness of 2.0 mils.
- B. Galvanized Surfaces: Clean welds, bolted connections, and abraded areas and apply galvanizing-repair paint to comply with ASTM A 780.

3.6 HANGER AND SUPPORT SCHEDULE

- A. Specific hanger and support requirements are in Sections specifying piping systems and equipment.
- B. Comply with MSS SP-69 for pipe-hanger selections and applications that are not specified in piping system Sections.
- C. Use hangers and supports with galvanized metallic coatings for piping and equipment that will not have field-applied finish.
- D. Use nonmetallic coatings on attachments for electrolytic protection where attachments are in direct contact with copper tubing.
- E. Use carbon-steel pipe hangers and supports and metal trapeze pipe hangers and attachments for general service applications.
- F. Use stainless-steel pipe hangers and stainless-steel or corrosion-resistant attachments for hostile environment applications.
- G. Use copper-plated pipe hangers and copper or stainless-steel attachments for copper piping and tubing.
- H. Use padded hangers for piping that is subject to scratching.
- I. Use thermal-hanger shield inserts for insulated piping and tubing.
- J. Horizontal-Piping Hangers and Supports: Unless otherwise indicated and except as specified in piping system Sections, install the following types:
 - 1. Adjustable, Steel Clevis Hangers (MSS Type 1): For suspension of noninsulated or insulated, stationary pipes NPS 1/2 to NPS 30.
 - 2. Yoke-Type Pipe Clamps (MSS Type 2): For suspension of up to 1050 deg F, pipes NPS 4 to NPS 24, requiring up to 4 inches of insulation.

3. Carbon- or Alloy-Steel, Double-Bolt Pipe Clamps (MSS Type 3): For suspension of pipes NPS 3/4 to NPS 36, requiring clamp flexibility and up to 4 inches of insulation.
 4. Adjustable, Steel Band Hangers (MSS Type 7): For suspension of noninsulated, stationary pipes NPS 1/2 to NPS 8.
 5. U-Bolts (MSS Type 24): For support of heavy pipes NPS 1/2 to NPS 30.
 6. Pipe Saddle Supports (MSS Type 36): For support of pipes NPS 4 to NPS 36, with steel-pipe base stanchion support and cast-iron floor flange or carbon-steel plate.
 7. Pipe Stanchion Saddles (MSS Type 37): For support of pipes NPS 4 to NPS 36, with steel-pipe base stanchion support and cast-iron floor flange or carbon-steel plate, and with U-bolt to retain pipe.
 8. Single-Pipe Rolls (MSS Type 41): For suspension of pipes NPS 1 to NPS 30, from two rods if longitudinal movement caused by expansion and contraction might occur.
 9. Complete Pipe Rolls (MSS Type 44): For support of pipes NPS 2 to NPS 42 if longitudinal movement caused by expansion and contraction might occur but vertical adjustment is not necessary.
- K. Vertical-Piping Clamps: Unless otherwise indicated and except as specified in piping system Sections, install the following types:
1. Extension Pipe or Riser Clamps (MSS Type 8): For support of pipe risers NPS 3/4 to NPS 24.
 2. Carbon- or Alloy-Steel Riser Clamps (MSS Type 42): For support of pipe risers NPS 3/4 to NPS 24 if longer ends are required for riser clamps.
- L. Hanger-Rod Attachments: Unless otherwise indicated and except as specified in piping system Sections, install the following types:
1. Steel Turnbuckles (MSS Type 13): For adjustment up to 6 inches for heavy loads.
 2. Steel Clevises (MSS Type 14): For 120 to 450 deg F piping installations.
- M. Building Attachments: Unless otherwise indicated and except as specified in piping system Sections, install the following types:
1. Steel or Malleable Concrete Inserts (MSS Type 18): For upper attachment to suspend pipe hangers from concrete ceiling.
 2. Top-Beam C-Clamps (MSS Type 19): For use under roof installations with bar-joint construction, to attach to top flange of structural shape.
 3. Side-Beam or Channel Clamps (MSS Type 20): For attaching to bottom flange of beams, channels, or angles.
 4. Center-Beam Clamps (MSS Type 21): For attaching to center of bottom flange of beams.
 5. Welded Beam Attachments (MSS Type 22): For attaching to bottom of beams if loads are considerable and rod sizes are large.
 6. C-Clamps (MSS Type 23): For structural shapes.
 7. Welded-Steel Brackets: For support of pipes from below, or for suspending from above by using clip and rod. Use one of the following for indicated loads:
 - a. Light (MSS Type 31): 750 lb.
 - b. Medium (MSS Type 32): 1500 lb.
 - c. Heavy (MSS Type 33): 3000 lb.

8. Side-Beam Brackets (MSS Type 34): For sides of steel or wooden beams.
 9. Plate Lugs (MSS Type 57): For attaching to steel beams if flexibility at beam is required.
- N. Saddles and Shields: Unless otherwise indicated and except as specified in piping system Sections, install the following types:
1. Steel-Pipe-Covering Protection Saddles (MSS Type 39): To fill interior voids with insulation that matches adjoining insulation.
 2. Protection Shields (MSS Type 40): Of length recommended in writing by manufacturer to prevent crushing insulation.
 3. Thermal-Hanger Shield Inserts: For supporting insulated pipe.
- O. Spring Hangers and Supports: Unless otherwise indicated and except as specified in piping system Sections, install the following types:
1. Spring Cushions (MSS Type 48): For light loads if vertical movement does not exceed 1-1/4 inches.
 2. Spring-Cushion Roll Hangers (MSS Type 49): For equipping Type 41, roll hanger with springs.
 3. Variable-Spring Base Supports (MSS Type 52): Preset to indicated load and limit variability factor to 25 percent to allow expansion and contraction of piping system from base support.
- P. Comply with MSS SP-69 for trapeze pipe-hanger selections and applications that are not specified in piping system Sections.
- Q. Use powder-actuated fasteners or mechanical-expansion anchors instead of building attachments where required in concrete construction.

END OF SECTION

SECTION 23 0553-IDENTIFICATION FOR HVAC PIPING AND EQUIPMENT

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
 - 1. Equipment labels.
 - 2. Warning signs and labels.
 - 3. Pipe labels.
 - 4. Duct labels.

1.2 ACTION SUBMITTAL

- A. Product Data: For each type of product indicated.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 EQUIPMENT LABELS

- A. Plastic Labels for Equipment:
 - 1. Material and Thickness: Multilayer, multicolor, plastic labels for mechanical engraving, 1/16 inch thick, and having predrilled holes for attachment hardware.
 - 2. Letter Color: White.
 - 3. Background Color: Black.
 - 4. Maximum Temperature: Able to withstand temperatures up to 160 deg F.
 - 5. Minimum Label Size: Length and width vary for required label content, but not less than 2-1/2 by 3/4 inch.
 - 6. Minimum Letter Size: 1/4 inch for name of units if viewing distance is less than 24 inches, 1/2 inch for viewing distances up to 72 inches, and proportionately larger lettering for greater viewing distances. Include secondary lettering two-thirds to three-fourths the size of principal lettering.
 - 7. Fasteners: Stainless-steel rivets or self-tapping screws.
 - 8. Adhesive: Contact-type permanent adhesive, compatible with label and with substrate.
- B. Label Content: Include equipment's Drawing designation or unique equipment number, Drawing numbers where equipment is indicated (plans, details, and schedules), plus the Specification Section number and title where equipment is specified.
- C. Equipment Label Schedule: For each item of equipment to be labeled, on 8-1/2-by-11-inch bond paper. Tabulate equipment identification number and identify Drawing numbers where equipment is indicated (plans, details, and schedules), plus the Specification Section number and title where equipment is specified. Equipment schedule shall be included in operation and maintenance data.

2.2 WARNING SIGNS AND LABELS

- A. Material and Thickness: Multilayer, multicolor, plastic labels for mechanical engraving, 1/16 inch thick, and having predrilled holes for attachment hardware.
- B. Letter Color: Black.
- C. Background Color: Yellow.
- D. Maximum Temperature: Able to withstand temperatures up to 160 deg F.
- E. Minimum Label Size: Length and width vary for required label content, but not less than 2-1/2 by 3/4 inch.
- F. Minimum Letter Size: 1/4 inch for name of units if viewing distance is less than 24 inches, 1/2 inch for viewing distances up to 72 inches, and proportionately larger lettering for greater viewing distances. Include secondary lettering two-thirds to three-fourths the size of principal lettering.
- G. Fasteners: Stainless-steel rivets or self-tapping screws.
- H. Adhesive: Contact-type permanent adhesive, compatible with label and with substrate.
- I. Label Content: Include caution and warning information, plus emergency notification instructions.

2.3 PIPE LABELS

- A. General Requirements for Manufactured Pipe Labels: Preprinted, color-coded, with lettering indicating service, and showing flow direction.
- B. Pretensioned Pipe Labels: Precoiled, semirigid plastic formed to cover full circumference of pipe and to attach to pipe without fasteners or adhesive.
- C. Self-Adhesive Pipe Labels: Printed plastic with contact-type, permanent-adhesive backing.
- D. Pipe Label Contents: Include identification of piping service using same designations or abbreviations as used on Drawings, pipe size, and an arrow indicating flow direction.
 - 1. Flow-Direction Arrows: Integral with piping system service lettering to accommodate both directions, or as separate unit on each pipe label to indicate flow direction.
 - 2. Lettering Size: At least 1-1/2 inches high.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 PREPARATION

- A. Clean piping and equipment surfaces of substances that could impair bond of identification devices, including dirt, oil, grease, release agents, and incompatible primers, paints, and encapsulants.

3.2 EQUIPMENT LABEL INSTALLATION

- A. Install or permanently fasten labels on each major item of mechanical equipment.
- B. Locate equipment labels where accessible and visible.

3.3 PIPE LABEL INSTALLATION

- A. Locate pipe labels where piping is exposed or above accessible ceilings in finished spaces; machine rooms; accessible maintenance spaces such as shafts, tunnels, and plenums; and exterior exposed locations as follows:
 - 1. Near each valve and control device.
 - 2. Near each branch connection, excluding short takeoffs for fixtures and terminal units. Where flow pattern is not obvious, mark each pipe at branch.
 - 3. Near penetrations through walls, floors, ceilings, and inaccessible enclosures.
 - 4. At access doors, manholes, and similar access points that permit view of concealed piping.
 - 5. Near major equipment items and other points of origination and termination.
 - 6. Spaced at maximum intervals of 50 feet along each run. Reduce intervals to 25 feet in areas of congested piping and equipment.
 - 7. On piping above removable acoustical ceilings. Omit intermediately spaced labels.

END OF SECTION

SECTION 23 0593-TESTING, ADJUSTING, AND BALANCING FOR HVAC

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
 - 1. Balancing Air Systems:
 - a. Constant-volume air systems.
 - b. Variable-air-volume systems.

1.2 DEFINITIONS

- A. AABC: Associated Air Balance Council.
- B. NEBB: National Environmental Balancing Bureau.
- C. TAB: Testing, adjusting, and balancing.
- D. TABB: Testing, Adjusting, and Balancing Bureau.
- E. TAB Specialist: An entity engaged to perform TAB Work.

1.3 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Strategies and Procedures Plan: Within 60 days of Contractor's Notice to Proceed, submit TAB strategies and step-by-step procedures as specified in "Preparation" Article.
- B. Certified TAB reports.

1.4 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. TAB Contractor Qualifications: Engage a TAB entity certified by AABC, NEBB, or TABB.
- B. Certify TAB field data reports and perform the following:
 - 1. Review field data reports to validate accuracy of data and to prepare certified TAB reports.
 - 2. Certify that the TAB team complied with the approved TAB plan and the procedures specified and referenced in this Specification.
- C. TAB Report Forms: Use standard TAB contractor's forms approved by Architect.
- D. Instrumentation Type, Quantity, Accuracy, and Calibration: As described in ASHRAE 111, Section 5, "Instrumentation."
- E. ASHRAE Compliance: Applicable requirements in ASHRAE 62.1-2007, Section 7.2.2 - "Air Balancing."
- F. ASHRAE/IESNA Compliance: Applicable requirements in ASHRAE/IESNA 90.1-2007, Section 6.7.2.3 - "System Balancing."

PART 2 - PRODUCTS (Not Applicable)

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine the Contract Documents to become familiar with Project requirements and to discover conditions in systems' designs that may preclude proper TAB of systems and equipment.
- B. Examine systems for installed balancing devices, such as test ports, gage cocks, thermometer wells, flow-control devices, balancing valves and fittings, and manual volume dampers. Verify that locations of these balancing devices are accessible.
- C. Examine the approved submittals for HVAC systems and equipment.
- D. Examine design data including HVAC system descriptions, statements of design assumptions for environmental conditions and systems' output, and statements of philosophies and assumptions about HVAC system and equipment controls.
- E. Examine ceiling plenums and underfloor air plenums used for supply, return, or relief air to verify that they meet the leakage class of connected ducts as specified in Section 23 31 13 "Metal Ducts" and are properly separated from adjacent areas. Verify that penetrations in plenum walls are sealed and fire-stopped if required.
- F. Examine equipment performance data including fan and pump curves.
 - 1. Relate performance data to Project conditions and requirements, including system effects that can create undesired or unpredicted conditions that cause reduced capacities in all or part of a system.
 - 2. Calculate system-effect factors to reduce performance ratings of HVAC equipment when installed under conditions different from the conditions used to rate equipment performance. To calculate system effects for air systems, use tables and charts found in AMCA 201, "Fans and Systems," or in SMACNA's "HVAC Systems - Duct Design." Compare results with the design data and installed conditions.
- G. Examine system and equipment installations and verify that field quality-control testing, cleaning, and adjusting specified in individual Sections have been performed.
- H. Examine test reports specified in individual system and equipment Sections.
- I. Examine HVAC equipment and filters and verify that bearings are greased, belts are aligned and tight, and equipment with functioning controls is ready for operation.
- J. Examine terminal units, such as variable-air-volume boxes, and verify that they are accessible and their controls are connected and functioning.
- K. Examine strainers. Verify that startup screens are replaced by permanent screens with indicated perforations.
- L. Examine three-way valves for proper installation for their intended function of diverting or mixing fluid flows.
- M. Examine heat-transfer coils for correct piping connections and for clean and straight fins.

- N. Examine system pumps to ensure absence of entrained air in the suction piping.
- O. Examine operating safety interlocks and controls on HVAC equipment.
- P. Report deficiencies discovered before and during performance of TAB procedures. Observe and record system reactions to changes in conditions. Record default set points if different from indicated values.

3.2 PREPARATION

- A. Prepare a TAB plan that includes strategies and step-by-step procedures.
- B. Complete system-readiness checks and prepare reports. Verify the following:
 - 1. Permanent electrical-power wiring is complete.
 - 2. Automatic temperature-control systems are operational.
 - 3. Equipment and duct access doors are securely closed.
 - 4. Balance, smoke, and fire dampers are open.
 - 5. Isolating and balancing valves are open and control valves are operational.
 - 6. Ceilings are installed in critical areas where air-pattern adjustments are required and access to balancing devices is provided.
 - 7. Windows and doors can be closed so indicated conditions for system operations can be met.

3.3 GENERAL PROCEDURES FOR TESTING AND BALANCING

- A. Perform testing and balancing procedures on each system according to the procedures contained in AABC's "National Standards for Total System Balance" or NEBB's "Procedural Standards for Testing, Adjusting, and Balancing of Environmental Systems" and in this Section.
 - 1. Comply with requirements in ASHRAE 62.1-2007, Section 7.2.2 - "Air Balancing."
- B. Cut insulation, ducts, pipes, and equipment cabinets for installation of test probes to the minimum extent necessary for TAB procedures.
 - 1. After testing and balancing, patch probe holes in ducts with same material and thickness as used to construct ducts.
 - 2. Install and join new insulation that matches removed materials. Restore insulation, coverings, vapor barrier, and finish according to Section 23 0713 "Duct Insulation," Section 23 0716 "HVAC Equipment Insulation," Section 23 0719 "HVAC Piping Insulation."
- C. Mark equipment and balancing devices, including damper-control positions, valve position indicators, fan-speed-control levers, and similar controls and devices, with paint or other suitable, permanent identification material to show final settings.
- D. Take and report testing and balancing measurements in inch-pound (IP) units.

3.4 GENERAL PROCEDURES FOR BALANCING AIR SYSTEMS

- A. Prepare test reports for both fans and outlets. Obtain manufacturer's outlet factors and recommended testing procedures. Crosscheck the summation of required outlet volumes with required fan volumes.
- B. Prepare schematic diagrams of systems' "as-built" duct layouts.

- C. For variable-air-volume systems, develop a plan to simulate diversity.
- D. Determine the best locations in main and branch ducts for accurate duct-airflow measurements.
- E. Check airflow patterns from the outdoor-air louvers and dampers and the return- and exhaust-air dampers through the supply-fan discharge and mixing dampers.
- F. Locate start-stop and disconnect switches, electrical interlocks, and motor starters.
- G. Verify that motor starters are equipped with properly sized thermal protection.
- H. Check dampers for proper position to achieve desired airflow path.
- I. Check for airflow blockages.
- J. Check condensate drains for proper connections and functioning.
- K. Check for proper sealing of air-handling-unit components.
- L. Verify that air duct system is sealed as specified in Section 23 31 13 "Metal Ducts."

3.5 PROCEDURES FOR CONSTANT-VOLUME AIR SYSTEMS

- A. Adjust fans to deliver total indicated airflows within the maximum allowable fan speed listed by fan manufacturer.
 - 1. Measure total airflow.
 - a. Where sufficient space in ducts is unavailable for Pitot-tube traverse measurements, measure airflow at terminal outlets and inlets and calculate the total airflow.
 - 2. Measure fan static pressures as follows to determine actual static pressure:
 - a. Measure outlet static pressure as far downstream from the fan as practical and upstream from restrictions in ducts such as elbows and transitions.
 - b. Measure static pressure directly at the fan outlet or through the flexible connection.
 - c. Measure inlet static pressure of single-inlet fans in the inlet duct as near the fan as possible, upstream from the flexible connection, and downstream from duct restrictions.
 - d. Measure inlet static pressure of double-inlet fans through the wall of the plenum that houses the fan.
 - 3. Measure static pressure across each component that makes up an air-handling unit, rooftop unit, and other air-handling and -treating equipment.
 - a. Report the cleanliness status of filters and the time static pressures are measured.
 - 4. Measure static pressures entering and leaving other devices, such as sound traps, heat-recovery equipment, and air washers, under final balanced conditions.

5. Review Record Documents to determine variations in design static pressures versus actual static pressures. Calculate actual system-effect factors. Recommend adjustments to accommodate actual conditions.
 6. Obtain approval from Architect for adjustment of fan speed higher or lower than indicated speed. Comply with requirements in Sections for air-handling units for adjustment of fans, belts, and pulley sizes to achieve indicated air-handling-unit performance.
 7. Do not make fan-speed adjustments that result in motor overload. Consult equipment manufacturers about fan-speed safety factors. Modulate dampers and measure fan-motor amperage to ensure that no overload will occur. Measure amperage in full-cooling, full-heating, economizer, and any other operating mode to determine the maximum required brake horsepower.
- B. Adjust volume dampers for main duct, submain ducts, and major branch ducts to indicated airflows within specified tolerances.
1. Measure airflow of submain and branch ducts.
 - a. Where sufficient space in submain and branch ducts is unavailable for Pitot-tube traverse measurements, measure airflow at terminal outlets and inlets and calculate the total airflow for that zone.
 2. Measure static pressure at a point downstream from the balancing damper, and adjust volume dampers until the proper static pressure is achieved.
 3. Remeasure each submain and branch duct after all have been adjusted. Continue to adjust submain and branch ducts to indicated airflows within specified tolerances.
- C. Measure air outlets and inlets without making adjustments.
1. Measure terminal outlets using a direct-reading hood or outlet manufacturer's written instructions and calculating factors.
- D. Adjust air outlets and inlets for each space to indicated airflows within specified tolerances of indicated values. Make adjustments using branch volume dampers rather than extractors and the dampers at air terminals.
1. Adjust each outlet in same room or space to within specified tolerances of indicated quantities without generating noise levels above the limitations prescribed by the Contract Documents.
 2. Adjust patterns of adjustable outlets for proper distribution without drafts.
- 3.6 PROCEDURES FOR VARIABLE-AIR-VOLUME SYSTEMS
- A. Compensating for Diversity: When the total airflow of all terminal units is more than the indicated airflow of the fan, place a selected number of terminal units at a minimum set-point airflow with the remainder at maximum airflow condition until the total airflow of the terminal units equals the indicated airflow of the fan. Select the reduced-airflow terminal units so they are distributed evenly among the branch ducts.
- B. Pressure-Independent, Variable-Air-Volume Systems: After the fan systems have been adjusted, adjust the variable-air-volume systems as follows:
1. Set outdoor-air dampers at minimum, and set return- and exhaust-air dampers at a position that simulates full-cooling load.

2. Select the terminal unit that is most critical to the supply-fan airflow and static pressure. Measure static pressure. Adjust system static pressure so the entering static pressure for the critical terminal unit is not less than the sum of the terminal-unit manufacturer's recommended minimum inlet static pressure plus the static pressure needed to overcome terminal-unit discharge system losses.
3. Measure total system airflow. Adjust to within indicated airflow.
4. Set terminal units at maximum airflow and adjust controller or regulator to deliver the designed maximum airflow. Use terminal-unit manufacturer's written instructions to make this adjustment. When total airflow is correct, balance the air outlets downstream from terminal units the same as described for constant-volume air systems.
5. Set terminal units at minimum airflow and adjust controller or regulator to deliver the designed minimum airflow. Check air outlets for a proportional reduction in airflow the same as described for constant-volume air systems.
 - a. If air outlets are out of balance at minimum airflow, report the condition but leave outlets balanced for maximum airflow.
6. Remeasure the return airflow to the fan while operating at maximum return airflow and minimum outdoor airflow.
 - a. Adjust the fan and balance the return-air ducts and inlets the same as described for constant-volume air systems.
7. Measure static pressure at the most critical terminal unit and adjust the static-pressure controller at the main supply-air sensing station to ensure that adequate static pressure is maintained at the most critical unit.
8. Record final fan-performance data.

3.7 PROCEDURES FOR MOTORS

- A. Motors, 1/2 HP and Larger: Test at final balanced conditions and record the following data:
 1. Manufacturer's name, model number, and serial number.
 2. Motor horsepower rating.
 3. Motor rpm.
 4. Efficiency rating.
 5. Nameplate and measured voltage, each phase.
 6. Nameplate and measured amperage, each phase.
 7. Starter thermal-protection-element rating.
- B. Motors Driven by Variable-Frequency Controllers: Test for proper operation at speeds varying from minimum to maximum. Test the manual bypass of the controller to prove proper operation. Record observations including name of controller manufacturer, model number, serial number, and nameplate data.

3.8 PROCEDURES FOR CONDENSING UNITS

- A. Verify proper rotation of fans.
- B. Measure entering- and leaving-air temperatures.
- C. Record compressor data.

3.9 TOLERANCES

- A. Set HVAC system's air flow rates and water flow rates within the following tolerances:
 - 1. Supply, Return, and Exhaust Fans and Equipment with Fans: Plus or minus 10 percent.
 - 2. Air Outlets and Inlets: Plus or minus 10 percent.

3.10 REPORTING

- A. Initial Construction-Phase Report: Based on examination of the Contract Documents as specified in "Examination" Article, prepare a report on the adequacy of design for systems' balancing devices. Recommend changes and additions to systems' balancing devices to facilitate proper performance measuring and balancing. Recommend changes and additions to HVAC systems and general construction to allow access for performance measuring and balancing devices.
- B. Status Reports: Prepare monthly progress reports to describe completed procedures, procedures in progress, and scheduled procedures. Include a list of deficiencies and problems found in systems being tested and balanced. Prepare a separate report for each system and each building floor for systems serving multiple floors.

3.11 FINAL REPORT

- A. General: Prepare a certified written report; tabulate and divide the report into separate sections for tested systems and balanced systems.
 - 1. Include a certification sheet at the front of the report's binder, signed and sealed by the certified testing and balancing engineer.
 - 2. Include a list of instruments used for procedures, along with proof of calibration.
- B. Final Report Contents: In addition to certified field-report data, include the following:
 - 1. Pump curves.
 - 2. Fan curves.
 - 3. Manufacturers' test data.
 - 4. Field test reports prepared by system and equipment installers.
 - 5. Other information relative to equipment performance; do not include Shop Drawings and product data.
- C. General Report Data: In addition to form titles and entries, include the following data:
 - 1. Title page.
 - 2. Name and address of the TAB contractor.
 - 3. Project name.
 - 4. Project location.
 - 5. Architect's name and address.
 - 6. Engineer's name and address.
 - 7. Contractor's name and address.
 - 8. Report date.
 - 9. Signature of TAB supervisor who certifies the report.
 - 10. Table of Contents with the total number of pages defined for each section of the report. Number each page in the report.
 - 11. Summary of contents including the following:
 - a. Indicated versus final performance.

- b. Notable characteristics of systems.
 - c. Description of system operation sequence if it varies from the Contract Documents.
 - 12. Nomenclature sheets for each item of equipment.
 - 13. Data for terminal units, including manufacturer's name, type, size, and fittings.
 - 14. Notes to explain why certain final data in the body of reports vary from indicated values.
 - 15. Test conditions for fans and pump performance forms including the following:
 - a. Settings for outdoor-, return-, and exhaust-air dampers.
 - b. Conditions of filters.
 - c. Cooling coil, wet- and dry-bulb conditions.
 - d. Face and bypass damper settings at coils.
 - e. Fan drive settings including settings and percentage of maximum pitch diameter.
 - f. Inlet vane settings for variable-air-volume systems.
 - g. Settings for supply-air, static-pressure controller.
 - h. Other system operating conditions that affect performance.
 - D. System Diagrams: Include schematic layouts of air and hydronic distribution systems. Present each system with single-line diagram and include the following:
 - 1. Quantities of outdoor, supply, return, and exhaust airflows.
 - 2. Water and steam flow rates.
 - 3. Duct, outlet, and inlet sizes.
 - 4. Pipe and valve sizes and locations.
 - 5. Terminal units.
 - 6. Balancing stations.
 - 7. Position of balancing devices.
- 3.12 ADDITIONAL TESTS
- A. Within 90 days of completing TAB, perform additional TAB to verify that balanced conditions are being maintained throughout and to correct unusual conditions.
 - B. Seasonal Periods: If initial TAB procedures were not performed during near-peak summer and winter conditions, perform additional TAB during near-peak summer and winter conditions.

END OF SECTION

SECTION 23 0713-DUCT INSULATION

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 SUMMARY

- A. Section includes insulating the following duct services:
 - 1. Indoor, concealed supply and outdoor air.
 - 2. Indoor, exposed supply and outdoor air.
 - 3. Indoor, concealed return located in unconditioned space.
 - 4. Indoor, exposed return located in unconditioned space.
 - 5. Indoor, concealed exhaust between isolation damper and penetration of building exterior.
 - 6. Indoor, exposed exhaust between isolation damper and penetration of building exterior.
 - 7. Outdoor, concealed supply and return.
 - 8. Outdoor, exposed supply and return.

- B. Related Sections:
 - 1. Section 23 0719 "HVAC Piping Insulation."
 - 2. Section 23 31 13 "Metal Ducts" for duct liners.

1.2 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product indicated.

- B. Shop Drawings: Include plans, elevations, sections, details, and attachments to other work.
 - 1. Detail application of protective shields, saddles, and inserts at hangers for each type of insulation and hanger.
 - 2. Detail insulation application at elbows, fittings, dampers, specialties and flanges for each type of insulation.
 - 3. Detail application of field-applied jackets.
 - 4. Detail application at linkages of control devices.

1.3 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Field quality-control reports.

1.4 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Surface-Burning Characteristics: For insulation and related materials, as determined by testing identical products according to ASTM E 84, by a testing agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction. Factory label insulation and jacket materials and

adhesive, mastic, tapes, and cement material containers, with appropriate markings of applicable testing agency.

1. Insulation Installed Indoors: Flame-spread index of 25 or less, and smoke-developed index of 50 or less.
2. Insulation Installed Outdoors: Flame-spread index of 75 or less, and smoke-developed index of 150 or less.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 INSULATION MATERIALS

- A. Comply with requirements in "Duct Insulation Schedule, General," "Indoor Duct and Plenum Insulation Schedule," and "Aboveground, Outdoor Duct and Plenum Insulation Schedule" articles for where insulating materials shall be applied.
- B. Products shall not contain asbestos, lead, mercury, or mercury compounds.
- C. Products that come in contact with stainless steel shall have a leachable chloride content of less than 50 ppm when tested according to ASTM C 871.
- D. Insulation materials for use on austenitic stainless steel shall be qualified as acceptable according to ASTM C 795.
- E. Foam insulation materials shall not use CFC or HCFC blowing agents in the manufacturing process.
- F. Mineral-Fiber Blanket Insulation: Mineral or glass fibers bonded with a thermosetting resin. Comply with ASTM C 553, Type II and ASTM C 1290, Type II with factory-applied vinyl jacket. Factory-applied jacket requirements are specified in "Factory-Applied Jackets" Article.
 1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the following:
 - a. CertainTeed Corp.; SoftTouch Duct Wrap.
 - b. Johns Manville; Microlite.
 - c. Knauf Insulation; Friendly Feel Duct Wrap.
 - d. Owens Corning; SOFTR All-Service Duct Wrap.
- G. Mineral-Fiber Board Insulation: Mineral or glass fibers bonded with a thermosetting resin. Comply with ASTM C 612, Type IA or Type IB. For duct and plenum applications, provide insulation without factory-applied jacket. Factory-applied jacket requirements are specified in "Factory-Applied Jackets" Article.
 1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the following:
 - a. CertainTeed Corp.; Commercial Board.

- b. Johns Manville; 800 Series Spin-Glas.
- c. Knauf Insulation; Insulation Board.
- d. Owens Corning; Fiberglas 700 Series.

2.2 ADHESIVES

- A. Materials shall be compatible with insulation materials, jackets, and substrates and for bonding insulation to itself and to surfaces to be insulated unless otherwise indicated.
- B. Mineral-Fiber Adhesive: Comply with MIL-A-3316C, Class 2, Grade A.
 - 1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the following:
 - a. Childers Brand, Specialty Construction Brands, Inc., a business of H. B. Fuller Company; CP-127.
 - b. Eagle Bridges - Marathon Industries; 225.
 - c. Foster Brand, Specialty Construction Brands, Inc., a business of H. B. Fuller Company; 85-60/85-70.
 - d. Mon-Eco Industries, Inc.; 22-25.
 - 2. For indoor applications, adhesive shall have a VOC content of 80 g/L or less when calculated according to 40 CFR 59, Subpart D (EPA Method 24).
 - 3. Adhesive shall comply with the testing and product requirements of the California Department of Health Services' "Standard Practice for the Testing of Volatile Organic Emissions from Various Sources Using Small-Scale Environmental Chambers."
- C. ASJ Adhesive, and FSK Jacket Adhesive: Comply with MIL-A-3316C, Class 2, Grade A for bonding insulation jacket lap seams and joints.
 - 1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the following:
 - a. Childers Brand, Specialty Construction Brands, Inc., a business of H. B. Fuller Company; CP-82.
 - b. Eagle Bridges - Marathon Industries; 225.
 - c. Foster Brand, Specialty Construction Brands, Inc., a business of H. B. Fuller Company; 85-50.
 - d. Mon-Eco Industries, Inc.; 22-25.
 - 2. For indoor applications, adhesive shall have a VOC content of 50 g/L or less when calculated according to 40 CFR 59, Subpart D (EPA Method 24).
 - 3. Adhesive shall comply with the testing and product requirements of the California Department of Health Services' "Standard Practice for the Testing of Volatile

Organic Emissions from Various Sources Using Small-Scale Environmental Chambers."

- D. PVC Jacket Adhesive: Compatible with PVC jacket.
1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the following:
 - a. Dow Corning Corporation; 739, Dow Silicone.
 - b. Johns Manville; Zeston Perma-Weld, CEEL-TITE Solvent Welding Adhesive.
 - c. P.I.C. Plastics, Inc.; Welding Adhesive.
 - d. Speedline Corporation; Polyco VP Adhesive.
 2. For indoor applications, adhesive shall have a VOC content of 50 g/L or less when calculated according to 40 CFR 59, Subpart D (EPA Method 24).
 3. Adhesive shall comply with the testing and product requirements of the California Department of Health Services' "Standard Practice for the Testing of Volatile Organic Emissions from Various Sources Using Small-Scale Environmental Chambers."

2.3 MASTICS

- A. Materials shall be compatible with insulation materials, jackets, and substrates; comply with MIL-PRF-19565C, Type II.
1. For indoor applications, use mastics that have a VOC content of 50 g/L or less when calculated according to 40 CFR 59, Subpart D (EPA Method 24).
- B. Vapor-Barrier Mastic: Water based; suitable for indoor use on below ambient services.
1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the following:
 - a. Foster Brand, Specialty Construction Brands, Inc., a business of H. B. Fuller Company; 30-80/30-90.
 - b. Vimasco Corporation; 749.
 2. Water-Vapor Permeance: ASTM E 96/E 96M, Procedure B, 0.013 perm at 43-mil dry film thickness.
 3. Service Temperature Range: Minus 20 to plus 180 deg F.
 4. Solids Content: ASTM D 1644, 58 percent by volume and 70 percent by weight.
 5. Color: White.
- C. Breather Mastic: Water based; suitable for indoor and outdoor use on above ambient services.
1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the following:
 - a. Childers Brand, Specialty Construction Brands, Inc., a business of H. B. Fuller Company; CP-10.

- b. Eagle Bridges - Marathon Industries; 550.
 - c. Foster Brand, Specialty Construction Brands, Inc., a business of H. B. Fuller Company; 46-50.
 - d. Mon-Eco Industries, Inc.; 55-50.
 - e. Vimasco Corporation; WC-1/WC-5.
2. Water-Vapor Permeance: ASTM F 1249, 1.8 perms at 0.0625-inch dry film thickness.
 3. Service Temperature Range: Minus 20 to plus 180 deg F.
 4. Solids Content: 60 percent by volume and 66 percent by weight.
 5. Color: White.

2.4 SEALANTS

A. FSK and Metal Jacket Flashing Sealants:

1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the following:
 - a. Childers Brand, Specialty Construction Brands, Inc., a business of H. B. Fuller Company; CP-76.
 - b. Eagle Bridges - Marathon Industries; 405.
 - c. Foster Brand, Specialty Construction Brands, Inc., a business of H. B. Fuller Company; 95-44.
 - d. Mon-Eco Industries, Inc.; 44-05.
2. Materials shall be compatible with insulation materials, jackets, and substrates.
3. Fire- and water-resistant, flexible, elastomeric sealant.
4. Service Temperature Range: Minus 40 to plus 250 deg F.
5. Color: Aluminum.
6. For indoor applications, use sealants that have a VOC content of 420 g/L or less when calculated according to 40 CFR 59, Subpart D (EPA Method 24).
7. Sealants shall comply with the testing and product requirements of the California Department of Health Services' "Standard Practice for the Testing of Volatile Organic Emissions from Various Sources Using Small-Scale Environmental Chambers."

B. ASJ Flashing Sealants, and Vinyl and PVC Jacket Flashing Sealants:

1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, available products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
 - a. Childers Brand, Specialty Construction Brands, Inc., a business of H. B. Fuller Company; CP-76.
2. Materials shall be compatible with insulation materials, jackets, and substrates.
3. Fire- and water-resistant, flexible, elastomeric sealant.

4. Service Temperature Range: Minus 40 to plus 250 deg F.
5. Color: White.
6. For indoor applications, sealants shall have a VOC content of 420 g/L or less when calculated according to 40 CFR 59, Subpart D (EPA Method 24).
7. Sealants shall comply with the testing and product requirements of the California Department of Health Services' "Standard Practice for the Testing of Volatile Organic Emissions from Various Sources Using Small-Scale Environmental Chambers."

2.5 FACTORY-APPLIED JACKETS

- A. Insulation system schedules indicate factory-applied jackets on various applications. When factory-applied jackets are indicated, comply with the following:
1. ASJ: White, kraft-paper, fiberglass-reinforced scrim with aluminum-foil backing; complying with ASTM C 1136, Type I.
 2. ASJ-SSL: ASJ with self-sealing, pressure-sensitive, acrylic-based adhesive covered by a removable protective strip; complying with ASTM C 1136, Type I.
 3. FSK Jacket: Aluminum-foil, fiberglass-reinforced scrim with kraft-paper backing; complying with ASTM C 1136, Type II.
 4. FSP Jacket: Aluminum-foil, fiberglass-reinforced scrim with polyethylene backing; complying with ASTM C 1136, Type II.
 5. Vinyl Jacket: White vinyl with a permeance of 1.3 perms when tested according to ASTM E 96/E 96M, Procedure A, and complying with NFPA 90A and NFPA 90B.

2.6 FIELD-APPLIED JACKETS

- A. Field-applied jackets shall comply with ASTM C 921, Type I, unless otherwise indicated.
- B. FSK Jacket: Aluminum-foil-face, fiberglass-reinforced scrim with kraft-paper backing.
- C. PVC Jacket: High-impact-resistant, UV-resistant PVC complying with ASTM D 1784, Class 16354-C; thickness as scheduled; roll stock ready for shop or field cutting and forming. Thickness is indicated in field-applied jacket schedules.
1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the following:
 - a. Johns Manville; Zeston.
 - b. P.I.C. Plastics, Inc.; FG Series.
 - c. Proto Corporation; LoSmoke.
 - d. Speedline Corporation; SmokeSafe.
 2. Adhesive: As recommended by jacket material manufacturer.
 3. Color: Color-code jackets based on system. Color as selected by Architect].
- D. Aluminum Jacket: Comply with ASTM B 209, Alloy 3003, 3005, 3105, or 5005, Temper H-14.

1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the following:
 - a. Childers Brand, Specialty Construction Brands, Inc., a business of H. B. Fuller Company; Metal Jacketing Systems.
 - b. ITW Insulation Systems; Aluminum and Stainless Steel Jacketing.
 - c. RPR Products, Inc.; Insul-Mate.
2. Sheet and roll stock ready for shop or field sizing.
3. Finish and thickness are indicated in field-applied jacket schedules.
4. Moisture Barrier for Indoor Applications: 1-mil- thick, heat-bonded polyethylene and kraft paper.
5. Moisture Barrier for Outdoor Applications: 3-mil- thick, heat-bonded polyethylene and kraft paper.

2.7 TAPES

- A. ASJ Tape: White vapor-retarder tape matching factory-applied jacket with acrylic adhesive, complying with ASTM C 1136.
 1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the following:
 - a. ABI, Ideal Tape Division; 428 AWF ASJ.
 - b. Avery Dennison Corporation, Specialty Tapes Division; Fasson 0836.
 - c. Compac Corporation; 104 and 105.
 - d. Venture Tape; 1540 CW Plus, 1542 CW Plus, and 1542 CW Plus/SQ.
 2. Width: 3 inches.
 3. Thickness: 11.5 mils.
 4. Adhesion: 90 ounces force/inch in width.
 5. Elongation: 2 percent.
 6. Tensile Strength: 40 lbf/inch in width.
 7. ASJ Tape Disks and Squares: Precut disks or squares of ASJ tape.
- B. Aluminum-Foil Tape: Vapor-retarder tape with acrylic adhesive.
 1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the following:
 - a. ABI, Ideal Tape Division; 488 AWF.
 - b. Avery Dennison Corporation, Specialty Tapes Division; Fasson 0800.
 - c. Compac Corporation; 120.
 - d. Venture Tape; 3520 CW.
 2. Width: 2 inches.
 3. Thickness: 3.7 mils.

4. Adhesion: 100 ounces force/inch in width.
5. Elongation: 5 percent.
6. Tensile Strength: 34 lbf/inch in width.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 PREPARATION

- A. Surface Preparation: Clean and dry surfaces to receive insulation. Remove materials that will adversely affect insulation application.

3.2 GENERAL INSTALLATION REQUIREMENTS

- A. Install insulation materials, accessories, and finishes with smooth, straight, and even surfaces; free of voids throughout the length of ducts and fittings.
- B. Install insulation materials, vapor barriers or retarders, jackets, and thicknesses required for each item of duct system as specified in insulation system schedules.
- C. Install accessories compatible with insulation materials and suitable for the service. Install accessories that do not corrode, soften, or otherwise attack insulation or jacket in either wet or dry state.
- D. Install insulation with longitudinal seams at top and bottom of horizontal runs.
- E. Install multiple layers of insulation with longitudinal and end seams staggered.
- F. Keep insulation materials dry during application and finishing.
- G. Install insulation with tight longitudinal seams and end joints. Bond seams and joints with adhesive recommended by insulation material manufacturer.
- H. Install insulation with least number of joints practical.
- I. Where vapor barrier is indicated, seal joints, seams, and penetrations in insulation at hangers, supports, anchors, and other projections with vapor-barrier mastic.
 1. Install insulation continuously through hangers and around anchor attachments.
 2. For insulation application where vapor barriers are indicated, extend insulation on anchor legs from point of attachment to supported item to point of attachment to structure. Taper and seal ends at attachment to structure with vapor-barrier mastic.
 3. Install insert materials and install insulation to tightly join the insert. Seal insulation to insulation inserts with adhesive or sealing compound recommended by insulation material manufacturer.
- J. Apply adhesives, mastics, and sealants at manufacturer's recommended coverage rate and wet and dry film thicknesses.
- K. Install insulation with factory-applied jackets as follows:

1. Draw jacket tight and smooth.
 2. Cover circumferential joints with 3-inch- wide strips, of same material as insulation jacket. Secure strips with adhesive and outward clinching staples along both edges of strip, spaced 4 inches o.c.
 3. Overlap jacket longitudinal seams at least 1-1/2 inches. Clean and dry surface to receive self-sealing lap. Staple laps with outward clinching staples along edge at 4 inches o.c.
 - a. For below ambient services, apply vapor-barrier mastic over staples.
 4. Cover joints and seams with tape, according to insulation material manufacturer's written instructions, to maintain vapor seal.
 5. Where vapor barriers are indicated, apply vapor-barrier mastic on seams and joints and at ends adjacent to duct flanges and fittings.
- L. Cut insulation in a manner to avoid compressing insulation more than 75 percent of its nominal thickness.
- M. Finish installation with systems at operating conditions. Repair joint separations and cracking due to thermal movement.
- N. Repair damaged insulation facings by applying same facing material over damaged areas. Extend patches at least 4 inches beyond damaged areas. Adhere, staple, and seal patches similar to butt joints.

3.3 PENETRATIONS

- A. Insulation Installation at Roof Penetrations: Install insulation continuously through roof penetrations.
1. Seal penetrations with flashing sealant.
 2. For applications requiring only indoor insulation, terminate insulation above roof surface and seal with joint sealant. For applications requiring indoor and outdoor insulation, install insulation for outdoor applications tightly joined to indoor insulation ends. Seal joint with joint sealant.
 3. Extend jacket of outdoor insulation outside roof flashing at least 2 inches below top of roof flashing.
 4. Seal jacket to roof flashing with flashing sealant.
- B. Insulation Installation at Aboveground Exterior Wall Penetrations: Install insulation continuously through wall penetrations.
1. Seal penetrations with flashing sealant.
 2. For applications requiring only indoor insulation, terminate insulation inside wall surface and seal with joint sealant. For applications requiring indoor and outdoor insulation, install insulation for outdoor applications tightly joined to indoor insulation ends. Seal joint with joint sealant.
 3. Extend jacket of outdoor insulation outside wall flashing and overlap wall flashing at least 2 inches.
 4. Seal jacket to wall flashing with flashing sealant.

- C. Insulation Installation at Interior Wall and Partition Penetrations (That Are Not Fire Rated):
Install insulation continuously through walls and partitions.
- D. Insulation Installation at Fire-Rated Wall and Partition Penetrations: Terminate insulation at fire damper sleeves for fire-rated wall and partition penetrations. Externally insulate damper sleeves to match adjacent insulation and overlap duct insulation at least 2 inches.
 - 1. Comply with requirements in Section 07 8413 "Penetration Firestopping" for firestopping and fire-resistive joint sealers.
- E. Insulation Installation at Floor Penetrations:
 - 1. Duct: For penetrations through fire-rated assemblies, terminate insulation at fire damper sleeves and externally insulate damper sleeve beyond floor to match adjacent duct insulation. Overlap damper sleeve and duct insulation at least 2 inches.
 - 2. Seal penetrations through fire-rated assemblies. Comply with requirements in Section 07 8413 "Penetration Firestopping."

3.4 INSTALLATION OF MINERAL-FIBER INSULATION

- A. Blanket Insulation Installation on Ducts and Plenums: Secure with adhesive and insulation pins.
 - 1. Apply adhesives according to manufacturer's recommended coverage rates per unit area, for 50 percent coverage of duct and plenum surfaces.
 - 2. Apply adhesive to entire circumference of ducts and to all surfaces of fittings and transitions.
 - 3. Install either capacitor-discharge-weld pins and speed washers or cupped-head, capacitor-discharge-weld pins on sides and bottom of horizontal ducts and sides of vertical ducts as follows:
 - a. On duct sides with dimensions 18 inches and smaller, place pins along longitudinal centerline of duct. Space 3 inches maximum from insulation end joints, and 16 inches o.c.
 - b. On duct sides with dimensions larger than 18 inches, place pins 16 inches o.c. each way, and 3 inches maximum from insulation joints. Install additional pins to hold insulation tightly against surface at cross bracing.
 - c. Pins may be omitted from top surface of horizontal, rectangular ducts and plenums.
 - d. Do not overcompress insulation during installation.
 - e. Impale insulation over pins and attach speed washers.
 - f. Cut excess portion of pins extending beyond speed washers or bend parallel with insulation surface. Cover exposed pins and washers with tape matching insulation facing.
 - 4. For ducts and plenums with surface temperatures below ambient, install a continuous unbroken vapor barrier. Create a facing lap for longitudinal seams and end joints with insulation by removing 2 inches from one edge and one end of insulation segment. Secure laps to adjacent insulation section with 1/2-inch outward-clinching staples, 1 inch o.c. Install vapor barrier consisting of factory- or

field-applied jacket, adhesive, vapor-barrier mastic, and sealant at joints, seams, and protrusions.

- a. Repair punctures, tears, and penetrations with tape or mastic to maintain vapor-barrier seal.
 - b. Install vapor stops for ductwork and plenums operating below 50 deg F at 18-foot intervals. Vapor stops shall consist of vapor-barrier mastic applied in a Z-shaped pattern over insulation face, along butt end of insulation, and over the surface. Cover insulation face and surface to be insulated a width equal to two times the insulation thickness, but not less than 3 inches.
5. Overlap unfaced blankets a minimum of 2 inches on longitudinal seams and end joints. At end joints, secure with steel bands spaced a maximum of 18 inches o.c.
 6. Install insulation on rectangular duct elbows and transitions with a full insulation section for each surface. Install insulation on round and flat-oval duct elbows with individually mitered gores cut to fit the elbow.
 7. Insulate duct stiffeners, hangers, and flanges that protrude beyond insulation surface with 6-inch- wide strips of same material used to insulate duct. Secure on alternating sides of stiffener, hanger, and flange with pins spaced 6 inches o.c.
- B. Board Insulation Installation on Ducts and Plenums: Secure with adhesive and insulation pins.
1. Apply adhesives according to manufacturer's recommended coverage rates per unit area, for 100 percent coverage of duct and plenum surfaces.
 2. Apply adhesive to entire circumference of ducts and to all surfaces of fittings and transitions.
 3. Install either capacitor-discharge-weld pins and speed washers or cupped-head, capacitor-discharge-weld pins on sides and bottom of horizontal ducts and sides of vertical ducts as follows:
 - a. On duct sides with dimensions 18 inches and smaller, place pins along longitudinal centerline of duct. Space 3 inches maximum from insulation end joints, and 16 inches o.c.
 - b. On duct sides with dimensions larger than 18 inches, space pins 16 inches o.c. each way, and 3 inches maximum from insulation joints. Install additional pins to hold insulation tightly against surface at cross bracing.
 - c. Pins may be omitted from top surface of horizontal, rectangular ducts and plenums.
 - d. Do not overcompress insulation during installation.
 - e. Cut excess portion of pins extending beyond speed washers or bend parallel with insulation surface. Cover exposed pins and washers with tape matching insulation facing.
 4. For ducts and plenums with surface temperatures below ambient, install a continuous unbroken vapor barrier. Create a facing lap for longitudinal seams and end joints with insulation by removing 2 inches from one edge and one end of insulation segment. Secure laps to adjacent insulation section with 1/2-inch outward-clinching staples, 1 inch o.c. Install vapor barrier consisting of factory- or field-applied jacket, adhesive, vapor-barrier mastic, and sealant at joints, seams, and protrusions.

- a. Repair punctures, tears, and penetrations with tape or mastic to maintain vapor-barrier seal.
 - b. Install vapor stops for ductwork and plenums operating below 50 deg F at 18-foot intervals. Vapor stops shall consist of vapor-barrier mastic applied in a Z-shaped pattern over insulation face, along butt end of insulation, and over the surface. Cover insulation face and surface to be insulated a width equal to two times the insulation thickness, but not less than 3 inches.
5. Install insulation on rectangular duct elbows and transitions with a full insulation section for each surface. Groove and score insulation to fit as closely as possible to outside and inside radius of elbows. Install insulation on round and flat-oval duct elbows with individually mitered gores cut to fit the elbow.
 6. Insulate duct stiffeners, hangers, and flanges that protrude beyond insulation surface with 6-inch- wide strips of same material used to insulate duct. Secure on alternating sides of stiffener, hanger, and flange with pins spaced 6 inches o.c.

3.5 FIELD-APPLIED JACKET INSTALLATION

- A. Where FSK jackets are indicated, install as follows:
 1. Draw jacket material smooth and tight.
 2. Install lap or joint strips with same material as jacket.
 3. Secure jacket to insulation with manufacturer's recommended adhesive.
 4. Install jacket with 1-1/2-inch laps at longitudinal seams and 3-inch- wide joint strips at end joints.
 5. Seal openings, punctures, and breaks in vapor-retarder jackets and exposed insulation with vapor-barrier mastic.
- B. Where PVC jackets are indicated, install with 1-inch overlap at longitudinal seams and end joints; for horizontal applications, install with longitudinal seams along top and bottom of tanks and vessels. Seal with manufacturer's recommended adhesive.
 1. Apply two continuous beads of adhesive to seams and joints, one bead under lap and the finish bead along seam and joint edge.
- C. Where metal jackets are indicated, install with 2-inch overlap at longitudinal seams and end joints. Overlap longitudinal seams arranged to shed water. Seal end joints with weatherproof sealant recommended by insulation manufacturer. Secure jacket with stainless-steel bands 12 inches o.c. and at end joints.

3.6 FINISHES

- A. Insulation with ASJ or Other Paintable Jacket Material: Paint jacket with paint system identified below and as specified in Section 09 9113 "Exterior Painting" and Section 09 9123 "Interior Painting."
 1. Flat Acrylic Finish: Two finish coats over a primer that is compatible with jacket material and finish coat paint. Add fungicidal agent to render fabric mildew proof.
 - a. Finish Coat Material: Interior, flat, latex-emulsion size.

- B. Color: Final color as selected by Architect. Vary first and second coats to allow visual inspection of the completed Work.
- C. Do not field paint aluminum or stainless-steel jackets.

3.7 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Perform tests and inspections.
- B. All insulation applications will be considered defective Work if sample inspection reveals noncompliance with requirements.

3.8 DUCT INSULATION SCHEDULE, GENERAL

- A. Refer to schedules on drawings for material and thickness application to duct systems.

- B. Plenums and Ducts Requiring Insulation:

1. Indoor, concealed supply and outdoor air.
2. Indoor, exposed supply and outdoor air.
3. Indoor, concealed return located in unconditioned space.
4. Indoor, exposed return located in unconditioned space.
5. Indoor, concealed exhaust between isolation damper and penetration of building exterior.
6. Indoor, exposed exhaust between isolation damper and penetration of building exterior.
7. Outdoor, concealed supply and return.
8. Outdoor, exposed supply and return.

- C. Items Not Insulated:

1. Fibrous-glass ducts.
2. Metal ducts with duct liner of sufficient thickness to comply with energy code and ASHRAE/IESNA 90.1-2007.
3. Factory-insulated flexible ducts.
4. Factory-insulated plenums and casings.
5. Flexible connectors.
6. Vibration-control devices.
7. Factory-insulated access panels and doors.

END OF SECTION

SECTION 23 0800 - COMMISSIONING OF HVAC

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and other Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section includes commissioning process requirements for HVAC&R systems, assemblies, and equipment.
- B. Related Sections:
 - 1. Section 01 9113 "General Commissioning Requirements" for general commissioning process requirements.

1.3 DEFINITIONS

- A. Commissioning Plan: A document that outlines the organization, schedule, allocation of resources, and documentation requirements of the commissioning process.
- B. CxA: Commissioning Authority.
- C. HVAC&R: Heating, Ventilating, Air Conditioning, and Refrigeration.
- D. Systems, Subsystems, Equipment, and Components: Where these terms are used together or separately, they shall mean "as-built" systems, subsystems, equipment, and components.

1.4 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Certificates of readiness.
- B. Certificates of completion of installation, prestart, and startup activities.

1.5 CONTRACTOR'S RESPONSIBILITIES

- A. Perform commissioning tests at the direction of the CxA.
- B. Attend construction phase controls coordination meeting.
- C. Attend testing, adjusting, and balancing review and coordination meeting.

- D. Participate in HVAC&R systems, assemblies, equipment, and component maintenance orientation and inspection as directed by the CxA.
- E. Provide information requested by the CxA for final commissioning documentation.
- F. Provide measuring instruments and logging devices to record test data, and provide data acquisition equipment to record data for the complete range of testing for the required test period.

1.6 CxA'S RESPONSIBILITIES

- A. Provide Project-specific construction checklists and commissioning process test procedures for actual HVAC&R systems, assemblies, equipment, and components to be furnished and installed as part of the construction contract.
- B. Direct commissioning testing.
- C. Verify testing, adjusting, and balancing of Work are complete.
- D. Provide test data, inspection reports, and certificates in Systems Manual.

1.7 COMMISSIONING DOCUMENTATION

- A. Provide the following information to the CxA for inclusion in the commissioning plan:
 - 1. Plan for delivery and review of submittals, systems manuals, and other documents and reports.
 - 2. Identification of installed systems, assemblies, equipment, and components including design changes that occurred during the construction phase.
 - 3. Process and schedule for completing construction checklists and manufacturer's prestart and startup checklists for HVAC&R systems, assemblies, equipment, and components to be verified and tested.
 - 4. Certificate of completion certifying that installation, prestart checks, and startup procedures have been completed.
 - 5. Certificate of readiness certifying that HVAC&R systems, subsystems, equipment, and associated controls are ready for testing.
 - 6. Test and inspection reports and certificates.
 - 7. Corrective action documents.
 - 8. Verification of testing, adjusting, and balancing reports.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS (Not Used)

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 TESTING PREPARATION

- A. Certify that HVAC&R systems, subsystems, and equipment have been installed, calibrated, and started and are operating according to the Contract Documents.

- B. Certify that HVAC&R instrumentation and control systems have been completed and calibrated, that they are operating according to the Contract Documents, and that pretest set points have been recorded.
- C. Certify that testing, adjusting, and balancing procedures have been completed and that testing, adjusting, and balancing reports have been submitted, discrepancies corrected, and corrective work approved.
- D. Set systems, subsystems, and equipment into operating mode to be tested (e.g., normal shutdown, normal auto position, normal manual position, unoccupied cycle, emergency power, and alarm conditions).
- E. Inspect and verify the position of each device and interlock identified on checklists.
- F. Check safety cutouts, alarms, and interlocks with smoke control and life-safety systems during each mode of operation.
- G. Testing Instrumentation: Install measuring instruments and logging devices to record test data as directed by the CxA.

3.2 Testing AND BALANCING VERIFICATION

- A. Prior to performance of testing and balancing Work, provide copies of reports, sample forms, checklists, and certificates to the CxA.
- B. Notify the CxA at least 10 days in advance of testing and balancing Work, and provide access for the CxA to witness testing and balancing Work.
- C. Provide technicians, instrumentation, and tools to verify testing and balancing of HVAC&R systems at the direction of the CxA.
 - 1. The CxA will notify testing and balancing Contractor 10 days in advance of the date of field verification. Notice will not include data points to be verified.
 - 2. The testing and balancing Contractor shall use the same instruments (by model and serial number) that were used when original data were collected.
 - 3. Failure of an item includes, other than sound, a deviation of more than 10 percent. Failure of more than 10 percent of selected items shall result in rejection of final testing, adjusting, and balancing report. For sound pressure readings, a deviation of 3 dB shall result in rejection of final testing. Variations in background noise must be considered.
 - 4. Remedy the deficiency and notify the CxA so verification of failed portions can be performed.

3.3 GENERAL TESTING REQUIREMENTS

- A. Provide technicians, instrumentation, and tools to perform commissioning test at the direction of the CxA.
- B. Scope of HVAC&R testing shall include entire HVAC&R installation, from central equipment for heat generation and refrigeration through distribution systems to each

conditioned space. Testing shall include measuring capacities and effectiveness of operational and control functions.

- C. Test all operating modes, interlocks, control responses, and responses to abnormal or emergency conditions, and verify proper response of building automation system controllers and sensors.
- D. The CxA along with the HVAC&R Contractor, testing and balancing Contractor, and HVAC&R Instrumentation and Control Contractor shall prepare detailed testing plans, procedures, and checklists for HVAC&R systems, subsystems, and equipment.
- E. Tests will be performed using design conditions whenever possible.
- F. Simulated conditions may need to be imposed using an artificial load when it is not practical to test under design conditions. Before simulating conditions, calibrate testing instruments. Provide equipment to simulate loads. Set simulated conditions as directed by the CxA and document simulated conditions and methods of simulation. After tests, return settings to normal operating conditions.
- G. The CxA may direct that set points be altered when simulating conditions is not practical.
- H. The CxA may direct that sensor values be altered with a signal generator when design or simulating conditions and altering set points are not practical.
- I. If tests cannot be completed because of a deficiency outside the scope of the HVAC&R system, document the deficiency and report it to the Owner. After deficiencies are resolved, reschedule tests.
- J. If the testing plan indicates specific seasonal testing, complete appropriate initial performance tests and documentation and schedule seasonal tests.

3.4 HVAC&R systems, subsystems, and equipment Testing Procedures

- A. HVAC&R Instrumentation and Control System Testing: Assist the CxA with preparation of testing plans.
- B. Refrigeration System Testing: Provide technicians, instrumentation, tools, and equipment to test performance of packaged and terminal units, refrigerant compressors and condensers, heat pumps, and other refrigeration systems. The CxA shall determine the sequence of testing and testing procedures for each equipment item and pipe section to be tested.
- C. HVAC&R Distribution System Testing: Provide technicians, instrumentation, tools, and equipment to test performance of air distribution systems; special exhaust; and other distribution systems, including HVAC&R terminal equipment and unitary equipment.

END OF SECTION

SECTION 23 2300-REFRIGERANT PIPING

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 SUMMARY

- A. This Section includes refrigerant piping used for air-conditioning applications.

1.2 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Line Test Pressure for Refrigerant R-134a:
 - 1. Suction Lines for Air-Conditioning Applications: 115 psig.
 - 2. Suction Lines for Heat-Pump Applications: 225 psig.
 - 3. Hot-Gas and Liquid Lines: 225 psig.
- B. Line Test Pressure for Refrigerant R-407C:
 - 1. Suction Lines for Air-Conditioning Applications: 230 psig.
 - 2. Suction Lines for Heat-Pump Applications: 380 psig.
 - 3. Hot-Gas and Liquid Lines: 380 psig.
- C. Line Test Pressure for Refrigerant R-410A:
 - 1. Suction Lines for Air-Conditioning Applications: 300 psig.
 - 2. Suction Lines for Heat-Pump Applications: 535 psig.
 - 3. Hot-Gas and Liquid Lines: 535 psig.

1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of valve and refrigerant piping specialty indicated. Include pressure drop based on manufacturer's test data.
- B. Shop Drawings: Show layout of refrigerant piping and specialties, including pipe, tube, and fitting sizes, flow capacities, valve arrangements and locations, slopes of horizontal runs, oil traps, double risers, wall and floor penetrations, and equipment connection details. Show interface and spatial relationships between piping and equipment.
 - 1. Refrigerant piping indicated on Drawings is schematic only. Size piping and design actual piping layout, including oil traps, double risers, specialties, and pipe and tube sizes to accommodate, as a minimum, equipment provided, elevation difference between compressor and evaporator, and length of piping to ensure proper operation and compliance with warranties of connected equipment.

1.4 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Field quality-control test reports.

1.5 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

- A. Operation and maintenance data.

1.6 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Comply with ASHRAE 15, "Safety Code for Refrigeration Systems."
- B. Comply with ASME B31.5, "Refrigeration Piping and Heat Transfer Components."

1.7 PRODUCT STORAGE AND HANDLING

- A. Store piping in a clean and protected area with end caps in place to ensure that piping interior and exterior are clean when installed.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 COPPER TUBE AND FITTINGS

- A. Copper Tube: ASTM B 280, Type ACR.
- B. Wrought-Copper Fittings: ASME B16.22.
- C. Wrought-Copper Unions: ASME B16.22.
- D. Solder Filler Metals: ASTM B 32. Use 95-5 tin antimony or alloy HB solder to join copper socket fittings on copper pipe.
- E. Brazing Filler Metals: AWS A5.8.
- F. Flexible Connectors:
 - 1. Body: Tin-bronze bellows with woven, flexible, tinned-bronze-wire-reinforced protective jacket.
 - 2. End Connections: Socket ends.
 - 3. Offset Performance: Capable of minimum 3/4-inch misalignment in minimum 7-inch-long assembly.
 - 4. Pressure Rating: Factory test at minimum 500 psig.
 - 5. Maximum Operating Temperature: 250 deg F.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 PIPING APPLICATIONS

- A. Hot-Gas and Liquid Lines, and Suction Lines: Copper, Type ACR, drawn-temper tubing and wrought-copper fittings with soldered joints.

3.2 PIPING INSTALLATION

- A. Drawing plans, schematics, and diagrams indicate general location and arrangement of system components; indicated locations and arrangements are to be used by contractor to size, route and install pipe and other design considerations per systems manufactures recommendations to install a complete system.
- B. Install refrigerant piping according to ASHRAE 15.

- C. Install piping in concealed locations unless otherwise indicated and except in equipment rooms and service areas.
- D. Install piping indicated to be exposed and piping in equipment rooms and service areas at right angles or parallel to building walls. Diagonal runs are prohibited unless specifically indicated otherwise.
- E. Install piping above accessible ceilings to allow sufficient space for ceiling panel removal.
- F. Install piping adjacent to machines to allow service and maintenance.
- G. Install piping free of sags and bends.
- H. Install fittings for changes in direction and branch connections.
- I. Select system components with pressure rating equal to or greater than system operating pressure.
- J. Install piping as short and direct as possible, with a minimum number of joints, elbows, and fittings.
- K. Arrange piping to allow inspection and service of refrigeration equipment. Install valves and specialties in accessible locations to allow for service and inspection. Install access doors or panels as specified in Section 08 31 13 "Access Doors and Frames" if valves or equipment requiring maintenance is concealed behind finished surfaces.
- L. Install refrigerant piping in protective conduit where installed belowground.
- M. Install refrigerant piping in rigid or flexible conduit in locations where exposed to mechanical injury.
- N. Slope refrigerant piping as follows:
 - 1. Install horizontal hot-gas discharge piping with a uniform slope downward away from compressor.
 - 2. Install horizontal suction lines with a uniform slope downward to compressor.
 - 3. Install traps and double risers to entrain oil in vertical runs.
 - 4. Liquid lines may be installed level.
- O. When brazing or soldering, remove solenoid-valve coils and sight glasses; also remove valve stems, seats, and packing, and accessible internal parts of refrigerant specialties. Do not apply heat near expansion-valve bulb.
- P. Install piping with adequate clearance between pipe and adjacent walls and hangers or between pipes for insulation installation.
- Q. Identify refrigerant piping and valves according to Section 23 0553 "Identification for HVAC Piping and Equipment."
- R. Install sleeves for piping penetrations of walls, ceilings, and floors. Comply with requirements for sleeves specified in Section 23 0517 "Sleeves and Sleeve Seals for HVAC Piping."

- S. Install sleeve seals for piping penetrations of concrete walls and slabs. Comply with requirements for sleeve seals specified in Section 23 0517 "Sleeves and Sleeve Seals for HVAC Piping."
- T. Install escutcheons for piping penetrations of walls, ceilings, and floors. Comply with requirements for escutcheons specified in Section 23 0518 "Escutcheons for HVAC Piping."

3.3 PIPE JOINT CONSTRUCTION

- A. Soldered Joints: Construct joints according to ASTM B 828 or CDA's "Copper Tube Handbook."
- B. Brazed Joints: Construct joints according to AWS's "Brazing Handbook," Chapter "Pipe and Tube."
 - 1. Use Type BcuP, copper-phosphorus alloy for joining copper socket fittings with copper pipe.
 - 2. Use Type BAg, cadmium-free silver alloy for joining copper with bronze or steel.

3.4 HANGERS AND SUPPORTS

- A. Hanger, support, and anchor products are specified in Section 23 0529 "Hangers and Supports for HVAC Piping and Equipment."
- B. Install the following pipe attachments:
 - 1. Adjustable steel clevis hangers for individual horizontal runs less than 20 feet long.
 - 2. Roller hangers and spring hangers for individual horizontal runs 20 feet or longer.
 - 3. Pipe Roller: MSS SP-58, Type 44 for multiple horizontal piping 20 feet or longer, supported on a trapeze.
 - 4. Spring hangers to support vertical runs.
 - 5. Copper-clad hangers and supports for hangers and supports in direct contact with copper pipe.
- C. Install hangers for copper tubing with the following maximum spacing and minimum rod sizes:
 - 1. NPS 1/2: Maximum span, 60 inches; minimum rod size, 1/4 inch.
 - 2. NPS 5/8: Maximum span, 60 inches; minimum rod size, 1/4 inch.
 - 3. NPS 1: Maximum span, 72 inches; minimum rod size, 1/4 inch.
 - 4. NPS 1-1/4: Maximum span, 96 inches; minimum rod size, 3/8 inch.
 - 5. NPS 1-1/2: Maximum span, 96 inches; minimum rod size, 3/8 inch.
 - 6. NPS 2: Maximum span, 96 inches; minimum rod size, 3/8 inch.
 - 7. NPS 2-1/2: Maximum span, 108 inches; minimum rod size, 3/8 inch.
 - 8. NPS 3: Maximum span, 10 feet; minimum rod size, 3/8 inch.

9. NPS 4: Maximum span, 12 feet; minimum rod size, 1/2 inch.

D. Support multifloor vertical runs at least at each floor.

3.5 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

A. Perform tests and inspections and prepare test reports.

B. Tests and Inspections:

1. Comply with ASME B31.5, Chapter VI.
2. Test refrigerant piping and specialties. Isolate compressor, condenser, evaporator, and safety devices from test pressure if they are not rated above the test pressure.
3. Test high- and low-pressure side piping of each system separately at not less than the pressures indicated in Part 1 "Performance Requirements" Article.
 - a. Fill system with nitrogen to the required test pressure.
 - b. System shall maintain test pressure at the manifold gage throughout duration of test.
 - c. Test joints and fittings with electronic leak detector or by brushing a small amount of soap and glycerin solution over joints.
 - d. Remake leaking joints using new materials, and retest until satisfactory results are achieved.

3.6 SYSTEM CHARGING

A. Charge system using the following procedures:

1. Install core in filter dryers after leak test but before evacuation.
2. Evacuate entire refrigerant system with a vacuum pump to 500 micrometers. If vacuum holds for 12 hours, system is ready for charging.
3. Break vacuum with refrigerant gas, allowing pressure to build up to 2 psig.
4. Charge system with a new filter-dryer core in charging line.

3.7 ADJUSTING

A. Adjust thermostatic expansion valve to obtain proper evaporator superheat.

B. Adjust high- and low-pressure switch settings to avoid short cycling in response to fluctuating suction pressure.

C. Adjust set-point temperature of air-conditioning or chilled-water controllers to the system design temperature.

D. Perform the following adjustments before operating the refrigeration system, according to manufacturer's written instructions:

1. Open shutoff valves in condenser water circuit.
2. Verify that compressor oil level is correct.
3. Open compressor suction and discharge valves.
4. Open refrigerant valves except bypass valves that are used for other purposes.

5. Check open compressor-motor alignment and verify lubrication for motors and bearings.
- E. Replace core of replaceable filter dryer after system has been adjusted and after design flow rates and pressures are established.

END OF SECTION

SECTION 23 3113-METAL DUCTS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:

1. Rectangular ducts and fittings.
2. Round ducts and fittings.
3. Sheet metal materials.
4. Duct liner.
5. Sealants and gaskets.
6. Hangers and supports.

B. Related Sections:

1. Section 23 0593 "Testing, Adjusting, and Balancing for HVAC" for testing, adjusting, and balancing requirements for metal ducts.
2. Section 23 3300 "Air Duct Accessories" for dampers, sound-control devices, duct-mounting access doors and panels, turning vanes, and flexible ducts.

1.2 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Airstream Surfaces: Surfaces in contact with the airstream shall comply with requirements in ASHRAE 62.1-2007.

1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product indicated.

B. Shop Drawings:

1. Fabrication, assembly, and installation, including plans, elevations, sections, components, and attachments to other work.
2. Factory- and shop-fabricated ducts and fittings.
3. Duct layout indicating sizes, configuration, and static-pressure classes.
4. Elevation of top of ducts.
5. Dimensions of main duct runs from building grid lines.
6. Fittings.
7. Reinforcement and spacing.
8. Seam and joint construction.
9. Penetrations through fire-rated and other partitions.
10. Equipment installation based on equipment being used on Project.
11. Locations for duct accessories, including dampers, turning vanes, and access doors and panels.
12. Hangers and supports, including methods for duct and building attachment and vibration isolation.

1.4 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Coordination Drawings: Plans, drawn to scale, on which the following items are shown and coordinated with each other, using input from installers of the items involved:
 - 1. Duct installation in congested spaces, indicating coordination with general construction, building components, and other building services. Indicate proposed changes to duct layout.
 - 2. Suspended ceiling components.
 - 3. Structural members to which duct will be attached.
 - 4. Size and location of initial access modules for acoustical tile.
 - 5. Penetrations of smoke barriers and fire-rated construction.
 - 6. Items penetrating finished ceiling including the following:
 - a. Lighting fixtures.
 - b. Air outlets and inlets.
 - c. Speakers.
 - d. Sprinklers.
 - e. Access panels.
 - f. Perimeter moldings.
- B. Welding certificates.

1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. ASHRAE Compliance: Applicable requirements in ASHRAE 62.1-2007, Section 5 - "Systems and Equipment" and Section 7 - "Construction and System Start-up."
- B. ASHRAE/IESNA Compliance: Applicable requirements in ASHRAE/IESNA 90.1-2007, Section 6.4.4 - "HVAC System Construction and Insulation."

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 RECTANGULAR DUCTS AND FITTINGS

- A. General Fabrication Requirements: Comply with SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible" based on indicated static-pressure class unless otherwise indicated.
- B. Transverse Joints: Select joint types and fabricate according to SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible," Figure 2-1, "Rectangular Duct/Transverse Joints," for static-pressure class, applicable sealing requirements, materials involved, duct-support intervals, and other provisions in SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible."
- C. Longitudinal Seams: Select seam types and fabricate according to SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible," Figure 2-2, "Rectangular Duct/Longitudinal Seams," for static-pressure class, applicable sealing requirements, materials involved, duct-support intervals, and other provisions in SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible."

- D. Elbows, Transitions, Offsets, Branch Connections, and Other Duct Construction: Select types and fabricate according to SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible," Chapter 4, "Fittings and Other Construction," for static-pressure class, applicable sealing requirements, materials involved, duct-support intervals, and other provisions in SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible."

2.2 ROUND DUCTS AND FITTINGS

- A. General Fabrication Requirements: Comply with SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible," Chapter 3, "Round, Oval, and Flexible Duct," based on indicated static-pressure class unless otherwise indicated.
 - 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
 - a. Lindab Inc.
 - b. McGill AirFlow LLC.
 - c. SEMCO Incorporated.
 - d. Sheet Metal Connectors, Inc.
 - e. Spiral Manufacturing Co., Inc.
- B. Transverse Joints: Select joint types and fabricate according to SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible," Figure 3-1, "Round Duct Transverse Joints," for static-pressure class, applicable sealing requirements, materials involved, duct-support intervals, and other provisions in SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible."
 - 1. Transverse Joints in Ducts Larger Than 60 Inches in Diameter: Flanged.
- C. Longitudinal Seams: Select seam types and fabricate according to SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible," Figure 3-2, "Round Duct Longitudinal Seams," for static-pressure class, applicable sealing requirements, materials involved, duct-support intervals, and other provisions in SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible."
 - 1. Fabricate round ducts larger Than 90 inches in diameter with butt-welded longitudinal seams.
- D. Tees and Laterals: Select types and fabricate according to SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible," Figure 3-5, "90 Degree Tees and Laterals," and Figure 3-6, "Conical Tees," for static-pressure class, applicable sealing requirements, materials involved, duct-support intervals, and other provisions in SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible."

2.3 SHEET METAL MATERIALS

- A. General Material Requirements: Comply with SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible" for acceptable materials, material thicknesses, and duct construction methods unless otherwise indicated. Sheet metal materials shall be free of pitting, seam marks, roller marks, stains, discolorations, and other imperfections.
- B. Galvanized Sheet Steel: Comply with ASTM A 653/A 653M.
 - 1. Galvanized Coating Designation: G60.
 - 2. Finishes for Surfaces Exposed to View: Mill phosphatized.
- C. Carbon-Steel Sheets: Comply with ASTM A 1008/A 1008M, with oiled, matte finish for exposed ducts.
- D. Stainless-Steel Sheets: Comply with ASTM A 480/A 480M, Type 304 or 316, as indicated in the "Duct Schedule" Article; cold rolled, annealed, sheet. Exposed surface finish shall be No. 2B, No. 2D, No. 3, or No. 4 as indicated in the "Duct Schedule" Article.
- E. Aluminum Sheets: Comply with ASTM B 209 Alloy 3003, H14 temper; with mill finish for concealed ducts, and standard, one-side bright finish for duct surfaces exposed to view.
- F. Reinforcement Shapes and Plates: ASTM A 36/A 36M, steel plates, shapes, and bars; black and galvanized.
 - 1. Where black- and galvanized-steel shapes and plates are used to reinforce aluminum ducts, isolate the different metals with butyl rubber, neoprene, or EPDM gasket materials.
- G. Tie Rods: Galvanized steel, 1/4-inch minimum diameter for lengths 36 inches or less; 3/8-inch minimum diameter for lengths longer than 36 inches.

2.4 DUCT LINER

- A. Fibrous-Glass Duct Liner: Comply with ASTM C 1071, NFPA 90A, or NFPA 90B; and with NAIMA AH124, "Fibrous Glass Duct Liner Standard."
 - 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - a. CertainTeed Corporation; Insulation Group.
 - b. Johns Manville.
 - c. Knauf Insulation.
 - d. Owens Corning.
 - 2. Maximum Thermal Conductivity:
 - a. Type I, Flexible: 0.27 Btu x in./h x sq. ft. x deg F at 75 deg F mean temperature.
 - 3. Antimicrobial Erosion-Resistant Coating: Apply to the surface of the liner that will form the interior surface of the duct to act as a moisture repellent and erosion-

resistant coating. Antimicrobial compound shall be tested for efficacy by an NRTL and registered by the EPA for use in HVAC systems.

4. Water-Based Liner Adhesive: Comply with NFPA 90A or NFPA 90B and with ASTM C 916.
- B. Insulation Pins and Washers:
1. Cupped-Head, Capacitor-Discharge-Weld Pins: Copper- or zinc-coated steel pin, fully annealed for capacitor-discharge welding, 0.106-inch- diameter shank, length to suit depth of insulation indicated with integral 1-1/2-inch galvanized carbon-steel washer.
 2. Insulation-Retaining Washers: Self-locking washers formed from 0.016-inch- thick galvanized steel; with beveled edge sized as required to hold insulation securely in place but not less than 1-1/2 inches in diameter.
- C. Shop Application of Duct Liner: Comply with SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible," Figure 7-11, "Flexible Duct Liner Installation."
1. Adhere a single layer of indicated thickness of duct liner with at least 90 percent adhesive coverage at liner contact surface area. Attaining indicated thickness with multiple layers of duct liner is prohibited.
 2. Apply adhesive to transverse edges of liner facing upstream that do not receive metal nosing.
 3. Butt transverse joints without gaps, and coat joint with adhesive.
 4. Fold and compress liner in corners of rectangular ducts or cut and fit to ensure butted-edge overlapping.
 5. Do not apply liner in rectangular ducts with longitudinal joints, except at corners of ducts, unless duct size and dimensions of standard liner make longitudinal joints necessary.
 6. Apply adhesive coating on longitudinal seams in ducts with air velocity of 2500 fpm.
 7. Secure liner with mechanical fasteners 4 inches from corners and at intervals not exceeding 12 inches transversely; at 3 inches from transverse joints and at intervals not exceeding 18 inches longitudinally.
 8. Secure transversely oriented liner edges facing the airstream with metal nosings that have either channel or "Z" profiles or are integrally formed from duct wall. Fabricate edge facings at the following locations:
 - a. Fan discharges.
 - b. Intervals of lined duct preceding unlined duct.
 - c. Upstream edges of transverse joints in ducts where air velocities are higher than 2500 fpm or where indicated.
 9. Secure insulation between perforated sheet metal inner duct of same thickness as specified for outer shell. Use mechanical fasteners that maintain inner duct at uniform distance from outer shell without compressing insulation.
 - a. Sheet Metal Inner Duct Perforations: 3/32-inch diameter, with an overall open area of 23 percent.
 10. Terminate inner ducts with buildouts attached to fire-damper sleeves, dampers, turning vane assemblies, or other devices. Fabricated buildouts (metal hat

sections) or other buildout means are optional; when used, secure buildouts to duct walls with bolts, screws, rivets, or welds.

2.5 SEALANT AND GASKETS

- A. General Sealant and Gasket Requirements: Surface-burning characteristics for sealants and gaskets shall be a maximum flame-spread index of 25 and a maximum smoke-developed index of 50 when tested according to UL 723; certified by an NRTL.
- B. Water-Based Joint and Seam Sealant:
 - 1. Application Method: Brush on.
 - 2. Solids Content: Minimum 65 percent.
 - 3. Shore A Hardness: Minimum 20.
 - 4. Water resistant.
 - 5. Mold and mildew resistant.
 - 6. VOC: Maximum 75 g/L (less water).
 - 7. Maximum Static-Pressure Class: 10-inch wg, positive and negative.
 - 8. Service: Indoor or outdoor.
 - 9. Substrate: Compatible with galvanized sheet steel (both PVC coated and bare), stainless steel, or aluminum sheets.
- C. Flanged Joint Sealant: Comply with ASTM C 920.
 - 1. General: Single-component, acid-curing, silicone, elastomeric.
 - 2. Type: S.
 - 3. Grade: NS.
 - 4. Class: 25.
 - 5. Use: O.
 - 6. For indoor applications, sealant shall have a VOC content of 250 g/L or less when calculated according to 40 CFR 59, Subpart D (EPA Method 24).
 - 7. Sealant shall comply with the testing and product requirements of the California Department of Health Services' "Standard Practice for the Testing of Volatile Organic Emissions from Various Sources Using Small-Scale Environmental Chambers."
- D. Flange Gaskets: Butyl rubber, neoprene, or EPDM polymer with polyisobutylene plasticizer.
- E. Round Duct Joint O-Ring Seals:
 - 1. Seal shall provide maximum 3 cfm/100 sq. ft. at 1-inch wg and shall be rated for 10-inch wg static-pressure class, positive or negative.
 - 2. EPDM O-ring to seal in concave bead in coupling or fitting spigot.
 - 3. Double-lipped, EPDM O-ring seal, mechanically fastened to factory-fabricated couplings and fitting spigots.

2.6 HANGERS AND SUPPORTS

- A. Hanger Rods for Noncorrosive Environments: Cadmium-plated steel rods and nuts.

- B. Hanger Rods for Corrosive Environments: Electrogalvanized, all-thread rods or galvanized rods with threads painted with zinc-chromate primer after installation.
- C. Strap and Rod Sizes: Comply with SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible," Table 5-1, "Rectangular Duct Hangers Minimum Size," and Table 5-2, "Minimum Hanger Sizes for Round Duct."
- D. Steel Cables for Galvanized-Steel Ducts: Galvanized steel complying with ASTM A 603.
- E. Steel Cables for Stainless-Steel Ducts: Stainless steel complying with ASTM A 492.
- F. Steel Cable End Connections: Cadmium-plated steel assemblies with brackets, swivel, and bolts designed for duct hanger service; with an automatic-locking and clamping device.
- G. Duct Attachments: Sheet metal screws, blind rivets, or self-tapping metal screws; compatible with duct materials.
- H. Trapeze and Riser Supports:
 - 1. Supports for Galvanized-Steel Ducts: Galvanized-steel shapes and plates.
 - 2. Supports for Stainless-Steel Ducts: Stainless-steel shapes and plates.
 - 3. Supports for Aluminum Ducts: Aluminum or galvanized steel coated with zinc chromate.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 DUCT INSTALLATION

- A. Drawing plans, schematics, and diagrams indicate general location and arrangement of duct system. Indicated duct locations, configurations, and arrangements were used to size ducts and calculate friction loss for air-handling equipment sizing and for other design considerations. Install duct systems as indicated unless deviations to layout are approved on Shop Drawings and Coordination Drawings.
- B. Install ducts according to SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible" unless otherwise indicated.
- C. Install round ducts in maximum practical lengths.
- D. Install ducts with fewest possible joints.
- E. Install factory- or shop-fabricated fittings for changes in direction, size, and shape and for branch connections.
- F. Unless otherwise indicated, install ducts vertically and horizontally, and parallel and perpendicular to building lines.
- G. Install ducts close to walls, overhead construction, columns, and other structural and permanent enclosure elements of building.

- H. Install ducts with a clearance of 1 inch, plus allowance for insulation thickness.
- I. Route ducts to avoid passing through transformer vaults and electrical equipment rooms and enclosures.
- J. Where ducts pass through non-fire-rated interior partitions and exterior walls and are exposed to view, cover the opening between the partition and duct or duct insulation with sheet metal flanges of same metal thickness as the duct. Overlap openings on four sides by at least 1-1/2 inches.
- K. Where ducts pass through fire-rated interior partitions and exterior walls, install fire dampers. Comply with requirements in Section 23 3300 "Air Duct Accessories" for fire and smoke dampers.
- L. Protect duct interiors from moisture, construction debris and dust, and other foreign materials. Comply with SMACNA's "IAQ Guidelines for Occupied Buildings Under Construction," Appendix G, "Duct Cleanliness for New Construction Guidelines."

3.2 INSTALLATION OF EXPOSED DUCTWORK

- A. Protect ducts exposed in finished spaces from being dented, scratched, or damaged.
- B. Trim duct sealants flush with metal. Create a smooth and uniform exposed bead. Do not use two-part tape sealing system.
- C. Grind welds to provide smooth surface free of burrs, sharp edges, and weld splatter. When welding stainless steel with a No. 3 or 4 finish, grind the welds flush, polish the exposed welds, and treat the welds to remove discoloration caused by welding.
- D. Maintain consistency, symmetry, and uniformity in the arrangement and fabrication of fittings, hangers and supports, duct accessories, and air outlets.
- E. Repair or replace damaged sections and finished work that does not comply with these requirements.

3.3 DUCT SEALING

- A. Seal ducts for duct static-pressure, seal classes, and leakage classes specified in "Duct Schedule" Article according to SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible."

3.4 HANGER AND SUPPORT INSTALLATION

- A. Comply with SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible," Chapter 5, "Hangers and Supports."
- B. Building Attachments: Concrete inserts, powder-actuated fasteners, or structural-steel fasteners appropriate for construction materials to which hangers are being attached.
 - 1. Where practical, install concrete inserts before placing concrete.

2. Install powder-actuated concrete fasteners after concrete is placed and completely cured.
 3. Use powder-actuated concrete fasteners for standard-weight aggregate concretes or for slabs more than 4 inches thick.
 4. Do not use powder-actuated concrete fasteners for lightweight-aggregate concretes or for slabs less than 4 inches thick.
- C. Hanger Spacing: Comply with SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible," Table 5-1, "Rectangular Duct Hangers Minimum Size," and Table 5-2, "Minimum Hanger Sizes for Round Duct," for maximum hanger spacing; install hangers and supports within 24 inches of each elbow and within 48 inches of each branch intersection.
- D. Hangers Exposed to View: Threaded rod and angle or channel supports.
- E. Support vertical ducts with steel angles or channel secured to the sides of the duct with welds, bolts, sheet metal screws, or blind rivets; support at each floor and at a maximum intervals of 16 feet.
- F. Install upper attachments to structures. Select and size upper attachments with pull-out, tension, and shear capacities appropriate for supported loads and building materials where used.

3.5 CONNECTIONS

- A. Make connections to equipment with flexible connectors complying with Section 23 3300 "Air Duct Accessories."
- B. Comply with SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible" for branch, outlet and inlet, and terminal unit connections.

3.6 START UP

- A. Air Balance: Comply with requirements in Section 23 0593 "Testing, Adjusting, and Balancing for HVAC."

3.7 DUCT CLEANING

- A. Clean new duct system(s) before testing, adjusting, and balancing.
- B. Use service openings for entry and inspection.
 1. Create new openings and install access panels appropriate for duct static-pressure class if required for cleaning access. Provide insulated panels for insulated or lined duct. Patch insulation and liner as recommended by duct liner manufacturer. Comply with Section 23 3300 "Air Duct Accessories" for access panels and doors.
 2. Disconnect and reconnect flexible ducts as needed for cleaning and inspection.
 3. Remove and reinstall ceiling to gain access during the cleaning process.

- C. Clean the following components by removing surface contaminants and deposits:
1. Air outlets and inlets (registers, grilles, and diffusers).
 2. Supply, return, and exhaust fans including fan housings, plenums (except ceiling supply and return plenums), scrolls, blades or vanes, shafts, baffles, dampers, and drive assemblies.
 3. Air-handling unit internal surfaces and components including mixing box, coil section, air wash systems, spray eliminators, condensate drain pans, humidifiers and dehumidifiers, filters and filter sections, and condensate collectors and drains.
 4. Coils and related components.
 5. Return-air ducts, dampers, actuators, and turning vanes except in ceiling plenums and mechanical equipment rooms.
 6. Supply-air ducts, dampers, actuators, and turning vanes.
 7. Dedicated exhaust and ventilation components and makeup air systems

3.8 DUCT SCHEDULE

- A. Fabricate ducts with galvanized sheet steel except as otherwise indicated.
- B. Supply Ducts:
1. Ducts Connected to Fan Coil Units, Furnaces, Heat Pumps, and Terminal Units:
 - a. Pressure Class: Positive 2-inch wg.
 - b. Minimum SMACNA Seal Class: A.
 - c. SMACNA Leakage Class for Rectangular: 12.
 - d. SMACNA Leakage Class for Round and Flat Oval: 12.
 2. Ducts Connected to Constant-Volume Air-Handling Units:
 - a. Pressure Class: Positive 2-inch wg.
 - b. Minimum SMACNA Seal Class: A.
 - c. SMACNA Leakage Class for Rectangular: 6.
 - d. SMACNA Leakage Class for Round and Flat Oval: 6.
 3. Ducts Connected to Variable-Air-Volume Air-Handling Units:
 - a. Pressure Class: Positive 6-inch wg.
 - b. Minimum SMACNA Seal Class: A.
 - c. SMACNA Leakage Class for Rectangular: 3.
 - d. SMACNA Leakage Class for Round and Flat Oval: 3.
 4. Ducts Connected to Equipment Not Listed Above:
 - a. Pressure Class: Positive 4-inch wg.
 - b. Minimum SMACNA Seal Class: A.
 - c. SMACNA Leakage Class for Rectangular: 3.
 - d. SMACNA Leakage Class for Round and Flat Oval: 3.
- C. Return Ducts:

1. Ducts Connected to Fan Coil Units, Furnaces, Heat Pumps, and Terminal Units:
 - a. Pressure Class: Positive or negative 2-inch wg.
 - b. Minimum SMACNA Seal Class: A .
 - c. SMACNA Leakage Class for Rectangular: 12.
 - d. SMACNA Leakage Class for Round and Flat Oval: 12.
 2. Ducts Connected to Air-Handling Units:
 - a. Pressure Class: Positive or negative 2-inch wg.
 - b. Minimum SMACNA Seal Class: A.
 - c. SMACNA Leakage Class for Rectangular: 6.
 - d. SMACNA Leakage Class for Round and Flat Oval: 6.
 3. Ducts Connected to Equipment Not Listed Above:
 - a. Pressure Class: Positive or negative 4-inch wg.
 - b. Minimum SMACNA Seal Class: A.
 - c. SMACNA Leakage Class for Rectangular: 3.
 - d. SMACNA Leakage Class for Round and Flat Oval: 3.
- D. Exhaust Ducts:
1. Ducts Connected to Fans Exhausting (ASHRAE 62.1-2007, Class 1 and 2) Air:
 - a. Pressure Class: Negative 2-inch wg.
 - b. Minimum SMACNA Seal Class: A if negative pressure, and A if positive pressure.
 - c. SMACNA Leakage Class for Rectangular: 12.
 - d. SMACNA Leakage Class for Round and Flat Oval: 6.
 2. Ducts Connected to Air-Handling Units:
 - a. Pressure Class: Positive or negative 2-inch wg.
 - b. Minimum SMACNA Seal Class: A if negative pressure, and A if positive pressure.
 - c. SMACNA Leakage Class for Rectangular: 6.
 - d. SMACNA Leakage Class for Round and Flat Oval: 6.
- E. Outdoor-Air (Not Filtered, Heated, or Cooled) Ducts:
1. Ducts Connected to Fan Coil Units, Furnaces, Heat Pumps, and Terminal Units:
 - a. Pressure Class: Positive or negative 2-inch wg.
 - b. Minimum SMACNA Seal Class: A.
 - c. SMACNA Leakage Class for Rectangular: 12.
 - d. SMACNA Leakage Class for Round and Flat Oval: 12.
 2. Ducts Connected to Air-Handling Units:
 - a. Pressure Class: Positive or negative 2-inch wg.
 - b. Minimum SMACNA Seal Class: A.
 - c. SMACNA Leakage Class for Rectangular: 6.

- d. SMACNA Leakage Class for Round and Flat Oval: 6.
- 3. Ducts Connected to Equipment Not Listed Above:
 - a. Pressure Class: Positive or negative 2-inch wg.
 - b. Minimum SMACNA Seal Class: A.
 - c. SMACNA Leakage Class for Rectangular: 3.
 - d. SMACNA Leakage Class for Round and Flat Oval: 3.
- F. Intermediate Reinforcement:
 - 1. Galvanized-Steel Ducts: Galvanized steel.
 - 2. Stainless-Steel Ducts:
 - a. Exposed to Airstream: Match duct material.
 - b. Not Exposed to Airstream: Galvanized.
 - 3. Aluminum Ducts: Aluminum.
- G. Liner:
 - 1. Supply Air Ducts: Fibrous glass, Type I, 1 inch thick.
 - 2. Return Air Ducts: Fibrous glass, Type I, 1 inch thick.
 - 3. Transfer Ducts: Fibrous glass, Type I, 1 inch thick.
- H. Elbow Configuration:
 - 1. Rectangular Duct: Comply with SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible," Figure 4-2, "Rectangular Elbows."
 - a. Velocity 1000 fpm or Lower:
 - 1) Radius Type RE 1 with minimum 0.5 radius-to-diameter ratio.
 - 2) Mitered Type RE 4 without vanes.
 - b. Velocity 1000 to 1500 fpm:
 - 1) Radius Type RE 1 with minimum 1.0 radius-to-diameter ratio.
 - 2) Radius Type RE 3 with minimum 0.5 radius-to-diameter ratio and two vanes.
 - 3) Mitered Type RE 2 with vanes complying with SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible," Figure 4-3, "Vanes and Vane Runners," and Figure 4-4, "Vane Support in Elbows."
 - c. Velocity 1500 fpm or Higher:
 - 1) Radius Type RE 1 with minimum 1.5 radius-to-diameter ratio.
 - 2) Radius Type RE 3 with minimum 1.0 radius-to-diameter ratio and two vanes.
 - 3) Mitered Type RE 2 with vanes complying with SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible," Figure 4-3, "Vanes and Vane Runners," and Figure 4-4, "Vane Support in Elbows."

2. Rectangular Duct: Comply with SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible," Figure 4-2, "Rectangular Elbows."
 - a. Radius Type RE 1 with minimum 1.5 radius-to-diameter ratio.
 - b. Radius Type RE 3 with minimum 1.0 radius-to-diameter ratio and two vanes.
 - c. Mitered Type RE 2 with vanes complying with SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible," Figure 4-3, "Vanes and Vane Runners," and Figure 4-4, "Vane Support in Elbows."
 3. Round Duct: Comply with SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible," Figure 3-4, "Round Duct Elbows."
 - a. Minimum Radius-to-Diameter Ratio and Elbow Segments: Comply with SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible," Table 3-1, "Mitered Elbows." Elbows with less than 90-degree change of direction have proportionately fewer segments.
 - 1) Radius-to Diameter Ratio: 1.5.
 - b. Round Elbows, 12 Inches and Smaller in Diameter: Stamped or pleated.
 - c. Round Elbows, 14 Inches and Larger in Diameter: Welded.
- I. Branch Configuration:
1. Rectangular Duct: Comply with SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible," Figure 4-6, "Branch Connection."
 - a. Rectangular Main to Rectangular Branch: 45-degree entry.
 - b. Rectangular Main to Round Branch: Spin in.
 2. Round: Comply with SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible," Figure 3-5, "90 Degree Tees and Laterals," and Figure 3-6, "Conical Tees." Saddle taps are permitted in existing duct.
 - a. Velocity 1000 fpm or Lower: 90-degree tap.
 - b. Velocity 1000 to 1500 fpm: Conical tap.
 - c. Velocity 1500 fpm or Higher: 45-degree lateral.
- 3.9 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL
- A. Perform tests and inspections.
 - B. Leakage Tests:
 1. Comply with SMACNA's "HVAC Air Duct Leakage Test Manual." Submit a test report for each test.
 2. Test the following systems:
 - a. Supply Ducts with a Pressure Class of 2-Inch wg or Higher: Test representative duct sections, from sections installed, totaling no less than 25 percent of total installed duct area for each designated pressure class.

3. Disassemble, reassemble, and seal segments of systems to accommodate leakage testing and for compliance with test requirements.
 4. Test for leaks before applying external insulation.
 5. Conduct tests at static pressures equal to maximum design pressure of system or section being tested. If static-pressure classes are not indicated, test system at maximum system design pressure. Do not pressurize systems above maximum design operating pressure.
 6. Give seven days advance notice for testing.
- C. Duct System Cleanliness Tests:
1. Visually inspect duct system to ensure that no visible contaminants are present.
- D. Duct system will be considered defective if it does not pass tests and inspections.
- E. Prepare test and inspection reports.

END OF SECTION

SECTION 23 3300-AIR DUCT ACCESSORIES

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:

1. Backdraft and pressure relief dampers.
2. Manual volume dampers.
3. Control dampers.
4. Fire dampers.
5. Smoke dampers.
6. Flange connectors.
7. Turning vanes.
8. Duct-mounted access doors.
9. Flexible connectors.
10. Flexible ducts.
11. Duct accessory hardware.

B. Related Requirements:

1. Section 28 3111 "Digital, Addressable Fire-Alarm System" for duct-mounted fire and smoke detectors.

1.2 ACTION SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For each type of product.

B. Shop Drawings: For duct accessories. Include plans, elevations, sections, details and attachments to other work.

1. Detail duct accessories fabrication and installation in ducts and other construction. Include dimensions, weights, loads, and required clearances; and method of field assembly into duct systems and other construction. Include the following:

- a. Special fittings.
- b. Manual volume damper installations.
- c. Control-damper installations.
- d. Fire-damper and smoke-damper installations, including sleeves; and duct-mounted access doors.
- e. Wiring Diagrams: For power, signal, and control wiring.

1.3 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

A. Operation and maintenance data.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 ASSEMBLY DESCRIPTION

- A. Comply with NFPA 90A, "Installation of Air Conditioning and Ventilating Systems," and with NFPA 90B, "Installation of Warm Air Heating and Air Conditioning Systems."
- B. Comply with SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible" for acceptable materials, material thicknesses, and duct construction methods unless otherwise indicated. Sheet metal materials shall be free of pitting, seam marks, roller marks, stains, discolorations, and other imperfections.

2.2 MATERIALS

- A. Galvanized Sheet Steel: Comply with ASTM A 653/A 653M.
 - 1. Galvanized Coating Designation: G60.
 - 2. Exposed-Surface Finish: Mill phosphatized.
- B. Stainless-Steel Sheets: Comply with ASTM A 480/A 480M, Type 304, and having a No. 2 finish for concealed ducts and finish for exposed ducts.
- C. Aluminum Sheets: Comply with ASTM B 209, Alloy 3003, Temper H14; with mill finish for concealed ducts and standard, 1-side bright finish for exposed ducts.
- D. Extruded Aluminum: Comply with ASTM B 221, Alloy 6063, Temper T6.
- E. Reinforcement Shapes and Plates: Galvanized-steel reinforcement where installed on galvanized sheet metal ducts; compatible materials for aluminum and stainless-steel ducts.
- F. Tie Rods: Galvanized steel, 1/4-inch minimum diameter for lengths 36 inches or less; 3/8-inch minimum diameter for lengths longer than 36 inches.

2.3 BACKDRAFT AND PRESSURE RELIEF DAMPERS

- A. Basis-of-Design Product: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide product indicated on Drawings or comparable product by one of the following:
 - 1. Greenheck Fan Corporation.
 - 2. Nailor Industries Inc.
 - 3. Ruskin Company.
 - 4. Vent Products Company, Inc.
- B. Description: Gravity balanced.
- C. Maximum Air Velocity: 2000 fpm.
- D. Maximum System Pressure: 2-inch wg.

- E. Frame: Hat-shaped, 0.05-inch- thick, galvanized sheet steel, with welded corners or mechanically attached and mounting flange.
- F. Blades: Multiple single-piece blades, center pivoted, maximum 6-inch width, 0.025-inch- thick, roll-formed aluminum with sealed edges.
- G. Blade Action: Parallel.
- H. Blade Seals: Felt.
- I. Blade Axles:
 - 1. Material: Nonferrous metal.
 - 2. Diameter: 0.20 inch.
- J. Tie Bars and Brackets: Galvanized steel.
- K. Return Spring: Adjustable tension.
- L. Bearings: Steel ball or synthetic pivot bushings.
- M. Accessories:
 - 1. Adjustment device to permit setting for varying differential static pressure.
 - 2. Counterweights and spring-assist kits for vertical airflow installations.
 - 3. Screen Mounting: Rear mounted.
 - 4. Screen Material: Galvanized steel.
 - 5. Screen Type: Insect.
 - 6. 90-degree stops.

2.4 MANUAL VOLUME DAMPERS

- A. Standard, Steel, Manual Volume Dampers:
 - 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - a. Greenheck Fan Corporation.
 - b. McGill AirFlow LLC.
 - c. Nailor Industries Inc.
 - d. Ruskin Company.
 - e. Vent Products Company, Inc.
 - 2. Standard leakage rating, with linkage outside airstream.
 - 3. Suitable for horizontal or vertical applications.
 - 4. Frames:

- a. Frame: Hat-shaped, 0.094-inch- thick, galvanized sheet steel.
 - b. Mitered and welded corners.
 - c. Flanges for attaching to walls and flangeless frames for installing in ducts.
5. Blades:
- a. Multiple or single blade.
 - b. Parallel- or opposed-blade design.
 - c. Stiffen damper blades for stability.
 - d. Galvanized-steel, 0.064 inch thick.
6. Blade Axles: Galvanized steel.
7. Bearings:
- a. Oil-impregnated bronze.
 - b. Dampers in ducts with pressure classes of 3-inch wg or less shall have axles full length of damper blades and bearings at both ends of operating shaft.
8. Tie Bars and Brackets: Galvanized steel.
- B. Jackshaft:
1. Size: 1-inch diameter.
 2. Material: Galvanized-steel pipe rotating within pipe-bearing assembly mounted on supports at each mullion and at each end of multiple-damper assemblies.
 3. Length and Number of Mountings: As required to connect linkage of each damper in multiple-damper assembly.
- C. Damper Hardware:
1. Zinc-plated, die-cast core with dial and handle made of 3/32-inch- thick zinc-plated steel, and a 3/4-inch hexagon locking nut.
 2. Include center hole to suit damper operating-rod size.
 3. Include elevated platform for insulated duct mounting.
- 2.5 CONTROL DAMPERS
- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
1. Arrow United Industries; a division of Mestek, Inc.
 2. Greenheck Fan Corporation.
 3. McGill AirFlow LLC.
 4. Metal Form Manufacturing, Inc.

5. Nailor Industries Inc.
 6. Ruskin Company.
 7. Vent Products Company, Inc.
 8. Young Regulator Company.
- B. Frames:
1. Hat shaped.
 2. 0.094-inch- thick, galvanized sheet steel.
 3. Mitered and welded corners.
- C. Blades:
1. Multiple blade with maximum blade width of 8 inches.
 2. Parallel- and opposed-blade design.
 3. Galvanized-steel.
 4. 0.064 inch thick single skin.
 5. Blade Edging: Closed-cell neoprene.
- D. Blade Axles: 1/2-inch- diameter; stainless steel; blade-linkage hardware of zinc-plated steel and brass; ends sealed against blade bearings.
1. Operating Temperature Range: From minus 40 to plus 200 deg F.
- E. Bearings:
1. Oil-impregnated bronze, molded synthetic or stainless-steel sleeve.
 2. Dampers in ducts with pressure classes of 3-inch wg or less shall have axles full length of damper blades and bearings at both ends of operating shaft.
 3. Thrust bearings at each end of every blade.
- 2.6 FIRE DAMPERS
- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
1. Arrow United Industries; a division of Mestek, Inc.
 2. Greenheck Fan Corporation.
 3. Nailor Industries Inc.
 4. Prefco; Perfect Air Control, Inc.
 5. Ruskin Company.

6. Vent Products Company, Inc.
 - B. Type: Static and dynamic; rated and labeled according to UL 555 by an NRTL.
 - C. Closing rating in ducts up to 4-inch wg static pressure class and minimum 2000-fpm velocity.
 - D. Fire Rating: 1-1/2 and 3 hours.
 - E. Frame: Fabricated with roll-formed, 0.034-inch- thick galvanized steel; with mitered and interlocking corners.
 - F. Mounting Sleeve: Factory- or field-installed, galvanized sheet steel.
 1. Minimum Thickness: 0.05 thick, as indicated, and of length to suit application.
 2. Exception: Omit sleeve where damper-frame width permits direct attachment of perimeter mounting angles on each side of wall or floor; thickness of damper frame must comply with sleeve requirements.
 - G. Mounting Orientation: Vertical or horizontal as indicated.
 - H. Blades: Roll-formed, interlocking, 0.034-inch- thick, galvanized sheet steel. In place of interlocking blades, use full-length, 0.034-inch- thick, galvanized-steel blade connectors.
 - I. Horizontal Dampers: Include blade lock and stainless-steel closure spring.
 - J. Heat-Responsive Device: Replaceable, 165 deg F rated, fusible links.
- 2.7 SMOKE DAMPERS
 - A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following :
 1. Air Balance Inc.; a division of Mestek, Inc.
 2. Greenheck Fan Corporation.
 3. Nailor Industries Inc.
 4. Ruskin Company.
 - B. General Requirements: Label according to UL 555S by an NRTL.
 - C. Smoke Detector: Provided by fire alarm contractor.
 - D. Frame: Hat-shaped, 0.094-inch- thick, galvanized sheet steel, with welded or corners and mounting flange.
 - E. Blades: Roll-formed, horizontal, interlocking, 0.034-inch- thick, galvanized sheet steel.

- F. Leakage: Class I.
- G. Rated pressure and velocity to exceed design airflow conditions.
- H. Mounting Sleeve: Factory-installed, 0.05-inch- thick, galvanized sheet steel; length to suit wall or floor application.
- I. Damper Motors: Modulating or two-position action.
- J. Comply with NEMA designation, temperature rating, service factor, enclosure type, and efficiency requirements for motors specified in Section 23 0513 "Common Motor Requirements for HVAC Equipment."
 - 1. Motor Sizes: Minimum size as indicated. If not indicated, large enough so driven load will not require motor to operate in service factor range above 1.0.
 - 2. Controllers, Electrical Devices, and Wiring: Comply with requirements for electrical devices and connections specified in Section 23 0900 "Instrumentation and Control for HVAC."
 - 3. Permanent-Split-Capacitor or Shaded-Pole Motors: With oil-immersed and sealed gear trains.
 - 4. Spring-Return Motors: Equip with an integral spiral-spring mechanism where indicated. Enclose entire spring mechanism in a removable housing designed for service or adjustments. Size for running torque rating of 150 in. x lbf and breakaway torque rating of 150 in. x lbf.
 - 5. Outdoor Motors and Motors in Outdoor-Air Intakes: Equip with O-ring gaskets designed to make motors weatherproof. Equip motors with internal heaters to permit normal operation at minus 40 deg F.
 - 6. Nonspring-Return Motors: For dampers larger than 25 sq. ft., size motor for running torque rating of 150 in. x lbf and breakaway torque rating of 300 in. x lbf.
- K. Accessories:
 - 1. Auxiliary switches for signaling fan control or position indication.
 - 2. Test and reset switches, damper mounted.

2.8 FLANGE CONNECTORS

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by the following provide products by one of the following:
 - 1. Ductmate Industries, Inc.
 - 2. Nexus PDQ; Division of Shilco Holdings Inc.
 - 3. Ward Industries, Inc.; a division of Hart & Cooley, Inc.
- B. Description: Add-on or roll-formed, factory-fabricated, slide-on transverse flange connectors, gaskets, and components.

- C. Material: Galvanized steel.
- D. Gage and Shape: Match connecting ductwork.

2.9 TURNING VANES

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - 1. Ductmate Industries, Inc.
 - 2. Duro Dyne Inc.
 - 3. METALAIRE, Inc.
 - 4. SEMCO Incorporated.
 - 5. Ward Industries, Inc.; a division of Hart & Cooley, Inc.
- B. Manufactured Turning Vanes for Metal Ducts: Curved blades of galvanized sheet steel; support with bars perpendicular to blades set; set into vane runners suitable for duct mounting.
 - 1. Acoustic Turning Vanes: Fabricate airfoil-shaped aluminum extrusions with perforated faces and fibrous-glass fill.
- C. General Requirements: Comply with SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible"; Figures 4-3, "Vanes and Vane Runners," and 4-4, "Vane Support in Elbows."
- D. Vane Construction: Single wall for ducts up to 48 inches and double wall for larger dimensions.

2.10 DUCT-MOUNTED ACCESS DOORS

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - 1. American Warming and Ventilating; a division of Mestek, Inc.
 - 2. Cesco Products; a division of Mestek, Inc.
 - 3. Ductmate Industries, Inc.
 - 4. Flexmaster U.S.A., Inc.
 - 5. Greenheck Fan Corporation.
 - 6. McGill AirFlow LLC.
 - 7. Nailor Industries Inc.

8. Ventfabrics, Inc.
 9. Ward Industries, Inc.; a division of Hart & Cooley, Inc.
- B. Duct-Mounted Access Doors: Fabricate access panels according to SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible"; Figures 7-2, "Duct Access Doors and Panels," and 7-3, "Access Doors - Round Duct."
1. Door:
 - a. Double wall, rectangular.
 - b. Galvanized sheet metal with insulation fill and thickness as indicated for duct pressure class.
 - c. Vision panel.
 - d. Hinges and Latches: 1-by-1-inch butt or piano hinge and cam latches.
 - e. Fabricate doors airtight and suitable for duct pressure class.
 2. Frame: Galvanized sheet steel, with bend-over tabs and foam gaskets.
 3. Number of Hinges and Locks:
 - a. Access Doors Less Than 12 Inches Square: No hinges and two sash locks.
 - b. Access Doors up to 18 Inches Square: Two hinges and two sash locks.
 - c. Access Doors up to 24 by 48 Inches: Continuous and two compression latches.
 - d. Access Doors Larger Than 24 by 48 Inches: Continuous and two compression latches with outside and inside handles.
- C. Pressure Relief Access Door:
1. Door and Frame Material: Galvanized sheet steel.
 2. Door: Double wall with insulation fill with metal thickness applicable for duct pressure class.
 3. Operation: Open outward for positive-pressure ducts and inward for negative-pressure ducts.
 4. Factory set at 3.0- to 8.0-inch wg.
 5. Doors close when pressures are within set-point range.
 6. Hinge: Continuous piano.
 7. Latches: Cam.
 8. Seal: Neoprene or foam rubber.
 9. Insulation Fill: 1-inch- thick, fibrous-glass or polystyrene-foam board.
- 2.11 DUCT ACCESS PANEL ASSEMBLIES
- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
1. Ductmate Industries, Inc.
 2. Flame Gard, Inc.

3. 3M.

- B. Labeled according to UL 1978 by an NRTL.
- C. Panel and Frame: Minimum thickness 0.0528-inch carbon steel.
- D. Fasteners: Carbon steel. Panel fasteners shall not penetrate duct wall.
- E. Gasket: Comply with NFPA 96; grease-tight, high-temperature ceramic fiber, rated for minimum 2000 deg F.
- F. Minimum Pressure Rating: 10-inch wg, positive or negative.

2.12 FLEXIBLE CONNECTORS

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - 1. Ductmate Industries, Inc.
 - 2. Duro Dyne Inc.
 - 3. Ventfabrics, Inc.
 - 4. Ward Industries, Inc.; a division of Hart & Cooley, Inc.
- B. Materials: Flame-retardant or noncombustible fabrics.
- C. Coatings and Adhesives: Comply with UL 181, Class 1.
- D. Metal-Edged Connectors: Factory fabricated with a fabric strip 3-1/2 inches wide attached to two strips of 2-3/4-inch- wide, 0.028-inch- thick, galvanized sheet steel or 0.032-inch- thick aluminum sheets. Provide metal compatible with connected ducts.
- E. Indoor System, Flexible Connector Fabric: Glass fabric double coated with neoprene.
 - 1. Minimum Weight: 26 oz./sq. yd..
 - 2. Tensile Strength: 480 lbf/inch in the warp and 360 lbf/inch in the filling.
 - 3. Service Temperature: Minus 40 to plus 200 deg F.
- F. Outdoor System, Flexible Connector Fabric: Glass fabric double coated with weatherproof, synthetic rubber resistant to UV rays and ozone.
 - 1. Minimum Weight: 24 oz./sq. yd..
 - 2. Tensile Strength: 530 lbf/inch in the warp and 440 lbf/inch in the filling.
 - 3. Service Temperature: Minus 50 to plus 250 deg F.

2.13 FLEXIBLE DUCTS

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - 1. Flexmaster U.S.A., Inc.
 - 2. McGill AirFlow LLC.
 - 3. Ward Industries, Inc.; a division of Hart & Cooley, Inc.
- B. Noninsulated, Flexible Duct: UL 181, Class 1, 2-ply vinyl film supported by helically wound, spring-steel wire.
 - 1. Pressure Rating: 10-inch wg positive and 1.0-inch wg negative.
 - 2. Maximum Air Velocity: 4000 fpm.
 - 3. Temperature Range: Minus 10 to plus 160 deg F.
- C. Insulated, Flexible Duct: UL 181, Class 1, aluminum laminate and polyester film with latex adhesive supported by helically wound, spring-steel wire; fibrous-glass insulation; vapor-barrier film.
 - 1. Pressure Rating: 10-inch wg positive and 1.0-inch wg negative.
 - 2. Maximum Air Velocity: 4000 fpm.
 - 3. Temperature Range: Minus 20 to plus 210 deg F.
 - 4. Insulation R-value: Comply with ASHRAE/IESNA 90.1-2007.
- D. Flexible Duct Connectors:
 - 1. Clamps: Nylon strap in sizes 3 through 18 inches, to suit duct size.

2.14 DUCT ACCESSORY HARDWARE

- A. Instrument Test Holes: Cast iron or cast aluminum to suit duct material, including screw cap and gasket. Size to allow insertion of pitot tube and other testing instruments and of length to suit duct-insulation thickness.
- B. Adhesives: High strength, quick setting, neoprene based, waterproof, and resistant to gasoline and grease.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 INSTALLATION

- A. Install duct accessories according to applicable details in SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible" for metal ducts and in NAIMA AH116, "Fibrous Glass Duct Construction Standards," for fibrous-glass ducts.

- B. Install duct accessories of materials suited to duct materials; use galvanized-steel accessories in galvanized-steel and fibrous-glass ducts, stainless-steel accessories in stainless-steel ducts, and aluminum accessories in aluminum ducts.
- C. Install volume dampers at points on supply, return, and exhaust systems where branches extend from larger ducts. Where dampers are installed in ducts having duct liner, install dampers with hat channels of same depth as liner, and terminate liner with nosing at hat channel.
 - 1. Install steel volume dampers in steel ducts.
 - 2. Install aluminum volume dampers in aluminum ducts.
- D. Set dampers to fully open position before testing, adjusting, and balancing.
- E. Install test holes at fan inlets and outlets and elsewhere as indicated.
- F. Install fire and smoke dampers according to UL listing.
- G. Install duct access doors on sides of ducts to allow for inspecting, adjusting, and maintaining accessories and equipment at the following locations:
 - 1. On both sides of duct coils.
 - 2. Upstream and downstream from duct filters.
 - 3. At outdoor-air intakes and mixed-air plenums.
 - 4. At drain pans and seals.
 - 5. Downstream from manual volume dampers, control dampers, backdraft dampers, and equipment.
 - 6. Adjacent to and close enough to fire or smoke dampers, to reset or reinstall fusible links. Access doors for access to fire or smoke dampers having fusible links shall be pressure relief access doors and shall be outward operation for access doors installed upstream from dampers and inward operation for access doors installed downstream from dampers.
 - 7. Upstream or downstream from duct silencers.
 - 8. Control devices requiring inspection.
 - 9. Elsewhere as indicated.
- H. Install access doors with swing against duct static pressure.
- I. Access Door Sizes:
 - 1. One-Hand or Inspection Access: 8 by 5 inches.
 - 2. Two-Hand Access: 12 by 6 inches.
 - 3. Head and Hand Access: 18 by 10 inches.
 - 4. Head and Shoulders Access: 21 by 14 inches.
 - 5. Body Access: 25 by 14 inches.
 - 6. Body plus Ladder Access: 25 by 17 inches.
- J. Label access doors according to Section 23 0553 "Identification for HVAC Piping and Equipment" to indicate the purpose of access door.
- K. Install flexible connectors to connect ducts to equipment.

- L. Connect terminal units to supply ducts directly or with maximum 12-inch lengths of flexible duct. Do not use flexible ducts to change directions.
- M. Connect diffusers or light troffer boots to ducts directly or with maximum 60-inch lengths of flexible duct clamped or strapped in place.
- N. Connect flexible ducts to metal ducts with draw bands.
- O. Install duct test holes where required for testing and balancing purposes.

3.2 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Tests and Inspections:
 - 1. Operate dampers to verify full range of movement.
 - 2. Inspect locations of access doors and verify that purpose of access door can be performed.
 - 3. Operate fire and smoke dampers to verify full range of movement and verify that proper heat-response device is installed.
 - 4. Inspect turning vanes for proper and secure installation.

END OF SECTION

SECTION 23 3713-DIFFUSERS, REGISTERS, AND GRILLES

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:

1. Rectangular and square ceiling diffusers.
2. Perforated diffusers.
3. Louver face diffusers.
4. Linear slot diffusers.
5. Fixed face registers and grilles.
6. Linear bar grilles.
7. Fixed, extruded aluminum HVAC louvers.

B. Related Sections:

1. Section 23 3300 "Air Duct Accessories" for fire and smoke dampers and volume-control dampers not integral to diffusers, registers, and grilles.

1.2 ACTION SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For each type of product indicated, include the following:

1. Data Sheet: Indicate materials of construction, finish, and mounting details; and performance data including throw and drop, static-pressure drop, and noise ratings.
2. Diffuser, Register, and Grille Schedule: Indicate drawing designation, room location, quantity, model number, size, and accessories furnished.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 CEILING DIFFUSERS

A. Rectangular and Square Ceiling Diffusers:

1. Basis-of-Design Product: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide product indicated on Drawings or comparable product by one of the following:
 - a. Carnes.
 - b. Krueger.
 - c. METALAIRE, Inc.
 - d. Nailor Industries Inc.

e. Price Industries.

f. Titus.

B. Perforated Diffuser:

1. Basis-of-Design Product: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide product indicated on Drawings or comparable product by one of the following:

a. Carnes.

b. Krueger.

c. METALAIRE, Inc.

d. Nailor Industries Inc.

e. Price Industries.

f. Titus.

C. Louver Face Diffuser:

1. Basis-of-Design Product: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide product indicated on Drawings or comparable product by one of the following:

a. Carnes.

b. Krueger.

c. METALAIRE, Inc.

d. Nailor Industries Inc.

e. Price Industries.

f. Titus.

2.2 CEILING LINEAR SLOT OUTLETS

A. Linear Diffuser:

1. Basis-of-Design Product: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide product indicated on Drawings or comparable product by one of the following:

a. Carnes.

b. Krueger.

c. METALAIRE, Inc.

- d. Nailor Industries Inc.
- e. Price Industries.
- f. Titus.

2.3 REGISTERS AND GRILLES

A. Registers and Grilles:

- 1. Basis-of-Design Product: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide product indicated on Drawings or comparable product by one of the following:
 - a. Carnes.
 - b. Krueger.
 - c. Nailor Industries Inc.
 - d. Price Industries.
 - e. Titus.

2.4 FIXED, EXTRUDED-ALUMINUM LOUVERS

A. Horizontal, Drainable-Blade Louver:

- 1. Basis-of-Design Product: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide product indicated on Drawings or comparable product by one of the following:
 - a. Airolite Company, LLC (The).
 - b. Arrow United Industries; a division of Mestek, Inc.
 - c. Dowco Products Group; Safe Air of Illinois.
 - d. Greenheck Fan Corporation.
 - e. NCA Manufacturing, Inc.
 - f. Ruskin Company; Tomkins PLC.
 - g. United Enertech
- 2. Frame and Blade Nominal Thickness: Not less than 0.080 inch.
- 3. Mullion Type: Exposed.
- 4. AMCA Seal: Mark units with AMCA Certified Ratings Seal.
- 5. Louver Screens
 - a. General: Provide screen at each exterior louver.

- b. Screen Location for Fixed Louvers: Interior face.
- c. Screening Type: Bird screening.
- d. Bird Screening: Aluminum, 1/2-inch- square mesh, 0.063-inch wire.

2.5 SOURCE QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Verification of Performance: Rate diffusers, registers, and grilles according to ASHRAE 70, "Method of Testing for Rating the Performance of Air Outlets and Inlets."

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 INSTALLATION

- A. Install diffusers, registers, louvers, and grilles level and plumb.
- B. Ceiling-Mounted Outlets and Inlets: Drawings indicate general arrangement of ducts, fittings, and accessories. Air outlet and inlet locations have been indicated to achieve design requirements for air volume, noise criteria, airflow pattern, throw, and pressure drop. Make final locations where indicated, as much as practical. For units installed in lay-in ceiling panels, locate units in the center of panel. Where architectural features or other items conflict with installation, notify Architect for a determination of final location.
- C. Install diffusers, registers, and grilles with airtight connections to ducts and to allow service and maintenance of dampers, air extractors, and fire dampers.
- D. Louver Installation.
 - 1. Use concealed anchorages where possible. Provide brass or lead washers fitted to screws where required to protect metal surfaces and to make a weathertight connection.
 - 2. Form closely fitted joints with exposed connections accurately located and secured.
 - 3. Provide perimeter reveals and openings of uniform width for sealants and joint fillers, as indicated.
 - 4. Protect unpainted galvanized and nonferrous-metal surfaces that are in contact with concrete, masonry, or dissimilar metals from corrosion and galvanic action by applying a heavy coating of bituminous paint or by separating surfaces with waterproof gaskets or nonmetallic flashing.
 - 5. Install concealed gaskets, flashings, joint fillers, and insulation as louver installation progresses, where weathertight louver joints are required.

3.2 ADJUSTING

- A. After installation, adjust diffusers, registers, and grilles to air patterns indicated, or as directed, before starting air balancing.

- B. Restore louvers damaged during installation and construction so no evidence remains of corrective work. If results of restoration are unsuccessful, as determined by Architect, remove damaged units and replace with new units.
 - 1. Touch up minor abrasions in finishes with air-dried coating that matches color and gloss of, and is compatible with, factory-applied finish coating.

END OF SECTION

SECTION 235400 - FURNACES

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. This Section includes the following:
 - 1. Gas-fired, condensing furnaces and accessories complete with controls.
 - 2. Air filters.
 - 3. Refrigeration components.

1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: Include rated capacities, operating characteristics, furnished specialties, and accessories for each of the following:
 - 1. Furnace.
 - 2. Thermostat.
 - 3. Air filter.
 - 4. Refrigeration components.
- B. Shop Drawings: Detail equipment assemblies and indicate dimensions, weights, loads, required clearances, method of field assembly, components, and location and size of each field connection.
 - 1. Wiring Diagrams: Power, signal, and control wiring.

1.4 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Warranty: Special warranty specified in this Section.

1.5 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

- A. Operation and Maintenance Data: For each furnace to include in emergency, operation, and maintenance manuals for each of the following:
 - 1. Furnace and accessories complete with controls.
 - 2. Air filter.
 - 3. Refrigeration components.

1.6 MAINTENANCE MATERIAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Furnish extra materials described below that match products installed and that are packaged with protective covering for storage and identified with labels describing contents.
 - 1. Disposable Air Filters: Furnish two complete sets.
 - 2. Fan Belts: Furnish one set(s) for each furnace fan.

1.7 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, Article 100, by a testing agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction, and marked for intended use.
- B. ASHRAE Compliance: Applicable requirements in ASHRAE 62.1, Section 5 - "Systems and Equipment" and Section 7 - "Construction and Startup."
- C. ASHRAE/IESNA 90.1 Compliance: Applicable requirements in ASHRAE/IESNA 90.1, Section 6 - "Heating, Ventilating, and Air-Conditioning."
- D. Comply with NFPA 70.

1.8 COORDINATION

- A. Coordinate size and location of concrete bases. Cast anchor-bolt inserts into bases. Concrete, reinforcement, and formwork requirements are specified with concrete.

1.9 WARRANTY

- A. Special Warranty: Manufacturer's standard form in which manufacturer agrees to repair or replace the following components of furnaces that fail in materials or workmanship within specified warranty period:
 - 1. Warranty Period, Commencing on Date of Substantial Completion:
 - a. Furnace Heat Exchanger: 10 years.
 - b. Integrated Ignition and Blower Control Circuit Board: Five years.
 - c. Draft-Inducer Motor: Five years.
 - d. Refrigeration Compressors: 10 years.
 - e. Evaporator and Condenser Coils: Five years.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 GAS-FIRED FURNACES, CONDENSING

- A. Basis-of-Design Product: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide the product indicated on Drawings or a comparable product by one of the following:

1. Carrier Corporation; Div. of United Technologies Corp.
 2. Lennox Industries Inc.
 3. Rheem Manufacturing Company; Air Conditioning Division.
 4. Trane.
 5. York International Corp.; a division of Unitary Products Group.
 6. Aeon.
- B. General Requirements for Gas-Fired, Condensing Furnaces: Factory assembled, piped, wired, and tested; complying with ANSI Z21.47/CSA 2.3, "Gas-Fired Central Furnaces," and with NFPA 54.
- C. Cabinet: Galvanized steel.
1. Cabinet interior around heat exchanger shall be factory-installed insulation.
 2. Lift-out panels shall expose burners and all other items requiring access for maintenance.
 3. Factory paint external cabinets in manufacturer's standard color.
 4. Airstream Surfaces: Surfaces in contact with the airstream shall comply with requirements in ASHRAE 62.1.
- D. Fan: Centrifugal, factory balanced, resilient mounted, direct drive.
1. Fan Motors: Comply with requirements in Section 230513 "Common Motor Requirements for HVAC Equipment."
 2. Special Motor Features: Single speed, Premium (TM) efficiency, as defined in Section 230513 "Common Motor Requirements for HVAC Equipment," and with internal thermal protection and permanent lubrication.
 3. Special Motor Features: Multitapped, multispeed with internal thermal protection and permanent lubrication.
 4. Special Motor Features: Electronically controlled motor (ECM) controlled by integrated furnace/blower control.
- E. Type of Gas: Natural.
- F. Heat Exchanger:
1. Primary: Aluminized steel.
 2. Secondary: Stainless steel.
- G. Burner:
1. Gas Valve: 100 percent safety two-stage main gas valve, main shutoff valve, pressure regulator, safety pilot with electronic flame sensor, limit control, transformer, and combination ignition/fan timer control board.
 2. Ignition: Electric pilot ignition, with hot-surface igniter or electric spark ignition.
- H. Gas-Burner Safety Controls:
1. Electronic Flame Sensor: Prevents gas valve from opening until pilot flame is proven; stops gas flow on ignition failure.
 2. Flame Rollout Switch: Installed on burner box; prevents burner operation.
 3. Limit Control: Fixed stop at maximum permissible setting; de-energizes burner on excessive bonnet temperature; automatic reset.

- I. Combustion-Air Inducer: Centrifugal fan with thermally protected motor and sleeve bearings prepurges heat exchanger and vents combustion products; pressure switch prevents furnace operation if combustion-air inlet or flue outlet is blocked.
- J. Furnace Controls: Solid-state board integrates ignition, heat, cooling, and fan speeds; adjustable fan-on and fan-off timing; terminals for connection to accessories.
- K. Accessories:
 - 1. Combination Combustion-Air Intake and Vent: PVC plastic fitting to combine combustion-air inlet and vent through roof.
 - 2. CPVC Plastic Vent Materials.
 - a. CPVC Plastic Pipe: Schedule 40, complying with ASTM F 441/F 441M.
 - b. CPVC Plastic Fittings: Schedule 40, complying with ASTM F 438, socket type.
 - c. CPVC Solvent Cement: ASTM F 493.
 - 1) CPVC solvent cement shall have a VOC content of 490 g/L or less when calculated according to 40 CFR 59, Subpart D (EPA Method 24).
 - 2) Adhesive primer shall have a VOC content of 550 g/L or less when calculated according to 40 CFR 59, Subpart D (EPA Method 24).
 - 3) Solvent cement and adhesive primer shall comply with the testing and product requirements of the California Department of Health Services' "Standard Practice for the Testing of Volatile Organic Emissions from Various Sources Using Small-Scale Environmental Chambers."
 - 3. PVC Plastic Vent Materials:
 - a. PVC Plastic Pipe: Schedule 40, complying with ASTM D 1785.
 - b. PVC Plastic Fittings: Schedule 40, complying with ASTM D 2466, socket type.
 - c. PVC Solvent Cement: ASTM D 2564.
 - 1) PVC solvent cement shall have a VOC content of 510 g/L or less when calculated according to 40 CFR 59, Subpart D (EPA Method 24).
 - 2) Adhesive primer shall have a VOC content of 550 g/L or less when calculated according to 40 CFR 59, Subpart D (EPA Method 24).
 - 3) Solvent cement and adhesive primer shall comply with the testing and product requirements of the California Department of Health Services' "Standard Practice for the Testing of Volatile Organic Emissions from Various Sources Using Small-Scale Environmental Chambers."

2.2 THERMOSTATS

- A. Controls shall comply with requirements in ASHRAE/IESNA 90.1, "Controls."
- B. Solid-State Thermostat: Wall-mounting Wireless, programmable, microprocessor-based unit with automatic switching from heating to cooling, preferential rate control, seven-

day programmability with minimum of four temperature presets per day, vacation mode, and battery backup protection against power failure for program settings.

- C. Single-Stage, Heating-Cooling Thermostat: Adjustable, heating-cooling, wall-mounting unit with fan on-automatic selector.
- D. Two-Stage, Heating-Cooling Thermostat: Adjustable, heating-cooling, wall-mounting unit with fan on-automatic selector.
- E. Control Wiring: Unshielded twisted-pair cabling.
 - 1. No. 24 AWG, 100 ohm, four pair.
 - 2. Cable Jacket Color: Blue.

2.3 AIR FILTERS

- A. Disposable Filters: 1-inch- thick fiberglass media with ASHRAE 52.2 MERV rating of 6 or higher, in sheet metal frame.

2.4 REFRIGERATION COMPONENTS

- A. General Refrigeration Component Requirements:
 - 1. Refrigeration compressor, coils, and specialties shall be designed to operate with CFC-free refrigerants.
 - 2. Energy Efficiency: Equal to or greater than prescribed by ASHRAE/IESNA 90.1, "Energy Standard for Buildings except Low-Rise Residential Buildings."
- B. Refrigerant Coil: Copper tubes mechanically expanded into aluminum fins. Comply with ARI 210/240, "Unitary Air-Conditioning and Air-Source Heat Pump Equipment." Match size with furnace. Include condensate drain pan with accessible drain outlet complying with ASHRAE 62.1.
 - 1. Refrigerant Coil Enclosure: Steel, matching furnace and evaporator coil, with access panel and flanges for integral mounting at or on furnace cabinet and galvanized sheet metal drain pan coated with black asphaltic base paint.
- C. Refrigerant Line Kits: Annealed-copper suction and liquid lines factory cleaned, dried, pressurized with nitrogen, sealed, and with suction line insulated. Provide in standard lengths for installation without joints, except at equipment connections.
 - 1. Flexible Elastomeric: Closed-cell, sponge- or expanded-rubber materials. Comply with ASTM C 534, Type I, 1/2 inch thick.
- D. Refrigerant Piping: Comply with requirements in Section 232300 "Refrigerant Piping."
- E. Air-Cooled, Compressor-Condenser Unit:
 - 1. Casing: Steel, finished with baked enamel, with removable panels for access to controls, weep holes for water drainage, and mounting holes in base. Provide brass service valves, fittings, and gage ports on exterior of casing.

2. Compressor: Hermetically sealed scroll type.
 - a. Crankcase heater.
 - b. Vibration isolation mounts for compressor.
 - c. Compressor motor shall have thermal- and current-sensitive overload devices, start capacitor, relay, and contactor.
 - d. Two-speed compressor motors shall have manual-reset high-pressure switch and automatic-reset low-pressure switch.
 - e. Refrigerant: R-407C or R-410A.
3. Refrigerant Coil: Copper tube, with mechanically bonded aluminum fins, complying with ARI 210/240, and with liquid subcooler.
4. Fan: Aluminum-propeller type, directly connected to motor.
5. Motor: Permanently lubricated, with integral thermal-overload protection.
6. Low Ambient Kit: Permits operation down to 30 deg F.
7. Mounting Base: Polyethylene.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine areas and conditions, with Installer present, for compliance with requirements for installation tolerances and other conditions affecting performance of the Work.
- B. Examine factory-installed insulation before furnace installation. Reject units that are wet, moisture damaged, or mold damaged.
- C. Examine roughing-in for gas and refrigerant piping systems to verify actual locations of piping connections before equipment installation.
- D. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.2 INSTALLATION

- A. Install gas-fired furnaces and associated fuel and vent features and systems according to NFPA 54.
- B. Suspended Units: Suspend from structure using threaded rods, spring hangers, and building attachments. Secure rods to unit hanger attachments. Adjust hangers so unit is level and plumb.
- C. Base-Mounted Units: Secure units to substrate. Provide optional bottom closure base if required by installation conditions.
 1. Anchor furnace to substrate to resist code-required seismic acceleration.
- D. Controls: Install thermostats and humidistats at mounting height of 60 inches above floor.

- E. Wiring Method: Install control wiring in accessible ceiling spaces and in gypsum board partitions where unenclosed wiring method may be used. Conceal control wiring except in unfinished spaces.
- F. Install ground-mounted, compressor-condenser components on 4-inch-thick, reinforced concrete base; 4 inches larger on each side than unit. Concrete, reinforcement, and formwork are specified in Section 033000 "Cast-in-Place Concrete." Coordinate anchor installation with concrete base.
- G. Install roof-mounted, compressor-condenser components on equipment supports specified in Section 077200 "Roof Accessories." Anchor units to supports with removable, cadmium-plated fasteners.

3.3 CONNECTIONS

- A. Gas piping installation requirements are specified in Section 231123 "Facility Natural-Gas Piping." Drawings indicate general arrangement of piping, fittings, and specialties. Connect gas piping with union or flange and appliance connector valve.
- B. Install piping adjacent to equipment to allow service and maintenance.
- C. Water piping installation requirements are specified in Section 221116 "Domestic Water Piping." Drawings indicate general arrangement of piping, fittings, and specialties. Connect water piping with union and ball valve.
- D. Vent and Outside-Air Connection, Condensing, Gas-Fired Furnaces: Connect plastic piping vent material to furnace connections and extend outdoors. Terminate vent outdoors with a cap and in an arrangement that will protect against entry of birds, insects, and dirt.
 - 1. Ream ends of pipes and tubes and remove burrs. Bevel plain ends of steel pipe.
 - 2. Remove scale, slag, dirt, and debris from inside and outside of pipe and fittings before assembly.
 - 3. Plastic Piping Solvent-Cement Joints: Clean and dry joining surfaces. Join pipe and fittings according to the following:
 - a. Comply with ASTM F 402 for safe-handling practice of cleaners, primers, and solvent cements.
 - b. CPVC Piping: Join according to ASTM D 2846/D 2846M Appendix.
 - c. PVC Pressure Piping: Join schedule number ASTM D 1785, PVC pipe and PVC socket fittings according to ASTM D 2672. Join other-than-schedule-number PVC pipe and socket fittings according to ASTM D 2855.
 - d. Requirements for Low-Emitting Materials:
 - 1) CPVC solvent cement shall have a VOC content of 490 g/L or less when calculated according to 40 CFR 59, Subpart D (EPA Method 24).
 - 2) PVC solvent cement shall have a VOC content of 510 g/L or less when calculated according to 40 CFR 59, Subpart D (EPA Method 24).

- 3) Adhesive primer shall have a VOC content of 550 g/L or less when calculated according to 40 CFR 59, Subpart D (EPA Method 24).
 - 4) Solvent cement and adhesive primer shall comply with the testing and product requirements of the California Department of Health Services' "Standard Practice for the Testing of Volatile Organic Emissions from Various Sources Using Small-Scale Environmental Chambers."
4. Slope pipe vent back to furnace or to outside terminal.
- E. Connect ducts to furnace with flexible connector. Comply with requirements in Section 233300 "Air Duct Accessories."
 - F. Connect refrigerant tubing kits to refrigerant coil in furnace and to air-cooled, compressor-condenser unit.
 1. Flared Joints: Use ASME B16.26 fitting and flared ends, following procedures in CDA's "Copper Tube Handbook."
 2. Soldered Joints: Apply ASTM B 813, water-flushable flux, unless otherwise indicated, to tube end. Construct joints according to ASTM B 828 or CDA's "Copper Tube Handbook," using lead-free solder alloy complying with ASTM B 32.
 3. Brazed Joints: Construct joints according to AWS's "Brazing Handbook," "Pipe and Tube" Chapter, using copper-phosphorus brazing filler metal complying with AWS A5.8.
 - G. Comply with requirements in Section 232300 "Refrigerant Piping" for installation and joint construction of refrigerant piping.

3.4 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Perform the following field tests and inspections and prepare test reports:
 1. Perform electrical test and visual and mechanical inspection.
 2. Leak Test: After installation, charge systems with refrigerant and oil and test for leaks. Repair leaks, replace lost refrigerant and oil, and retest until no leaks exist.
 3. Operational Test: After electrical circuitry has been energized, start units to confirm proper operation, product capability, and compliance with requirements.
 4. Verify that fan wheel is rotating in the correct direction and is not vibrating or binding.
 5. Test and adjust controls and safeties. Replace damaged and malfunctioning controls and equipment.
- B. Verify that vibration isolation and flexible connections properly dampen vibration transmission to structure.

3.5 STARTUP SERVICE

- A. Complete installation and startup checks according to manufacturer's written instructions and perform the following:

1. Inspect for physical damage to unit casings.
 2. Verify that access doors move freely and are weathertight.
 3. Clean units and inspect for construction debris.
 4. Verify that all bolts and screws are tight.
 5. Adjust vibration isolation and flexible connections.
 6. Verify that controls are connected and operational.
- B. Adjust fan belts to proper alignment and tension.
- C. Start unit according to manufacturer's written instructions and complete manufacturer's operational checklist.
- D. Measure and record airflows.
- E. Verify proper operation of capacity control device.
- F. After startup and performance test, lubricate bearings and adjust belt tension.

3.6 ADJUSTING

- A. Adjust initial temperature and humidity set points.
- B. Set controls, burner, and other adjustments for optimum heating performance and efficiency. Adjust heat-distribution features, including shutters, dampers, and relays, to provide optimum heating performance and system efficiency.

3.7 CLEANING

- A. After completing installation, clean furnaces internally according to manufacturer's written instructions.
- B. Install new filters in each furnace within 14 days after Substantial Completion.

3.8 DEMONSTRATION

- A. Train Owner's maintenance personnel to adjust, operate, and maintain condensing units. Refer to Section 017900 "Demonstration and Training."

END OF SECTION

SECTION 23 8126-SPLIT-SYSTEM AIR-CONDITIONERS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 SUMMARY

- A. Section includes split-system air-conditioning consisting of separate evaporator-fan and compressor-condenser components.

1.2 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product indicated.
- B. Shop Drawings: Include plans, elevations, sections, details, and attachments to other work.
 - 1. Detail equipment assemblies and indicate dimensions, weights, loads, required clearances, method of field assembly, components, and location and size of each field connection.

1.3 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Warranty: Sample of special warranty.

1.4 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

- A. Operation and maintenance data.

1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.
- B. ASHRAE Compliance:
 - 1. Fabricate and label refrigeration system to comply with ASHRAE 15, "Safety Standard for Refrigeration Systems."
- C. ASHRAE/IESNA Compliance: Applicable requirements in ASHRAE/IESNA 90.1.

1.6 WARRANTY

- A. Special Warranty: Manufacturer's standard form in which manufacturer agrees to repair or replace components of split-system air-conditioning units that fail in materials or workmanship within specified warranty period.
 - 1. Warranty Period:
 - a. For Compressor: Five year(s) from date of Substantial Completion.
 - b. For Parts: Five year(s) from date of Substantial Completion.

- c. For Labor: Five year(s) from date of Substantial Completion.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 MANUFACTURERS

- A. Basis-of-Design Product: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide product indicated on Drawings or comparable product by one of the following:
1. Carrier Corporation; Home Comfort and HVAC Building & Industrial Systems.
 2. Lennox International Inc.
 3. Trane; a business of American Standard companies.
 4. Aeon

2.2 INDOOR UNITS (**5 TONS** OR LESS)

- A. Evaporator-Fan Components:
1. Cabinet: Enameled steel with removable panels on front and ends in color selected by Architect.
 - a. Insulation: Faced, glass-fiber duct liner.
 - b. Drain Pans: Galvanized steel, with connection for drain; insulated.
 2. Refrigerant Coil: Copper tube, with mechanically bonded aluminum fins and thermal-expansion valve. Comply with ARI 210/240.
 3. Electric Coil: Helical, nickel-chrome, resistance-wire heating elements; with refractory ceramic support bushings, automatic-reset thermal cutout, built-in magnetic contactors, manual-reset thermal cutout, airflow proving device, and one-time fuses in terminal box for overcurrent protection.
 4. Fan: Direct drive, centrifugal.
 5. Fan Motors:
 - a. Comply with NEMA designation, temperature rating, service factor, enclosure type, and efficiency requirements specified in Section 23 0513 "Common Motor Requirements for HVAC Equipment."
 - b. Multitapped, multispeed with internal thermal protection and permanent lubrication.
 6. Air Filtration Section:
 - a. General Requirements for Air Filtration Section:
 - 1) Comply with NFPA 90A.
 - 2) Minimum Arrestance: According to ASHRAE 52.1 and MERV according to ASHRAE 52.2.
 - 3) Filter-Holding Frames: Arranged for flat or angular orientation, with access doors on both sides of unit. Filters shall be removable from one side or lifted out from access plenum.

b. Disposable Panel Filters:

- 1) Factory-fabricated, viscous-coated, flat-panel type.
- 2) Thickness: 1 inch.
- 3) Merv according to ASHRAE 52.2: 5.
- 4) Media: Interlaced glass fibers sprayed with nonflammable adhesive and antimicrobial agent.
- 5) Frame: Galvanized steel, with metal grid on outlet side, steel rod grid on inlet side, and hinged; with pull and retaining handles.

c. Extended-Surface, Disposable Panel Filters:

- 1) Factory-fabricated, dry, extended-surface type.
- 2) Thickness: 2 inches.
- 3) Merv according to ASHRAE 52.2: 7.
- 4) Media: Fibrous material formed into deep-V-shaped pleats and held by self-supporting wire grid.
- 5) Media-Grid Frame: Nonflammable cardboard.
- 6) Mounting Frames: Welded, galvanized steel, with gaskets and fasteners; suitable for bolting together into built-up filter banks.

2.3 OUTDOOR UNITS (**5 TONS** OR LESS)

A. Air-Cooled, Compressor-Condenser Components:

1. Casing: Steel, finished with baked enamel in color selected by Architect, with removable panels for access to controls, weep holes for water drainage, and mounting holes in base. Provide brass service valves, fittings, and gage ports on exterior of casing.
2. Compressor: Hermetically sealed with crankcase heater and mounted on vibration isolation device. Compressor motor shall have thermal- and current-sensitive overload devices, start capacitor, relay, and contactor.
 - a. Compressor Type: Scroll.
 - b. Refrigerant Charge: R-410A.
 - c. Refrigerant Coil: Copper tube, with mechanically bonded aluminum fins and liquid subcooler. Comply with ARI 210/240.
3. Fan: Aluminum-propeller type, directly connected to motor.
4. Motor: Permanently lubricated, with integral thermal-overload protection.
5. Low Ambient Kit: Permits operation down to 20 deg F.
6. Mounting Base: Polyethylene.

2.4 ACCESSORIES

A. Thermostat: Low voltage with subbase to control compressor and evaporator fan.

B. Thermostat: Wireless infrared functioning to remotely control compressor and evaporator fan, with the following features:

1. Compressor time delay.
2. 24-hour time control of system stop and start.
3. Liquid-crystal display indicating temperature, set-point temperature, time setting, operating mode, and fan speed.

4. Fan-speed selection including auto setting.
- C. Automatic-reset timer to prevent rapid cycling of compressor.
- D. Refrigerant Line Kits: Soft-annealed copper suction and liquid lines factory cleaned, dried, pressurized, and sealed; factory-insulated suction line with flared fittings at both ends.
- E. Drain Hose: For condensate.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 INSTALLATION

- A. Install units level and plumb.
- B. Install evaporator-fan components using manufacturer's standard mounting devices securely fastened to building structure.
- C. Install ground-mounted, compressor-condenser components on 4-inch- thick, reinforced concrete base that is 4 inches larger, on each side, than unit. Concrete, reinforcement, and formwork are specified in Section 03 3000 "Cast-in-Place Concrete." Coordinate anchor installation with concrete base.
- D. Install roof-mounted, compressor-condenser components on equipment supports specified in Section 07 7200 "Roof Accessories." Anchor units to supports with removable, cadmium-plated fasteners.
- E. Install and connect precharged refrigerant tubing to component's quick-connect fittings. Install tubing to allow access to unit.

3.2 CONNECTIONS

- A. Piping installation requirements are specified in other Sections. Drawings indicate general arrangement of piping, fittings, and specialties.
- B. Where piping is installed adjacent to unit, allow space for service and maintenance of unit.
- C. Duct Connections: Duct installation requirements are specified in Section 23 3113 "Metal Ducts." Drawings indicate the general arrangement of ducts. Connect supply and return ducts to split-system air-conditioning units with flexible duct connectors. Flexible duct connectors are specified in Section 23 3300 "Air Duct Accessories."

3.3 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Perform tests and inspections.
 1. Manufacturer's Field Service: Engage a factory-authorized service representative to inspect components, assemblies, and equipment installations, including connections, and to assist in testing.

B. Tests and Inspections:

1. Leak Test: After installation, charge system and test for leaks. Repair leaks and retest until no leaks exist.
2. Operational Test: After electrical circuitry has been energized, start units to confirm proper motor rotation and unit operation.
3. Test and adjust controls and safeties. Replace damaged and malfunctioning controls and equipment.

C. Remove and replace malfunctioning units and retest as specified above.

D. Prepare test and inspection reports.

3.4 DEMONSTRATION

A. Train Owner's maintenance personnel to adjust, operate, and maintain units.

END OF SECTION

SECTION 238239 – UNIT HEATERS

PART 1 – GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and other Division 1 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

PART 2 – PRODUCTS

2.1 ELECTRIC CABINET UNIT HEATERS

- A. Acceptable Manufacturers:
 - 1. Berko (model CUH900 basis of design)
 - 2. Trane
 - 3. QMark
 - 4. Reznor
- B. Furnish and install, where indicated on the Drawings, complete electric cabinet type unit heaters. Units shall be the type indicated:
 - 1. Ceiling-mount full recessed
 - 2. Wall-mount full recessed
 - 3. Wall mount non-recessed
- C. Each unit heater shall be of the multi-speed type consisting of fan, motor, factory-wired multi-speed switch with operating handle inside cabinet and electrical finned strip heating elements, high limit cutout switch, contactors, terminal block, fan switch, selector switch, etc., all enclosed in a furniture steel cabinet with end compartments. Provision for expansion and contraction of heating elements shall be incorporated in the design of units. Heating elements shall be of the enclosed-nonglow type with all connections totally enclosed. Unit heaters shall be furnished with all protective and disconnect devices required by Underwriters' and the National Electrical Code. All controls and controllers shall be concealed within the cabinets.
- D. Fans shall be the centrifugal, double-inlet type with forward-curved blades. Fans in each unit shall be mounted on a common shaft and shall be driven by a single motor mounted inside the cabinet. Fans shall be especially designed for quiet operation. Motors shall be not less than horsepower indicated, multi-speed type, wound for single-phase, 60 cycles and arranged for operation at voltage shown on the Drawings, or provided with a transformer. Motors shall have automatic thermal overload protection or be provided with a thermal type switch for motor protection.

- E. Cabinets shall be constructed of furniture grade steel with rounded corners, each complete with discharge grille and return air grille and finished with baked enamel of color selected by the Architect.
- F. Cabinet unit heater heating elements shall have capacities of not less than indicated on the Drawings when supplied with voltage noted. The air-handling capacity of each unit shall be not less than indicated on the Drawings.
- G. All controls for the heating elements and motors shall be factory-wired and mounted in the end compartment of each unit heater. Controls for each unit shall include contactors for heating elements and motor, disconnect circuit breaker, capacity reduction selector switch, high limit safety cutout switch, normally open fan switch to prevent element overheating and a remote, wall mounted thermostat.
- H. All wiring inside the cabinets shall be installed in flexible metallic conduit with heat-resistant insulated conductors and in accordance with the National Electrical Code. All internal wiring shall be connected to properly labeled terminal blocks for field extension.

2.2 ELECTRIC WALL HEATER

- A. The wall heating equipment shall include an electric automatic SRA series fan-forced air heater suitable for small area heating. The heater shall be designed for surface or recessed wall mounting in any position.
- B. The back box shall be designed for duty as a recessed rough-in box in either masonry or frame construction and also when mounting directly to the surface of the finished walls in surface mounting installations. The back box shall be commercial grade galvanized steel and shall contain knock outs.
- C. The heating element shall be guaranteed for five years and shall be of non-glowing design consisting of a special resistance wire enclosed in a steel sheath to which steel plate fins are brazed. The element shall cover the entire air discharge area to ensure uniform heating of all discharge air.
- D. The front cover shall be of commercial grade steel finished in off-white baked enamel. The front cover shall be provided without the hole for the thermostat knob provide full tamper-proof installation.
- E. The electric wall heater shall be manufactured by Berko or approved equal.

2.3 ELECTRIC REHEAT COILS

- A. Duct Heater shall be INDEECO or approved equal.
 - 1. Type QUA Standard Slip-In-Heaters
- B. Approvals: Heaters and panelboards (if required) shall meet the requirements of the National Electrical Code and shall be listed by Underwriters' Laboratories for zero clearance to combustible surfaces and for use with heat pumps and air conditioning equipment.

- C. Heating elements shall be open coil, 80% nickel, 20% chromium, type A resistance wire. Type C alloys containing iron or other alloys are not acceptable. Coils shall be machine crimped into stainless steel terminals extending at least 1" into the airstream and all terminal hardware shall be stainless steel. Coils shall be supported by a ceramic bushings staked into supporting brackets.
- D. Heater frames and terminal boxes shall be corrosion-resistant steel. Unless otherwise indicated, the terminal box shall be NEMA 1 construction and shall be provided with a hinged, latching cover and multiple concentric knockouts for field wiring.
- E. All heaters shall be furnished with a disc type, automatic reset thermal cutout for primary over temperature protection. All heaters shall also be furnished with disc type, load carrying manual reset thermal cutouts, factory wired in series with heater stages for secondary protection. Heat limiters or other fusible over temperature devices are not acceptable.
- F. Heaters shall be rated for the voltage, phase and number of heating stages indicated in the schedule. All three phase heaters shall have equal, balanced, three phase stages. All internal wiring shall be stranded copper with 105 degrees C. insulation and shall be terminated in crimped connectors or box lugs.
- G. Terminal blocks shall be provided for all field wiring and shall be sized for installation of 75 degrees C. copper wire rated in accordance with NEC requirements.
- H. Heaters shall be furnished either with the Control Option specified in the schedule and described below or with the specific components listed in the schedule.
- I. Option G Thermal cutouts, airflow proving switch, contactors, fuses (if over 48 amps), control circuit transformer (where required) and built-in, snap-acting, door interlocked disconnect switch. Coil to be provided with SCR control.
- J. Heaters will be supplied with the following:
 - 1. Insulated terminal box.
 - 2. Dust-tight terminal box.

2.4 ELECTRIC HORIZONTAL UNIT HEATERS

- A. Acceptable Manufacturers
 - 1. Berko Model HUHAA (Basis of Design)
 - 2. Trane
 - 3. Chromalox
- B. Furnish and install horizontal unit heaters with heating and air delivery capacities as shown on the heating schedule.
- C. The cabinet shall be made of 18 gauge die formed furniture grade steel. Individual adjustable louvers with 30 degrees downward stops shall be furnished desired control of discharge air. All metal surfaces of the enclosure shall be phosphate coated to resist corrosion and finished in a decorative baked enamel. Mounting brackets designed for either ceiling or wall swivel mounting shall be furnished.

- D. Heaters shall be of the draw-through air flow design to eliminate the element hot spots and extend design life.
- E. Fans shall be aluminum, directly connected to fan motor, and designed specifically for unit heater application.
- F. Low voltage control 24 volt transformers shall be standard on models 7.5 KW and greater, to allow safer more precise temperature control.
- G. All heaters shall be UL Listed and meet the requirements of the National Code.
- H. For safety, the electric heating bank shall consist of metal sheath heating elements. The elements shall consist of 80/20 Nichrome wire and have a copper clad steel sheath for strength and corrosion resistance, and aluminum fins for faster heat transfer. Automatic reset thermal overheat protection shall be of the linear capillary type wired for instantaneous de-energizing in case of the thermal overload. Heating bank to have protective air inlet louvers.
- I. All heaters drawing in excess of 48 amperes shall be provided with factory installed subdivided and fused circuits of 48 amps or less.
- J. Motors shall be totally enclosed, designed for continuous heavy-duty all-angle operation and equipped with built-in thermal overload protection.

PART 3 – EXECUTION

- A. Install per manufacturer's recommendations.

END OF SECTION 238239

SECTION 26 0519 - LOW-VOLTAGE ELECTRICAL POWER CONDUCTORS AND CABLES

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:

1. Copper building wire rated 600 V or less.
2. Aluminum building wire rated 600 V or less.
3. Metal-clad cable, Type MC, rated 600 V or less.
4. Connectors, splices, and terminations rated 600 V and less.

1.3 DEFINITIONS

- A. RoHS: Restriction of Hazardous Substances.
- B. VFC: Variable-frequency controller.

1.4 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product.
- B. Product Schedule: Indicate type, use, location, and termination locations.

1.5 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Qualification Data: For testing agency.
- B. Field quality-control reports.

1.6 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Testing Agency Qualifications: Member company of NETA.
 1. Testing Agency's Field Supervisor: Certified by NETA to supervise on-site testing.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 COPPER BUILDING WIRE

- A. Description: Flexible, insulated and uninsulated, drawn copper current-carrying conductor with an overall insulation layer or jacket, or both, rated 600 V or less.
- B. Standards:
 - 1. Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and use.
 - 2. RoHS compliant.
 - 3. Conductor and Cable Marking: Comply with wire and cable marking according to UL's "Wire and Cable Marking and Application Guide."
 - 4. #10 AWG and smaller shall be solid (not stranded).
- C. Conductors: Copper, complying with ASTM B 3 for bare annealed copper and with ASTM B 496 for stranded conductors.
- D. Conductor Insulation:
 - 1. Type NM: Comply with UL 83 and UL 719.
 - 2. Type RHH and Type RHW-2: Comply with UL 44.
 - 3. Type USE-2 and Type SE: Comply with UL 854.
 - 4. Type TC-ER: Comply with NEMA WC 70/ICEA S-95-658 and UL 1277.
 - 5. Type THHN and Type THWN-2: Comply with UL 83.
 - 6. Type THW and Type THW-2: Comply with NEMA WC-70/ICEA S-95-658 and UL 83.
 - 7. Type UF: Comply with UL 83 and UL 493.
 - 8. Type XHHW-2: Comply with UL 44.
- E. Shield:
 - 1. Type TC-ER: Cable designed for use with VFCs, with oversized crosslinked polyethylene insulation dual spirally wrapped copper tape shields and three bare symmetrically applied ground wires, and sunlight- and oil-resistant outer PVC jacket.

2.2 ALUMINUM BUILDING WIRE

- 1. Allowed only as a cost savings request by the owner.
- 2. Owner shall provide permission in writing (email).
- 3. Contractor shall obtain written permission (email) from local AHJ.
- 4. Do not submit bids with aluminum as basis of install unless approved prior to bid date.

2.3 METAL-CLAD CABLE, TYPE MC

- A. Description: A factory assembly of one or more current-carrying insulated conductors in an overall metallic sheath. MC cable shall include grounding conductor.

- B. Shall only be used as whips for connections to equipment and lighting not to exceed 6ft in length.
- C. Standards:
 - 1. Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and use.
 - 2. Comply with UL 1569.
 - 3. RoHS compliant.
 - 4. Conductor and Cable Marking: Comply with wire and cable marking according to UL's "Wire and Cable Marking and Application Guide."
- D. Conductors: Copper, complying with ASTM B 3 for bare annealed copper and with ASTM B 8 for stranded conductors.
- E. Ground Conductor: Insulated.
- F. Conductor Insulation:
 - 1. Type TFN/THHN/THWN-2: Comply with UL 83.
 - 2. Type XHHW-2: Comply with UL 44.
- G. Jacket: PVC applied over armor.
 - 1. MC Steel Metal Clad Cable must have the following:
 - a. Armor: Galvanized interlocking steel strip.
 - b. Conductors: Stranded Copper.
 - c. Conductor Insulation: THHN/THWN
 - d. Assembly Covering: Polypropylene Tape
 - e. Maximum Temperature Rating: 90°C (dry)
 - f. Grounding: One grounding means, must be insulated copper conductor.
 - g. Neutral Conductor: White
 - h. Maximum Voltage Rating: 600V
 - i. Rating Compliance with the following:
 - 1) UL® 83, 1479, 1569, 1581, 2556
 - 2) Cable Tray Rated, install per NEC®
 - 3) UL® Classified 1, 2, and 3 hour through (Fire) penetration product, R-14141
 - 4) Environmental Air-Handling Space Installation per NEC® 300.22(C)
 - 2. Do Not Use MC Cable for the Following:
 - a. Homeruns to panelboards.
 - b. Where exposed to view.
 - c. Where exposed to damage.
 - d. Hazardous locations.
 - e. Wet locations.
 - f. When restricted otherwise above, and when specifically disallowed by the local AHJ or Owner.
 - g. Circuits supplied by an emergency or standby power source.
 - 3. Aluminum sheathing for MC Cable is not allowed.

2.4 CONNECTORS AND SPLICES

- A. Description: Factory-fabricated connectors, splices, and lugs of size, ampacity rating, material, type, and class for application and service indicated; listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and use.
- B. Jacketed Cable Connectors: For steel and aluminum jacketed cables, zinc die-cast with set screws, designed to connect conductors specified in this Section.
- C. Lugs: One piece, seamless, designed to terminate conductors specified in this Section.
 - 1. Material: Copper.
 - 2. Termination: Compression.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 CONDUCTOR MATERIAL APPLICATIONS

- A. Feeders: Copper; solid for No. 10 AWG and smaller; stranded for No. 8 AWG and larger.
- B. Feeders: Copper for feeders smaller than No. 4 AWG; copper or aluminum for feeders No. 4 AWG and larger. Conductors shall be solid for No. 10 AWG and smaller; stranded for No. 8 AWG and larger.
- C. Branch Circuits: Copper. Solid for No. 10 AWG and smaller; stranded for No. 8 AWG and larger.
- D. Branch Circuits: Copper. Solid for No. 12 AWG and smaller; stranded for No. 10 AWG and larger.
- E. VFC Output Circuits Cable: Extra-flexible stranded for all sizes.
- F. Power-Limited Fire Alarm and Control: Solid for No. 12 AWG and smaller.

3.2 CONDUCTOR INSULATION AND MULTICONDUCTOR CABLE APPLICATIONS AND WIRING METHODS

- A. Service Entrance: Type THHN/THWN-2, single conductors in raceway.
- B. Exposed Feeders: Type XHHW-2, single conductors in raceway.
- C. Feeders Concealed in Ceilings, Walls, Partitions, and Crawlspace: Type THHN/THWN-2, single conductors in raceway.
- D. Feeders Concealed in Concrete, below Slabs-on-Grade, and Underground: Type XHHW-2, single conductors in raceway.
- E. Feeders Installed below Raised Flooring: Type THHN/THWN-2, single conductors in raceway.

- F. Feeders in Cable Tray: Type THHN/THWN-2, single conductors in raceway.
- G. Exposed Branch Circuits, Including in Crawlspace: Type THHN/THWN-2, single conductors in raceway.
- H. Branch Circuits Concealed in Ceilings, Walls, and Partitions: Type THHN/THWN-2, single conductors in raceway.
- I. Branch Circuits Concealed in Concrete, below Slabs-on-Grade, and Underground: Type XHHW-2, single conductors in raceway.
- J. Branch Circuits Installed below Raised Flooring: Type THHN/THWN-2, single conductors in raceway.
- K. Branch Circuits in Cable Tray: Type XHHW-2, single conductors larger than No. 1/0 AWG.
- L. Cord Drops and Portable Appliance Connections: Type SO, hard service cord with stainless-steel, wire-mesh, strain relief device at terminations to suit application.
- M. VFC Output Circuits: Type XHHW-2 in metal conduit.

3.3 INSTALLATION OF CONDUCTORS AND CABLES

- A. Conceal cables in finished walls, ceilings, and floors unless otherwise indicated.
- B. Complete raceway installation between conductor and cable termination points according to Section 26 0533 "Raceways and Boxes for Electrical Systems" prior to pulling conductors and cables.
- C. Use manufacturer-approved pulling compound or lubricant where necessary; compound used must not deteriorate conductor or insulation. Do not exceed manufacturer's recommended maximum pulling tensions and sidewall pressure values.
- D. Use pulling means, including fish tape, cable, rope, and basket-weave wire/cable grips, that will not damage cables or raceway.
- E. Install exposed cables parallel and perpendicular to surfaces of exposed structural members, and follow surface contours where possible.
- F. Support cables according to Section 26 0529 "Hangers and Supports for Electrical Systems."

3.4 CONNECTIONS

- A. Tighten electrical connectors and terminals according to manufacturer's published torque-tightening values. If manufacturer's torque values are not indicated, use those specified in UL 486A-486B.

- B. Make splices, terminations, and taps that are compatible with conductor material and that possess equivalent or better mechanical strength and insulation ratings than unspliced conductors.
 - 1. Use oxide inhibitor in each splice, termination, and tap for aluminum conductors.
 - 2. Push-in style connectors are not allowed.
- C. Wiring at Outlets: Install conductor at each outlet, with at least 6 inches of slack.

3.5 IDENTIFICATION

- A. Identify and color-code conductors and cables according to Section 26 0553 "Identification for Electrical Systems."
- B. Identify each spare conductor at each end with identity number and location of other end of conductor, and identify as spare conductor.

3.6 SLEEVE AND SLEEVE-SEAL INSTALLATION FOR ELECTRICAL PENETRATIONS

- A. Install sleeves and sleeve seals at penetrations of exterior floor and wall assemblies. Comply with requirements in Section 26 0544 "Sleeves and Sleeve Seals for Electrical Raceways and Cabling."

3.7 FIRESTOPPING

- A. Apply firestopping to electrical penetrations of fire-rated floor and wall assemblies to restore original fire-resistance rating of assembly according to Section 07 8413 "Penetration Firestopping."

3.8 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Testing Agency: Owner will engage a qualified testing agency to perform tests and inspections.
- B. Testing Agency: Engage a qualified testing agency to perform tests and inspections.
- C. Manufacturer's Field Service: Engage a factory-authorized service representative to test and inspect components, assemblies, and equipment installations, including connections.
- D. Perform tests and inspections.
 - 1. After installing conductors and cables and before electrical circuitry has been energized, test service entrance and feeder conductors for compliance with requirements.

2. After installing conductors and cables and before electrical circuitry has been energized, test service entrance and feeder conductors and conductors feeding critical equipment and services for compliance with requirements.
 3. Perform each of the following visual and electrical tests:
 - a. Inspect exposed sections of conductor and cable for physical damage and correct connection according to the single-line diagram.
 - b. Test bolted connections for high resistance using one of the following:
 - 1) A low-resistance ohmmeter.
 - 2) Calibrated torque wrench.
 - 3) Thermographic survey.
 - c. Inspect compression-applied connectors for correct cable match and indentation.
 - d. Inspect for correct identification.
 - e. Inspect cable jacket and condition.
 - f. Insulation-resistance test on each conductor for ground and adjacent conductors. Apply a potential of 500-V dc for 300-V rated cable and 1000-V dc for 600-V rated cable for a one-minute duration.
 - g. Continuity test on each conductor and cable.
 - h. Uniform resistance of parallel conductors.
 4. Initial Infrared Scanning: After Substantial Completion, but before Final Acceptance, perform an infrared scan of each splice in conductors No. 3 AWG and larger. Remove box and equipment covers so splices are accessible to portable scanner. Correct deficiencies determined during the scan.
 - a. Instrument: Use an infrared scanning device designed to measure temperature or to detect significant deviations from normal values. Provide calibration record for device.
 - b. Record of Infrared Scanning: Prepare a certified report that identifies switches checked and that describes scanning results. Include notation of deficiencies detected, remedial action taken, and observations after remedial action.
 5. Follow-up Infrared Scanning: Perform an additional follow-up infrared scan of each switch 11 months after date of Substantial Completion.
- E. Cables will be considered defective if they do not pass tests and inspections.
- F. Prepare test and inspection reports to record the following:
1. Procedures used.
 2. Results that comply with requirements.
 3. Results that do not comply with requirements, and corrective action taken to achieve compliance with requirements.

END OF SECTION

SECTION 26 0523 - CONTROL-VOLTAGE ELECTRICAL POWER CABLES

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
 - 1. Backboards.
 - 2. Category 5e twisted pair cable.
 - 3. Category 6 twisted pair cable.
 - 4. Category 6a twisted pair cable.
 - 5. Twisted pair cabling hardware.
 - 6. RS-485 cabling.
 - 7. Low-voltage control cabling.
 - 8. Control-circuit conductors.
 - 9. Identification products.

1.3 DEFINITIONS

- A. EMI: Electromagnetic interference.
- B. Low Voltage: As defined in NFPA 70 for circuits and equipment operating at less than 50 V or for remote-control and signaling power-limited circuits.
- C. Plenum: A space forming part of the air distribution system to which one or more air ducts are connected. An air duct is a passageway, other than a plenum, for transporting air to or from heating, ventilating, or air-conditioning equipment.
- D. RCDD: Registered Communications Distribution Designer.

1.4 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product.

1.5 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Qualification Data: For testing agency, RCDD, layout technician, installation supervisor, and field inspector.
- B. Source quality-control reports.

- C. Field quality-control reports.

1.6 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Testing Agency Qualifications: Accredited by NETA.
 - 1. Testing Agency's Field Supervisor: Currently certified by BICSI as an RCDD to supervise on-site testing.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.
- B. Flame Travel and Smoke Density in Plenums: As determined by testing identical products according to NFPA 262, by a qualified testing agency. Identify products for installation in plenums with appropriate markings of applicable testing agency.
 - 1. Flame Travel Distance: **60 inches (1520 mm)** or less.
 - 2. Peak Optical Smoke Density: 0.5 or less.
 - 3. Average Optical Smoke Density: 0.15 or less.
- C. Flame Travel and Smoke Density for Riser Cables in Non-Plenum Building Spaces: As determined by testing identical products according to UL 1666.
- D. Flame Travel and Smoke Density for Cables in Non-Riser Applications and Non-Plenum Building Spaces: As determined by testing identical products according to UL 1685.
- E. RoHS compliant.

2.2 BACKBOARDS

- A. Description: Plywood, **fire-retardant treated, 3/4 by 48 by 96 inches**. Comply with requirements for plywood backing panels in Section 06 1000 "Rough Carpentry."
- B. Painting: Paint plywood on all sides and edges with **flat black latex** paint. Comply with requirements in Section 09 9123 "Interior Painting."

2.3 CATEGORY 5e TWISTED PAIR CABLE

- A. Description: Four-pair, balanced-twisted pair cable, certified to meet transmission characteristics of Category 5e cable at frequencies up to 100 MHz.
- B. Standard: Comply with ICEA S-90-661, NEMA WC 63.1, and TIA-568-C.2 for Category 5e cables.

- C. Conductors: 100-ohm, 24 AWG solid copper.
- D. Shielding/Screening: **Unshielded twisted pairs (UTP)**.
- E. Cable Rating: **Riser** or **Plenum per application**.
- F. Jacket: **White** thermoplastic.

2.4 CATEGORY 6 TWISTED PAIR CABLE

- A. Description: Four-pair, balanced-twisted pair cable, **with internal spline**, certified to meet transmission characteristics of Category 6 cable at frequencies up to 250MHz.
- B. Standard: Comply with NEMA WC 66/ICEA S-116-732 and TIA-568-C.2 for Category 6 cables.
- C. Conductors: 100-ohm, 23 AWG solid copper.
- D. Shielding/Screening: **Unshielded twisted pairs (UTP)**.
- E. Cable Rating: **Riser** or **Plenum per application**.
- F. Jacket: **Gray** thermoplastic.

2.5 CATEGORY 6a TWISTED PAIR CABLE

- A. Description: Four-pair, balanced-twisted pair cable, **with internal spline**, certified to meet transmission characteristics of Category 6a cable at frequencies up to 500MHz.
- B. Standard: Comply with TIA-568-C.2 for Category 6a cables.
- C. Conductors: 100-ohm, 23 AWG solid copper.
- D. Shielding/Screening: **Unshielded twisted pairs (UTP)**.
- E. Cable Rating: **Riser** or **Plenum per application**.
- F. Jacket: **Blue** thermoplastic.

2.6 TWISTED PAIR CABLE HARDWARE

- A. Description: Hardware designed to connect, splice, and terminate twisted pair copper communications cable.
- B. General Requirements for Twisted Pair Cable Hardware:
 - 1. Comply with the performance requirements of **Category 6**.
 - 2. Comply with TIA-568-C.2, IDC type, with modules designed for punch-down caps or tools.

3. Cables shall be terminated with connecting hardware of same category or higher.
- C. Source Limitations: **Obtain twisted pair cable hardware from same manufacturer as twisted pair cable, from single source.**
- D. Connecting Blocks: **110-style IDC for Category 6.** Provide blocks for the number of cables terminated on the block, plus **25** percent spare, integral with connector bodies, including plugs and jacks where indicated.
 1. Number of Terminals per Field: **One** for each conductor in assigned cables.
- E. Patch Panel: Modular panels housing numbered jack units with IDC-type connectors at each jack location for permanent termination of pair groups of installed cables.
 1. Features:
 - a. Universal T568A and T568B wiring labels.
 - b. Labeling areas adjacent to conductors.
 - c. Replaceable connectors.
 - d. 24 or 48 ports.
 2. Construction: 16-gauge steel and mountable on **19-inch** equipment racks.
 3. Number of Jacks per Field: One for each four-pair **cable indicated.**
- F. Patch Cords: Factory-made, four-pair cables in **48-inch** lengths; terminated with an eight-position modular plug at each end.
 1. Patch cords shall have bend-relief-compliant boots and color-coded icons to ensure performance. Patch cords shall have latch guards to protect against snagging.
- G. Plugs and Plug Assemblies:
 1. Male; eight position; color-coded modular telecommunications connector designed for termination of a single four-pair 100-ohm unshielded or shielded twisted pair cable.
 2. Comply with IEC 60603-7-1, IEC 60603-7-2, IEC 60603-7-3, IEC 60603-7-4, and IEC 60603-7.5.
 3. Marked to indicate transmission performance.
- H. Jacks and Jack Assemblies:
 1. Female; eight position; modular; fixed telecommunications connector designed for termination of a single four-pair 100-ohm unshielded or shielded twisted pair cable.
 2. Designed to snap-in to a patch panel or faceplate.
 3. Standards:
 - a. Category 5e, unshielded twisted pair cable shall comply with IEC 60603-7-2.
 - b. Category 5e, shielded twisted pair cable shall comply with IEC 60603-7-3.
 - c. Category 6, unshielded twisted pair cable shall comply with IEC 60603-7-4.
 - d. Category 6, shielded twisted pair cable shall comply with IEC 60603-7.5.

- e. Category 6a, unshielded twisted pair cable shall comply with IEC 60603-7-41.
 - f. Category 6a, shielded twisted pair cable shall comply with IEC 60603-7.51.
4. Marked to indicate transmission performance.
- I. Faceplate:
- 1. **Two** or **Four** or **Six** port, vertical single-gang faceplates designed to mount to single-gang wall boxes as indicated on Drawings.
 - 2. **Eight** or **Ten Twelve** port, vertical double-gang faceplates designed to mount to double-gang wall boxes as indicated on Drawings.
 - 3. Plastic Faceplate: High-impact plastic. Coordinate color with Section 26 2726 "Wiring Devices."
 - 4. Metal Faceplate: **Stainless steel**, complying with requirements in Section 26 2726 "Wiring Devices."
 - 5. For use with snap-in jacks accommodating any combination of twisted pair, optical fiber, and coaxial work area cords.
 - a. Flush mounting jacks, positioning the cord at a 45-degree angle.
- J. Legend:
- 1. Machine printed, in the field, using adhesive-tape label.
 - 2. Snap-in, clear-label covers and machine-printed paper inserts.
- 2.7 TWIN-AXIAL DATA HIGHWAY CABLE
- A. Standard Cable: NFPA 70, Type CM.
- 1. Paired, 1 pairs, **No. 20** AWG, stranded (**7x28**) tinned-copper conductors.
 - 2. Polypropylene insulation.
 - 3. Individual aluminum foil-polyester tape shielded pairs with 100 percent shield coverage.
 - 4. PVC jacket.
 - 5. Pairs are cabled on common axis with No. 24 AWG, stranded (7x32) tinned-copper drain wire.
 - 6. Flame Resistance: Comply with UL 1685.
- B. Plenum-Rated Cable: NFPA 70, Type CMP.
- 1. Paired, 1 pairs, **No. 20** AWG, stranded (**7x28**) tinned-copper conductors.
 - 2. Plastic insulation.
 - 3. Individual aluminum foil-polyester tape shielded pairs with 100 percent shield coverage.
 - 4. Plastic jacket.
 - 5. Pairs are cabled on common axis with No. 24 AWG, stranded (7x32) tinned-copper drain wire.
 - 6. Flame Resistance: Comply with NFPA 262.

2.8 RS-485 CABLE

- A. Standard Cable: NFPA 70, Type CMG.
 - 1. Paired, **two pairs**, twisted, No. 22 AWG, stranded (7x30) tinned-copper conductors.
 - 2. PVC insulation.
 - 3. Unshielded.
 - 4. PVC jacket.
 - 5. Flame Resistance: Comply with UL 1685.

- B. Plenum-Rated Cable: NFPA 70, Type CMP.
 - 1. Paired, **two pairs**, No. 22 AWG, stranded (7x30) tinned-copper conductors.
 - 2. Fluorinated ethylene propylene insulation.
 - 3. Unshielded.
 - 4. Fluorinated ethylene propylene jacket.
 - 5. Flame Resistance: NFPA 262.

2.9 LOW-VOLTAGE CONTROL CABLE

- A. Paired Cable: NFPA 70, Type CMG.
 - 1. **Multi-**]pair, twisted, **No. 16 AWG, stranded (19x29)** tinned-copper conductors.
 - 2. PVC insulation.
 - 3. Unshielded.
 - 4. PVC jacket.
 - 5. Flame Resistance: Comply with UL 1685.

- B. Plenum-Rated, Paired Cable: NFPA 70, Type CMP.
 - 1. **Multi-**]pair, twisted, **No. 16 AWG, stranded (19x29)** tinned-copper conductors.
 - 2. PVC insulation.
 - 3. Unshielded.
 - 4. PVC jacket.
 - 5. Flame Resistance: Comply with NFPA 262.

2.10 CONTROL-CIRCUIT CONDUCTORS

- A. Class 1 Control Circuits: Stranded copper, **Type THHN/THWN-2, complying with UL 83 in raceway.**

- B. Class 2 Control Circuits: Stranded copper, **Type THHN/THWN-2, complying with UL 83 in raceway.**

- C. Class 3 Remote-Control and Signal Circuits: Stranded copper, **Type THHN/THWN-2, complying with UL 83 in raceway.**

- D. Class 2 Control Circuits and Class 3 Remote-Control and Signal Circuits That Supply Critical Circuits: Circuit Integrity (CI) cable.

1. Smoke control signaling and control circuits.

2.11 SOURCE QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Testing Agency: **Engage** a qualified testing agency to evaluate cables.
- B. Factory test twisted pair cables according to TIA-568-C.2.
- C. Cable will be considered defective if it does not pass tests and inspections.
- D. Prepare test and inspection reports.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Test cables on receipt at Project site.
 1. Test each pair of twisted pair cable for open and short circuits.

3.2 INSTALLATION OF RACEWAYS AND BOXES

- A. Comply with requirements in Section 26 0533 "Raceways and Boxes for Electrical Systems" for raceway selection and installation requirements for boxes, conduits, and wireways as supplemented or modified in this Section.
 1. Outlet boxes for cables shall be no smaller than **4 inches** square by **2-1/8 inches** deep with extension ring sized to bring edge of ring to within **1/8 inch** of the finished wall surface.
 2. Flexible metal conduit shall not be used.
- B. Comply with TIA-569-D for pull-box sizing and length of conduit and number of bends between pull points.
- C. Install manufactured conduit sweeps and long-radius elbows if possible.
- D. Raceway Installation in Equipment Rooms:
 1. Position conduit ends adjacent to a corner on backboard if a single piece of plywood is installed, or in the corner of the room if multiple sheets of plywood are installed around perimeter walls of the room.
 2. Install cable trays to route cables if conduits cannot be located in these positions.
 3. Secure conduits to backboard if entering the room from overhead.
 4. Extend conduits **3 inches** above finished floor.
 5. Install metal conduits with grounding bushings and connect with grounding conductor to grounding system.
- E. Backboards: Install backboards with **96-inch** dimension vertical. Butt adjacent sheets tightly and form smooth gap-free corners and joints.

3.3 INSTALLATION OF CONDUCTORS AND CABLES

- A. Comply with NECA 1.
- B. General Requirements for Cabling:
 - 1. Comply with TIA-568-C Series of standards.
 - 2. Comply with BICSI ITSIMM, Ch. 5, "Copper Structured Cabling Systems."
 - 3. Terminate all conductors; no cable shall contain unterminated elements. Make terminations only at indicated outlets, terminals, and cross-connect and patch panels.
 - 4. Cables may not be spliced.
 - 5. Secure and support cables at intervals not exceeding **30 inches** and not more than **6 inches** from cabinets, boxes, fittings, outlets, racks, frames, and terminals.
 - 6. Bundle, lace, and train conductors to terminal points without exceeding manufacturer's limitations on bending radii, but not less than radii specified in BICSI ITSIMM, Ch. 5, "Copper Structured Cabling Systems." Install lacing bars and distribution spools.
 - 7. Do not install bruised, kinked, scored, deformed, or abraded cable. Do not splice cable between termination, tap, or junction points. Remove and discard cable if damaged during installation and replace it with new cable.
 - 8. Cold-Weather Installation: Bring cable to room temperature before dereeling. Do not use heat lamps for heating.
 - 9. Pulling Cable: Comply with BICSI ITSIMM, Ch. 5, "Copper Structured Cabling Systems." Monitor cable pull tensions.
 - 10. Support: Do not allow cables to lie on removable ceiling tiles.
 - 11. Secure: Fasten securely in place with hardware specifically designed and installed so as to not damage cables.
- C. Twisted Pair Cable Installation:
 - 1. Comply with TIA-568-C.2.
 - 2. Install termination hardware as required.
 - 3. Do not untwist UTP cables more than **1/2 inch** at the point of termination to maintain cable geometry.
- D. Installation of Control-Circuit Conductors:
 - 1. Install wiring in raceways. Comply with requirements specified in Section 26 0533 "Raceways and Boxes for Electrical Systems."
- E. Open-Cable Installation:
 - 1. Install cabling with horizontal and vertical cable guides in telecommunications spaces with terminating hardware and interconnection equipment.
 - 2. Suspend copper cable not in a wireway or pathway a minimum of **8 inches** above ceilings by cable supports not more than **30 inches** apart.
 - 3. Cable shall not be run through or on structural members or in contact with pipes, ducts, or other potentially damaging items. Do not run cables between structural members and corrugated panels.
- F. Installation of Cable Routed Exposed under Raised Floors:

1. Install plenum-rated cable only.
2. Install cabling after the flooring system has been installed in raised floor areas.
3. Below each feed point, neatly coil a minimum of **72 inches** of cable in a coil not less than **12 inches** in diameter.

G. Separation from EMI Sources:

1. Comply with BICSI TDMM and TIA-569-D recommendations for separating unshielded copper voice and data communications cable from potential EMI sources including electrical power lines and equipment.
2. Separation between open communications cables or cables in nonmetallic raceways and unshielded power conductors and electrical equipment shall be as follows:
 - a. Electrical Equipment or Circuit Rating Less Than 2 kVA: A minimum of **5 inches**.
 - b. Electrical Equipment or Circuit Rating between 2 and 5 kVA: A minimum of **12 inches**.
 - c. Electrical Equipment or Circuit Rating More Than 5 kVA: A minimum of **24 inches**.
3. Separation between communications cables in grounded metallic raceways and unshielded power lines or electrical equipment shall be as follows:
 - a. Electrical Equipment or Circuit Rating Less Than 2 kVA: A minimum of **2-1/2 inches**.
 - b. Electrical Equipment or Circuit Rating between 2 and 5 kVA: A minimum of **6 inches**.
 - c. Electrical Equipment or Circuit Rating More Than 5 kVA: A minimum of **12 inches**.
4. Separation between communications cables in grounded metallic raceways and power lines and electrical equipment located in grounded metallic conduits or enclosures shall be as follows:
 - a. Electrical Equipment or Circuit Rating Less Than 2 kVA: No requirement.
 - b. Electrical Equipment or Circuit Rating between 2 and 5 kVA: A minimum of **3 inches**.
 - c. Electrical Equipment or Circuit Rating More Than 5 kVA: A minimum of **6 inches**.
5. Separation between Communications Cables and Electrical Motors and Transformers, 5 kVA or 5 HP and Larger: A minimum of **48 inches**.
6. Separation between Communications Cables and Fluorescent Fixtures: A minimum of **5 inches**.

3.4 REMOVAL OF CONDUCTORS AND CABLES

- A. Remove abandoned conductors and cables. Abandoned conductors and cables are those installed that are not terminated at equipment and are not identified with a tag for future use.

3.5 CONTROL-CIRCUIT CONDUCTORS

- A. Minimum Conductor Sizes:
 - 1. Class 1 remote-control and signal circuits; **No 14** AWG.
 - 2. Class 2 low-energy, remote-control, and signal circuits; **No. 16** AWG.
 - 3. Class 3 low-energy, remote-control, alarm, and signal circuits; **No 12** AWG.

3.6 FIRESTOPPING

- A. Comply with requirements in Section 07 8413 "Penetration Firestopping."
- B. Comply with TIA-569-D, Annex A, "Firestopping."
- C. Comply with BICSI TDMM, "Firestopping" Chapter.

3.7 GROUNDING

- A. For data communication wiring, comply with TIA-607-B and with BICSI TDMM, "Bonding and Grounding (Earthing)" Chapter.
- B. For low-voltage control wiring and cabling, comply with requirements in Section 26 0526 "Grounding and Bonding for Electrical Systems."

3.8 IDENTIFICATION

- A. Comply with requirements for identification specified in Section 26 0553 "Identification for Electrical Systems."
- B. Identify data and communications system components, wiring, and cabling according to TIA-606-B; label printers shall use label stocks, laminating adhesives, and inks complying with UL 969.

3.9 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Testing Agency: Engage a qualified testing agency to perform tests and inspections.
- B. Tests and Inspections:
 - 1. Visually inspect cable jacket materials for UL or third-party certification markings. Inspect cabling terminations to confirm color-coding for pin assignments, and inspect cabling connections to confirm compliance with TIA-568-C.1.
 - 2. Visually inspect cable placement, cable termination, grounding and bonding, equipment and patch cords, and labeling of all components.
 - 3. Test cabling for direct-current loop resistance, shorts, opens, intermittent faults, and polarity between conductors. Test operation of shorting bars in connection blocks. Test cables after termination, but not after cross-connection.

- a. Test instruments shall meet or exceed applicable requirements in TIA-568-C.2. Perform tests with a tester that complies with performance requirements in its "Test Instruments (Normative)" Annex, complying with measurement accuracy specified in its "Measurement Accuracy (Informative)" Annex. Use only test cords and adapters that are qualified by test equipment manufacturer for channel or link test configuration.
- C. Document data for each measurement. Print data for submittals in a summary report that is formatted using Table 10.1 in BICSI TDMM as a guide, or transfer the data from the instrument to the computer, save as text files, print, and submit.
- D. End-to-end cabling will be considered defective if it does not pass tests and inspections.
- E. Prepare test and inspection reports.

END OF SECTION

SECTION 26 0526 - GROUNDING AND BONDING FOR ELECTRICAL SYSTEMS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section includes grounding and bonding systems and equipment.
- B. Section includes grounding and bonding systems and equipment, plus the following special applications:
 - 1. Underground distribution grounding.
 - 2. Ground bonding common with lightning protection system.
 - 3. Foundation steel electrodes.

1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product indicated.

1.4 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Coordination Drawings: Plans showing dimensioned locations of grounding features specified in "Field Quality Control" Article, including the following:
 - 1. Test wells.
 - 2. Ground rods.
 - 3. Ground rings.
 - 4. Grounding arrangements and connections for separately derived systems.
- B. Qualification Data: For testing agency and testing agency's field supervisor.
- C. Field quality-control reports.

1.5 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

- A. Operation and Maintenance Data: For grounding to include in emergency, operation, and maintenance manuals.
 - 1. In addition to items specified in Section 01 7823 "Operation and Maintenance Data," include the following:

- a. Plans showing as-built, dimensioned locations of grounding features specified in "Field Quality Control" Article, including the following:
 - 1) Test wells.
 - 2) Ground rods.
 - 3) Ground rings.
 - 4) Grounding arrangements and connections for separately derived systems.
- b. Instructions for periodic testing and inspection of grounding features at test wells, ground rings, and grounding connections for separately derived systems based on NETA MTS and NFPA 70B .
 - 1) Tests shall determine if ground-resistance or impedance values remain within specified maximums, and instructions shall recommend corrective action if values do not.
 - 2) Include recommended testing intervals.

1.6 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Testing Agency Qualifications: Certified by NETA.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 SYSTEM DESCRIPTION

- A. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.
- B. Comply with UL 467 for grounding and bonding materials and equipment.

2.2 CONDUCTORS

- A. Insulated Conductors: Copper wire or cable insulated for 600 V unless otherwise required by applicable Code or authorities having jurisdiction.
- B. Bare Copper Conductors:
 1. Solid Conductors: ASTM B 3.
 2. Stranded Conductors: ASTM B 8.
 3. Tinned Conductors: ASTM B 33.
 4. Bonding Cable: 28 kcmil, 14 strands of No. 17 AWG conductor, 1/4 inch in diameter.
 5. Bonding Conductor: No. 4 or No. 6 AWG, stranded conductor.
 6. Bonding Jumper: Copper tape, braided conductors terminated with copper ferrules; 1-5/8 inches wide and 1/16 inch thick.
 7. Tinned Bonding Jumper: Tinned-copper tape, braided conductors terminated with copper ferrules; 1-5/8 inches wide and 1/16 inch thick.

- C. Grounding Bus: Predrilled rectangular bars of annealed copper, 1/4 by 4 inches (unless noted otherwise on drawings) in cross section, with 9/32-inch holes spaced 1-1/8 inches apart. Stand-off insulators for mounting shall comply with UL 891 for use in switchboards, 600 V and shall be Lexan or PVC, impulse tested at 5000 V.
 - 1. Grounding bus bar shall be installed in each dedicated data equipment room/closet.
 - 2. Install No. 6 AWG conductor connecting each grounding bus bar to the main service grounding distribution system.

2.3 CONNECTORS

- A. Listed and labeled by an NRTL acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction for applications in which used and for specific types, sizes, and combinations of conductors and other items connected.
- B. Welded Connectors: Exothermic-welding kits of types recommended by kit manufacturer for materials being joined and installation conditions.
- C. Bus-Bar Connectors: Mechanical type, cast silicon bronze, solderless exothermic-type wire terminals, and long-barrel, two-bolt connection to ground bus bar.
- D. Bus-Bar Connectors: Compression type, copper or copper alloy, with two wire terminals.
- E. Beam Clamps: Mechanical type, terminal, ground wire access from four directions, with dual, tin-plated or silicon bronze bolts.
- F. Cable-to-Cable Connectors: Compression type, copper or copper alloy.
- G. Conduit Hubs: Mechanical type, terminal with threaded hub.
- H. Ground Rod Clamps: Mechanical type, copper or copper alloy, terminal with hex head bolt.
- I. Ground Rod Clamps: Mechanical type, copper or copper alloy, terminal with hex head bolt.
- J. Lay-in Lug Connector: Mechanical type, copper rated for direct burial terminal with set screw.
- K. Service Post Connectors: Mechanical type, bronze alloy terminal, in short- and long-stud lengths, capable of single and double conductor connections.
- L. Signal Reference Grid Clamp: Mechanical type, stamped-steel terminal with hex head screw.
- M. Straps: Solid copper, copper lugs. Rated for 600 A.
- N. Tower Ground Clamps: Mechanical type, copper or copper alloy.
- O. U-Bolt Clamps: Mechanical type, copper or copper alloy, terminal listed for direct burial.

- P. Water Pipe Clamps:
 - 1. Mechanical type, two pieces with zinc-plated bolts.
 - a. Material: Die-cast zinc alloy.
 - b. Listed for direct burial.
 - 2. U-bolt type with malleable-iron clamp and copper ground connector rated for direct burial.

2.4 GROUNDING ELECTRODES

- A. Ground Rods: Copper-clad steel; 3/4 inch diameter by 10 feet in length.
- B. Chemical-Enhanced Grounding Electrodes: Copper tube, straight or L-shaped, charged with nonhazardous electrolytic chemical salts.
 - 1. Termination: Factory-attached No. 4/0 AWG bare conductor at least 48 inches long.
 - 2. Backfill Material: Electrode manufacturer's recommended material.
- C. Ground Plates: 1/4 inch thick, hot-dip galvanized.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 APPLICATIONS

- A. Conductors: Install solid conductor for No. 8 AWG and smaller, and stranded conductors for No. 6 AWG and larger unless otherwise indicated.
- B. Underground Grounding Conductors: Install bare tinned-copper conductor, No. 2/0 AWG minimum.
 - 1. Bury at least 24 inches below grade.
 - 2. Duct-Bank Grounding Conductor: Bury 12 inches above duct bank when indicated as part of duct-bank installation.
- C. Isolated Grounding Conductors: Green-colored insulation with continuous yellow stripe. On feeders with isolated ground, identify grounding conductor where visible to normal inspection, with alternating bands of green and yellow tape, with at least three bands of green and two bands of yellow.
- D. Grounding Bus: Install in electrical equipment rooms, in rooms housing service and low voltage data equipment and elsewhere as indicated.
 - 1. Install bus horizontally, on insulated spacers 2 inches minimum from wall, 6 inches above finished floor unless otherwise indicated.
 - 2. Where indicated on both sides of doorways, route bus up to top of door frame, across top of doorway, and down; connect to horizontal bus.

E. Conductor Terminations and Connections:

1. Pipe and Equipment Grounding Conductor Terminations: Bolted connectors.
2. Underground Connections: Welded connectors except at test wells and as otherwise indicated.
3. Connections to Ground Rods at Test Wells: Bolted connectors.
4. Connections to Structural Steel: Welded connectors.

3.2 GROUNDING AT THE SERVICE

- A. Equipment grounding conductors and grounding electrode conductors shall be connected to the ground bus. Install a main bonding jumper between the neutral and ground buses.

3.3 GROUNDING SEPARATELY DERIVED SYSTEMS Retain "Generator" Paragraph below to require a grounding electrode at the generator. This electrode is not an NFPA 70 requirement.

3.4 GROUNDING UNDERGROUND DISTRIBUTION SYSTEM COMPONENTS

- A. Comply with IEEE C2 grounding requirements.
- B. Grounding Manholes and Handholes: Install a driven ground rod through manhole or handhole floor, close to wall, and set rod depth so 4 inches will extend above finished floor. If necessary, install ground rod before manhole is placed and provide No. 1/0 AWG bare, tinned-copper conductor from ground rod into manhole through a waterproof sleeve in manhole wall. Protect ground rods passing through concrete floor with a double wrapping of pressure-sensitive insulating tape or heat-shrunk insulating sleeve from 2 inches above to 6 inches below concrete. Seal floor opening with waterproof, nonshrink grout.
- C. Grounding Connections to Manhole Components: Bond exposed-metal parts such as inserts, cable racks, pulling irons, ladders, and cable shields within each manhole or handhole, to ground rod or grounding conductor. Make connections with No. 4 AWG minimum, stranded, hard-drawn copper bonding conductor. Train conductors level or plumb around corners and fasten to manhole walls. Connect to cable armor and cable shields according to written instructions by manufacturer of splicing and termination kits.
- D. Pad-Mounted Transformers and Switches: Install two ground rods and ground ring around the pad. Ground pad-mounted equipment and noncurrent-carrying metal items associated with substations by connecting them to underground cable and grounding electrodes. Install tinned-copper conductor not less than No. 2 AWG for ground ring and for taps to equipment grounding terminals. Bury ground ring not less than 6 inches from the foundation.

3.5 EQUIPMENT GROUNDING

- A. Install insulated equipment grounding conductors with all feeders and branch circuits.

- B. Install insulated equipment grounding conductors with the following items, in addition to those required by NFPA 70:
 - 1. Feeders and branch circuits.
 - 2. Lighting circuits.
 - 3. Receptacle circuits.
 - 4. Single-phase motor and appliance branch circuits.
 - 5. Three-phase motor and appliance branch circuits.
 - 6. Flexible raceway runs.
 - 7. Armored and metal-clad cable runs.
 - 8. Busway Supply Circuits: Install insulated equipment grounding conductor from grounding bus in the switchgear, switchboard, or distribution panel to equipment grounding bar terminal on busway.
- C. Air-Duct Equipment Circuits: Install insulated equipment grounding conductor to duct-mounted electrical devices operating at 120 V and more, including air cleaners, heaters, dampers, humidifiers, and other duct electrical equipment. Bond conductor to each unit and to air duct and connected metallic piping.
- D. Water Heater, Heat-Tracing, and Antifrost Heating Cables: Install a separate insulated equipment grounding conductor to each electric water heater and heat-tracing cable. Bond conductor to heater units, piping, connected equipment, and components.
- E. Isolated Grounding Receptacle Circuits: Install an insulated equipment grounding conductor connected to the receptacle grounding terminal. Isolate conductor from raceway and from panelboard grounding terminals. Terminate at equipment grounding conductor terminal of the applicable derived system or service unless otherwise indicated.
- F. Isolated Equipment Enclosure Circuits: For designated equipment supplied by a branch circuit or feeder, isolate equipment enclosure from supply circuit raceway with a nonmetallic raceway fitting listed for the purpose. Install fitting where raceway enters enclosure, and install a separate insulated equipment grounding conductor. Isolate conductor from raceway and from panelboard grounding terminals. Terminate at equipment grounding conductor terminal of the applicable derived system or service unless otherwise indicated.
- G. Poles Supporting Outdoor Lighting Fixtures: Install grounding electrode and a separate insulated equipment grounding conductor in addition to grounding conductor installed with branch-circuit conductors.
- H. Metallic Fences: Comply with requirements of IEEE C2.
 - 1. Grounding Conductor: Bare copper, not less than No. 8 AWG.
 - 2. Gates: Shall be bonded to the grounding conductor with a flexible bonding jumper.
 - 3. Barbed Wire: Strands shall be bonded to the grounding conductor.

3.6 FENCE GROUNDING

- A. Fence Grounding: Install at maximum intervals of 1500 feet except as follows:

1. Fences within 100 Feet of Buildings, Structures, Walkways, and Roadways: Ground at maximum intervals of 750 feet.
 - a. Gates and Other Fence Openings: Ground fence on each side of opening.
 - 1) Bond metal gates to gate posts.
 - 2) Bond across openings, with and without gates, except at openings indicated as intentional fence discontinuities. Use No. 2 AWG wire and bury it at least 18 inches below finished grade.
 - B. Protection at Crossings of Overhead Electrical Power Lines: Ground fence at location of crossing and at a maximum distance of 150 feet on each side of crossing.
 - C. Fences Enclosing Electrical Power Distribution Equipment: Ground as required by IEEE C2 unless otherwise indicated.
 - D. Grounding Method: At each grounding location, drive a grounding rod vertically until the top is 6 inches below finished grade. Connect rod to fence with No. 6 AWG conductor. Connect conductor to each fence component at grounding location.
 - E. Bonding Method for Gates: Connect bonding jumper between gate post and gate frame.
 - F. Bonding to Lightning-Protection System: If fence terminates at lightning-protected building or structure, ground the fence and bond the fence grounding conductor to lightning-protection down conductor or lightning-protection grounding conductor, complying with NFPA 780.

3.7 INSTALLATION

- A. Grounding Conductors: Route along shortest and straightest paths possible unless otherwise indicated or required by Code. Avoid obstructing access or placing conductors where they may be subjected to strain, impact, or damage.
- B. Ground Bonding Common with Lightning Protection System: Comply with NFPA 780 and UL 96 when interconnecting with lightning protection system. Bond electrical power system ground directly to lightning protection system grounding conductor at closest point to electrical service grounding electrode. Use bonding conductor sized same as system grounding electrode conductor, and install in conduit.
- C. Ground Rods: Drive rods until tops are 2 inches below finished floor or final grade unless otherwise indicated.
 1. Interconnect ground rods with grounding electrode conductor below grade and as otherwise indicated. Make connections without exposing steel or damaging coating if any.
 2. Use exothermic welds for all below-grade connections.
 3. For grounding electrode system, install at least three rods spaced at least one-rod length from each other and located at least the same distance from other grounding electrodes, and connect to the service grounding electrode conductor.

- D. Test Wells: Ground rod driven through drilled hole in bottom of handhole. Handholes are specified in Section 26 0543 "Underground Ducts and Raceways for Electrical Systems," and shall be at least 12 inches deep, with cover.
 - 1. Install at least one test well for each service unless otherwise indicated. Install at the ground rod electrically closest to service entrance. Set top of test well flush with finished grade or floor.
- E. Bonding Straps and Jumpers: Install in locations accessible for inspection and maintenance except where routed through short lengths of conduit.
 - 1. Bonding to Structure: Bond straps directly to basic structure, taking care not to penetrate any adjacent parts.
 - 2. Bonding to Equipment Mounted on Vibration Isolation Hangers and Supports: Install bonding so vibration is not transmitted to rigidly mounted equipment.
 - 3. Use exothermic-welded connectors for outdoor locations; if a disconnect-type connection is required, use a bolted clamp.
- F. Grounding and Bonding for Piping:
 - 1. Metal Water Service Pipe: Install insulated copper grounding conductors, in conduit, from building's main service equipment, or grounding bus, to main metal water service entrances to building. Connect grounding conductors to main metal water service pipes; use a bolted clamp connector or bolt a lug-type connector to a pipe flange by using one of the lug bolts of the flange. Where a dielectric main water fitting is installed, connect grounding conductor on street side of fitting. Bond metal grounding conductor conduit or sleeve to conductor at each end.
 - 2. Water Meter Piping: Use braided-type bonding jumpers to electrically bypass water meters. Connect to pipe with a bolted connector.
 - 3. Bond each aboveground portion of gas piping system downstream from equipment shutoff valve.
- G. Bonding Interior Metal Ducts: Bond metal air ducts to equipment grounding conductors of associated fans, blowers, electric heaters, and air cleaners. Install bonding jumper to bond across flexible duct connections to achieve continuity.
- H. Grounding for Steel Building Structure: Install a driven ground rod at base of each corner column and at intermediate exterior columns at distances not more than 60 feet apart.
- I. Ground Ring: Install a grounding conductor, electrically connected to each building structure ground rod and to each steel column, extending around the perimeter of building.
 - 1. Install tinned-copper conductor not less than No. 2/0 AWG for ground ring and for taps to building steel.
 - 2. Bury ground ring not less than 24 inches from building's foundation.
- J. Concrete-Encased Grounding Electrode (Ufer Ground): Fabricate according to NFPA 70; use a minimum of 20 feet of bare copper conductor not smaller than No. 4 AWG.

1. If concrete foundation is less than 20 feet long, coil excess conductor within base of foundation.
 2. Bond grounding conductor to reinforcing steel in at least four locations and to anchor bolts. Extend grounding conductor below grade and connect to building's grounding grid or to grounding electrode external to concrete.
- K. Connections: Make connections so possibility of galvanic action or electrolysis is minimized. Select connectors, connection hardware, conductors, and connection methods so metals in direct contact are galvanically compatible.
1. Use electroplated or hot-tin-coated materials to ensure high conductivity and to make contact points closer in order of galvanic series.
 2. Make connections with clean, bare metal at points of contact.
 3. Make aluminum-to-steel connections with stainless-steel separators and mechanical clamps.
 4. Make aluminum-to-galvanized-steel connections with tin-plated copper jumpers and mechanical clamps.
 5. Coat and seal connections having dissimilar metals with inert material to prevent future penetration of moisture to contact surfaces.

3.8 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Testing Agency: Engage a qualified testing agency to perform tests and inspections.
- B. Perform tests and inspections.
- C. Tests and Inspections:
1. After installing grounding system but before permanent electrical circuits have been energized, test for compliance with requirements.
 2. Inspect physical and mechanical condition. Verify tightness of accessible, bolted, electrical connections with a calibrated torque wrench according to manufacturer's written instructions.
 3. Test completed grounding system at each location where a maximum ground-resistance level is specified, at service disconnect enclosure grounding terminal, at ground test wells, and at individual ground rods. Make tests at ground rods before any conductors are connected.
 - a. Measure ground resistance no fewer than two full days after last trace of precipitation and without soil being moistened by any means other than natural drainage or seepage and without chemical treatment or other artificial means of reducing natural ground resistance.
 - b. Perform tests by fall-of-potential method according to IEEE 81.
 4. Prepare dimensioned Drawings locating each test well, ground rod and ground-rod assembly, and other grounding electrodes. Identify each by letter in alphabetical order, and key to the record of tests and observations. Include the number of rods driven and their depth at each location, and include observations of weather and other phenomena that may affect test results. Describe measures taken to improve test results.
- D. Grounding system will be considered defective if it does not pass tests and inspections.

- E. Prepare test and inspection reports.
- F. Report measured ground resistances that exceed the following values:
 - 1. Power and Lighting Equipment or System with Capacity of 500 kVA and Less: 10 ohms.
 - 2. Power and Lighting Equipment or System with Capacity of 500 to 1000 kVA: 5 ohms.
 - 3. Power and Lighting Equipment or System with Capacity More Than 1000 kVA: 3 ohms.
 - 4. Power Distribution Units or Panelboards Serving Electronic Equipment: 3 ohm(s).
 - 5. Substations and Pad-Mounted Equipment: 5 ohms.
 - 6. Manhole Grounds: 10 ohms.
- G. Excessive Ground Resistance: If resistance to ground exceeds specified values, notify Architect promptly and include recommendations to reduce ground resistance.

END OF SECTION

SECTION 26 0529 - HANGERS AND SUPPORTS FOR ELECTRICAL SYSTEMS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:

1. Steel slotted support systems.
2. Aluminum slotted support systems.
3. Nonmetallic slotted support systems.
4. Conduit and cable support devices.
5. Support for conductors in vertical conduit.
6. Structural steel for fabricated supports and restraints.
7. Mounting, anchoring, and attachment components, including powder-actuated fasteners, mechanical expansion anchors, concrete inserts, clamps, through bolts, toggle bolts, and hanger rods.
8. Fabricated metal equipment support assemblies.

- B. Related Requirements:

1. Section 26 0548.16 "Seismic Controls for Electrical Systems" for products and installation requirements necessary for compliance with seismic criteria.

1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product.

1. Include construction details, material descriptions, dimensions of individual components and profiles, and finishes for the following:
 - a. Slotted support systems, hardware, and accessories.
 - b. Clamps.
 - c. Hangers.
 - d. Sockets.
 - e. Eye nuts.
 - f. Fasteners.
 - g. Anchors.
 - h. Saddles.
 - i. Brackets.
2. Include rated capacities and furnished specialties and accessories.

1.4 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Coordination Drawings: Reflected ceiling plan(s) and other details, drawn to scale, on which the following items are shown and coordinated with each other, using input from installers of the items involved:
1. Suspended ceiling components.
 2. Ductwork, piping, fittings, and supports.
 3. Structural members to which hangers and supports will be attached.
 4. Size and location of initial access modules for acoustical tile.
 5. Items penetrating finished ceiling, including the following:
 - a. Luminaires.
 - b. Air outlets and inlets.
 - c. Speakers.
 - d. Sprinklers.
 - e. Access panels.
 - f. Projectors.
- B. Seismic Qualification Data: Certificates, for hangers and supports for electrical equipment and systems, accessories, and components, from manufacturer.
1. Basis for Certification: Indicate whether withstand certification is based on actual test of assembled components or on calculation.
 2. Dimensioned Outline Drawings of Equipment Unit: Identify center of gravity and locate and describe mounting and anchorage provisions.
 3. Detailed description of equipment anchorage devices on which the certification is based and their installation requirements.
- C. Welding certificates.

1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Welding Qualifications: Qualify procedures and personnel according to AWS D1.1/D1.1M.
- B. Welding Qualifications: Qualify procedures and personnel according to the following:
1. AWS D1.1/D1.1M.
 2. AWS D1.2/D1.2M.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Delegated Design: Engage a qualified professional engineer, as defined in Section 01 4000 "Quality Requirements," to design hanger and support system.
- B. Surface-Burning Characteristics: Comply with ASTM E 84; testing by a qualified testing agency. Identify products with appropriate markings of applicable testing agency.

1. Flame Rating: Class 1.
2. Self-extinguishing according to ASTM D 635.

2.2 SUPPORT, ANCHORAGE, AND ATTACHMENT COMPONENTS

- A. Steel Slotted Support Systems: Preformed steel channels and angles with minimum 13/32-inch-diameter holes at a maximum of 8 inches o.c. in at least one surface.
1. Standard: Comply with MFMA-4 factory-fabricated components for field assembly.
 2. Material for Channel, Fittings, and Accessories: Galvanized steel or Stainless steel, Type 316 as suitable for environment.
 3. Channel Width: As required for applicable load.
 4. Metallic Coatings: Hot-dip galvanized after fabrication and applied according to MFMA-4.
 5. Nonmetallic Coatings: Manufacturer's standard PVC, polyurethane, or polyester coating applied according to MFMA-4.
 6. Painted Coatings: Manufacturer's standard painted coating applied according to MFMA-4.
 7. Protect finishes on exposed surfaces from damage by applying a strippable, temporary protective covering before shipping.
- B. Aluminum Slotted Support Systems: Extruded-aluminum channels and angles with minimum 13/32-inch-diameter holes at a maximum of 8 inches o.c. in at least one surface.
1. Standard: Comply with MFMA-4 factory-fabricated components for field assembly.
 2. Channel Material: 6063-T5 aluminum alloy.
 3. Fittings and Accessories Material: 5052-H32 aluminum alloy.
 4. Channel Width: Selected for applicable load.
 5. Nonmetallic Coatings: Manufacturer's standard PVC, polyurethane, or polyester coating applied according to MFMA-4.
 6. Painted Coatings: Manufacturer's standard painted coating applied according to MFMA-4.
 7. Protect finishes on exposed surfaces from damage by applying a strippable, temporary protective covering before shipping.
- C. Conduit and Cable Support Devices: Steel, Stainless-steel, aluminum hangers, clamps, and associated fittings, designed for types and sizes of raceway or cable to be supported.
- D. Support for Conductors in Vertical Conduit: Factory-fabricated assembly consisting of threaded body and insulating wedging plug or plugs for nonarmored electrical conductors or cables in riser conduits. Plugs shall have number, size, and shape of conductor gripping pieces as required to suit individual conductors or cables supported. Body shall be made of malleable iron.
- E. Structural Steel for Fabricated Supports and Restraints: ASTM A 36/A 36M steel plates, shapes, and bars; black and galvanized.
- F. Mounting, Anchoring, and Attachment Components: Items for fastening electrical items or their supports to building surfaces include the following:

1. Powder-Actuated Fasteners: Threaded-steel stud, for use in hardened portland cement concrete, steel, or wood, with tension, shear, and pullout capacities appropriate for supported loads and building materials where used.
2. Mechanical-Expansion Anchors: Insert-wedge-type, stainless steel, for use in hardened portland cement concrete, with tension, shear, and pullout capacities appropriate for supported loads and building materials where used.
3. Concrete Inserts: Steel or malleable-iron, slotted support system units are similar to MSS Type 18 units and comply with MFMA-4 or MSS SP-58.
4. Clamps for Attachment to Steel Structural Elements: MSS SP-58 units are suitable for attached structural element.
5. Through Bolts: Structural type, hex head, and high strength. Comply with ASTM A 325.
6. Hanger Rods: Threaded steel.

2.3 FABRICATED METAL EQUIPMENT SUPPORT ASSEMBLIES

- A. Description: Welded or bolted structural-steel shapes, shop or field fabricated to fit dimensions of supported equipment.
- B. Materials: Comply with requirements in Section 05 5000 "Metal Fabrications" for steel shapes and plates.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 APPLICATION

- A. Comply with the following standards for application and installation requirements of hangers and supports, except where requirements on Drawings or in this Section are stricter:
 1. NECA 1.
 2. NECA 101
 3. NECA 102.
 4. NECA 105.
 5. NECA 111.
- B. Comply with requirements in Section 07 8413 "Penetration Firestopping" for firestopping materials and installation for penetrations through fire-rated walls, ceilings, and assemblies.
- C. Comply with requirements for raceways and boxes specified in Section 26 0533 "Raceways and Boxes for Electrical Systems."
- D. Maximum Support Spacing and Minimum Hanger Rod Size for Raceways: Space supports for EMT, IMC, and RMC as required by scheduled in NECA 1, where its Table 1 lists maximum spacings that are less than those stated in NFPA 70. Minimum rod size shall be 1/4 inch in diameter.

- E. Multiple Raceways or Cables: Install trapeze-type supports fabricated with steel slotted or other support system, sized so capacity can be increased by at least 25 percent in future without exceeding specified design load limits.
 - 1. Secure raceways and cables to these supports with single-bolt conduit clamps.
- F. Spring-steel clamps designed for supporting single conduits without bolts may be used for 1-1/2-inch and smaller raceways serving branch circuits and communication systems above suspended ceilings, and for fastening raceways to trapeze supports.

3.2 SUPPORT INSTALLATION

- A. Comply with NECA 1 and NECA 101 for installation requirements except as specified in this article.
- B. Raceway Support Methods: In addition to methods described in NECA 1, EMT IMC and RMC may be supported by openings through structure members, according to NFPA 70.
- C. Strength of Support Assemblies: Where not indicated, select sizes of components so strength will be adequate to carry present and future static loads within specified loading limits. Minimum static design load used for strength determination shall be weight of supported components plus 200 lb.
- D. Mounting and Anchorage of Surface-Mounted Equipment and Components: Anchor and fasten electrical items and their supports to building structural elements by the following methods unless otherwise indicated by code:
 - 1. To Wood: Fasten with lag screws or through bolts.
 - 2. To New Concrete: Bolt to concrete inserts.
 - 3. To Masonry: Approved toggle-type bolts on hollow masonry units and expansion anchor fasteners on solid masonry units.
 - 4. To Existing Concrete: Expansion anchor fasteners.
 - 5. Instead of expansion anchors, powder-actuated driven threaded studs provided with lock washers and nuts may be used in existing standard-weight concrete 4 inches thick or greater. Do not use for anchorage to lightweight-aggregate concrete or for slabs less than 4 inches thick.
 - 6. To Steel: Beam clamps (MSS SP-58, Type 19, 21, 23, 25, or 27), complying with MSS SP-69 or Spring-tension clamps.
 - 7. To Light Steel: Sheet metal screws.
 - 8. Items Mounted on Hollow Walls and Nonstructural Building Surfaces: Mount cabinets, panelboards, disconnect switches, control enclosures, pull and junction boxes, transformers, and other devices on slotted-channel racks attached to substrate.
- E. Drill holes for expansion anchors in concrete at locations and to depths that avoid the need for reinforcing bars.

3.3 INSTALLATION OF FABRICATED METAL SUPPORTS

- A. Comply with installation requirements in Section 05 5000 "Metal Fabrications" for site-fabricated metal supports.
- B. Cut, fit, and place miscellaneous metal supports accurately in location, alignment, and elevation to support and anchor electrical materials and equipment.
- C. Field Welding: Comply with AWS D1.1/D1.1M.

3.4 CONCRETE BASES

- A. Construct concrete bases of dimensions indicated, but not less than 4 inches larger in both directions than supported unit, and so anchors will be a minimum of 10 bolt diameters from edge of the base.
- B. Unless required otherwise from manufacturer, transformer pads, pads for distribution equipment, and Generator pads shall have 6" clear minimum around the perimeter of the enclosure.
- C. Use 3000-psi, 28-day compressive-strength concrete. Concrete materials, reinforcement, and placement requirements are specified in Section 03 3000 "Cast-in-Place Concrete." Section 03 3053 "Miscellaneous Cast-in-Place Concrete."
- D. Anchor equipment to concrete base as follows:
 - 1. Place and secure anchorage devices. Use supported equipment manufacturer's setting drawings, templates, diagrams, instructions, and directions furnished with items to be embedded.
 - 2. Install anchor bolts to elevations required for proper attachment to supported equipment.
 - 3. Install anchor bolts according to anchor-bolt manufacturer's written instructions.

3.5 PAINTING

- A. Touchup: Clean field welds and abraded areas of shop paint. Paint exposed areas immediately after erecting hangers and supports. Use same materials as used for shop painting. Comply with SSPC-PA 1 requirements for touching up field-painted surfaces.
 - 1. Apply paint by brush or spray to provide minimum dry film thickness of 2.0 mils.
- B. Touchup: Comply with requirements in Section 09 9113 "Exterior Painting" Section 09 9123 "Interior Painting" and Section 09 9600 "High-Performance Coatings" for cleaning and touchup painting of field welds, bolted connections, and abraded areas of shop paint on miscellaneous metal.
- C. Galvanized Surfaces: Clean welds, bolted connections, and abraded areas and apply galvanizing-repair paint to comply with ASTM A 780.

END OF SECTION

SECTION 26 0533 - RACEWAYS AND BOXES FOR ELECTRICAL SYSTEMS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
 - 1. Metal conduits and fittings.
 - 2. Nonmetallic conduits and fittings.
 - 3. Metal wireways and auxiliary gutters.
 - 4. Nonmetal wireways and auxiliary gutters.
 - 5. Surface raceways.
 - 6. Boxes, enclosures, and cabinets.
 - 7. Handholes and boxes for exterior underground cabling.

1.3 DEFINITIONS

- A. ARC: Aluminum rigid conduit.
- B. GRC: Galvanized rigid steel conduit.
- C. IMC: Intermediate metal conduit.

1.4 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For surface raceways, wireways and fittings, floor boxes, hinged-cover enclosures, and cabinets.
- B. Shop Drawings: For custom enclosures and cabinets. Include plans, elevations, sections, and attachment details.

1.5 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Coordination Drawings: Conduit routing plans, drawn to scale, on which the following items are shown and coordinated with each other, using input from installers of items involved:
 - 1. Structural members in paths of conduit groups with common supports.
 - 2. HVAC and plumbing items and architectural features in paths of conduit groups with common supports.

- B. Qualification Data: For professional engineer.
- C. Seismic Qualification Data: Certificates, for enclosures, cabinets, and conduit racks and their mounting provisions, including those for internal components, from manufacturer.
 - 1. Basis for Certification: Indicate whether withstand certification is based on actual test of assembled components or on calculation.
 - 2. Dimensioned Outline Drawings of Equipment Unit: Identify center of gravity and locate and describe mounting and anchorage provisions.
 - 3. Detailed description of equipment anchorage devices on which the certification is based and their installation requirements.
 - 4. Detailed description of conduit support devices and interconnections on which the certification is based and their installation requirements.
- D. Source quality-control reports.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 METAL CONDUITS AND FITTINGS

- A. Metal Conduit:
 - 1. Listing and Labeling: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.
 - 2. GRC: Comply with ANSI C80.1 and UL 6.
 - 3. ARC: Comply with ANSI C80.5 and UL 6A.
 - 4. IMC: Comply with ANSI C80.6 and UL 1242.
 - 5. PVC-Coated Steel Conduit: PVC-coated rigid steel conduit.
 - a. Comply with NEMA RN 1.
 - b. Coating Thickness: 0.040 inch, minimum.
 - 6. EMT: Comply with ANSI C80.3 and UL 797.
 - 7. FMC: Comply with UL 1; zinc-coated steel or aluminum.
 - 8. LFMC: Flexible steel conduit with PVC jacket and complying with UL 360.
- B. Metal Fittings:
 - 1. Comply with NEMA FB 1 and UL 514B.
 - 2. Listing and Labeling: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.
 - 3. Fittings, General: Listed and labeled for type of conduit, location, and use.
 - 4. Conduit Fittings for Hazardous (Classified) Locations: Comply with UL 1203 and NFPA 70.
 - 5. Fittings for EMT:
 - a. Material: Steel.
 - b. Type: compression.
 - 6. Expansion Fittings: PVC or steel to match conduit type, complying with UL 651, rated for environmental conditions where installed, and including flexible external bonding jumper.

7. Coating for Fittings for PVC-Coated Conduit: Minimum thickness of 0.040 inch, with overlapping sleeves protecting threaded joints.
- C. Joint Compound for IMC, GRC, or ARC: Approved, as defined in NFPA 70, by authorities having jurisdiction for use in conduit assemblies, and compounded for use to lubricate and protect threaded conduit joints from corrosion and to enhance their conductivity.

2.2 NONMETALLIC CONDUITS AND FITTINGS

- A. Nonmetallic Conduit:
 1. Listing and Labeling: Nonmetallic conduit shall be listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.
 2. Fiberglass:
 - a. Comply with NEMA TC 14.
 - b. Comply with UL 2515 for aboveground raceways.
 - c. Comply with UL 2420 for belowground raceways.
 3. ENT: Comply with NEMA TC 13 and UL 1653.
 4. RNC: Type EPC-40-PVC, complying with NEMA TC 2 and UL 651 unless otherwise indicated.
 5. LFNC: Comply with UL 1660.
 6. Rigid HDPE: Comply with UL 651A.
 7. Continuous HDPE: Comply with UL 651A.
 8. Coilable HDPE: Preassembled with conductors or cables, and complying with ASTM D 3485.
 9. RTRC: Comply with UL 2515A and NEMA TC 14.
- B. Nonmetallic Fittings:
 1. Fittings, General: Listed and labeled for type of conduit, location, and use.
 2. Fittings for ENT and RNC: Comply with NEMA TC 3; match to conduit or tubing type and material.
 - a. Fittings for LFNC: Comply with UL 514B.
 3. Solvents and Adhesives: As recommended by conduit manufacturer.

2.3 METAL WIREWAYS AND AUXILIARY GUTTERS

- A. Description: Sheet metal, complying with UL 870 and NEMA 250, (enclosure suitable to environment) unless otherwise indicated, and sized according to NFPA 70.
 1. Metal wireways installed outdoors shall be listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.
- B. Fittings and Accessories: Include covers, couplings, offsets, elbows, expansion joints, adapters, hold-down straps, end caps, and other fittings to match and mate with wireways as required for complete system.

- C. Wireway Covers: Hinged, Flanged-and-gasketed type unless otherwise indicated.
- D. Finish: Manufacturer's standard enamel finish.

2.4 NONMETALLIC WIREWAYS AND AUXILIARY GUTTERS

- A. Listing and Labeling: Nonmetallic wireways and auxiliary gutters shall be listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.
- B. Description: Fiberglass polyester, extruded and fabricated to required size and shape, without holes or knockouts. Cover shall be gasketed with oil-resistant gasket material and fastened with captive screws treated for corrosion resistance. Connections shall be flanged and have stainless-steel screws and oil-resistant gaskets.
- C. Description: PVC, extruded and fabricated to required size and shape, and having snap-on cover, mechanically coupled connections, and plastic fasteners.
- D. Fittings and Accessories: Couplings, offsets, elbows, expansion joints, adapters, hold-down straps, end caps, and other fittings shall match and mate with wireways as required for complete system.
- E. Solvents and Adhesives: As recommended by conduit manufacturer.

2.5 SURFACE RACEWAYS

- A. Listing and Labeling: Surface raceways and tele-power poles shall be listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.
- B. Surface Metal Raceways: Galvanized steel with snap-on covers complying with UL 5. Manufacturer's standard enamel finish in color selected by Architect unless otherwise indicated.
- C. Surface Nonmetallic Raceways: not allowed unless noted otherwise.

2.6 BOXES, ENCLOSURES, AND CABINETS

- A. General Requirements for Boxes, Enclosures, and Cabinets: Boxes, enclosures, and cabinets installed in wet locations shall be listed for use in wet locations.
- B. Sheet Metal Outlet and Device Boxes: Comply with NEMA OS 1 and UL 514A.
- C. Cast-Metal Outlet and Device Boxes: Comply with NEMA FB 1, aluminum, Type FD, with gasketed cover.
- D. Nonmetallic Outlet and Device Boxes: Comply with NEMA OS 2 and UL 514C.
- E. Metal Floor Boxes: refer to drawings.

- F. Nonmetallic Floor Boxes: refer to drawings
- G. Luminaire Outlet Boxes: Nonadjustable, designed for attachment of luminaire weighing 50 lb. Outlet boxes designed for attachment of luminaires weighing more than 50 lb shall be listed and marked for the maximum allowable weight.
- H. Paddle Fan Outlet Boxes: Nonadjustable, designed for attachment of paddle fan weighing 90 lb.
 - 1. Listing and Labeling: Paddle fan outlet boxes shall be listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.
- I. Small Sheet Metal Pull and Junction Boxes: NEMA OS 1.
- J. Cast-Metal Access, Pull, and Junction Boxes: Comply with NEMA FB 1 and UL 1773, cast aluminum or galvanized, cast iron (suitable to environment) with gasketed cover.
- K. Box extensions used to accommodate new building finishes shall be of same material as recessed box.
- L. Device Box Dimensions: 4 inches square by 2-1/8 inches deep.
- M. Gangable boxes are allowed.
- N. Hinged-Cover Enclosures: Comply with UL 50 and NEMA 250, NEMA enclosure type suitable to environment with continuous-hinge cover with flush latch unless otherwise indicated.
 - 1. Metal Enclosures: Steel, finished inside and out with manufacturer's standard enamel.
 - 2. Nonmetallic Enclosures: Fiberglass.
 - 3. Interior Panels: Steel; all sides finished with manufacturer's standard enamel.
- O. Cabinets:
 - 1. NEMA 250, NEMA enclosure suitable to environment, galvanized-steel box with removable interior panel and removable front, finished inside and out with manufacturer's standard enamel.
 - 2. Hinged door in front cover with flush latch and concealed hinge.
 - 3. Key latch to match panelboards.
 - 4. Metal barriers to separate wiring of different systems and voltage.
 - 5. Accessory feet where required for freestanding equipment.
 - 6. Nonmetallic cabinets shall be listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.

2.7 HANDHOLES AND BOXES FOR EXTERIOR UNDERGROUND WIRING

- A. General Requirements for Handholes and Boxes:
 - 1. Boxes and handholes for use in underground systems shall be designed and identified as defined in NFPA 70, for intended location and application.

2. Boxes installed in wet areas shall be listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.
- B. Polymer-Concrete Handholes and Boxes with Polymer-Concrete Cover: Molded of sand and aggregate, bound together with polymer resin, and reinforced with steel, fiberglass, or a combination of the two.
1. Standard: Comply with SCTE 77.
 2. Configuration: Designed for flush burial with open bottom unless otherwise indicated.
 3. Cover: Weatherproof, secured by tamper-resistant locking devices and having structural load rating consistent with enclosure and handhole location.
 4. Cover Finish: Nonskid finish shall have a minimum coefficient of friction of 0.50.
 5. Cover Legend: Molded lettering, "ELECTRIC."
 6. Conduit Entrance Provisions: Conduit-terminating fittings shall mate with entering ducts for secure, fixed installation in enclosure wall.
 7. Handholes 12 Inches Wide by 24 Inches Long and Larger: Have inserts for cable racks and pulling-in irons installed before concrete is poured.
- C. Fiberglass Handholes and Boxes: Molded of fiberglass-reinforced polyester resin, with frame and covers of reinforced concrete.
1. Standard: Comply with SCTE 77.
 2. Color of Frame and Cover: Gray.
 3. Configuration: Designed for flush burial with open bottom unless otherwise indicated.
 4. Cover: Weatherproof, secured by tamper-resistant locking devices and having structural load rating consistent with enclosure and handhole location.
 5. Cover Finish: Nonskid finish shall have a minimum coefficient of friction of 0.50.
 6. Cover Legend: Molded lettering, "ELECTRIC."
 7. Conduit Entrance Provisions: Conduit-terminating fittings shall mate with entering ducts for secure, fixed installation in enclosure wall.
 8. Handholes 12 Inches Wide by 24 Inches Long and Larger: Have inserts for cable racks and pulling-in irons installed before concrete is poured.

2.8 SOURCE QUALITY CONTROL FOR UNDERGROUND ENCLOSURES

- A. Handhole and Pull-Box Prototype Test: Test prototypes of handholes and boxes for compliance with SCTE 77. Strength tests shall be for specified tier ratings of products supplied.
1. Tests of materials shall be performed by an independent testing agency.
 2. Strength tests of complete boxes and covers shall be by either an independent testing agency or manufacturer. A qualified registered professional engineer shall certify tests by manufacturer.
 3. Testing machine pressure gages shall have current calibration certification complying with ISO 9000 and ISO 10012 and traceable to NIST standards.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 RACEWAY APPLICATION

- A. Outdoors: Apply raceway products as specified below unless otherwise indicated:
1. Exposed Conduit: GRC.
 2. Concealed Conduit, Aboveground: EMT.
 3. Underground Conduit: RNC, Type EPC-80-PVC, direct buried.
 4. Connection to Vibrating Equipment (Including Transformers and Hydraulic, Pneumatic, Electric Solenoid, or Motor-Driven Equipment): LFMC.
 5. Boxes and Enclosures, Aboveground: NEMA 250, Type 4.
 6. Feeders to Variable Speed Drive: Metallic (EMT or GRC)
- B. Indoors: Apply raceway products as specified below unless otherwise indicated:
1. Exposed, Not Subject to Physical Damage: EMT.
 2. Exposed, Not Subject to Severe Physical Damage: EMT unless noted otherwise.
 3. Exposed and Subject to Severe Physical Damage: GRC. Raceway locations include the following:
 - a. Loading dock.
 - b. Corridors used for traffic of mechanized carts, forklifts, and pallet-handling units.
 - c. Mechanical rooms.
 - d. Gymnasiums.
 4. Concealed in Ceilings and Interior Walls and Partitions: EMT.
 5. Connection to Vibrating Equipment (Including Transformers and Hydraulic, Pneumatic, Electric Solenoid, or Motor-Driven Equipment): FMC, except use LFMC in damp or wet locations.
 6. Damp or Wet Locations: GRC.
 7. Boxes and Enclosures: NEMA 250, Type 1, except use NEMA 250, Type 4 stainless steel in institutional and commercial kitchens and damp or wet locations.
 8. Feeders to Variable Speed Drive: Metallic (EMT or GRC)
- C. Minimum Raceway Size: 1/2-inch trade size. 3/4-inch minimum for school projects.
- D. Raceway Fittings: Compatible with raceways and suitable for use and location.
1. Rigid and Intermediate Steel Conduit: Use threaded rigid steel conduit fittings unless otherwise indicated. Comply with NEMA FB 2.10.
 2. PVC Externally Coated, Rigid Steel Conduits: Use only fittings listed for use with this type of conduit. Patch and seal all joints, nicks, and scrapes in PVC coating after installing conduits and fittings. Use sealant recommended by fitting manufacturer and apply in thickness and number of coats recommended by manufacturer.
 3. EMT: Use compression, steel fittings. Comply with NEMA FB 2.10.
 4. Flexible Conduit: Use only fittings listed for use with flexible conduit. Comply with NEMA FB 2.20.

- E. Install nonferrous conduit or tubing for circuits operating above 60 Hz. Where aluminum raceways are installed for such circuits and pass through concrete, install in nonmetallic sleeve.
- F. Do not install aluminum conduits, boxes, or fittings in contact with concrete or earth.
- G. Install surface raceways only where indicated on Drawings.
- H. Do not install nonmetallic conduit where ambient temperature exceeds 120 deg F.

3.2 INSTALLATION

- A. Comply with NECA 1 and NECA 101 for installation requirements except where requirements on Drawings or in this article are stricter. Comply with NECA 102 for aluminum conduits. Comply with NFPA 70 limitations for types of raceways allowed in specific occupancies and number of floors.
- B. Keep raceways at least 6 inches away from parallel runs of flues and steam or hot-water pipes. Install horizontal raceway runs above water and steam piping.
- C. Complete raceway installation before starting conductor installation.
- D. Comply with requirements in Section 26 0529 "Hangers and Supports for Electrical Systems" for hangers and supports.
- E. Arrange stub-ups so curved portions of bends are not visible above finished slab.
- F. Install no more than the equivalent of three 90-degree bends in any conduit run except for control wiring conduits, for which fewer bends are allowed. Support within 12 inches of changes in direction.
- G. Conceal conduit and EMT within finished walls, ceilings, and floors unless otherwise indicated. Install conduits parallel or perpendicular to building lines.
- H. Support conduit within 12 inches of enclosures to which attached.
- I. Raceways Embedded in Slabs:
 - 1. Run conduit larger than 1-inch trade size, parallel or at right angles to main reinforcement. Where at right angles to reinforcement, place conduit close to slab support. Secure raceways to reinforcement at maximum 10-foot intervals.
 - 2. Arrange raceways to cross building expansion joints at right angles with expansion fittings.
 - 3. Arrange raceways to keep a minimum of 1 inch of concrete cover in all directions.
 - 4. Do not embed threadless fittings in concrete unless specifically approved by Architect for each specific location.
 - 5. Change from ENT to GRC before rising above floor. Elbows shall be GRC. Continue GRC until conduit passes through the slab prior to transition back to ENT.
 - 6. Provide coated GRC for all bends greater than 30 degrees, including the 90-degree elbows below grade and the entire vertical risers for transitions from below to above grade or above-slab."

- J. Stub-ups to Above Recessed Ceilings:
 - 1. Use EMT, IMC, or RMC for raceways.
 - 2. Use a conduit bushing or insulated fitting to terminate stub-ups not terminated in hubs or in an enclosure.
- K. Threaded Conduit Joints, Exposed to Wet, Damp, Corrosive, or Outdoor Conditions: Apply listed compound to threads of raceway and fittings before making up joints. Follow compound manufacturer's written instructions.
- L. Coat field-cut threads on PVC-coated raceway with a corrosion-preventing conductive compound prior to assembly.
- M. Raceway Terminations at Locations Subject to Moisture or Vibration: Use insulating bushings to protect conductors including conductors smaller than No. 4 AWG.
- N. Terminate threaded conduits into threaded hubs or with locknuts on inside and outside of boxes or cabinets. Install bushings on conduits up to 1-1/4-inch trade size and insulated throat metal bushings on 1-1/2-inch trade size and larger conduits terminated with locknuts. Install insulated throat metal grounding bushings on service conduits.
- O. Install raceways square to the enclosure and terminate at enclosures with locknuts. Install locknuts hand tight plus 1/4 turn more.
- P. Do not rely on locknuts to penetrate nonconductive coatings on enclosures. Remove coatings in the locknut area prior to assembling conduit to enclosure to assure a continuous ground path.
- Q. Cut conduit perpendicular to the length. For conduits 2-inch trade size and larger, use roll cutter or a guide to make cut straight and perpendicular to the length.
- R. Install pull wires in empty raceways. Use polypropylene or monofilament plastic line with not less than 200-lb tensile strength. Leave at least 12 inches of slack at each end of pull wire. Cap underground raceways designated as spare above grade alongside raceways in use.
- S. Surface Raceways:
 - 1. Install surface raceway with a minimum 2-inch radius control at bend points.
 - 2. Secure surface raceway with screws or other anchor-type devices at intervals not exceeding 48 inches and with no less than two supports per straight raceway section. Support surface raceway according to manufacturer's written instructions. Tape and glue are not acceptable support methods.
- T. Install raceway sealing fittings at accessible locations according to NFPA 70 and fill them with listed sealing compound. For concealed raceways, install each fitting in a flush steel box with a blank cover plate having a finish similar to that of adjacent plates or surfaces. Install raceway sealing fittings according to NFPA 70.

- U. Install devices to seal raceway interiors at accessible locations. Locate seals so no fittings or boxes are between the seal and the following changes of environments. Seal the interior of all raceways at the following points:
 - 1. Where conduits pass from warm to cold locations, such as boundaries of refrigerated spaces.
 - 2. Where an underground service raceway enters a building or structure.
 - 3. Where otherwise required by NFPA 70.

- V. Comply with manufacturer's written instructions for solvent welding RNC and fittings.

- W. Expansion-Joint Fittings:
 - 1. Install in each run of aboveground RNC that is located where environmental temperature change may exceed 30 deg F and that has straight-run length that exceeds 25 feet. Install in each run of aboveground RMC and EMT conduit that is located where environmental temperature change may exceed 100 deg F and that has straight-run length that exceeds 100 feet.
 - 2. Install type and quantity of fittings that accommodate temperature change listed for each of the following locations:
 - a. Outdoor Locations Not Exposed to Direct Sunlight: 125 deg F temperature change.
 - b. Outdoor Locations Exposed to Direct Sunlight: 155 deg F temperature change.
 - c. Indoor Spaces Connected with Outdoors without Physical Separation: 125 deg F temperature change.
 - d. Attics: 135 deg F temperature change.
 - 3. Install fitting(s) that provide expansion and contraction for at least 0.00041 inch per foot of length of straight run per deg F of temperature change for PVC conduits. Install fitting(s) that provide expansion and contraction for at least 0.000078 inch per foot of length of straight run per deg F of temperature change for metal conduits.
 - 4. Install expansion fittings at all locations where conduits cross building or structure expansion joints.
 - 5. Install each expansion-joint fitting with position, mounting, and piston setting selected according to manufacturer's written instructions for conditions at specific location at time of installation. Install conduit supports to allow for expansion movement.

- X. Flexible Conduit Connections: Comply with NEMA RV 3. Use a maximum of 72 inches of flexible conduit for recessed and semirecessed luminaires, equipment subject to vibration, noise transmission, or movement; and for transformers and motors.
 - 1. Use LFMC in damp or wet locations subject to severe physical damage.
 - 2. Use LFMC or LFNC in damp or wet locations not subject to severe physical damage.

- Y. Mount boxes at heights indicated on Drawings. If mounting heights of boxes are not individually indicated, give priority to ADA requirements. Install boxes with height measured to center of box unless otherwise indicated.

- Z. Surface mount boxes at window mullions at locations indicated on drawings. Use of MC cable is acceptable. Conceal raceways and conductors within mullion cavity. Splices within the mullions are not allowed.
- AA. Recessed Boxes in Masonry Walls: Saw-cut opening for box in center of cell of masonry block, and install box flush with surface of wall. Prepare block surfaces to provide a flat surface for a raintight connection between box and cover plate or supported equipment and box.
- BB. Horizontally separate boxes mounted on opposite sides of walls so they are not in the same vertical channel.
- CC. Locate boxes so that cover or plate will not span different building finishes.
- DD. Support boxes of three gangs or more from more than one side by spanning two framing members or mounting on brackets specifically designed for the purpose.
- EE. Fasten junction and pull boxes to or support from building structure. Do not support boxes by conduits.
- FF. Set metal floor boxes level and flush with finished floor surface.
- GG. Set nonmetallic floor boxes level. Trim after installation to fit flush with finished floor surface.

3.3 INSTALLATION OF UNDERGROUND CONDUIT

- A. Direct-Buried Conduit:
 - 1. Excavate trench bottom to provide firm and uniform support for conduit. Prepare trench bottom as specified in Section 31 2000 "Earth Moving" for pipe less than 6 inches in nominal diameter.
 - 2. Install backfill as specified in Section 31 2000 "Earth Moving."
 - 3. After installing conduit, backfill and compact. Start at tie-in point, and work toward end of conduit run, leaving conduit at end of run free to move with expansion and contraction as temperature changes during this process. Firmly hand tamp backfill around conduit to provide maximum supporting strength. After placing controlled backfill to within 12 inches of finished grade, make final conduit connection at end of run and complete backfilling with normal compaction as specified in Section 31 2000 "Earth Moving."
 - 4. Install manufactured duct elbows for stub-ups at poles and equipment and at building entrances through floor unless otherwise indicated. Encase elbows for stub-up ducts throughout length of elbow.
 - 5. Install manufactured rigid steel conduit elbows for stub-ups at poles and equipment and at building entrances through floor.
 - a. Couple steel conduits to ducts with adapters designed for this purpose, and encase coupling with 3 inches of concrete for a minimum of 12 inches on each side of the coupling.
 - b. For stub-ups at equipment mounted on outdoor concrete bases and where conduits penetrate building foundations, extend steel conduit horizontally a

minimum of 60 inches from edge of foundation or equipment base. Install insulated grounding bushings on terminations at equipment.

6. Warning Planks: Bury warning planks approximately 12 inches above direct-buried conduits but a minimum of 6 inches below grade. Align planks along centerline of conduit.
7. Underground Warning Tape: Comply with requirements in Section 26 0553 "Identification for Electrical Systems."

3.4 INSTALLATION OF UNDERGROUND HANDHOLES AND BOXES

- A. Install handholes and boxes level and plumb and with orientation and depth coordinated with connecting conduits to minimize bends and deflections required for proper entrances.
- B. Unless otherwise indicated, support units on a level bed of crushed stone or gravel, graded from 1/2-inch sieve to No. 4 sieve and compacted to same density as adjacent undisturbed earth.
- C. Elevation: In paved areas, set so cover surface will be flush with finished grade. Set covers of other enclosures 1 inch above finished grade.
- D. Install handholes with bottom below frost line, below grade.
- E. Install removable hardware, including pulling eyes, cable stanchions, cable arms, and insulators, as required for installation and support of cables and conductors and as indicated. Select arm lengths to be long enough to provide spare space for future cables but short enough to preserve adequate working clearances in enclosure.
- F. Field-cut openings for conduits according to enclosure manufacturer's written instructions. Cut wall of enclosure with a tool designed for material to be cut. Size holes for terminating fittings to be used, and seal around penetrations after fittings are installed.

3.5 SLEEVE AND SLEEVE-SEAL INSTALLATION FOR ELECTRICAL PENETRATIONS

- A. Install sleeves and sleeve seals at penetrations of exterior floor and wall assemblies. Comply with requirements in Section 26 0544 "Sleeves and Sleeve Seals for Electrical Raceways and Cabling."

3.6 FIRESTOPPING

- A. Install firestopping at penetrations of fire-rated floor and wall assemblies. Comply with requirements in Section 07 8413 "Penetration Firestopping."

3.7 PROTECTION

- A. Protect coatings, finishes, and cabinets from damage and deterioration.

1. Repair damage to galvanized finishes with zinc-rich paint recommended by manufacturer.
2. Repair damage to PVC coatings or paint finishes with matching touchup coating recommended by manufacturer.

END OF SECTION

SECTION 26 0544 - SLEEVES AND SLEEVE SEALS FOR ELECTRICAL RACEWAYS AND CABLING

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:

1. Sleeves for raceway and cable penetration of non-fire-rated construction walls and floors.
2. Sleeve-seal systems.
3. Sleeve-seal fittings.
4. Grout.
5. Silicone sealants.

- B. Related Requirements:

1. Section 07 8413 "Penetration Firestopping" for penetration firestopping installed in fire-resistance-rated walls, horizontal assemblies, and smoke barriers, with and without penetrating items.

1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 SLEEVES

- A. Wall Sleeves:

1. Steel Pipe Sleeves: ASTM A 53/A 53M, Type E, Grade B, Schedule 40, zinc coated, plain ends.
2. Cast-Iron Pipe Sleeves: Cast or fabricated "wall pipe," equivalent to ductile-iron pressure pipe, with plain ends and integral waterstop unless otherwise indicated.

- B. Sleeves for Conduits Penetrating Non-Fire-Rated Gypsum Board Assemblies: Galvanized-steel sheet; 0.0239-inch minimum thickness; round tube closed with welded longitudinal joint, with tabs for screw-fastening the sleeve to the board.

- C. PVC-Pipe Sleeves: ASTM D 1785, Schedule 40.

- D. Molded-PVC Sleeves: With nailing flange for attaching to wooden forms.
- E. Molded-PE or -PP Sleeves: Removable, tapered-cup shaped, and smooth outer surface with nailing flange for attaching to wooden forms.
- F. Sleeves for Rectangular Openings:
 - 1. Material: Galvanized sheet steel.
 - 2. Minimum Metal Thickness:
 - a. For sleeve cross-section rectangle perimeter less than 50 inches and with no side larger than 16 inches, thickness shall be 0.052 inch.
 - b. For sleeve cross-section rectangle perimeter 50 inches or more and one or more sides larger than 16 inches, thickness shall be 0.138 inch.

2.2 SLEEVE-SEAL SYSTEMS

- A. Description: Modular sealing device, designed for field assembly, to fill annular space between sleeve and raceway or cable.
 - 1. Sealing Elements: EPDM rubber interlocking links shaped to fit surface of pipe. Include type and number required for pipe material and size of pipe.
 - 2. Pressure Plates: Carbon steel.
 - 3. Connecting Bolts and Nuts: Stainless steel of length required to secure pressure plates to sealing elements.

2.3 SLEEVE-SEAL FITTINGS

- A. Description: Manufactured plastic, sleeve-type, waterstop assembly made for embedding in concrete slab or wall. Unit shall have plastic or rubber waterstop collar with center opening to match piping OD.

2.4 GROUT

- A. Description: Nonshrink; recommended for interior and exterior sealing openings in non-fire-rated walls or floors.
- B. Standard: ASTM C 1107/C 1107M, Grade B, post-hardening and volume-adjusting, dry, hydraulic-cement grout.
- C. Design Mix: 5000-psi, 28-day compressive strength.
- D. Packaging: Premixed and factory packaged.

2.5 SILICONE SEALANTS

- A. Silicone Sealants: Single-component, silicone-based, neutral-curing elastomeric sealants of grade indicated below.

1. Grade: Pourable (self-leveling) formulation for openings in floors and other horizontal surfaces that are not fire rated.
- B. Silicone Foams: Multicomponent, silicone-based liquid elastomers that, when mixed, expand and cure in place to produce a flexible, nonshrinking foam.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 SLEEVE INSTALLATION FOR NON-FIRE-RATED ELECTRICAL PENETRATIONS

- A. Comply with NECA 1.
- B. Comply with NEMA VE 2 for cable tray and cable penetrations.
- C. Sleeves for Conduits Penetrating Above-Grade Non-Fire-Rated Concrete and Masonry-Unit Floors and Walls:
 1. Interior Penetrations of Non-Fire-Rated Walls and Floors:
 - a. Seal annular space between sleeve and raceway or cable, using joint sealant appropriate for size, depth, and location of joint. Comply with requirements in Section 07 9200 "Joint Sealants."
 - b. Seal space outside of sleeves with mortar or grout. Pack sealing material solidly between sleeve and wall so no voids remain. Tool exposed surfaces smooth; protect material while curing.
 2. Use pipe sleeves unless penetration arrangement requires rectangular sleeved opening.
 3. Size pipe sleeves to provide 1/4-inch annular clear space between sleeve and raceway or cable unless sleeve seal is to be installed or unless seismic criteria require different clearance.
 4. Install sleeves for wall penetrations unless core-drilled holes or formed openings are used. Install sleeves during erection of walls. Cut sleeves to length for mounting flush with both surfaces of walls. Deburr after cutting.
 5. Install sleeves for floor penetrations. Extend sleeves installed in floors 2 inches above finished floor level. Install sleeves during erection of floors.
- D. Sleeves for Conduits Penetrating Non-Fire-Rated Gypsum Board Assemblies:
 1. Use circular metal sleeves unless penetration arrangement requires rectangular sleeved opening.
 2. Seal space outside of sleeves with approved joint compound for gypsum board assemblies.
- E. Roof-Penetration Sleeves: Seal penetration of individual raceways and cables with flexible boot-type flashing units applied in coordination with roofing work.
- F. Aboveground, Exterior-Wall Penetrations: Seal penetrations using steel pipe sleeves and mechanical sleeve seals. Select sleeve size to allow for 1-inch annular clear space between pipe and sleeve for installing mechanical sleeve seals.

- G. Underground, Exterior-Wall and Floor Penetrations: Install cast-iron pipe sleeves. Size sleeves to allow for 1-inch annular clear space between raceway or cable and sleeve for installing sleeve-seal system.

3.2 SLEEVE-SEAL-SYSTEM INSTALLATION

- A. Install sleeve-seal systems in sleeves in exterior concrete walls and slabs-on-grade at raceway entries into building.
- B. Install type and number of sealing elements recommended by manufacturer for raceway or cable material and size. Position raceway or cable in center of sleeve. Assemble mechanical sleeve seals and install in annular space between raceway or cable and sleeve. Tighten bolts against pressure plates that cause sealing elements to expand and make watertight seal.

3.3 SLEEVE-SEAL-FITTING INSTALLATION

- A. Install sleeve-seal fittings in new walls and slabs as they are constructed.
- B. Assemble fitting components of length to be flush with both surfaces of concrete slabs and walls. Position waterstop flange to be centered in concrete slab or wall.
- C. Secure nailing flanges to concrete forms.
- D. Using grout, seal the space around outside of sleeve-seal fittings.

END OF SECTION

SECTION 26 0548.16 - SEISMIC CONTROLS FOR ELECTRICAL SYSTEMS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:

- 1. Restraint channel bracings.
- 2. Restraint cables.
- 3. Seismic-restraint accessories.
- 4. Mechanical anchor bolts.
- 5. Adhesive anchor bolts.

- B. Related Requirements:

- 1. Section 26 0529 "Hangers and Supports for Electrical Systems" for commonly used electrical supports and installation requirements.

1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product.

- 1. Illustrate and indicate style, material, strength, fastening provision, and finish for each type and size of seismic-restraint component used.
 - a. Tabulate types and sizes of seismic restraints, complete with report numbers and rated strength in tension and shear as evaluated by an evaluation service member of ICC-ES.
 - b. Annotate to indicate application of each product submitted and compliance with requirements.

- B. Delegated-Design Submittal: For each seismic-restraint device.

- 1. Include design calculations and details for selecting seismic restraints complying with performance requirements, design criteria, and analysis data signed and sealed by the qualified professional engineer responsible for their preparation.
- 2. Design Calculations: Calculate static and dynamic loading caused by equipment weight, operation, and seismic and wind forces required to select seismic and wind restraints and for designing vibration isolation bases.

- a. Coordinate design calculations with wind load calculations required for equipment mounted outdoors. Comply with requirements in other Sections for equipment mounted outdoors.
3. Seismic- and Wind-Restraint Details:
 - a. Design Analysis: To support selection and arrangement of seismic and wind restraints. Include calculations of combined tensile and shear loads.
 - b. Details: Indicate fabrication and arrangement. Detail attachments of restraints to the restrained items and to the structure. Show attachment locations, methods, and spacings. Identify components, list their strengths, and indicate directions and values of forces transmitted to the structure during seismic events. Indicate association with vibration isolation devices.
 - c. Coordinate seismic-restraint and vibration isolation details with wind-restraint details required for equipment mounted outdoors. Comply with requirements in other Sections for equipment mounted outdoors.
 - d. Preapproval and Evaluation Documentation: By an evaluation service member of ICC-ES, showing maximum ratings of restraint items and the basis for approval (tests or calculations).

1.4 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Coordination Drawings: Show coordination of seismic bracing for electrical components with other systems and equipment in the vicinity, including other supports and seismic restraints.
- B. Qualification Data: For testing agency.
- C. Welding certificates.
- D. Field quality-control reports.

1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Testing Agency Qualifications: An independent agency, with the experience and capability to conduct the testing indicated, that is a nationally recognized testing laboratory as defined by OSHA in 29 CFR 1910.7 and that is acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction.
- B. Comply with seismic-restraint requirements in the IBC unless requirements in this Section are more stringent.
- C. Welding Qualifications: Qualify procedures and personnel according to AWS D1.1/D1.1M, "Structural Welding Code - Steel."
- D. Seismic-restraint devices shall have horizontal and vertical load testing and analysis. They shall bear anchorage preapproval from OSHPD in addition to preapproval, showing maximum seismic-restraint ratings, by ICC-ES or another agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction. Ratings based on independent testing are preferred to ratings based on calculations. If preapproved ratings are not available, submittals based on independent testing are preferred. Calculations (including combining shear

and tensile loads) that support seismic-restraint designs must be signed and sealed by a qualified professional engineer.

- E. Comply with NFPA 70.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Wind-Restraint Loading:
 - 1. Building Classification Category: Refer to Structural Engineer Drawings.
 - 2. Minimum 10 lb/sq. ft. multiplied by maximum area of HVAC component projected on vertical plane normal to wind direction and 45 degrees either side of normal.
- B. Seismic-Restraint Loading:
 - 1. Site Class as Defined in the IBC: Refer to structural engineer drawings.
 - 2. Assigned Seismic Use Group or Building Category as Defined in the IBC.

2.2 RESTRAINT CHANNEL BRACINGS

- A. Description: MFMA-4, shop- or field-fabricated bracing assembly made of slotted steel channels with accessories for attachment to braced component at one end and to building structure at the other end, with other matching components, and with corrosion-resistant coating; rated in tension, compression, and torsion forces.

2.3 RESTRAINT CABLES

- A. Restraint Cables: ASTM A 492 stainless-steel cables. End connections made of steel assemblies with thimbles, brackets, swivel, and bolts designed for restraining cable service; with a minimum of two clamping bolts for cable engagement.

2.4 SEISMIC-RESTRAINT ACCESSORIES

- A. Hanger-Rod Stiffener: Steel tube or steel slotted-support-system sleeve with internally bolted connections to hanger rod.
- B. Hinged and Swivel Brace Attachments: Multifunctional steel connectors for attaching hangers to rigid channel bracings and restraint cables.
- C. Bushings for Floor-Mounted Equipment Anchor Bolts: Neoprene bushings designed for rigid equipment mountings and matched to type and size of anchor bolts and studs.
- D. Bushing Assemblies for Wall-Mounted Equipment Anchorage: Assemblies of neoprene elements and steel sleeves designed for rigid equipment mountings and matched to type and size of attachment devices used.

- E. Resilient Isolation Washers and Bushings: One-piece, molded, oil- and water-resistant neoprene, with a flat washer face.

2.5 MECHANICAL ANCHOR BOLTS

- A. Mechanical Anchor Bolts: Drilled-in and stud-wedge or female-wedge type in zinc-coated steel for interior applications and stainless steel for exterior applications. Select anchor bolts with strength required for anchor and as tested according to ASTM E 488.

2.6 ADHESIVE ANCHOR BOLTS

- A. Adhesive Anchor Bolts: Drilled-in and capsule anchor system containing PVC or urethane methacrylate-based resin and accelerator, or injected polymer or hybrid mortar adhesive. Provide anchor bolts and hardware with zinc-coated steel for interior applications and stainless steel for exterior applications. Select anchor bolts with strength required for anchor and as tested according to ASTM E 488.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine areas and equipment to receive vibration isolation and seismic-control devices for compliance with requirements for installation tolerances and other conditions affecting performance of the Work.
- B. Examine roughing-in for reinforcement and cast-in-place anchors to verify actual locations before installation.
- C. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.2 APPLICATIONS

- A. Multiple Raceways or Cables: Secure raceways and cables to trapeze member with clamps approved for application by an evaluation service member of ICC-ES.
- B. Hanger-Rod Stiffeners: Install hanger-rod stiffeners where indicated or scheduled on Drawings to receive them and where required to prevent buckling of hanger rods caused by seismic forces.
- C. Strength of Support and Seismic-Restraint Assemblies: Where not indicated, select sizes of components so strength will be adequate to carry present and future static and seismic loads within specified loading limits.

3.3 SEISMIC-RESTRAINT DEVICE INSTALLATION

- A. Coordinate the location of embedded connection hardware with supported equipment attachment and mounting points and with requirements for concrete reinforcement and formwork specified in Section 03 3000 "Cast-in-Place Concrete."
- B. Equipment and Hanger Restraints:
 - 1. Install resilient, bolt-isolation washers on equipment anchor bolts where clearance between anchor and adjacent surface exceeds 0.125 inch.
 - 2. Install seismic-restraint devices using methods approved by an evaluation service member of ICC-ES providing required submittals for component.
- C. Install cables so they do not bend across edges of adjacent equipment or building structure.
- D. Install bushing assemblies for mounting bolts for wall-mounted equipment, arranged to provide resilient media where equipment or equipment-mounting channels are attached to wall.
- E. Attachment to Structure: If specific attachment is not indicated, anchor bracing to structure at flanges of beams, at upper truss chords of bar joists, or at concrete members.
- F. Drilled-in Anchors:
 - 1. Identify position of reinforcing steel and other embedded items prior to drilling holes for anchors. Do not damage existing reinforcing or embedded items during coring or drilling. Notify the structural engineer if reinforcing steel or other embedded items are encountered during drilling. Locate and avoid prestressed tendons, electrical and telecommunications conduit, and gas lines.
 - 2. Do not drill holes in concrete or masonry until concrete, mortar, or grout has achieved full design strength.
 - 3. Wedge Anchors: Protect threads from damage during anchor installation. Heavy-duty sleeve anchors shall be installed with sleeve fully engaged in the structural element to which anchor is to be fastened.
 - 4. Adhesive Anchors: Clean holes to remove loose material and drilling dust prior to installation of adhesive. Place adhesive in holes proceeding from the bottom of the hole and progressing toward the surface in such a manner as to avoid introduction of air pockets in the adhesive.
 - 5. Set anchors to manufacturer's recommended torque using a torque wrench.
 - 6. Install zinc-coated steel anchors for interior and stainless-steel anchors for exterior applications.

3.4 ACCOMMODATION OF DIFFERENTIAL SEISMIC MOTION

- A. Install flexible connections in runs of raceways, cables, wireways, cable trays, and busways where they cross seismic joints, where adjacent sections or branches are supported by different structural elements, and where connection is terminated to equipment that is anchored to a different structural element from the one supporting them as they approach equipment.

3.5 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Testing Agency: Engage a qualified testing agency to perform tests and inspections.
- B. Perform the following tests and inspections with the assistance of a factory-authorized service representative:
 - 1. Provide evidence of recent calibration of test equipment by a testing agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction.
 - 2. Schedule test with Owner, through Architect, before connecting anchorage device to restrained component (unless postconnection testing has been approved), and with at least seven days' advance notice.
 - 3. Obtain Architect's approval before transmitting test loads to structure. Provide temporary load-spreading members.
 - 4. Test at least four of each type and size of installed anchors and fasteners selected by Architect.
 - 5. Test to 90 percent of rated proof load of device.
- C. Seismic controls will be considered defective if they do not pass tests and inspections.
- D. Prepare test and inspection reports.

3.6 ADJUSTING

- A. Adjust restraints to permit free movement of equipment within normal mode of operation.

END OF SECTION

SECTION 26 0553 - IDENTIFICATION FOR ELECTRICAL SYSTEMS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
 - 1. Color and legend requirements for raceways, conductors, and warning labels and signs.
 - 2. Labels.
 - 3. Bands and tubes.
 - 4. Tapes and stencils.
 - 5. Tags.
 - 6. Signs.
 - 7. Cable ties.
 - 8. Paint for identification.
 - 9. Fasteners for labels and signs.

1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product.
 - 1. Include construction details, material descriptions, dimensions of individual components and profiles, and finishes for electrical identification products.
- B. Identification Schedule: For each piece of electrical equipment and electrical system components to be an index of nomenclature for electrical equipment and system components used in identification signs and labels. Use same designations indicated on Drawings.
- C. Delegated-Design Submittal: For arc-flash hazard study.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Comply with ASME A13.1 and IEEE C2.
- B. Comply with NFPA 70.

- C. Comply with 29 CFR 1910.144 and 29 CFR 1910.145.
- D. Comply with ANSI Z535.4 for safety signs and labels.
- E. Comply with NFPA 70E and Section 26 0574 "Overcurrent Protective Device Arc-Flash Study" requirements for arc-flash warning labels.
- F. Adhesive-attached labeling materials, including label stocks, laminating adhesives, and inks used by label printers, shall comply with UL 969.
- G. Thermal Movements: Allow for thermal movements from ambient and surface temperature changes.
 - 1. Temperature Change: 120 deg F, ambient; 180 deg F, material surfaces.

2.2 COLOR AND LEGEND REQUIREMENTS

- A. Raceways and Cables Carrying Circuits at 600 V or Less:
 - 1. Black letters on an orange field.
 - 2. Legend: Indicate voltage and system or service type.
- B. Color-Coding for Phase- and Voltage-Level Identification, 600 V or Less: Use colors listed below for ungrounded service, feeder, and branch-circuit conductors.
 - 1. Color shall be factory applied or field applied for sizes larger than No. 8 AWG if authorities having jurisdiction permit.
 - 2. Colors for 208/120-V Circuits:
 - a. Phase A: Black.
 - b. Phase B: Red.
 - c. Phase C: Blue.
 - 3. Colors for 240-V Circuits:
 - a. Phase A: Black.
 - b. Phase B: Red.
 - 4. Colors for 480/277-V Circuits:
 - a. Phase A: Brown.
 - b. Phase B: Orange.
 - c. Phase C: Yellow.
 - 5. Color for Neutral: White.
 - 6. Color for Equipment Grounds: Green.
 - 7. Colors for Isolated Grounds: Green with white stripe.
- C. Raceways and Cables Carrying Circuits at More Than 600 V:
 - 1. Black letters on an orange field.
 - 2. Legend: "DANGER - CONCEALED HIGH VOLTAGE WIRING."

- D. Warning Label Colors:
 - 1. Identify system voltage with black letters on an orange background.

- E. Warning labels and signs shall include, but are not limited to, the following legends:
 - 1. Multiple Power Source Warning: "DANGER - ELECTRICAL SHOCK HAZARD - EQUIPMENT HAS MULTIPLE POWER SOURCES."
 - 2. Workspace Clearance Warning: "WARNING - OSHA REGULATION - AREA IN FRONT OF ELECTRICAL EQUIPMENT MUST BE KEPT CLEAR FOR 36 INCHES."

- F. Equipment Identification Labels:
 - 1. Black letters on a white field.

2.3 LABELS

- A. Self-Adhesive Labels: Vinyl, thermal, transfer-printed, 3-mil-thick, multicolor, weather- and UV-resistant, pressure-sensitive adhesive labels, configured for intended use and location.
 - 1. Minimum Nominal Size:
 - a. 1-1/2 by 6 inches for raceway and conductors.
 - b. 3-1/2 by 5 inches for equipment.
 - c. As required by authorities having jurisdiction.

2.4 TAPES AND STENCILS

- A. Marker Tapes: Vinyl or vinyl-cloth, self-adhesive wraparound type, with circuit identification legend machine printed by thermal transfer or equivalent process.

- B. Self-Adhesive Vinyl Tape: Colored, heavy duty, waterproof, fade resistant; not less than 3 mils thick by 1 to 2 inches wide; compounded for outdoor use.

- C. Tape and Stencil: 4-inch-wide black stripes on 10-inch centers placed diagonally over orange background and is 12 inches wide. Stop stripes at legends.

- D. Floor Marking Tape: 2-inch-wide, 5-mil pressure-sensitive vinyl tape, with black and white stripes and clear vinyl overlay.

- E. Underground-Line Warning Tape:
 - 1. Tape:
 - a. Recommended by manufacturer for the method of installation and suitable to identify and locate underground electrical and communications utility lines.
 - b. Printing on tape shall be permanent and shall not be damaged by burial operations.

- c. Tape material and ink shall be chemically inert and not subject to degradation when exposed to acids, alkalis, and other destructive substances commonly found in soils.
2. Color and Printing:
 - a. Comply with ANSI Z535.1, ANSI Z535.2, ANSI Z535.3, ANSI Z535.4, and ANSI Z535.5.
 - b. Inscriptions for Red-Colored Tapes: "ELECTRIC LINE, HIGH VOLTAGE".
 - c. Inscriptions for Orange-Colored Tapes: "TELEPHONE CABLE, CATV CABLE, COMMUNICATIONS CABLE, OPTICAL FIBER CABLE".

2.5 TAGS

- A. Metal Tags: Brass or aluminum, 2 by 2 by 0.05 inch, with stamped legend, punched for use with self-locking cable tie fastener.
- B. Nonmetallic Preprinted Tags: Polyethylene tags, 0.015 inch thick, color-coded for phase and voltage level, with factory printed permanent designations; punched for use with self-locking cable tie fastener.
 - 1.

2.6 SIGNS

- A. Baked-Enamel Signs:
 1. Preprinted aluminum signs, high-intensity reflective, punched or drilled for fasteners, with colors, legend, and size required for application.
 2. 1/4-inch grommets in corners for mounting.
 3. Nominal Size: 7 by 10 inches.
- B. Laminated Acrylic or Melamine Plastic Signs:
 1. Engraved legend.
 2. Thickness:
 - a. For signs up to 20 sq. in., minimum 1/16 inch thick.
 - b. For signs larger than 20 sq. in., 1/8 inch thick.
 - c. Engraved legend with black letters on white face.
 - d. Framed with mitered acrylic molding and arranged for attachment at applicable equipment.

2.7 CABLE TIES

- A. General-Purpose Cable Ties: Fungus inert, self-extinguishing, one piece, self-locking, and Type 6/6 nylon.
 1. Minimum Width: 3/16 inch.
 2. Tensile Strength at 73 Deg F according to ASTM D 638: 12,000 psi.
 3. Temperature Range: Minus 40 to plus 185 deg F.
 4. Color: Black, except where used for color-coding.

- B. UV-Stabilized Cable Ties: Fungus inert, designed for continuous exposure to exterior sunlight, self-extinguishing, one piece, self-locking, and Type 6/6 nylon.
 - 1. Minimum Width: 3/16 inch.
 - 2. Tensile Strength at 73 Deg F according to ASTM D 638: 12,000 psi.
 - 3. Temperature Range: Minus 40 to plus 185 deg F.
 - 4. Color: Black.

- C. Plenum-Rated Cable Ties: Self-extinguishing, UV stabilized, one piece, and self-locking.
 - 1. Minimum Width: 3/16 inch.
 - 2. Tensile Strength at 73 Deg F according to ASTM D 638: 7000 psi.
 - 3. UL 94 Flame Rating: 94V-0.
 - 4. Temperature Range: Minus 50 to plus 284 deg F.
 - 5. Color: Black.

2.8 MISCELLANEOUS IDENTIFICATION PRODUCTS

- A. Paint: Comply with requirements in painting Sections for paint materials and application requirements. Retain paint system applicable for surface material and location (exterior or interior).

- B. Fasteners for Labels and Signs: Self-tapping, stainless-steel screws or stainless-steel machine screws with nuts and flat and lock washers.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 PREPARATION

- A. Self-Adhesive Identification Products: Before applying electrical identification products, clean substrates of substances that could impair bond, using materials and methods recommended by manufacturer of identification product.

3.2 INSTALLATION

- A. Verify and coordinate identification names, abbreviations, colors, and other features with requirements in other Sections requiring identification applications, Drawings, Shop Drawings, manufacturer's wiring diagrams, and operation and maintenance manual. Use consistent designations throughout Project.

- B. Install identifying devices before installing acoustical ceilings and similar concealment.

- C. Verify identity of each item before installing identification products.

- D. Coordinate identification with Project Drawings, manufacturer's wiring diagrams, and operation and maintenance manual.

- E. Apply identification devices to surfaces that require finish after completing finish work.

- F. Install signs with approved legend to facilitate proper identification, operation, and maintenance of electrical systems and connected items.
- G. System Identification for Raceways and Cables under 600 V: Identification shall completely encircle cable or conduit. Place identification of two-color markings in contact, side by side.
 - 1. Secure tight to surface of conductor, cable, or raceway.
- H. System Identification for Raceways and Cables over 600 V: Identification shall completely encircle cable or conduit. Place adjacent identification of two-color markings in contact, side by side.
 - 1. Secure tight to surface of conductor, cable, or raceway.
- I. Auxiliary Electrical Systems Conductor Identification: Identify field-installed alarm, control, and signal connections.
- J. Emergency Operating Instruction Signs: Install instruction signs with white legend on a red background with minimum 3/8-inch-high letters for emergency instructions at equipment used for power transfer.
- K. Elevated Components: Increase sizes of labels, signs, and letters to those appropriate for viewing from the floor.
- L. Accessible Fittings for Raceways: Identify the covers of each junction and pull box of the following systems with the wiring system legend and system voltage. System legends shall be as follows:
 - 1. "EMERGENCY POWER."
 - 2. "POWER."
 - 3. "UPS."
- M. Vinyl Wraparound Labels:
 - 1. Secure tight to surface of raceway or cable at a location with high visibility and accessibility.
 - 2. Attach labels that are not self-adhesive type with clear vinyl tape, with adhesive appropriate to the location and substrate.
- N. Snap-around Labels: Secure tight to surface at a location with high visibility and accessibility.
- O. Self-Adhesive Wraparound Labels: Secure tight to surface at a location with high visibility and accessibility.
- P. Self-Adhesive Labels:
 - 1. On each item, install unique designation label that is consistent with wiring diagrams, schedules, and operation and maintenance manual.
 - 2. Unless otherwise indicated, provide a single line of text with 1/2-inch-high letters on 1-1/2-inch-high label; where two lines of text are required, use labels 2 inches high.

- Q. Snap-around Color-Coding Bands: Secure tight to surface at a location with high visibility and accessibility.
- R. Heat-Shrink, Preprinted Tubes: Secure tight to surface at a location with high visibility and accessibility.
- S. Marker Tapes: Secure tight to surface at a location with high visibility and accessibility.
- T. Self-Adhesive Vinyl Tape: Secure tight to surface at a location with high visibility and accessibility.
 - 1. Field-Applied, Color-Coding Conductor Tape: Apply in half-lapped turns for a minimum distance of 6 inches where splices or taps are made. Apply last two turns of tape with no tension to prevent possible unwinding.
- U. Tape and Stencil: Comply with requirements in painting Sections for surface preparation and paint application.
- V. Floor Marking Tape: Apply stripes to finished surfaces following manufacturer's written instructions.
- W. Underground Line Warning Tape:
 - 1. During backfilling of trenches, install continuous underground-line warning tape directly above cable or raceway at 6 to 8 inches below finished grade. Use multiple tapes where width of multiple lines installed in a common trench or concrete envelope exceeds 16 inches overall.
 - 2. Limit use of underground-line warning tape to direct-buried cables.
 - 3. Install underground-line warning tape for direct-buried cables and cables in raceways.
- X. Baked-Enamel Signs:
 - 1. Attach signs that are not self-adhesive type with mechanical fasteners appropriate to the location and substrate.
 - 2. Unless otherwise indicated, provide a single line of text with 1/2-inch-high letters on minimum 1-1/2-inch-high sign; where two lines of text are required, use signs minimum 2 inches high.
- Y. Metal-Backed Butyrate Signs:
 - 1. Attach signs that are not self-adhesive type with mechanical fasteners appropriate to the location and substrate.
 - 2. Unless otherwise indicated, provide a single line of text with 1/2-inch-high letters on 1-1/2-inch-high sign; where two lines of text are required, use labels 2 inches high.
- Z. Laminated Acrylic or Melamine Plastic Signs:
 - 1. Attach signs that are not self-adhesive type with mechanical fasteners appropriate to the location and substrate.

2. Unless otherwise indicated, provide a single line of text with 1/2-inch-high letters on 1-1/2-inch-high sign; where two lines of text are required, use labels 2 inches high.

AA. Cable Ties: General purpose, for attaching tags, except as listed below:

1. Outdoors: UV-stabilized nylon.
2. In Spaces Handling Environmental Air: Plenum rated.

3.3 IDENTIFICATION SCHEDULE

- A. Install identification materials and devices at locations for most convenient viewing without interference with operation and maintenance of equipment. Install access doors or panels to provide view of identifying devices.
- B. Identify conductors, cables, and terminals in enclosures and at junctions, terminals, pull points, and locations of high visibility. Identify by system and circuit designation.
- C. Concealed Raceways, Duct Banks, More Than 600 V, within Buildings: Tape and stencil. Stencil legend "DANGER - CONCEALED HIGH-VOLTAGE WIRING" with 3-inch-high, black letters on 20-inch centers.
 1. Locate identification at changes in direction, at penetrations of walls and floors, and at 10-foot maximum intervals.
- D. Accessible Raceways, Armored and Metal-Clad Cables, More Than 600 V: Self-adhesive labels.
 1. Locate identification at changes in direction, at penetrations of walls and floors, at 50-foot maximum intervals in straight runs, and at 25-foot maximum intervals in congested areas.
- E. Accessible Raceways and Metal-Clad Cables, 600 V or Less, for Service, Feeder, and Branch Circuits, More Than 20 A and 120 V to Ground: Identify with self-adhesive raceway labels.
 1. Locate identification at changes in direction, at penetrations of walls and floors, at 50-foot maximum intervals in straight runs, and at 25-foot maximum intervals in congested areas.
- F. Accessible Fittings for Raceways and Cables within Buildings: Identify the covers of each junction and pull box of the following systems with self-adhesive labels containing the wiring system legend and system voltage. System legends shall be as follows:
 1. "EMERGENCY POWER."
 2. "POWER."
 3. "UPS."
- G. Power-Circuit Conductor Identification, 600 V or Less: For conductors in vaults, pull and junction boxes, manholes, and handholes, use self-adhesive wraparound labels to identify the phase.

1. Locate identification at changes in direction, at penetrations of walls and floors, at 50-foot maximum intervals in straight runs, and at 25-foot maximum intervals in congested areas.
- H. Conductors to Be Extended in the Future: Attach write-on tags to conductors and list source.
- I. Locations of Underground Lines: Underground-line warning tape for power, lighting, communication, and control wiring and optical-fiber cable.
- J. Concealed Raceways and Duct Banks, More Than 600 V, within Buildings: Apply floor marking tape to the following finished surfaces:
 1. Floor surface directly above conduits running beneath and within 12 inches of a floor that is in contact with earth or is framed above unexcavated space.
 2. Wall surfaces directly external to raceways concealed within wall.
 3. Accessible surfaces of concrete envelope around raceways in vertical shafts, exposed in the building, or concealed above suspended ceilings.
- K. Workspace Indication: Apply floor marking tape to finished surfaces. Show working clearances in the direction of access to live parts. Workspace shall comply with NFPA 70 and 29 CFR 1926.403 unless otherwise indicated. Do not install at flush-mounted panelboards and similar equipment in finished spaces.
- L. Instructional Signs: Self-adhesive labels, including the color code for grounded and ungrounded conductors.
- M. Warning Labels for Indoor Cabinets, Boxes, and Enclosures for Power and Lighting: Self-adhesive labels.
 1. Apply to exterior of door, cover, or other access.
 2. For equipment with multiple power or control sources, apply to door or cover of equipment, including, but not limited to, the following:
 - a. Power-transfer switches.
 - b. Controls with external control power connections.
- N. Arc Flash Warning Labeling: Self-adhesive labels.
- O. Equipment Identification Labels:
 1. Indoor Equipment: Self-adhesive label.
 2. Outdoor Equipment: Laminated acrylic or melamine sign.
 3. Equipment to Be Labeled:
 - a. Panelboards: Typewritten directory of circuits in the location provided by panelboard manufacturer. Panelboard identification shall be in the form of a self-adhesive, engraved, laminated acrylic or melamine label.
 - b. Enclosures and electrical cabinets.
 - c. Access doors and panels for concealed electrical items.
 - d. Switchgear.
 - e. Switchboards.

- f. Transformers: Label that includes tag designation indicated on Drawings for the transformer, feeder, and panelboards or equipment supplied by the secondary.
- g. Substations.
- h. Emergency system boxes and enclosures.
- i. Motor-control centers.
- j. Enclosed switches.
- k. Enclosed circuit breakers.
- l. Enclosed controllers.
- m. Variable-speed controllers.
- n. Push-button stations.
- o. Power-transfer equipment.
- p. Contactors.
- q. Remote-controlled switches, dimmer modules, and control devices.
- r. Battery-inverter units.
- s. Battery racks.
- t. Power-generating units.
- u. Monitoring and control equipment.
- v. UPS equipment.
- w. Generator Grounding Method for switched or un-switched neutral conductor.

END OF SECTION

SECTION 26 0572 - OVERCURRENT PROTECTIVE DEVICE SHORT-CIRCUIT STUDY

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section includes a computer-based, fault-current study to determine the minimum interrupting capacity of circuit protective devices.

1.3 DEFINITIONS

- A. Existing to Remain: Existing items of construction that are not to be removed and that are not otherwise indicated to be removed, removed and salvaged, or removed and reinstalled.
- B. One-Line Diagram: A diagram which shows, by means of single lines and graphic symbols, the course of an electric circuit or system of circuits and the component devices or parts used therein.
- C. Protective Device: A device that senses when an abnormal current flow exists and then removes the affected portion from the system.
- D. SCCR: Short-circuit current rating.
- E. Service: The conductors and equipment for delivering electric energy from the serving utility to the wiring system of the premises served.

1.4 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For computer software program to be used for studies.
- B. Other Action Submittals: Submit the following after the approval of system protective devices submittals. Submittals shall be in digital form.
 - 1. Short-circuit study input data, including completed computer program input data sheets.
 - 2. Short-circuit study and equipment evaluation report; signed, dated, and sealed by a qualified professional engineer.
 - a. Submit study report for action prior to receiving final approval of the distribution equipment submittals. If formal completion of studies will cause delay in equipment manufacturing, obtain approval from Architect for

preliminary submittal of sufficient study data to ensure that the selection of devices and associated characteristics is satisfactory.

- b. Revised single-line diagram, reflecting field investigation results and results of short-circuit study.

1.5 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Qualification Data: For Short-Circuit Study Software Developer.
- B. Product Certificates: For short-circuit study software, certifying compliance with IEEE 399.

1.6 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Studies shall use computer programs that are distributed nationally and are in wide use. Software algorithms shall comply with requirements of standards and guides specified in this Section. Manual calculations are unacceptable.
- B. Short-Circuit Study Software Developer Qualifications: An entity that owns and markets computer software used for studies, having performed successful studies of similar magnitude on electrical distribution systems using similar devices.
 1. The computer program shall be developed under the charge of a licensed professional engineer who holds IEEE Computer Society's Certified Software Development Professional certification.
- C. Short-Circuit Study Specialist Qualifications: Professional engineer in charge of performing the study and documenting recommendations, licensed in the state where Project is located. All elements of the study shall be performed under the direct supervision and control of this professional engineer.
- D. Field Adjusting Agency Qualifications: An independent agency, with the experience and capability to adjust overcurrent devices and to conduct the testing indicated, that is a member company of the InterNational Electrical Testing Association or is a nationally recognized testing laboratory (NRTL) as defined by OSHA in 29 CFR 1910.7, and that is acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 COMPUTER SOFTWARE

- A. Comply with IEEE 399 and IEEE 551.
- B. Analytical features of fault-current-study computer software program shall have the capability to calculate "mandatory," "very desirable," and "desirable" features as listed in IEEE 399.
- C. Computer software program shall be capable of plotting and diagramming time-current-characteristic curves as part of its output.

2.2 SHORT-CIRCUIT STUDY REPORT CONTENTS

- A. Executive summary.
- B. Study descriptions, purpose, basis, and scope. Include case descriptions, definition of terms, and guide for interpretation of the computer printout.
- C. One-line diagram, showing the following:
 - 1. Protective device designations and ampere ratings.
 - 2. Cable size and lengths.
 - 3. Transformer kilovolt ampere (kVA) and voltage ratings.
 - 4. Motor and generator designations and kVA ratings.
 - 5. Switchgear, switchboard, motor-control center, and panelboard designations.
- D. Comments and recommendations for system improvements, where needed.
- E. Protective Device Evaluation:
 - 1. Evaluate equipment and protective devices and compare to short-circuit ratings.
 - 2. Tabulations of circuit breaker, fuse, and other protective device ratings versus calculated short-circuit duties.
 - 3. For 600-V overcurrent protective devices, ensure that interrupting ratings are equal to or higher than calculated 1/2-cycle symmetrical fault current.
 - 4. For devices and equipment rated for asymmetrical fault current, apply multiplication factors listed in the standards to 1/2-cycle symmetrical fault current.
 - 5. Verify adequacy of phase conductors at maximum three-phase bolted fault currents; verify adequacy of equipment grounding conductors and grounding electrode conductors at maximum ground-fault currents. Ensure that short-circuit withstand ratings are equal to or higher than calculated 1/2-cycle symmetrical fault current.
- F. Short-Circuit Study Input Data: As described in "Power System Data" Article in the Evaluations.
- G. Short-Circuit Study Output:
 - 1. Low-Voltage Fault Report: Three-phase and unbalanced fault calculations, showing the following for each overcurrent device location:
 - a. Voltage.
 - b. Calculated fault-current magnitude and angle.
 - c. Fault-point X/R ratio.
 - d. Equivalent impedance.
 - 2. Momentary Duty Report: Three-phase and unbalanced fault calculations, showing the following for each overcurrent device location:
 - a. Voltage.
 - b. Calculated symmetrical fault-current magnitude and angle.
 - c. Fault-point X/R ratio.
 - d. Calculated asymmetrical fault currents:

- 1) Based on fault-point X/R ratio.
 - 2) Based on calculated symmetrical value multiplied by 1.6.
 - 3) Based on calculated symmetrical value multiplied by 2.7.
3. Interrupting Duty Report: Three-phase and unbalanced fault calculations, showing the following for each overcurrent device location:
- a. Voltage.
 - b. Calculated symmetrical fault-current magnitude and angle.
 - c. Fault-point X/R ratio.
 - d. No AC Decrement (NACD) ratio.
 - e. Equivalent impedance.
 - f. Multiplying factors for 2-, 3-, 5-, and 8-cycle circuit breakers rated on a symmetrical basis.
 - g. Multiplying factors for 2-, 3-, 5-, and 8-cycle circuit breakers rated on a total basis.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Obtain all data necessary for the conduct of the study.
1. Verify completeness of data supplied on the one-line diagram. Call any discrepancies to the attention of Architect.
 2. For equipment provided that is Work of this Project, use characteristics submitted under the provisions of action submittals and information submittals for this Project.
 3. For relocated equipment that is existing to remain, obtain required electrical distribution system data by field investigation and surveys, conducted by qualified technicians and engineers. The qualifications of technicians and engineers shall be qualified as defined by NFPA 70E.
- B. Gather and tabulate the following input data to support the short-circuit study. Comply with recommendations in IEEE 551 as to the amount of detail that is required to be acquired in the field. Field data gathering shall be under the direct supervision and control of the engineer in charge of performing the study, and shall be by the engineer or its representative who holds NETA ETT Level III certification or NICET Electrical Power Testing Level III certification.
1. Product Data for Project's overcurrent protective devices involved in overcurrent protective device coordination studies. Use equipment designation tags that are consistent with electrical distribution system diagrams, overcurrent protective device submittals, input and output data, and recommended device settings.
 2. Obtain electrical power utility impedance at the service.
 3. Power sources and ties.
 4. For transformers, include kVA, primary and secondary voltages, connection type, impedance, X/R ratio, taps measured in percent, and phase shift.
 5. For reactors, provide manufacturer and model designation, voltage rating, and impedance.

6. For circuit breakers and fuses, provide manufacturer and model designation. List type of breaker, type of trip, SCCR, current rating, and breaker settings.
7. Generator short-circuit current contribution data, including short-circuit reactance, rated kVA, rated voltage, and X/R ratio.
8. Busway manufacturer and model designation, current rating, impedance, lengths, and conductor material.
9. Motor horsepower and NEMA MG 1 code letter designation.
10. Cable sizes, lengths, number, conductor material and conduit material (magnetic or nonmagnetic).

3.2 SHORT-CIRCUIT STUDY

- A. Perform study following the general study procedures contained in IEEE 399.
- B. Calculate short-circuit currents according to IEEE 551.
- C. Base study on the device characteristics supplied by device manufacturer.
- D. The extent of the electrical power system to be studied is indicated on Drawings.
- E. Begin short-circuit current analysis at the service, extending down to the system overcurrent protective devices as follows:
 1. To normal system low-voltage load buses where fault current is 10 kA or less.
 2. Exclude equipment rated 240-V ac or less when supplied by a single transformer rated less than 125 kVA.
- F. Study electrical distribution system from normal and alternate power sources throughout electrical distribution system for Project. Study all cases of system-switching configurations and alternate operations that could result in maximum fault conditions.
- G. The calculations shall include the ac fault-current decay from induction motors, synchronous motors, and asynchronous generators and shall apply to low- and medium-voltage, three-phase ac systems. The calculations shall also account for the fault-current dc decrement, to address the asymmetrical requirements of the interrupting equipment.
 1. For grounded systems, provide a bolted line-to-ground fault-current study for areas as defined for the three-phase bolted fault short-circuit study.
- H. Calculate short-circuit momentary and interrupting duties for a three-phase bolted fault at each of the following:
 1. Electric utility's supply termination point.
 2. Incoming switchgear.
 3. Unit substation primary and secondary terminals.
 4. Low-voltage switchgear.
 5. Motor-control centers.
 6. Control panels.
 7. Standby generators and automatic transfer switches.
 8. Branch circuit panelboards.
 9. Disconnect switches.

3.3 ADJUSTING

- A. Make minor modifications to equipment as required to accomplish compliance with short-circuit study.

3.4 DEMONSTRATION

- A. Train Owner's operating and maintenance personnel in the use of study results.

END OF SECTION

SECTION 26 0573 - OVERCURRENT PROTECTIVE DEVICE

COORDINATION STUDY PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 SUMMARY

- A. This Section includes computer-based, fault-current and overcurrent protective device coordination studies. Protective devices shall be set based on results of the protective device coordination study.
 - 1. Coordination of series-rated devices is permitted where indicated on Drawings.

1.2 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For computer software program to be used for studies.
- B. Other Action Submittals: The following submittals shall be made after the approval process for system protective devices has been completed. Submittals shall be in digital form.
 - 1. Coordination-study input data, including completed computer program input datasheets.
 - 2. Study and Equipment Evaluation Reports.
 - 3. Coordination-Study Report.

1.3 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Qualification Data: For coordination-study specialist.
- B. Product Certificates: For coordination-study and fault-current-study computer software programs, certifying compliance with IEEE 399.

1.4 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Studies shall use computer programs that are distributed nationally and are in wide use. Software algorithms shall comply with requirements of standards and guides specified in this Section. Manual calculations are not acceptable.
- B. Coordination-Study Specialist Qualifications: An entity experienced in the application of computer software used for studies, having performed successful studies of similar magnitude on electrical distribution systems using similar devices.
 - 1. Professional engineer, licensed in the state where Project is located, shall be responsible for the study. All elements of the study shall be performed under the direct supervision and control of engineer.
- C. Comply with IEEE 242 for short-circuit currents and coordination time intervals.
- D. Comply with IEEE 399 for general study procedures.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 COMPUTER SOFTWARE DEVELOPERS

- A. Available Computer Software Developers: Subject to compliance with requirements, companies offering computer software programs that may be used in the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
- B. Computer Software Developers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
- C. Basis-of-Design Product: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide a comparable product by one of the following:
 - 1. CGI CYME.
 - 2. EDSA Micro Corporation.
 - 3. ESA Inc.
 - 4. Operation Technology, Inc.
 - 5. SKM Systems Analysis, Inc.

2.2 COMPUTER SOFTWARE PROGRAM REQUIREMENTS

- A. Comply with IEEE 399.
- B. Analytical features of fault-current-study computer software program shall include "mandatory," "very desirable," and "desirable" features as listed in IEEE 399.
- C. Computer software program shall be capable of plotting and diagramming time-current- characteristic curves as part of its output. Computer software program shall report device settings and ratings of all overcurrent protective devices and shall demonstrate selective coordination by computer-generated, time-current coordination plots.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 POWER SYSTEM DATA

- A. Gather and tabulate the following input data to support coordination study:
 - 1. Product Data for overcurrent protective devices specified in other electrical Sections and involved in overcurrent protective device coordination studies. Use equipment designation tags that are consistent with electrical distribution system diagrams, overcurrent protective device submittals, input and output data, and recommended device settings.
 - 2. Impedance of utility service entrance.
 - 3. Electrical Distribution System Diagram: In hard-copy and electronic-copy formats, showing the following:
 - a. Circuit-breaker and fuse-current ratings and types.
 - b. Relays and associated power and current transformer ratings and ratios.
 - c. Transformer kilovolt amperes, primary and secondary voltages, connection type, impedance, and X/R ratios.
 - d. Generator kilovolt amperes, size, voltage, and source impedance.

- e. Cables: Indicate conduit material, sizes of conductors, conductor material, insulation, and length.
- f. Busway ampacity and impedance.
- g. Motor horsepower and code letter designation according to NEMA MG 1.
- 4. Data sheets to supplement electrical distribution system diagram, cross-referenced with tag numbers on diagram, showing the following:
 - a. Special load considerations, including starting inrush currents and frequent starting and stopping.
 - b. Transformer characteristics, including primary protective device, magnetic inrush current, and overload capability.
 - c. Motor full-load current, locked rotor current, service factor, starting time, type of start, and thermal-damage curve.
 - d. Generator thermal-damage curve.
 - e. Ratings, types, and settings of utility company's overcurrent protective devices.
 - f. Special overcurrent protective device settings or types stipulated by utility company.
 - g. Time-current-characteristic curves of devices indicated to be coordinated.
 - h. Manufacturer, frame size, interrupting rating in amperes rms symmetrical, ampere or current sensor rating, long-time adjustment range, short-time adjustment range, and instantaneous adjustment range for circuit breakers.
 - i. Manufacturer and type, ampere-tap adjustment range, time-delay adjustment range, instantaneous attachment adjustment range, and current transformer ratio for overcurrent relays.
 - j. Panelboards, switchboards, motor-control center ampacity, and interrupting rating in amperes rms symmetrical.
 - k. Manufacturer's characteristics of provided VFDs.

3.2 FAULT-CURRENT STUDY

- A. Calculate the maximum available short-circuit current in amperes rms symmetrical at circuit- breaker positions of the electrical power distribution system. The calculation shall be for a current immediately after initiation and for a three-phase bolted short circuit at each of the following:
 - 1. Switchgear and switchboard bus.
 - 2. Medium-voltage controller.
 - 3. Motor-control center.
 - 4. Distribution panelboard.
 - 5. Branch circuit panelboard.
- B. Study electrical distribution system from normal and alternate power sources throughout electrical distribution system for Project. Include studies of system-switching configurations and alternate operations that could result in maximum fault conditions.
- C. Calculate momentary and interrupting duties on the basis of maximum available fault current.
- D. Calculations to verify interrupting ratings of overcurrent protective devices shall comply with IEEE 241 and IEEE 242.
 - 1. Transformers:
 - a. ANSI C57.12.22. b. IEEE C57.12.00.
 - c. IEEE C57.96.

2. Medium-Voltage Circuit Breakers: IEEE C37.010.
 3. Low-Voltage Circuit Breakers: IEEE 1015 and IEEE C37.20.1.
 4. Low-Voltage Fuses: IEEE C37.46.
- E. Study Report:
1. Show calculated X/R ratios and equipment interrupting rating (1/2-cycle) fault currents on electrical distribution system diagram.
- F. Equipment Evaluation Report:
1. For 600-V overcurrent protective devices, ensure that interrupting ratings are equal to or higher than calculated 1/2-cycle symmetrical fault current.
 2. For devices and equipment rated for asymmetrical fault current, apply multiplication factors listed in the standards to 1/2-cycle symmetrical fault current.
 3. Verify adequacy of phase conductors at maximum three-phase bolted fault currents; verify adequacy of equipment grounding conductors and grounding electrode conductors at maximum ground-fault currents. Ensure that short-circuit withstand ratings are equal to or higher than calculated 1/2-cycle symmetrical fault current.

3.3 COORDINATION STUDY

- A. Perform coordination study using approved computer software program. Prepare a written report using results of fault-current study. Comply with IEEE 399.
1. Calculate the maximum and minimum 1/2-cycle short-circuit currents.
 2. Calculate the maximum and minimum interrupting duty (5 cycles to 2 seconds) short-circuit currents.
 3. Calculate the maximum and minimum ground-fault currents.
- B. Comply with IEEE 241 and NFPA 71E recommendations for fault currents and time intervals.
- C. Transformer Primary Overcurrent Protective Devices:
1. Device shall not operate in response to the following:
 - a. Inrush current when first energized.
 - b. Self-cooled, full-load current or forced-air-cooled, full-load current, whichever is specified for that transformer.
 - c. Permissible transformer overloads according to IEEE C57.96 if required by unusual loading or emergency conditions.
 2. Device settings shall protect transformers according to IEEE C57.12.00, for fault currents.
- D. Conductor Protection: Protect cables against damage from fault currents according to ICEA P- 32-382, ICEA P-45-482, and conductor melting curves in IEEE 242. Demonstrate that equipment withstands the maximum short-circuit current for a time equivalent to the tripping time of the primary relay protection or total clearing time of the fuse. To determine temperatures that damage insulation, use curves from cable manufacturers or from listed standards indicating conductor size and short-circuit current.
- E. Coordination-Study Report: Prepare a written report indicating the following results of coordination study:
1. Tabular Format of Settings Selected for Overcurrent Protective Devices:
 - a. Device tag.

- b. Relay-current transformer ratios; and tap, time-dial, and instantaneous-pickup values.
 - c. Circuit-breaker sensor rating; and long-time, short-time, and instantaneous settings.
 - d. Fuse-current rating and type.
 - e. Ground-fault relay-pickup and time-delay settings.
2. Coordination Curves: Prepared to determine settings of overcurrent protective devices to achieve selective coordination. Graphically illustrate that adequate time separation exists between devices installed in series, including power utility company's upstream devices. Prepare separate sets of curves for the switching schemes and for emergency periods where the power source is local generation. Show the following information:
- a. Device tag.
 - b. Voltage and current ratio for curves.
 - c. Three-phase and single-phase damage points for each transformer.
 - d. No damage, melting, and clearing curves for fuses.
 - e. Cable damage curves.
 - f. Transformer inrush points.
 - g. Maximum fault-current cutoff point.
- F. Completed data sheets for setting of overcurrent protective devices.

END OF SECTION

SECTION 26 0574 - OVERCURRENT PROTECTIVE DEVICE ARC-FLASH STUDY

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section includes a computer-based, arc-flash study to determine the arc-flash hazard distance and the incident energy to which personnel could be exposed during work on or near electrical equipment.

1.3 DEFINITIONS

- A. Existing to Remain: Existing items of construction that are not to be removed and that are not otherwise indicated to be removed, removed and salvaged, or removed and reinstalled.
- B. One-Line Diagram: A diagram which shows, by means of single lines and graphic symbols, the course of an electric circuit or system of circuits and the component devices or parts used therein.
- C. Protective Device: A device that senses when an abnormal current flow exists and then removes the affected portion from the system.
- D. SCCR: Short-circuit current rating.
- E. Service: The conductors and equipment for delivering electric energy from the serving utility to the wiring system of the premises served.

1.4 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For computer software program to be used for studies.
- B. Other Action Submittals: Submit the following submittals after the approval of system protective devices submittals. Submittals shall be in digital form.
 - 1. Arc-flash study input data, including completed computer program input data sheets.
 - 2. Arc-flash study report; signed, dated, and sealed by a qualified professional engineer.
 - a. Submit study report for action prior to receiving final approval of the distribution equipment submittals. If formal completion of studies will cause delay in equipment manufacturing, obtain approval from Architect for

preliminary submittal of sufficient study data to ensure that the selection of devices and associated characteristics is satisfactory.

1.5 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Qualification Data: For Arc-Flash Study Specialist.
- B. Product Certificates: For arc-flash hazard analysis software, certifying compliance with IEEE 1584 and NFPA 70E.

1.6 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

- A. Maintenance procedures according to requirements in NFPA 70E shall be provided in the equipment manuals.
- B. Operation and Maintenance Procedures: In addition to items specified in Section 01 7823 "Operation and Maintenance Data," provide maintenance procedures for use by Owner's personnel that comply with requirements in NFPA 70E.

1.7 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Studies shall use computer programs that are distributed nationally and are in wide use. Software algorithms shall comply with requirements of standards and guides specified in this Section. Manual calculations are unacceptable.
- B. Arc-Flash Study Software Developer Qualifications: An entity that owns and markets computer software used for studies, having performed successful studies of similar magnitude on electrical distribution systems using similar devices.
 - 1. The computer program shall be developed under the charge of a licensed professional engineer who holds IEEE Computer Society's Certified Software Development Professional certification.
- C. Arc-Flash Study Specialist Qualifications: Professional engineer in charge of performing the study, analyzing the arc flash, and documenting recommendations, licensed in the state where Project is located. All elements of the study shall be performed under the direct supervision and control of this professional engineer.
- D. Field Adjusting Agency Qualifications: An independent agency, with the experience and capability to adjust overcurrent devices and to conduct the testing indicated, that is a member company of the InterNational Electrical Testing Association or is a nationally recognized testing laboratory (NRTL) as defined by OSHA in 29 CFR 1910.7, and that is acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 COMPUTER SOFTWARE DEVELOPERS

- A. Software Developers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available software developers offering software that may be used for the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
1. ESA Inc.
 2. Operation Technology, Inc.
 3. Power Analytics, Corporation.
 4. SKM Systems Analysis, Inc.
- B. Comply with IEEE 1584 and NFPA 70E.
- C. Analytical features of device coordination study computer software program shall have the capability to calculate "mandatory," "very desirable," and "desirable" features as listed in IEEE 399.

2.2 ARC-FLASH STUDY REPORT CONTENT

- A. Executive summary.
- B. Study descriptions, purpose, basis and scope.
- C. One-line diagram, showing the following:
1. Protective device designations and ampere ratings.
 2. Cable size and lengths.
 3. Transformer kilovolt ampere (kVA) and voltage ratings.
 4. Motor and generator designations and kVA ratings.
 5. Switchgear, switchboard, motor-control center and panelboard designations.
- D. Study Input Data: As described in "Power System Data" Article.
- E. Short-Circuit Study Output: As specified in "Short Circuit Study Output" Paragraph in "Short-Circuit Study Report Contents" Article in Section 26 0572 "Overcurrent Protective Device Short-Circuit Study."
- F. Protective Device Coordination Study Report Contents: As specified in "Protective Device Coordination Study Report Contents" Article in Section 26 0573 "Overcurrent Protective Device Coordination Study."
- G. Arc-Flash Study Output:
1. Interrupting Duty Report: Three-phase and unbalanced fault calculations, showing the following for each overcurrent device location:
 - a. Voltage.
 - b. Calculated symmetrical fault-current magnitude and angle.
 - c. Fault-point X/R ratio.
 - d. No AC Decrement (NACD) ratio.
 - e. Equivalent impedance.

- f. Multiplying factors for 2-, 3-, 5-, and 8-cycle circuit breakers rated on a symmetrical basis.
 - g. Multiplying factors for 2-, 3-, 5-, and 8-cycle circuit breakers rated on a total basis.
- H. Incident Energy and Flash Protection Boundary Calculations:
- 1. Arcing fault magnitude.
 - 2. Protective device clearing time.
 - 3. Duration of arc.
 - 4. Arc-flash boundary.
 - 5. Working distance.
 - 6. Incident energy.
 - 7. Hazard risk category.
 - 8. Recommendations for arc-flash energy reduction.
- I. Fault study input data, case descriptions, and fault-current calculations including a definition of terms and guide for interpretation of the computer printout.

2.3 ARC-FLASH WARNING LABELS

- A. Comply with requirements in Section 26 0553 "Identification for Electrical Systems." Produce a 3.5-by-5-inch thermal transfer label of high-adhesion polyester for each work location included in the analysis.
- B. The label shall have an orange header with the wording, "WARNING, ARC-FLASH HAZARD," and shall include the following information taken directly from the arc-flash hazard analysis:
 - 1. Location designation.
 - 2. Nominal voltage.
 - 3. Flash protection boundary.
 - 4. Hazard risk category.
 - 5. Incident energy.
 - 6. Working distance.
 - 7. Engineering report number, revision number, and issue date.
- C. Labels shall be machine printed, with no field-applied markings.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine Project overcurrent protective device submittals. Proceed with arc-flash study only after relevant equipment submittals have been assembled. Overcurrent protective devices that have not been submitted and approved prior to arc-flash study may not be used in study.

3.2 ARC-FLASH HAZARD ANALYSIS

- A. Comply with NFPA 70E and its Annex D for hazard analysis study.

- B. Preparatory Studies:
1. Short-Circuit Study Output: As specified in "Short-Circuit Study Output" Paragraph in "Short-Circuit Study Report Contents" Article in Section 26 0572 "Overcurrent Protective Device Short-Circuit Study."
 2. Protective Device Coordination Study Report Contents: As specified in "Protective Device Coordination Study Report Contents" Article in Section 26 0573 "Overcurrent Protective Device Coordination Study."
- C. Calculate maximum and minimum contributions of fault-current size.
1. The minimum calculation shall assume that the utility contribution is at a minimum and shall assume no motor load.
 2. The maximum calculation shall assume a maximum contribution from the utility and shall assume motors to be operating under full-load conditions.
- D. Calculate the arc-flash protection boundary and incident energy at locations in the electrical distribution system where personnel could perform work on energized parts.
- E. Include medium- and low-voltage equipment locations, except equipment rated 240-V ac or less fed from transformers less than 125 kVA.
- F. Safe working distances shall be specified for calculated fault locations based on the calculated arc-flash boundary, considering incident energy of 1.2 cal/sq.cm.
- G. Incident energy calculations shall consider the accumulation of energy over time when performing arc-flash calculations on buses with multiple sources. Iterative calculations shall take into account the changing current contributions, as the sources are interrupted or decremented with time. Fault contribution from motors and generators shall be decremented as follows:
1. Fault contribution from induction motors should not be considered beyond three to five cycles.
 2. Fault contribution from synchronous motors and generators should be decayed to match the actual decrement of each as closely as possible (e.g., contributions from permanent magnet generators will typically decay from 10 per unit to three per unit after 10 cycles).
- H. Arc-flash computation shall include both line and load side of a circuit breaker as follows:
1. When the circuit breaker is in a separate enclosure.
 2. When the line terminals of the circuit breaker are separate from the work location.
- I. Base arc-flash calculations on actual overcurrent protective device clearing time. Cap maximum clearing time at two seconds based on IEEE 1584, Section B.1.2.

3.3 POWER SYSTEM DATA

- A. Obtain all data necessary for the conduct of the arc-flash hazard analysis.
1. Verify completeness of data supplied on the one-line diagram on Drawings. Call discrepancies to the attention of Engineer.
 2. For new equipment, use characteristics submitted under the provisions of action submittals and information submittals for this Project.

3. For existing equipment, whether or not relocated, obtain required electrical distribution system data by field investigation and surveys, conducted by qualified technicians and engineers.
- B. Electrical Survey Data: Gather and tabulate the following input data to support study. Comply with recommendations in IEEE 1584 and NFPA 70E as to the amount of detail that is required to be acquired in the field. Field data gathering shall be under the direct supervision and control of the engineer in charge of performing the study, and shall be by the engineer or its representative who holds NETA ETT Level III certification or NICET Electrical Power Testing Level III certification.
1. Product Data for overcurrent protective devices specified in other Sections and involved in overcurrent protective device coordination studies. Use equipment designation tags that are consistent with electrical distribution system diagrams, overcurrent protective device submittals, input and output data, and recommended device settings.
 2. Obtain electrical power utility impedance at the service.
 3. Power sources and ties.
 4. Short-circuit current at each system bus, three phase and line-to-ground.
 5. Full-load current of all loads.
 6. Voltage level at each bus.
 7. For transformers, include kVA, primary and secondary voltages, connection type, impedance, X/R ratio, taps measured in per cent, and phase shift.
 8. For reactors, provide manufacturer and model designation, voltage rating and impedance.
 9. For circuit breakers and fuses, provide manufacturer and model designation. List type of breaker, type of trip and available range of settings, SCCR, current rating, and breaker settings.
 10. Generator short-circuit current contribution data, including short-circuit reactance, rated kVA, rated voltage, and X/R ratio.
 11. For relays, provide manufacturer and model designation, current transformer ratios, potential transformer ratios, and relay settings.
 12. Busway manufacturer and model designation, current rating, impedance, lengths, and conductor material.
 13. Motor horsepower and NEMA MG 1 code letter designation.
 14. Low-voltage cable sizes, lengths, number, conductor material and conduit material (magnetic or nonmagnetic).
 15. Medium-voltage cable sizes, lengths, conductor material, and cable construction and metallic shield performance parameters.

3.4 LABELING

- A. Apply one arc-flash label for 600-V ac, 480-V ac, and applicable 208-V ac panelboards and disconnects and for each of the following locations:
1. Motor-control center.
 2. Low-voltage switchboard.
 3. Switchgear.
 4. Medium-voltage switch.
 5. Control panel.

3.5 APPLICATION OF WARNING LABELS

- A. Install the arc-fault warning labels under the direct supervision and control of the Arc-Flash Study Specialist.

3.6 DEMONSTRATION

- A. Engage the Arc-Flash Study Specialist to train Owner's maintenance personnel in the potential arc-flash hazards associated with working on energized equipment and the significance of the arc-flash warning labels.

END OF SECTION

SECTION 26 0923 - LIGHTING CONTROL DEVICES

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:

1. Time switches.
2. Photoelectric switches.
3. Standalone daylight-harvesting switching and dimming controls.
4. Indoor occupancy and vacancy sensors.
5. Switchbox-mounted occupancy sensors.
6. Digital timer light switches.
7. High-bay occupancy sensors.
8. Extreme temperature occupancy sensors.
9. Outdoor motion sensors.
10. Lighting contactors.
11. Emergency shunt relays.

- B. Related Requirements:

1. Section 26 2726 "Wiring Devices" for wall-box dimmers, non-networkable wall-switch occupancy sensors, and manual light switches.

1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product.

- B. Shop Drawings:

1. Show installation details for the following:
 - a. Occupancy sensors: Include shop drawings with a coverage map.
 - b. Vacancy sensors. Include shop drawings with a coverage map.
2. Interconnection diagrams showing field-installed wiring.
3. Include diagrams for power, signal, and control wiring.

1.4 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Coordination Drawings: Reflected ceiling plan(s) and elevations, drawn to scale, on which the following items are shown and coordinated with each other, using input from installers of the items involved:
 - 1. Suspended ceiling components.
 - 2. Structural members to which equipment will be attached.
 - 3. Items penetrating finished ceiling, including the following:
 - a. Luminaires.
 - b. Air outlets and inlets.
 - c. Speakers.
 - d. Sprinklers.
 - e. Access panels.
 - f. Control modules.
- B. Field quality-control reports.
- C. Sample Warranty: For manufacturer's warranties.

1.5 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

- A. Operation and Maintenance Data: For each type of lighting control device to include in operation and maintenance manuals.

1.6 WARRANTY

- A. Manufacturer's Warranty: Manufacturer and Installer agree to repair or replace lighting control devices that fail(s) in materials or workmanship within specified warranty period.
 - 1. Failures include, but are not limited to, the following:
 - a. Faulty operation of lighting control software.
 - b. Faulty operation of lighting control devices.
 - 2. Warranty Period: Two year(s) from date of Substantial Completion.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 TIME SWITCHES

- A. Electronic Time Switches: Solid state, programmable, with alphanumeric display; complying with UL 917.
 - 1. Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70 and marked for intended location and application.
 - 2. Programs: Eight on-off set points on a 24-hour schedule and an annual holiday schedule that overrides the weekly operation on holidays.

3. Circuitry: Allow connection of a photoelectric relay as substitute for on-off function of a program on selected channels.
4. Astronomic Time: All channels.
5. Automatic daylight savings time changeover.
6. Battery Backup: Not less than seven days reserve, to maintain schedules and time clock.

2.2 OUTDOOR PHOTOELECTRIC SWITCHES

- A. Description: Solid state, with dry contacts rated for 1800 VA inductive, to operate connected relay, contactor coils, or microprocessor input; complying with UL 773A, and compatible with ballasts and LED lamps.
1. Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.
 2. Light-Level Monitoring Range: 1.5 to 10 fc, with an adjustment for turn-on and turn-off levels within that range, and a directional lens in front of the photocell to prevent fixed light sources from causing turn-off.
 3. Time Delay: Fifteen-second minimum, to prevent false operation.
 4. Surge Protection: Metal-oxide varistor.
 5. Mounting: Twist lock complies with NEMA C136.10, with base-and-stem mounting or stem-and-swivel mounting accessories as required to direct sensor to the north sky exposure.
 6. Failure Mode: Luminaire stays ON.

2.3 INDOOR OCCUPANCY AND VACANCY SENSORS

- A. General Requirements for Sensors:
1. Wall or Ceiling-mounted (as shown on drawings), solid-state indoor occupancy and vacancy sensors.
 2. Dual technology.
 3. Integrated power pack.
 4. Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.
 5. Operation:
 - a. Vacancy Sensor: Unless otherwise indicated, lights are manually turned on and sensor turns lights off when the room is unoccupied; with a time delay for turning lights off, adjustable over a minimum range of 1 to 15 minutes.
 6. Sensor Output: **Sensor is powered from the power pack.**
 7. Power: **Line voltage.**
 8. Power Pack: Dry contacts rated for 20-A **ballast or LED** load at 120- and 277-V ac, for 13-A tungsten at 120-V ac, and for 1 hp at 120-V ac. Sensor has 24-V dc, 150-mA, Class 2 power source, as defined by NFPA 70.
 9. Mounting:
 - a. Sensor: Suitable for mounting in any position on a standard outlet box.
 - b. Relay: Externally mounted through a 1/2-inch knockout in a standard electrical enclosure.

- c. Time-Delay and Sensitivity Adjustments: Recessed and concealed behind hinged door.
 10. Indicator: Digital display, to show when motion is detected during testing and normal operation of sensor.
 11. Bypass Switch: Override the "on" function in case of sensor failure.
 12. Automatic Light-Level Sensor: Adjustable from 2 to 200 fc; turn lights off when selected lighting level is present.
- B. PIR Type: **Wall** or **Ceiling** mounted; detect occupants in coverage area by their heat and movement.
1. Detector Sensitivity: Detect occurrences of 6-inch-minimum movement of any portion of a human body that presents a target of not less than 36 sq. in..
 2. Detection Coverage (Room, Ceiling Mounted): Detect occupancy anywhere in a circular area of 1000 sq. ft. when mounted on a 96-inch-high ceiling.
 3. Detection Coverage (Corridor, Ceiling Mounted): Detect occupancy within 90 feet when mounted on a 10-foot-high ceiling.
 4. Detection Coverage (Room, Wall Mounted): Detect occupancy anywhere within a 180-degree pattern centered on the sensor over an area of **1000 square feet** when mounted 48 inches above finished floor.
- C. Ultrasonic Type: **Wall** or **Ceiling** mounted; detect occupants in coverage area through pattern changes of reflected ultrasonic energy.
1. Detector Sensitivity: Detect a person of average size and weight moving not less than 12 inches in either a horizontal or a vertical manner at an approximate speed of 12 inches/s.
 2. Detection Coverage (Small Room): Detect occupancy anywhere within a circular area of 600 sq. ft. when mounted on a 96-inch-high ceiling.
 3. Detection Coverage (Standard Room): Detect occupancy anywhere within a circular area of 1000 sq. ft. when mounted at ceiling height.
 4. Detection Coverage (Large Room): Detect occupancy anywhere within a circular area of 2000 sq. ft. when mounted on at ceiling height.
 5. Detection Coverage (Corridor): Detect occupancy anywhere within 90 feet when mounted on at ceiling height in a corridor not wider than 14 feet.
 6. Detection Coverage (Room, Wall Mounted): Detect occupancy anywhere within a 180-degree pattern centered on the sensor over an area of 2000 square feet when mounted 84 inches above finished floor.
- D. Dual-Technology Type: Wall or Ceiling mounted; detect occupants in coverage area using PIR and ultrasonic detection methods. The particular technology or combination of technologies that control on-off functions is selectable in the field by operating controls on unit.
1. Sensitivity Adjustment: Separate for each sensing technology.
 2. Detector Sensitivity: Detect occurrences of 6-inch-minimum movement of any portion of a human body that presents a target of not less than 36 sq. in., and detect a person of average size and weight moving not less than 12 inches in either a horizontal or a vertical manner at an approximate speed of 12 inches/s.

2.4 SWITCHBOX-MOUNTED VACANCY SENSORS

- A. General Requirements for Sensors: Automatic-wall-switch occupancy sensor with manual on-off switch, suitable for mounting in a single gang switchbox using hardwired connection.
1. Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application, and shall comply with California Title 24.
 2. Vacancy Sensor Operation: Unless otherwise indicated, turn lights off when coverage area is unoccupied, with a time delay for turning lights off, adjustable over a minimum range of 1 to 15 minutes.
 3. Operating Ambient Conditions: Dry interior conditions, 32 to 120 deg F.
 4. Switch Rating: Not less than 800-VA LED load at 120 V, 1200-VA LED load at 277 V, and 800-W incandescent.
- B. Wall-Switch Sensor Tag OS or OCC:
1. Standard Range: 180-degree field of view, field adjustable from 180 to 40 degrees; with a minimum coverage area of 2100 sq. ft.
 2. Sensing Technology: Dual technology - PIR and ultrasonic.
 3. Capable of controlling load in three-way application.
 4. Voltage: Match the circuit voltage.
 5. Ambient-Light Override: Concealed, field-adjustable, light-level sensor from 10 to 150 fc. The switch prevents the lights from turning on when the light level is higher than the set point of the sensor.
 6. Concealed, field-adjustable, "off" time-delay selector at up to 30 minutes.
 7. Adaptive Technology: Self-adjusting circuitry detects and memorizes usage patterns of the space and helps eliminate false "off" switching.
 8. Color: Obtain approval from architect prior to ordering.
 9. Faceplate: Color matched to switch.

2.5 HIGH-BAY OCCUPANCY SENSORS

- A. General Description: Solid-state unit. The unit is designed to operate with the lamp and ballasts indicated.
1. Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.
 2. Operation: Turn lights on when coverage area is occupied, and to half-power when unoccupied; with a time delay for turning lights to half-power that is adjustable over a minimum range of 1 to 16 minutes.
 3. Continuous Lamp Monitoring: When lamps are dimmed continuously for 24 hours, automatically turn lamps on to full power for 15 minutes for every 24 hours of continuous dimming.
 4. Power: Line voltage.
 5. Operating Ambient Conditions: 32 to 149 deg F.
 6. Mounting: Threaded pipe.
 7. Time-Delay and Sensitivity Adjustments: Recessed and concealed behind hinged door.
 8. Detector Technology: PIR.

9. Power and dimming control from the luminaire ballast that has been modified to include the dimming capacitor.
- B. Detector Coverage: User selectable by interchangeable PIR lenses, suitable for mounting heights from 12 to 50 feet.
- C. Accessories: Obtain manufacturer's installation and maintenance kit with laser alignment tool for sensor positioning and power port connectors.

2.6 LIGHTING CONTROL FOR EXTERIOR LIGHTS

- A. Description: Four Pole pass-thru style relay panel. Panel shall include capacity to control four 20A circuits. Manual and programmable control of each relay via simple keypad and 2 line display. UL 916 in NEMA 1 enclosure. Include outdoor photosensor. Equal performance to Eaton LK4 LiteKeeper series.
 1. Current Rating for Switching: Listing or rating consistent with type of load served, including LED, inductive, and high-inrush ballast (ballast with 15 percent or less THD of normal load current).
 2. Fault Current Withstand Rating: Equal to or exceeding the available fault current at the point of installation.
 3. Enclosure: Comply with NEMA 250.
 4. Provide with control as indicated on Drawings, matching the NEMA type specified for the enclosure.

2.7 EMERGENCY SHUNT RELAY

- A. Description: NC, electrically held relay, arranged for wiring in parallel with manual or automatic switching contacts; complying with UL 924.
 1. Coil Rating: As indicated on drawings.

2.8 CONDUCTORS AND CABLES

- A. Power Wiring to Supply Side of Remote-Control Power Sources: Not smaller than No. 12 AWG. Comply with requirements in Section 26 0519 "Low-Voltage Electrical Power Conductors and Cables."
- B. Classes 2 and 3 Control Cable: Multiconductor cable with stranded-copper conductors not smaller than No. 18 AWG. Comply with requirements in Section 26 0519 "Low-Voltage Electrical Power Conductors and Cables."
- C. Class 1 Control Cable: Multiconductor cable with stranded-copper conductors not smaller than No. 16 AWG. Comply with requirements in Section 26 0519 "Low-Voltage Electrical Power Conductors and Cables."

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine lighting control devices before installation. Reject lighting control devices that are wet, moisture damaged, or mold damaged.
- B. Examine walls and ceilings for suitable conditions where lighting control devices will be installed.
- C. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.2 SENSOR INSTALLATION

- A. Comply with NECA 1.
- B. Coordinate layout and installation of ceiling-mounted devices with other construction that penetrates ceilings or is supported by them, including light fixtures, HVAC equipment, smoke detectors, fire-suppression systems, and partition assemblies.
- C. Install and aim sensors in locations to achieve not less than 90-percent coverage of areas indicated. Do not exceed coverage limits specified in manufacturer's written instructions.

3.3 WIRING INSTALLATION

- A. Comply with NECA 1.
- B. Wiring Method: Comply with Section 26 0519 "Low-Voltage Electrical Power Conductors and Cables." Minimum conduit size is 1/2 inch.
- C. Wiring within Enclosures: Comply with NECA 1. Separate power-limited and nonpower-limited conductors according to conductor manufacturer's written instructions.
- D. Size conductors according to lighting control device manufacturer's written instructions unless otherwise indicated.
- E. Splices, Taps, and Terminations: Make connections only on numbered terminal strips in junction, pull, and outlet boxes; terminal cabinets; and equipment enclosures.

3.4 IDENTIFICATION

- A. Identify components and power and control wiring according to Section 26 0553 "Identification for Electrical Systems."
 - 1. Identify controlled circuits in lighting contactors.
 - 2. Identify circuits or luminaires controlled by photoelectric and occupancy sensors at each sensor.

- B. Label time switches and contactors with a unique designation.

3.5 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Manufacturer's Field Service: Engage a factory-authorized service representative to test and inspect components, assemblies, and equipment installations, including connections.
- B. Perform the following tests and inspections:
 - 1. Operational Test: After installing time switches and sensors, and after electrical circuitry has been energized, start units to confirm proper unit operation.
 - 2. Test and adjust controls and safeties. Replace damaged and malfunctioning controls and equipment.
- C. Lighting control devices will be considered defective if they do not pass tests and inspections.
- D. Prepare test and inspection reports.

3.6 ADJUSTING

- A. Occupancy Adjustments: When requested within 12 months from date of Substantial Completion, provide on-site assistance in adjusting lighting control devices to suit actual occupied conditions. Provide up to two visits to Project during other-than-normal occupancy hours for this purpose.
 - 1. For occupancy and motion sensors, verify operation at outer limits of detector range. Set time delay to suit Owner's operations.
 - 2. For daylighting controls, adjust set points and deadband controls to suit Owner's operations.
 - 3. Align high-bay occupancy sensors using manufacturer's laser aiming tool.

3.7 DEMONSTRATION

- A. Train Owner's maintenance personnel to adjust, operate, and maintain lighting control devices.

END OF SECTION

SECTION 26 2416 - PANELBOARDS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
 - 1. Distribution panelboards.
 - 2. Lighting and appliance branch-circuit panelboards.
 - 3. Load centers.
 - 4. Electronic-grade panelboards.

1.3 DEFINITIONS

- A. ATS: Acceptance testing specification.
- B. GFCI: Ground-fault circuit interrupter.
- C. GFEP: Ground-fault equipment protection.
- D. HID: High-intensity discharge.
- E. MCCB: Molded-case circuit breaker.
- F. SPD: Surge protective device.
- G. VPR: Voltage protection rating.

1.4 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of panelboard.
 - 1. Include materials, switching and overcurrent protective devices, SPDs, accessories, and components indicated.
 - 2. Include dimensions and manufacturers' technical data on features, performance, electrical characteristics, ratings, and finishes.
- B. Shop Drawings: For each panelboard and related equipment.
 - 1. Include dimensioned plans, elevations, sections, and details.

2. Show tabulations of installed devices with nameplates, conductor termination sizes, equipment features, and ratings.
3. Detail enclosure types including mounting and anchorage, environmental protection, knockouts, corner treatments, covers and doors, gaskets, hinges, and locks.
4. Detail bus configuration, current, and voltage ratings.
5. Short-circuit current rating of panelboards and overcurrent protective devices.
6. Include evidence of NRTL listing for SPD as installed in panelboard.
7. Detail features, characteristics, ratings, and factory settings of individual overcurrent protective devices and auxiliary components.
8. Include wiring diagrams for power, signal, and control wiring.
9. Key interlock scheme drawing and sequence of operations.
10. Include time-current coordination curves for each type and rating of overcurrent protective device included in panelboards. Submit on translucent log-log graph paper; include selectable ranges for each type of overcurrent protective device. Include an Internet link for electronic access to downloadable PDF of the coordination curves.

1.5 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Qualification Data: For testing agency.
- B. Panelboard Schedules: For installation in panelboards. Submit final versions after load balancing.

1.6 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

- A. Operation and Maintenance Data: For panelboards and components to include in emergency, operation, and maintenance manuals. In addition to items specified in Section 01 7823 "Operation and Maintenance Data," include the following:
 1. Manufacturer's written instructions for testing and adjusting overcurrent protective devices.
 2. Time-current curves, including selectable ranges for each type of overcurrent protective device that allows adjustments.

1.7 MAINTENANCE MATERIAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Furnish extra materials that match products installed and that are packaged with protective covering for storage and identified with labels describing contents.
 1. Keys: Two spares for each type of panelboard cabinet lock.
 2. Circuit Breakers Including GFCI and GFEP Types: Two spares for each panelboard.
 3. Fuses for Fused Switches: Equal to 10 percent of quantity installed for each size and type, but no fewer than three of each size and type.
 4. Fuses for Fused Power-Circuit Devices: Equal to 10 percent of quantity installed for each size and type, but no fewer than three of each size and type.

1.8 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Manufacturer Qualifications: ISO 9001 or 9002 certified.

1.9 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Remove loose packing and flammable materials from inside panelboards; install temporary electric heating (250 W per panelboard) to prevent condensation.
- B. Handle and prepare panelboards for installation according to NECA 407.

1.10 FIELD CONDITIONS

- A. Environmental Limitations:
 - 1. Do not deliver or install panelboards until spaces are enclosed and weathertight, wet work in spaces is complete and dry, work above panelboards is complete, and temporary HVAC system is operating and maintaining ambient temperature and humidity conditions at occupancy levels during the remainder of the construction period.
 - 2. Rate equipment for continuous operation under the following conditions unless otherwise indicated:
 - a. Ambient Temperature: Not exceeding minus 22 deg F to plus 104 deg F.
 - b. Altitude: Not exceeding 6600 feet.
- B. Service Conditions: NEMA PB 1, usual service conditions, as follows:
 - 1. Ambient temperatures within limits specified.
 - 2. Altitude not exceeding 6600 feet.
- C. Interruption of Existing Electric Service: Do not interrupt electric service to facilities occupied by Owner or others unless permitted under the following conditions and then only after arranging to provide temporary electric service according to requirements indicated:
 - 1. Notify Architect no fewer than two days in advance of proposed interruption of electric service.
 - 2. Do not proceed with interruption of electric service without Owner's written permission.
 - 3. Comply with NFPA 70E.

1.11 WARRANTY

- A. Manufacturer's Warranty: Manufacturer agrees to repair or replace panelboards that fail in materials or workmanship within specified warranty period.
 - 1. Panelboard Warranty Period: 18 months from date of Substantial Completion.

- B. Special Warranty: Manufacturer's standard form in which manufacturer agrees to repair or replace SPD that fails in materials or workmanship within specified warranty period.
 - 1. SPD Warranty Period: Five years from date of Substantial Completion.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 PANELBOARDS AND LOAD CENTERS COMMON REQUIREMENTS

- A. Fabricate and test panelboards according to IEEE 344 to withstand seismic forces defined in Section 26 0548.16 "Seismic Controls for Electrical Systems."
- B. Product Selection for Restricted Space: Drawings indicate maximum dimensions for panelboards including clearances between panelboards and adjacent surfaces and other items. Comply with indicated maximum dimensions.
- C. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.
- D. Comply with NEMA PB 1.
- E. Comply with NFPA 70.
- F. Enclosures: Flush and Surface-mounted, dead-front cabinets.
 - 1. Rated for environmental conditions at installed location.
 - a. Indoor Dry and Clean Locations: NEMA 250, Type 1.
 - b. Outdoor Locations: NEMA 250, Type 3R.
 - c. Kitchen and Wash-Down Areas: NEMA 250, Type 4X, stainless steel.
 - d. Other Wet or Damp Indoor Locations: NEMA 250, Type 4.
 - e. Indoor Locations Subject to Dust, Falling Dirt, and Dripping Noncorrosive Liquids: NEMA 250, Type 12.
 - 2. Height: 84 inches maximum.
 - 3. Front: Secured to box with concealed trim clamps. For surface-mounted fronts, match box dimensions; for flush-mounted fronts, overlap box. Trims shall cover all live parts and shall have no exposed hardware.
 - 4. Hinged Front Cover: Entire front trim hinged to box and with standard door within hinged trim cover. Trims shall cover all live parts and shall have no exposed hardware.
 - 5. Skirt for Surface-Mounted Panelboards: Same gage and finish as panelboard front with flanges for attachment to panelboard, wall, and ceiling or floor.
 - 6. Gutter Extension and Barrier: Same gage and finish as panelboard enclosure; integral with enclosure body. Arrange to isolate individual panel sections.
 - 7. Finishes:
 - a. Panels and Trim: Steel and galvanized steel, factory finished immediately after cleaning and pretreating with manufacturer's standard two-coat, baked-on finish consisting of prime coat and thermosetting topcoat.

- b. Back Boxes: Same finish as panels and trim.
- c. Fungus Proofing: Permanent fungicidal treatment for overcurrent protective devices and other components.

G. Incoming Mains:

- 1. Location: Convertible between top and bottom.
- 2. Main Breaker: Main lug interiors up to 400 amperes shall be field convertible to main breaker.

H. Phase, Neutral, and Ground Buses:

- 1. Material: Hard-drawn copper, 98 percent conductivity.
 - a. Plating shall run entire length of bus.
 - b. Bus shall be fully rated the entire length.
- 2. Interiors shall be factory assembled into a unit. Replacing switching and protective devices shall not disturb adjacent units or require removing the main bus connectors.
- 3. Equipment Ground Bus: Adequate for feeder and branch-circuit equipment grounding conductors; bonded to box.
- 4. Isolated Ground Bus: Adequate for branch-circuit isolated ground conductors; insulated from box.
- 5. Full-Sized Neutral: Equipped with full-capacity bonding strap for service entrance applications. Mount electrically isolated from enclosure. Do not mount neutral bus in gutter.
- 6. Extra-Capacity Neutral Bus: Neutral bus rated 200 percent of phase bus and listed and labeled by an NRTL acceptable to authority having jurisdiction, as suitable for nonlinear loads in electronic-grade panelboards and others designated on Drawings. Connectors shall be sized for double-sized or parallel conductors as indicated on Drawings. Do not mount neutral bus in gutter.
- 7. Split Bus: Vertical buses divided into individual vertical sections.

I. Conductor Connectors: Suitable for use with conductor material and sizes.

- 1. Material: Hard-drawn copper, 98 percent conductivity.
- 2. Terminations shall allow use of 75 deg C rated conductors without derating.
- 3. Size: Lugs suitable for indicated conductor sizes, with additional gutter space, if required, for larger conductors.
- 4. Main and Neutral Lugs: Compression type, with a lug on the neutral bar for each pole in the panelboard.
- 5. Ground Lugs and Bus-Configured Terminators: Mechanical type, with a lug on the bar for each pole in the panelboard.
- 6. Feed-Through Lugs: Mechanical type, suitable for use with conductor material. Locate at opposite end of bus from incoming lugs or main device.
- 7. Subfeed (Double) Lugs: Mechanical type suitable for use with conductor material. Locate at same end of bus as incoming lugs or main device.
- 8. Gutter-Tap Lugs: Mechanical type suitable for use with conductor material and with matching insulating covers. Locate at same end of bus as incoming lugs or main device.
- 9. Extra-Capacity Neutral Lugs: Rated 200 percent of phase lugs mounted on extra-capacity neutral bus.

- J. NRTL Label: Panelboards or load centers shall be labeled by an NRTL acceptable to authority having jurisdiction for use as service equipment with one or more main service disconnecting and overcurrent protective devices. Panelboards or load centers shall have meter enclosures, wiring, connections, and other provisions for utility metering. Coordinate with utility company for exact requirements.
- K. Future Devices: Panelboards or load centers shall have mounting brackets, bus connections, filler plates, and necessary appurtenances required for future installation of devices.
 - 1. Percentage of Future Space Capacity: 20 percent.
- L. Panelboard Short-Circuit Current Rating: Fully rated to interrupt symmetrical short-circuit current available at terminals. Assembly listed by an NRTL for 100 percent interrupting capacity.
 - 1. Panelboards and overcurrent protective devices rated 240 V or less shall have short-circuit ratings as shown on Drawings, but not less than 10,000 A rms symmetrical.
 - 2. Panelboards and overcurrent protective devices rated above 240 V and less than 600 V shall have short-circuit ratings as shown on Drawings, but not less than 14,000 A rms symmetrical.

2.2 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Seismic Performance: Panelboards shall withstand the effects of earthquake motions determined according to ASCE/SEI 7.
 - 1. The term "withstand" means "the unit will remain in place without separation of any parts from the device when subjected to the seismic forces specified."
- B. Surge Suppression: Factory installed as an integral part of indicated panelboards, complying with UL 1449 SPD Type 1.

2.3 POWER PANELBOARDS

- A. Panelboards: NEMA PB 1, distribution type.
- B. Doors: Secured with vault-type latch with tumbler lock; keyed alike.
 - 1. For doors more than 36 inches high, provide two latches, keyed alike.
- C. Mains: Circuit breaker.
- D. Branch Overcurrent Protective Devices for Circuit-Breaker Frame Sizes 125 A and Smaller: Bolt-on circuit breakers.
- E. Branch Overcurrent Protective Devices for Circuit-Breaker Frame Sizes Larger Than 125 A: Bolt-on circuit breakers.
- F. Branch Overcurrent Protective Devices: Fused switches.

2.4 LIGHTING AND APPLIANCE BRANCH-CIRCUIT PANELBOARDS

- A. Panelboards: NEMA PB 1, lighting and appliance branch-circuit type.
- B. Mains: Circuit breaker.
- C. Branch Overcurrent Protective Devices: Bolt-on circuit breakers, replaceable without disturbing adjacent units.
- D. Doors: Concealed hinges; secured with flush latch with tumbler lock; keyed alike.
- E. Doors: Door-in-door construction with concealed hinges; secured with multipoint latch with tumbler lock; keyed alike. Outer door shall permit full access to the panel interior. Inner door shall permit access to breaker operating handles and labeling, but current carrying terminals and bus shall remain concealed.

2.5 LOAD CENTERS

- A. Load Centers: Comply with UL 67.
- B. Mains: Circuit breaker.
- C. Branch Overcurrent Protective Devices: Plug-in circuit breakers, replaceable without disturbing adjacent units.
- D. Doors: Concealed hinges secured with flush latch with tumbler lock; keyed alike.
- E. Conductor Connectors: Mechanical type for main, neutral, and ground lugs and buses.

2.6 PANELBOARDS SERVING GAMES AND DATA CENTER LOADS

- A. Panelboards: NEMA PB 1; with factory-installed, integral SPD; labeled by an NRTL for compliance with UL 67 and UL 1449 after installing SPD.
- B. Doors: Secured with vault-type latch with tumbler lock; keyed alike.
- C. Main Overcurrent Protective Devices: Bolt-on thermal-magnetic circuit breakers.
- D. Branch Overcurrent Protective Devices: Bolt-on thermal-magnetic circuit breakers.
- E. SPD.
 - 1. Peak Surge Current Rating: The minimum single-pulse surge current withstand rating per phase shall not be less than 100 kA. The peak surge current rating shall be the arithmetic sum of the ratings of the individual MOVs in a given mode.
 - 2. Protection modes and UL 1449 VPR for grounded wye circuits with 480Y/277 V or 208Y/120 V, three-phase, four-wire circuits shall not exceed the following:
 - a. Line to Neutral: 1200 V for 480Y/277 V or 700 V for 208Y/120 V.
 - b. Line to Ground: 1200 V for 480Y/277 V or 700 V for 208Y/120 V.
 - c. Neutral to Ground: 1200 V for 480Y/277 or V 700 V for 208Y/120 V.

- d. Line to Line: 2000 V for 480Y/277 V or 1200 V for 208Y/120 V.
 3. Protection modes and UL 1449 VPR for 240/120-V, single-phase, three-wire circuits shall not exceed the following:
 - a. Line to Neutral: 700 V.
 - b. Line to Ground: 700 V.
 - c. Neutral to Ground: 700 V.
 - d. Line to Line: 1200 V.
 4. SCCR: Equal to the SCCR of the panelboard in which installed or exceed 100 kA.
 5. Nominal Rating: 20 kA.
- F. Buses:
1. Copper phase and neutral buses; 200 percent capacity neutral bus and lugs.
 2. Copper equipment and isolated ground buses.

2.7 DISCONNECTING AND OVERCURRENT PROTECTIVE DEVICES

- A. MCCB: Comply with UL 489, with interrupting capacity to meet available fault currents.
1. Thermal-Magnetic Circuit Breakers:
 - a. Inverse time-current element for low-level overloads.
 - b. Instantaneous magnetic trip element for short circuits.
 - c. Adjustable magnetic trip setting for circuit-breaker frame sizes 250 A and larger.
 2. Adjustable Instantaneous-Trip Circuit Breakers: Magnetic trip element with front-mounted, field-adjustable trip setting.
 3. Electronic Trip Circuit Breakers:
 - a. RMS sensing.
 - b. Field-replaceable rating plug or electronic trip.
 - c. Digital display of settings, trip targets, and indicated metering displays.
 - d. Multi-button keypad to access programmable functions and monitored data.
 - e. Ten-event, trip-history log. Each trip event shall be recorded with type, phase, and magnitude of fault that caused the trip.
 - f. Integral test jack for connection to portable test set or laptop computer.
 - g. Field-Adjustable Settings:
 - 1) Instantaneous trip.
 - 2) Long- and short-time pickup levels.
 - 3) Long and short time adjustments.
 - 4) Ground-fault pickup level, time delay, and I squared T response.
 4. Current-Limiting Circuit Breakers: Frame sizes 400 A and smaller; let-through ratings less than NEMA FU 1, RK-5.
 5. GFCI Circuit Breakers: Single- and double-pole configurations with Class A ground-fault protection (6-mA trip).

6. GFEP Circuit Breakers: Class B ground-fault protection (30-mA trip).
 7. Arc-Fault Circuit Interrupter Circuit Breakers: Comply with UL 1699; 120/240-V, single-pole configuration.
 8. Subfeed Circuit Breakers: Vertically mounted.
 9. MCCB Features and Accessories:
 - a. Standard frame sizes, trip ratings, and number of poles.
 - b. Breaker handle indicates tripped status.
 - c. UL listed for reverse connection without restrictive line or load ratings.
 - d. Lugs: Mechanical style, suitable for number, size, trip ratings, and conductor materials.
 - e. Application Listing: Appropriate for application; Type SWD for switching fluorescent lighting loads; Type HID for feeding fluorescent and HID lighting circuits.
 - f. Ground-Fault Protection: Integrally mounted relay and trip unit with adjustable pickup and time-delay settings, push-to-test feature, and ground-fault indicator.
 - g. Shunt Trip: 120-V trip coil energized from separate circuit, set to trip at 75 percent of rated voltage.
 - h. Undervoltage Trip: Set to operate at 35 to 75 percent of rated voltage with field-adjustable 0.1- to 0.6-second time delay.
 - i. Rating Plugs: Three-pole breakers with ampere ratings greater than 150 amperes shall have interchangeable rating plugs or electronic adjustable trip units.
 - j. Alarm Switch: Single-pole, normally open contact that actuates only when circuit breaker trips.
 - k. Key Interlock Kit: Externally mounted to prohibit circuit-breaker operation; key shall be removable only when circuit breaker is in off position.
 - l. Handle Padlocking Device: Fixed attachment, for locking circuit-breaker handle in on or off position.
 - m. Handle Clamp: Loose attachment, for holding circuit-breaker handle in on position.
- B. Fused Switch: NEMA KS 1, Type HD; clips to accommodate specified fuses; lockable handle.
1. Fuses and Spare-Fuse Cabinet: Comply with requirements specified in Section 26 2813 "Fuses."
 2. Fused Switch Features and Accessories:
 - a. Standard ampere ratings and number of poles.
 - b. Mechanical cover interlock with a manual interlock override, to prevent the opening of the cover when the switch is in the on position. The interlock shall prevent the switch from being turned on with the cover open. The operating handle shall have lock-off means with provisions for three padlocks.

2.8 IDENTIFICATION

- A. Panelboard Label: Manufacturer's name and trademark, voltage, amperage, number of phases, and number of poles shall be located on the interior of the panelboard door.

- B. Breaker Labels: Faceplate shall list current rating, UL and IEC certification standards, and AIC rating.
- C. Circuit Directory: Directory card inside panelboard door, mounted in transparent card holder.
 - 1. Circuit directory shall identify specific purpose with detail sufficient to distinguish it from all other circuits.
- D. Circuit Directory: Computer-generated circuit directory mounted inside panelboard door with transparent plastic protective cover.
 - 1. Circuit directory shall identify specific purpose with detail sufficient to distinguish it from all other circuits.

2.9 ACCESSORY COMPONENTS AND FEATURES

- A. Accessory Set: Include tools and miscellaneous items required for overcurrent protective device test, inspection, maintenance, and operation.
- B. Portable Test Set: For testing functions of solid-state trip devices without removing from panelboard. Include relay and meter test plugs suitable for testing panelboard meters and switchboard class relays.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Verify actual conditions with field measurements prior to ordering panelboards to verify that equipment fits in allocated space in, and comply with, minimum required clearances specified in NFPA 70.
- B. Receive, inspect, handle, and store panelboards according to NECA 407.
- C. Examine panelboards before installation. Reject panelboards that are damaged, rusted, or have been subjected to water saturation.
- D. Examine elements and surfaces to receive panelboards for compliance with installation tolerances and other conditions affecting performance of the Work.
- E. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.2 INSTALLATION

- A. Coordinate layout and installation of panelboards and components with other construction that penetrates walls or is supported by them, including electrical and other types of equipment, raceways, piping, encumbrances to workspace clearance requirements, and adjacent surfaces. Maintain required workspace clearances and required clearances for equipment access doors and panels.

- B. Comply with NECA 1.
- C. Install panelboards and accessories according to NECA 407.
- D. Equipment Mounting:
 - 1. Install panelboards on cast-in-place concrete equipment base(s). Comply with requirements for equipment bases and foundations specified in Section 03 3000 "Cast-in-Place Concrete."
 - 2. Attach panelboard to the vertical finished or structural surface behind the panelboard.
 - 3. Comply with requirements for seismic control devices specified in Section 26 0548.16 "Seismic Controls for Electrical Systems."
- E. Temporary Lifting Provisions: Remove temporary lifting eyes, channels, and brackets and temporary blocking of moving parts from panelboards.
- F. Comply with mounting and anchoring requirements specified in Section 26 0548.16 "Seismic Controls for Electrical Systems."
- G. Mount top of trim 90 inches above finished floor unless otherwise indicated.
- H. Mount panelboard cabinet plumb and rigid without distortion of box.
- I. Mount recessed panelboards with fronts uniformly flush with wall finish and mating with back box.
- J. Mount surface-mounted panelboards to steel slotted supports 5/8 inch in depth. Orient steel slotted supports vertically.
- K. Install overcurrent protective devices and controllers not already factory installed.
 - 1. Set field-adjustable, circuit-breaker trip ranges.
 - 2. Tighten bolted connections and circuit breaker connections using calibrated torque wrench or torque screwdriver per manufacturer's written instructions.
- L. Make grounding connections and bond neutral for services and separately derived systems to ground. Make connections to grounding electrodes, separate grounds for isolated ground bars, and connections to separate ground bars.
- M. Install filler plates in unused spaces.
- N. Stub four 1-inch empty conduits from panelboard into accessible ceiling space or space designated to be ceiling space in the future. Stub four 1-inch empty conduits into raised floor space or below slab not on grade.
- O. Arrange conductors in gutters into groups and bundle and wrap with wire ties after completing load balancing.
- P. Mount spare fuse cabinet in accessible location.

3.3 IDENTIFICATION

- A. Identify field-installed conductors, interconnecting wiring, and components; install warning signs complying with requirements in Section 26 0553 "Identification for Electrical Systems."
- B. Create a directory to indicate installed circuit loads after balancing panelboard loads; incorporate Owner's final room designations. Obtain approval before installing. Handwritten directories are not acceptable. Install directory inside panelboard door.
- C. Panelboard Nameplates: Label each panelboard with a nameplate complying with requirements for identification specified in Section 26 0553 "Identification for Electrical Systems."
- D. Device Nameplates: Label each branch circuit device in power panelboards with a nameplate complying with requirements for identification specified in Section 26 0553 "Identification for Electrical Systems."
- E. Install warning signs complying with requirements in Section 26 0553 "Identification for Electrical Systems" identifying source of remote circuit.

3.4 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Manufacturer's Field Service: Engage a factory-authorized service representative to inspect, test, and adjust components, assemblies, and equipment installations, including connections.
- B. Perform tests and inspections.
 - 1. Manufacturer's Field Service: Engage a factory-authorized service representative to inspect components, assemblies, and equipment installations, including connections, and to assist in testing.
- C. Acceptance Testing Preparation:
 - 1. Test insulation resistance for each panelboard bus, component, connecting supply, feeder, and control circuit.
 - 2. Test continuity of each circuit.
- D. Tests and Inspections:
 - 1. Perform each visual and mechanical inspection and electrical test for low-voltage air circuit breakers and low-voltage surge arrestors stated in NETA ATS, Paragraph 7.6 Circuit Breakers. Perform optional tests. Certify compliance with test parameters.
 - 2. Correct malfunctioning units on-site, where possible, and retest to demonstrate compliance; otherwise, replace with new units and retest.
 - 3. Perform the following infrared scan tests and inspections and prepare reports:
 - a. Initial Infrared Scanning: After Substantial Completion, but not more than 60 days after Final Acceptance, perform an infrared scan of each

panelboard. Remove front panels so joints and connections are accessible to portable scanner.

- b. Follow-up Infrared Scanning: Perform an additional follow-up infrared scan of each panelboard 11 months after date of Substantial Completion.
- c. Instruments and Equipment:
 - 1) Use an infrared scanning device designed to measure temperature or to detect significant deviations from normal values. Provide calibration record for device.

- E. Panelboards will be considered defective if they do not pass tests and inspections.
- F. Prepare test and inspection reports, including a certified report that identifies panelboards included and that describes scanning results, with comparisons of the two scans. Include notation of deficiencies detected, remedial action taken, and observations after remedial action.

3.5 ADJUSTING

- A. Adjust moving parts and operable components to function smoothly, and lubricate as recommended by manufacturer.
- B. Set field-adjustable circuit-breaker trip ranges as specified in Section 26 0573 "Overcurrent Protective Device Coordination Study."
- C. Load Balancing: After Substantial Completion, but not more than 60 days after Final Acceptance, measure load balancing and make circuit changes. Prior to making circuit changes to achieve load balancing, inform Architect of effect on phase color coding.
 - 1. Measure loads during period of normal facility operations.
 - 2. Perform circuit changes to achieve load balancing outside normal facility operation schedule or at times directed by the Architect. Avoid disrupting services such as fax machines and on-line data processing, computing, transmitting, and receiving equipment.
 - 3. After changing circuits to achieve load balancing, recheck loads during normal facility operations. Record load readings before and after changing circuits to achieve load balancing.
 - 4. Tolerance: Maximum difference between phase loads, within a panelboard, shall not exceed 20 percent.

3.6 PROTECTION

- A. Temporary Heating: Prior to energizing panelboards, apply temporary heat to maintain temperature according to manufacturer's written instructions.

END OF SECTION

SECTION 26 2713 - ELECTRICITY METERING

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section includes work to accommodate utility company revenue meters, and Owner's electricity meters used to manage the electrical power system.

1.3 DEFINITIONS

- A. KY or KYZ Pulse: Term used by the metering industry to describe a method of measuring consumption of electricity (kWh) that is based on a relay opening and closing in response to the rotation of the disk in the meter. Electronic meters generate pulses electronically.

1.4 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data:
 - 1. For each type of meter.
 - 2. For metering infrastructure components.
- B. Shop Drawings: For electricity-metering equipment.
 - 1. Include elevation views of front panels of control and indicating devices and control stations.
 - 2. Include diagrams for power, signal, and control wiring.
 - 3. Wire Termination Diagrams and Schedules: Include diagrams for power, signal, and control wiring. Identify terminals and wiring designations and color-codes to facilitate installation, operation, and maintenance. Indicate recommended types, wire sizes, and circuiting arrangements for field-installed wiring, and show circuit protection features. Differentiate between manufacturer-installed and field-installed wiring.
 - 4. Include series-combination rating data for modular meter centers with main disconnect device.

1.5 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Qualification Data: For testing agency.

- B. Field quality-control reports.
- C. Sample Warranty: For special warranty.

1.6 FIELD CONDITIONS

- A. Interruption of Existing Electrical Service: Do not interrupt electrical service to facilities occupied by Owner or others unless permitted under the following conditions and then only after arranging to provide temporary electrical service according to requirements indicated:
 - 1. Architect shall be notified and issued written permission no fewer than two days in advance of proposed interruption of electrical service.

1.7 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Testing Agency Qualifications: An NRTL.

1.8 WARRANTY

- A. Special Warranty: Manufacturer agrees to repair or replace components of metering equipment that fail in materials or workmanship within specified warranty period.
 - 1. Failures include, but are not limited to, the following:
 - a. Damage from transient voltage surges.
 - 2. Warranty Period: Cost to repair or replace any parts for two years from date of Substantial Completion.
 - 3. Extended Warranty Period: Cost of replacement parts (materials only, f.o.b. the nearest shipping point to Project site), for eight years, that failed in service due to transient voltage surges.

1.9 COORDINATION

- A. Electrical Service Connections:
 - 1. Coordinate with utility companies and utility-furnished components.
 - a. Comply with requirements of utility providing electrical power services.
 - b. Coordinate installation and connection of utilities and services, including provision for electricity-metering components.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 SYSTEM DESCRIPTION

- A. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.
- B. Comply with UL 916.

2.2 UTILITY METERING INFRASTRUCTURE

- A. Install metering accessories furnished by the utility company, complying with its requirements.
- B. Utility-Furnished Meters: Connect data transmission facility of metering equipment installed by the Utility.
 - 1. Data Transmission: Transmit pulse data over control-circuit conductors, classified as Class 1 per NFPA 70, Article 725.
- C. Current-Transformer Cabinets: Comply with requirements of electrical-power utility company.
- D. Meter Sockets:
 - 1. Comply with requirements of electrical-power utility company.
 - 2. Meter Sockets: Steady-state and short-circuit current ratings shall meet indicated circuit ratings.
- E. Modular Meter Center: Factory-coordinated assembly of a main service disconnect device, wireways, meter socket modules, and feeder circuit breakers arranged in adjacent vertical sections complete with interconnecting buses.
 - 1. Comply with requirements of utility company for meter center.
 - a. Comply with UL 67.
 - 2. Housing: NEMA 250, Type 3R enclosure.
 - 3. Meter Socket Rating: Coordinated with connected feeder circuit rating.
 - 4. Minimum Short-Circuit Rating: 65,000 A symmetrical at rated voltage.
 - 5. Steady-state and short-circuit current ratings shall have ratings that match connected circuit ratings.
 - 6. Main Disconnect Device: Circuit breaker, series-combination rated for use with downstream feeder and branch circuit breakers and having an adjustable magnetic trip setting for circuit-breaker frame sizes of 250 A and larger. Comply with requirements in Section 26 2816 "Enclosed Switches and Circuit Breakers." Circuit breakers shall be operable from outside the enclosure to disconnect the unit. Configure cover so it can be opened only when the disconnect switch is open.

7. Feeder Circuit Breakers: Series-combination-rated molded-case units, rated to protect downstream circuit breakers and to house load centers and panelboards that have 10,000-A interrupting capacity.
 - a. Identification: Complying with requirements in Section 26 0553 "Identification for Electrical Systems."
 - b. Physical Protection: Tamper resistant, with hasp for padlock.
8. Surge Protection for Main Disconnect: Factory installed, integrally mounted, UL 1449 Type 1. Comply with Section 26 4313 "Surge Protection for Low-Voltage Electrical Power Circuits."

F. Arc-Flash Warning Labels;

1. Labels: Comply with requirements for "Arc-Flash Warning Labels" in Section 26 0574 "Overcurrent Protective Device Arc-Flash Study." Apply a 3-1/2-by-5-inch thermal transfer label of high-adhesion polyester for each work location included in the analysis.
 - a. The label shall have an orange header with the wording, "WARNING, ARC-FLASH HAZARD," and shall include the following information taken directly from the arc-flash hazard analysis:
 - 1) Location designation.
 - 2) Nominal voltage.
 - 3) Flash protection boundary.
 - 4) Hazard risk category.
 - 5) Incident energy.
 - 6) Working distance.
 - 7) Engineering report number, revision number, and issue date.

2.3 ELECTRICITY METERS

- A. System Description: Able to meter designated activity loads, with or without external alarm, control, and communication capabilities, or other optional features.
 1. Comply with ANSI C12.1 and ANSI C12.20, 0.2 accuracy class.
 2. Ambient Temperature: Minus 22 deg F to plus 158 deg F.
 3. Humidity: Zero to 95 percent, noncondensing.
- B. General Requirements for Meters:
 1. Certify that meters comply with ANSI C12.20 requirements by a laboratory accredited by the National Voluntary Laboratory Accreditation Program (NVLAP) of the National Institute of Standards and Technology (NIST). The laboratory shall use test equipment that is certified annually and is traceable to NIST standards.
 2. Enclosure: Supplied by meter manufacturer, NEMA 250, Type 3R minimum, with provisions for locking or sealing.
 3. Identification: Comply with requirements in Section 26 0553 "Identification for Electrical Systems."
 - a. Type: Split core, complying with recommendation of meter manufacturer.

- C. kWh Meter: Electronic single-phase and three-phase meters, measuring electricity use.
 - 1. Voltage and Phase Configuration: Meter shall be designed for use on circuits with voltage rating and phase configuration indicated for its application.
- D. Current-Transformer Cabinet: Size and configuration as recommended by metering equipment manufacturer for use with indicated connected feeder and sensors.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 INSTALLATION

- A. Comply with equipment installation requirements in NECA 1.
- B. Install meters furnished by utility company. Install raceways and equipment according to utility company's written instructions. Provide empty conduits for metering leads and extend grounding connections as required by utility company.
- C. Install modular meter center according to switchboard installation requirements in NECA 400.
- D. Install arc-flash labels as required by NFPA 70.
- E. Wiring Method:
 - 1. Comply with requirements in Section 26 0519 "Low-Voltage Electrical Power Conductors and Cables."
 - 2. Minimum conduit size shall be 1-1/4 inch.

3.2 IDENTIFICATION

- A. Comply with requirements for identification specified in Section 26 0553 "Identification for Electrical Systems."
 - 1. Series Combination Warning Label: Self-adhesive labels, with text as required by NFPA 70.
 - 2. Equipment Identification Labels: Self-adhesive labels with clear protective overlay. For residential meters, provide an additional card holder suitable for printed, weather-resistant card with occupant's name.

END OF SECTION

SECTION 26 2726 - WIRING DEVICES

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:

1. Straight-blade convenience, hospital-grade, isolated-ground, and tamper-resistant receptacles.
2. USB charger devices.
3. GFCI receptacles.
4. SPD receptacles.
5. Hazardous (classified) location receptacles.
6. Twist-locking receptacles.
7. Pendant cord-connector devices.
8. Cord and plug sets.
9. Toggle switches.
10. Decorator-style convenience.
11. Wall switch sensor light switches with dual technology sensors.
12. Wall switch sensor light switches with passive infrared sensors.
13. Wall switch sensor light switches with ultrasonic sensors.
14. Digital timer light switches.
15. Residential devices.
16. Wall-box dimmers.
17. Wall plates.
18. Floor service outlets.
19. Poke-through assemblies.
20. Prefabricated multioutlet assemblies.
21. Service poles.

1.3 DEFINITIONS

- A. Abbreviations of Manufacturers' Names:

1. Cooper: Cooper Wiring Devices; Division of Cooper Industries, Inc.
2. Hubbell: Hubbell Incorporated: Wiring Devices-Kellems.
3. Leviton: Leviton Mfg. Company, Inc.
4. Pass & Seymour: Pass& Seymour/Legrand.

- B. BAS: Building automation system.

- C. EMI: Electromagnetic interference.

- D. GFCI: Ground-fault circuit interrupter.
- E. Pigtail: Short lead used to connect a device to a branch-circuit conductor.
- F. RFI: Radio-frequency interference.
- G. SPD: Surge protective device.
- H. UTP: Unshielded twisted pair.

1.4 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product.
- B. Shop Drawings: List of legends and description of materials and process used for premarking wall plates.
- C. Samples: One for each type of device and wall plate specified, in each color specified.

1.5 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Field quality-control reports.

1.6 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

- A. Operation and Maintenance Data: For wiring devices to include in all manufacturers' packing-label warnings and instruction manuals that include labeling conditions.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 GENERAL WIRING-DEVICE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Wiring Devices, Components, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.
- B. Comply with NFPA 70.
- C. Devices that are manufactured for use with modular plug-in connectors may be substituted under the following conditions:
 - 1. Connectors shall comply with UL 2459 and shall be made with stranding building wire.
 - 2. Devices shall comply with the requirements in this Section.
- D. Devices for Owner-Furnished Equipment:
 - 1. Receptacles: Match plug configurations.

2. Cord and Plug Sets: Match equipment requirements.

E. Source Limitations: Obtain each type of wiring device and associated wall plate from single source from single manufacturer.

2.2 STRAIGHT-BLADE RECEPTACLES

A. Duplex Convenience Receptacles: 125 V, 20 A; comply with NEMA WD 1, NEMA WD 6 Configuration 5-20R, UL 498, and FS W-C-596.

B. Isolated-Ground, Duplex Convenience Receptacles: 125 V, 20 A; comply with NEMA WD 1, NEMA WD 6 Configuration 5-20R, UL 498, and FS W-C-596.

1. Description: Straight blade; equipment grounding contacts shall be connected only to the green grounding screw terminal of the device and with inherent electrical isolation from mounting strap. Isolation shall be integral to receptacle construction and not dependent on removable parts.

C. Tamper-Resistant Convenience Receptacles: 125 V, 20 A; comply with NEMA WD 1, NEMA WD 6 Configuration 5-20R, UL 498, and FS W-C-596.

1. Description: Labeled and complying with NFPA 70, "Health Care Facilities" Article, "Pediatric Locations" Section.

2.3 USB CHARGER DEVICES

A. Tamper-Resistant, USB Charger Receptacles: 12 V dc, 2.0 A, USB Type A; comply with NEMA WD 1, NEMA WD 6 Configuration 5-20R, UL 498, UL 1310, and FS W-C-596.

1. Description: Single-piece, rivetless, nickel-plated, all-brass grounding system. Nickel-plated, brass mounting strap.

2. USB Receptacles: Quad, Type A.

3. Line Voltage Receptacles: Dual, two pole, three wire, and self-grounding.

2.4 GFCI RECEPTACLES

A. General Description:

1. 125 V, 20 A, straight blade, feed-through type.

2. Comply with NEMA WD 1, NEMA WD 6 Configuration 5-20R, UL 498, UL 943 Class A, and FS W-C-596.

3. Include indicator light that shows when the GFCI has malfunctioned and no longer provides proper GFCI protection.

B. Duplex GFCI Convenience Receptacles:

1. All 15A and 20A, 125V and 250V non-locking receptacles shall be listed as "Weather Resistant" type in Damp and wet locations.

C. Tamper-Resistant, Duplex GFCI Convenience Receptacles:

2.5 SPD RECEPTACLES

- A. General Description: Comply with NEMA WD 1, NEMA WD 6 Configuration 5-20R, UL 498, UL 1449, and FS W-C-596, with integral SPD in line to ground, line to neutral, and neutral to ground.
 - 1. 125 V, 20 A, straight-blade type.
 - 2. SPD Components: Multiple metal-oxide varistors; with a nominal clamp-level rating of 400 V and minimum single transient pulse energy dissipation of 240 J, according to IEEE C62.41.2 and IEEE C62.45.
 - 3. Active SPD Indication: Visual and audible, with light visible in face of device to indicate device is "active" or "no longer in service."
- B. Duplex SPD Convenience Receptacles:
- C. Isolated-Ground, Duplex SPD Convenience Receptacles:
 - 1. Grounding: Equipment grounding contacts shall be connected only to the green grounding screw terminal of the device and with inherent electrical isolation from mounting strap. Isolation shall be integral to receptacle construction and not dependent on removable parts.

2.6 HAZARDOUS (CLASSIFIED) LOCATION RECEPTACLES

- A. Hazardous (Classified) Locations Receptacles: Comply with NEMA FB 11 and UL 1010.

2.7 TWIST-LOCKING RECEPTACLES

- A. Twist-Lock, Single Convenience Receptacles: 125 V, 20 A; comply with NEMA WD 1, NEMA WD 6 Configuration L5-20R, and UL 498.
- B. Twist-Lock, Isolated-Ground, Single Convenience Receptacles: 125 V, 20 A; comply with NEMA WD 1, NEMA WD 6 Configuration L5-20R, and UL 498.
 - 1. Grounding: Equipment grounding contacts shall be connected only to the green grounding screw terminal of the device and with inherent electrical isolation from mounting strap. Isolation shall be integral to receptacle construction and not dependent on removable parts.

2.8 PENDANT CORD-CONNECTOR DEVICES

- A. Description:
 - 1. Matching, locking-type plug and receptacle body connector.
 - 2. NEMA WD 6 Configurations L5-20P and L5-20R, heavy-duty grade, and FS W-C-596.
 - 3. Body: Nylon, with screw-open, cable-gripping jaws and provision for attaching external cable grip.
 - 4. External Cable Grip: Woven wire-mesh type made of high-strength, galvanized-steel wire strand, matched to cable diameter, and with attachment provision designed for corresponding connector.

2.9 CORD AND PLUG SETS

A. Description:

1. Match voltage and current ratings and number of conductors to requirements of equipment being connected.
2. Cord: Rubber-insulated, stranded-copper conductors, with Type SOW-A jacket; with green-insulated grounding conductor and ampacity of at least 130 percent of the equipment rating.
3. Plug: Nylon body and integral cable-clamping jaws. Match cord and receptacle type for connection.

2.10 TOGGLE SWITCHES

A. Comply with NEMA WD 1, UL 20, and FS W-S-896.

B. Switches, 120/277 V, 20 A:

C. Key-Operated Switches: 120/277 V, 20 A.

1. Description: Single pole, with factory-supplied key in lieu of switch handle.

D. Single-Pole, Double-Throw, Momentary-Contact, Center-off Switches: 120/277 V, 20 A; for use with mechanically held lighting contactors.

E. Key-Operated, Single-Pole, Double-Throw, Momentary-Contact, Center-off Switches: 120/277 V, 20 A; for use with mechanically held lighting contactors, with factory-supplied key in lieu of switch handle.

2.11 WALL-BOX DIMMERS

A. Dimmer Switches: Modular, full-wave, solid-state units with integral, quiet on-off switches, with audible frequency and EMI/RFI suppression filters.

B. Control: Continuously adjustable slider; with single-pole or three-way switching. Comply with UL 1472.

C. Incandescent Lamp Dimmers: 120 V; control shall follow square-law dimming curve. On-off switch positions shall bypass dimmer module.

1. 600 W; dimmers shall require no derating when ganged with other devices. Illuminated when "off."

D. Fluorescent Lamp Dimmer Switches: Modular; compatible with dimmer ballasts; trim potentiometer to adjust low-end dimming; dimmer-ballast combination capable of consistent dimming with low end not greater than 20 percent of full brightness.

E. LED Lamp Dimmer Switches: Modular; compatible with LED lamps; trim potentiometer to adjust low-end dimming; capable of consistent dimming with low end not greater than 20 percent of full brightness.

2.12 WALL PLATES

- A. Single and combination types shall match corresponding wiring devices.
 - 1. Plate-Securing Screws: Metal with head color to match plate finish.
 - 2. Color determined by architect.
 - 3. Material for Finished Spaces: 0.035-inch- thick, satin-finished, Type 302 stainless steel.
 - 4. Material for Unfinished Spaces: Galvanized steel.
 - 5. Material for Damp Locations: Thermoplastic with spring-loaded lift cover, and listed and labeled for use in wet and damp locations.
- B. Wet-Location, Weatherproof Cover Plates: NEMA 250, complying with Type 3R, weather-resistant, die-cast aluminum with lockable cover.

2.13 POKE-THROUGH ASSEMBLIES

- A. Description:
 - 1. Factory-fabricated and -wired assembly of below-floor junction box with multichanneled, through-floor raceway/firestop unit and detachable matching floor service-outlet assembly.
 - 2. Comply with UL 514 scrub water exclusion requirements.
 - 3. Service-Outlet Assembly: Flush type with four simplex receptacles and space for four RJ-45 jacks
 - 4. Size: Selected to fit nominal 4-inch cored holes in floor and matched to floor thickness.
 - 5. Fire Rating: Unit is listed and labeled for fire rating of floor-ceiling assembly.
 - 6. Closure Plug: Arranged to close unused 4-inch cored openings and reestablish fire rating of floor.
 - 7. Wiring Raceways and Compartments: For a minimum of four No. 12 AWG conductors and a minimum of four, four-pair cables

2.14 WALL MOUNTED TV LOCATIONS

- A. Where wall mounted TVs are indication in the plans provide the following:
 - 1. All-in-one power and AV recessed box similar to Legrand Evolution Series.
 - 2. Box shall include one duplex outlet, one coax cable, and one CAT6 cable.
 - 3. Provide all accessories for a complete finish.
 - 4. Boxes shall have a white finish

2.15 FINISHES

- A. Device Color:

1. Wiring Devices Connected to Normal Power System: As selected by Architect unless otherwise indicated or required by NFPA 70 or device listing.
 2. Wiring Devices Connected to Emergency Power System: Red.
 3. SPD Devices: Blue.
 4. Isolated-Ground Receptacles: Orange.
- B. Wall Plate Color: For plastic covers, match device color.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 INSTALLATION

- A. Comply with NECA 1, including mounting heights listed in that standard, unless otherwise indicated.
- B. Coordination with Other Trades:
1. Protect installed devices and their boxes. Do not place wall finish materials over device boxes and do not cut holes for boxes with routers that are guided by riding against outside of boxes.
 2. Keep outlet boxes free of plaster, drywall joint compound, mortar, cement, concrete, dust, paint, and other material that may contaminate the raceway system, conductors, and cables.
 3. Install device boxes in brick or block walls so that the cover plate does not cross a joint unless the joint is troweled flush with the face of the wall.
 4. Install wiring devices after all wall preparation, including painting, is complete.
- C. Conductors:
1. Do not strip insulation from conductors until right before they are spliced or terminated on devices.
 2. Strip insulation evenly around the conductor using tools designed for the purpose. Avoid scoring or nicking of solid wire or cutting strands from stranded wire.
 3. The length of free conductors at outlets for devices shall meet provisions of NFPA 70, Article 300, without pigtailed.
 4. Existing Conductors:
 - a. Cut back and pigtail, or replace all damaged conductors.
 - b. Straighten conductors that remain and remove corrosion and foreign matter.
 - c. Pigtailed existing conductors is permitted, provided the outlet box is large enough.
- D. Device Installation:
1. Replace devices that have been in temporary use during construction and that were installed before building finishing operations were complete.
 2. Keep each wiring device in its package or otherwise protected until it is time to connect conductors.
 3. Do not remove surface protection, such as plastic film and smudge covers, until the last possible moment.

4. Connect devices to branch circuits using pigtails that are not less than 6 inches in length.
 5. When there is a choice, use side wiring with binding-head screw terminals. Wrap solid conductor tightly clockwise, two-thirds to three-fourths of the way around terminal screw.
 6. Use a torque screwdriver when a torque is recommended or required by manufacturer.
 7. When conductors larger than No. 12 AWG are installed on 15- or 20-A circuits, splice No. 12 AWG pigtails for device connections.
 8. Tighten unused terminal screws on the device.
 9. When mounting into metal boxes, remove the fiber or plastic washers used to hold device-mounting screws in yokes, allowing metal-to-metal contact.
- E. Receptacle Orientation:
1. Install ground pin of vertically mounted receptacles down, and on horizontally mounted receptacles to the right.
- F. Device Plates: Do not use oversized or extra-deep plates. Repair wall finishes and remount outlet boxes when standard device plates do not fit flush or do not cover rough wall opening.
- G. Dimmers:
1. Install dimmers within terms of their listing.
 2. Verify that dimmers used for fan-speed control are listed for that application.
 3. Install unshared neutral conductors on line and load side of dimmers according to manufacturers' device listing conditions in the written instructions.
- H. Arrangement of Devices: Unless otherwise indicated, mount flush, with long dimension vertical and with grounding terminal of receptacles on top. Group adjacent switches under single, multigang wall plates.
- I. Adjust locations of floor service outlets and service poles to suit arrangement of partitions and furnishings.
- 3.2 GFCI RECEPTACLES
- A. Install non-feed-through-type GFCI receptacles where protection of downstream receptacles is not required.
- 3.3 IDENTIFICATION
- A. Comply with Section 26 0553 "Identification for Electrical Systems."
- B. Identify each receptacle with panelboard identification and circuit number. Use hot, stamped, or engraved machine printing with black-filled lettering on face of plate, and durable wire markers or tags inside outlet boxes.

3.4 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Test Instruments: Use instruments that comply with UL 1436.
- B. Test Instrument for Convenience Receptacles: Digital wiring analyzer with digital readout or illuminated digital-display indicators of measurement.
- C. Perform the following tests and inspections:
 - 1. In healthcare facilities, prepare reports that comply with recommendations in NFPA 99.
 - 2. Test Instruments: Use instruments that comply with UL 1436.
 - 3. Test Instrument for Convenience Receptacles: Digital wiring analyzer with digital readout or illuminated digital-display indicators of measurement.
- D. Tests for Convenience Receptacles:
 - 1. Line Voltage: Acceptable range is 105 to 132 V.
 - 2. Percent Voltage Drop under 15-A Load: A value of 6 percent or higher is unacceptable.
 - 3. Ground Impedance: Values of up to 2 ohms are acceptable.
 - 4. GFCI Trip: Test for tripping values specified in UL 1436 and UL 943.
 - 5. Using the test plug, verify that the device and its outlet box are securely mounted.
 - 6. Tests shall be diagnostic, indicating damaged conductors, high resistance at the circuit breaker, poor connections, inadequate fault current path, defective devices, or similar problems. Correct circuit conditions, remove malfunctioning units and replace with new ones, and retest as specified above.
- E. Test straight-blade convenience outlets in patient-care areas for the retention force of the grounding blade according to NFPA 99. Retention force shall be not less than 4 oz..
- F. Wiring device will be considered defective if it does not pass tests and inspections.
- G. Prepare test and inspection reports.

END OF SECTION

SECTION 26 2813 - FUSES

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:

1. Cartridge fuses rated 600 V ac and less for use in the following:
 - a. Control circuits.
 - b. Motor-control centers.
 - c. Panelboards.
 - d. Switchboards.
 - e. Enclosed controllers.
 - f. Enclosed switches.
2. Spare-fuse cabinets.

1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product. Include construction details, material descriptions, dimensions of individual components and profiles, and finishes for spare-fuse cabinets. Include the following for each fuse type indicated:
 1. Ambient Temperature Adjustment Information: If ratings of fuses have been adjusted to accommodate ambient temperatures, provide list of fuses with adjusted ratings.
 - a. For each fuse having adjusted ratings, include location of fuse, original fuse rating, local ambient temperature, and adjusted fuse rating.
 - b. Provide manufacturer's technical data on which ambient temperature adjustment calculations are based.
 2. Dimensions and manufacturer's technical data on features, performance, electrical characteristics, and ratings.
 3. Current-limitation curves for fuses with current-limiting characteristics.
 4. Time-current coordination curves (average melt) and current-limitation curves (instantaneous peak let-through current) for each type and rating of fuse. Submit in PDF format.
 5. Coordination charts and tables and related data.
 6. Fuse sizes for elevator feeders and elevator disconnect switches.

1.4 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

- A. Operation and Maintenance Data: For fuses to include in emergency, operation, and maintenance manuals. In addition to items specified in Section 01 7700 "Closeout Procedures," Section 01 7823 "Operation and Maintenance Data," include the following:
1. Ambient temperature adjustment information.
 2. Current-limitation curves for fuses with current-limiting characteristics.
 3. Time-current coordination curves (average melt) and current-limitation curves (instantaneous peak let-through current) for each type and rating of fuse used on the Project. Submit in PDF format.
 4. Coordination charts and tables and related data.

1.5 MAINTENANCE MATERIAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Furnish extra materials that match products installed and that are packaged with protective covering for storage and identified with labels describing contents.
1. Fuses: Equal to 10 percent of quantity installed for each size and type, but no fewer than three of each size and type.

1.6 FIELD CONDITIONS

- A. Where ambient temperature to which fuses are directly exposed is less than 40 deg F or more than 100 deg F, apply manufacturer's ambient temperature adjustment factors to fuse ratings.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 MANUFACTURERS

- A. Source Limitations: Obtain fuses, for use within a specific product or circuit, from single source from single manufacturer.

2.2 CARTRIDGE FUSES

- A. Characteristics: NEMA FU 1, current-limiting, nonrenewable cartridge fuses with voltage ratings consistent with circuit voltages.
1. Type RK-1: 600-V, zero- to 600-A rating, 200 kAIC, time delay.
 2. Type RK-5: 600-V, zero- to 600-A rating, 200 kAIC, time delay.
 3. Type CC: 600-V, zero- to 30-A rating, 200 kAIC, fast acting.
 4. Type CD: 600-V, 31- to 60-A rating, 200 kAIC, fast acting.
 5. Type J: 600-V, zero- to 600-A rating, 200 kAIC, time delay.
 6. Type L: 600-V, 601- to 6000-A rating, 200 kAIC, time delay.
 7. Type T: 600-V, zero- to 800-A rating, 200 kAIC, very fast acting.

- B. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.
- C. Comply with NEMA FU 1 for cartridge fuses.
- D. Comply with NFPA 70.
- E. Coordinate fuse ratings with utilization equipment nameplate limitations of maximum fuse size and with system short-circuit current levels.

2.3 SPARE-FUSE CABINET

- A. Characteristics: Wall-mounted steel unit with full-length, recessed piano-hinged door and key-coded cam lock and pull.
 - 1. Size: Adequate for storage of spare fuses specified with 15 percent spare capacity minimum.
 - 2. Finish: Gray, baked enamel.
 - 3. Identification: "SPARE FUSES" in 1-1/2-inch-high letters on exterior of door.
 - 4. Fuse Pullers: For each size of fuse, where applicable and available, from fuse manufacturer.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine fuses before installation. Reject fuses that are moisture damaged or physically damaged.
- B. Examine holders to receive fuses for compliance with installation tolerances and other conditions affecting performance, such as rejection features.
- C. Examine utilization equipment nameplates and installation instructions. Install fuses of sizes and with characteristics appropriate for each piece of equipment.
- D. Evaluate ambient temperatures to determine if fuse rating adjustment factors must be applied to fuse ratings.
- E. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.2 FUSE APPLICATIONS

- A. Cartridge Fuses:
 - 1. Service Entrance: Class L, fast acting.
 - 2. Feeders: Class L, fast acting.
 - 3. Motor Branch Circuits: Class RK1, time delay.
 - 4. Large Motor Branch (601-4000 A): Class L, time delay.

5. Power Electronics Circuits: Class J, high speed.
6. Other Branch Circuits: Class RK1, time delay.
7. Control Transformer Circuits: Class CC, time delay, control transformer duty.
8. Provide open-fuse indicator fuses or fuse covers with open fuse indication.

3.3 INSTALLATION

- A. Install fuses in fusible devices. Arrange fuses so rating information is readable without removing fuse.
- B. Install spare-fuse cabinet(s) in location shown on the Drawings or as indicated in the field by Owner.

3.4 IDENTIFICATION

- A. Install labels complying with requirements for identification specified in Section 26 0553 "Identification for Electrical Systems" and indicating fuse replacement information inside of door of each fused switch and adjacent to each fuse block, socket, and holder.

END OF SECTION

SECTION 26 2816 - ENCLOSED SWITCHES AND CIRCUIT BREAKERS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and other Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
 - 1. Fusible switches.
 - 2. Nonfusible switches.
 - 3. Receptacle switches.
 - 4. Shunt trip switches.
 - 5. Molded-case circuit breakers (MCCBs).
 - 6. Molded-case switches.
 - 7. Enclosures.

1.3 DEFINITIONS

- A. NC: Normally closed.
- B. NO: Normally open.
- C. SPDT: Single pole, double throw.

1.4 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of enclosed switch, circuit breaker, accessory, and component indicated. Include nameplate ratings, dimensioned elevations, sections, weights, and manufacturers' technical data on features, performance, electrical characteristics, ratings, accessories, and finishes.
 - 1. Enclosure types and details for types other than NEMA 250, Type 1.
 - 2. Current and voltage ratings.
 - 3. Short-circuit current ratings (interrupting and withstand, as appropriate).
 - 4. Include evidence of a nationally recognized testing laboratory (NRTL) listing for series rating of installed devices.
 - 5. Detail features, characteristics, ratings, and factory settings of individual overcurrent protective devices, accessories, and auxiliary components.
 - 6. Include time-current coordination curves (average melt) for each type and rating of overcurrent protective device; include selectable ranges for each type of overcurrent protective device. Provide in PDF electronic format.

- B. Shop Drawings: For enclosed switches and circuit breakers.
 - 1. Include plans, elevations, sections, details, and attachments to other work.
 - 2. Include wiring diagrams for power, signal, and control wiring.

1.5 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Qualification Data: For qualified testing agency.
- B. Seismic Qualification Certificates: For enclosed switches and circuit breakers, accessories, and components, from manufacturer.
 - 1. Basis for Certification: Indicate whether withstand certification is based on actual test of assembled components or on calculation.
 - 2. Dimensioned Outline Drawings of Equipment Unit: Identify center of gravity and locate and describe mounting and anchorage provisions.
 - 3. Detailed description of equipment anchorage devices on which the certification is based and their installation requirements.
- C. Field quality-control reports.

1.6 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

- A. Operation and Maintenance Data: For enclosed switches and circuit breakers to include in emergency, operation, and maintenance manuals.
 - 1. In addition to items specified in Section 01 7823 "Operation and Maintenance Data," include the following:
 - a. Manufacturer's written instructions for testing and adjusting enclosed switches and circuit breakers.
 - b. Time-current coordination curves (average melt) for each type and rating of overcurrent protective device; include selectable ranges for each type of overcurrent protective device. Provide in PDF electronic format.

1.7 MAINTENANCE MATERIAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Furnish extra materials that match products installed and that are packaged with protective covering for storage and identified with labels describing contents.
 - 1. Fuses: Equal to 10 percent of quantity installed for each size and type, but no fewer than three of each size and type.
 - 2. Fuse Pullers: Two for each size and type.

1.8 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Testing Agency Qualifications: Accredited by NETA.

1. Testing Agency's Field Supervisor: Currently certified by NETA to supervise on-site testing.

1.9 FIELD CONDITIONS

- A. Environmental Limitations: Rate equipment for continuous operation under the following conditions unless otherwise indicated:
 1. Ambient Temperature: Not less than minus 22 deg F and not exceeding 104 deg F.
 2. Altitude: Not exceeding 6600 feet.

1.10 WARRANTY

- A. Manufacturer's Warranty: Manufacturer and Installer agree to repair or replace components that fail in materials or workmanship within specified warranty period.
 1. Warranty Period: One year(s) from date of Substantial Completion.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Seismic Performance: Enclosed switches and circuit breakers shall withstand the effects of earthquake motions determined according to ASCE/SEI 7.
 1. The term "withstand" means "the unit will remain in place without separation of any parts from the device when subjected to the seismic forces specified and the unit will be fully operational after the seismic event."

2.2 GENERAL REQUIREMENTS

- A. Source Limitations: Obtain enclosed switches and circuit breakers, overcurrent protective devices, components, and accessories, within same product category, from single manufacturer.
- B. Product Selection for Restricted Space: Drawings indicate maximum dimensions for enclosed switches and circuit breakers, including clearances between enclosures, and adjacent surfaces and other items. Comply with indicated maximum dimensions.
- C. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by an NRTL, and marked for intended location and application.
- D. Comply with NFPA 70.

2.3 FUSIBLE SWITCHES

A. Type HD, Heavy Duty:

1. Single throw.
2. Three pole.
3. 600-V ac.
4. 1200 A and smaller.
5. UL 98 and NEMA KS 1, horsepower rated, with clips or bolt pads to accommodate specified fuses.
6. Lockable handle with capability to accept three padlocks, and interlocked with cover in closed position.

B. Accessories:

1. Equipment Ground Kit: Internally mounted and labeled for copper and aluminum ground conductors.
2. Neutral Kit: Internally mounted; insulated, capable of being grounded and bonded; labeled for copper and aluminum neutral conductors.
3. Isolated Ground Kit: Internally mounted; insulated, labeled for copper and aluminum neutral conductors.
4. Class R Fuse Kit: Provides rejection of other fuse types when Class R fuses are specified.
5. Auxiliary Contact Kit: One NO/NC (Form "C") auxiliary contact(s), arranged to activate before switch blades open. Contact rating - 120-V ac.
6. Hookstick Handle: Allows use of a hookstick to operate the handle.
7. Lugs: Mechanical type, suitable for number, size, and conductor material.
8. Service-Rated Switches: Labeled for use as service equipment.

2.4 NONFUSIBLE SWITCHES

A. Type GD, General Duty, Three Pole, Single Throw, 240-V ac, 600 A and Smaller: UL 98 and NEMA KS 1, horsepower rated, lockable handle with capability to accept two padlocks, and interlocked with cover in closed position.

B. Type HD, Heavy Duty, Three Pole, Single Throw, 600-V ac, 1200 A and Smaller: UL 98 and NEMA KS 1, horsepower rated, lockable handle with capability to accept three padlocks, and interlocked with cover in closed position.

C. Type HD, Heavy Duty, Six Pole, Single Throw, 600-V ac, 200 A and Smaller: UL 98 and NEMA KS 1, horsepower rated, lockable handle with capability to accept three padlocks, and interlocked with cover in closed position.

D. Type HD, Heavy Duty, Three Pole, Double Throw, 600-V ac, 1200 A and Smaller: UL 98 and NEMA KS 1, horsepower rated, lockable handle with capability to accept three padlocks, and interlocked with cover in closed position.

E. Accessories:

1. Equipment Ground Kit: Internally mounted and labeled for copper and aluminum ground conductors.

2. Neutral Kit: Internally mounted; insulated, capable of being grounded and bonded; labeled for copper and aluminum neutral conductors.
3. Isolated Ground Kit: Internally mounted; insulated, labeled for copper and aluminum neutral conductors.
4. Class R Fuse Kit: Provides rejection of other fuse types when Class R fuses are specified.
5. Auxiliary Contact Kit: One NO/NC (Form "C") auxiliary contact(s), arranged to activate before switch blades open. Contact rating - 120-V ac.
6. Hookstick Handle: Allows use of a hookstick to operate the handle.
7. Lugs: Mechanical type, suitable for number, size, and conductor material.
8. Service-Rated Switches: Labeled for use as service equipment.

2.5 RECEPTACLE SWITCHES

- A. Type HD, Heavy-Duty, Three Pole, Single-Throw Fusible Switch: 600-V ac, 30A, 60A, or 100 A; UL 98 and NEMA KS 1; horsepower rated, with clips or bolt pads to accommodate specified fuses; lockable handle with capability to accept three padlocks; interlocked with cover in closed position.
- B. Interlocking Linkage: Provided between the receptacle and switch mechanism to prevent inserting or removing plug while switch is in the on position, inserting any plug other than specified, and turning switch on if an incorrect plug is inserted or correct plug has not been fully inserted into the receptacle.
- C. Receptacle: Polarized, three-phase, four-wire receptacle (fourth wire connected to enclosure ground lug).
- D. Accessories:
 1. Equipment Ground Kit: Internally mounted and labeled for copper and aluminum ground conductors.
 2. Neutral Kit: Internally mounted; insulated, capable of being grounded and bonded; labeled for copper and aluminum neutral conductors.
 3. Isolated Ground Kit: Internally mounted; insulated, labeled for copper and aluminum neutral conductors.
 4. Class R Fuse Kit: Provides rejection of other fuse types when Class R fuses are specified.
 5. Auxiliary Contact Kit: One NO/NC (Form "C") auxiliary contact(s), arranged to activate before switch blades open. Contact rating - 120-V ac.
 6. Hookstick Handle: Allows use of a hookstick to operate the handle.
 7. Lugs: Mechanical type, suitable for number, size, and conductor material.
 8. Service-Rated Switches: Labeled for use as service equipment.

2.6 SHUNT TRIP SWITCHES

- A. General Requirements: Comply with ASME A17.1, UL 50, and UL 98, with Class J fuse block and 200-kA interrupting and short-circuit current rating.
- B. Type HD, Heavy-Duty, Three Pole, Single-Throw Fusible Switch: 600-V ac, 30A, 60A, 100 A; UL 98 and NEMA KS 1; integral shunt trip mechanism; horsepower rated, with clips

or bolt pads to accommodate specified fuses; lockable handle with capability to accept three padlocks; interlocked with cover in closed position.

- C. Type HD, Heavy-Duty, Three Pole, Single-Throw Nonfusible Switch: 600-V ac, 30A, 60A, 100 A; UL 98 and NEMA KS 1; integral shunt trip mechanism; horsepower rated, lockable handle with capability to accept three padlocks; interlocked with cover in closed position.
- D. Control Circuit: 120-V ac; obtained from integral control power transformer, with primary and secondary fuses, with a control power source of enough capacity to operate shunt trip, pilot, indicating and control devices.
- E. Accessories:
 - 1. Oiltight key switch for key-to-test function.
 - 2. Oiltight red ON pilot light.
 - 3. Isolated neutral lug; 200 percent rating.
 - 4. Mechanically interlocked auxiliary contacts that change state when switch is opened and closed.
 - 5. Form C alarm contacts that change state when switch is tripped.
 - 6. Three-pole, double-throw, fire-safety and alarm relay; 120-V ac coil voltage.
 - 7. Three-pole, double-throw, fire-alarm voltage monitoring relay complying with NFPA 72.
 - 8. Neutral Kit: Internally mounted; insulated, capable of being grounded and bonded; labeled for copper and aluminum neutral conductors.
 - 9. Isolated Ground Kit: Internally mounted; insulated, labeled for copper and aluminum neutral conductors.
 - 10. Class R Fuse Kit: Provides rejection of other fuse types when Class R fuses are specified.
 - 11. Auxiliary Contact Kit: One NO/NC (Form "C") auxiliary contact(s), arranged to activate before switch blades open. Contact rating - 120-V ac.
 - 12. Hookstick Handle: Allows use of a hookstick to operate the handle.
 - 13. Lugs: Mechanical type, suitable for number, size, and conductor material.
 - 14. Service-Rated Switches: Labeled for use as service equipment.

2.7 MOLDED-CASE CIRCUIT BREAKERS

- A. Circuit breakers shall be constructed using glass-reinforced insulating material. Current carrying components shall be completely isolated from the handle and the accessory mounting area.
- B. Circuit breakers shall have a toggle operating mechanism with common tripping of all poles, which provides quick-make, quick-break contact action. The circuit-breaker handle shall be over center, be trip free, and reside in a tripped position between on and off to provide local trip indication. Circuit-breaker escutcheon shall be clearly marked on and off in addition to providing international I/O markings. Equip circuit breaker with a push-to-trip button, located on the face of the circuit breaker to mechanically operate the circuit-breaker tripping mechanism for maintenance and testing purposes.

- C. The maximum ampere rating and UL, IEC, or other certification standards with applicable voltage systems and corresponding interrupting ratings shall be clearly marked on face of circuit breaker. Circuit breakers shall be 100 percent rated.
- D. MCCBs shall be equipped with a device for locking in the isolated position.
- E. Lugs shall be suitable for 167 deg F rated wire.
- F. Standard: Comply with UL 489 with interrupting capacity to comply with available fault currents.
- G. Thermal-Magnetic Circuit Breakers: Inverse time-current thermal element for low-level overloads and instantaneous magnetic trip element for short circuits. Adjustable magnetic trip setting for circuit-breaker frame sizes 250 A and larger.
- H. Adjustable, Instantaneous-Trip Circuit Breakers: Magnetic trip element with front-mounted, field-adjustable trip setting.
- I. Electronic Trip Circuit Breakers: Field-replaceable rating plug, rms sensing, with the following field-adjustable settings:
 - 1. Instantaneous trip.
 - 2. Long- and short-time pickup levels.
 - 3. Long- and short-time time adjustments.
 - 4. Ground-fault pickup level, time delay, and I-squared t response.
- J. Current-Limiting Circuit Breakers: Frame sizes 400 A and smaller, and let-through ratings less than NEMA FU 1, RK-5.
- K. Integrally Fused Circuit Breakers: Thermal-magnetic trip element with integral limiter-style fuse listed for use with circuit breaker and trip activation on fuse opening or on opening of fuse compartment door.
- L. Ground-Fault Circuit-Interrupter (GFCI) Circuit Breakers: Single- and two-pole configurations with Class A ground-fault protection (6-mA trip).
- M. Ground-Fault Equipment-Protection (GFEP) Circuit Breakers: With Class B ground-fault protection (30-mA trip).
- N. Features and Accessories:
 - 1. Standard frame sizes, trip ratings, and number of poles.
 - 2. Lugs: Mechanical type, suitable for number, size, trip ratings, and conductor material.
 - 3. Application Listing: Appropriate for application; Type SWD for switching fluorescent lighting loads; Type HID for feeding fluorescent and high-intensity discharge lighting circuits.
 - 4. Ground-Fault Protection: Comply with UL 1053; integrally mounted, self-powered type with mechanical ground-fault indicator; relay with adjustable pickup and time-delay settings, push-to-test feature, internal memory, and shunt trip unit; and three-phase, zero-sequence current transformer/sensor.
 - 5. Communication Capability: Circuit-breaker-mounted Integral communication module with functions and features compatible with power monitoring and

control system, specified in Section 26 0913 "Electrical Power Monitoring and Control."

6. Shunt Trip: Trip coil energized from separate circuit, with coil-clearing contact.
7. Undervoltage Trip: Set to operate at 35 to 75 percent of rated voltage without intentional time delay.
8. Auxiliary Contacts: One SPDT switch with "a" and "b" contacts; "a" contacts mimic circuit-breaker contacts, "b" contacts operate in reverse of circuit-breaker contacts.
9. Alarm Switch: One NO contact that operates only when circuit breaker has tripped.
10. Key Interlock Kit: Externally mounted to prohibit circuit-breaker operation; key shall be removable only when circuit breaker is in off position.
11. Electrical Operator: Provide remote control for on, off, and reset operations.
12. Accessory Control Power Voltage: Integrally mounted, self-powered; 120-V ac.

2.8 MOLDED-CASE SWITCHES

- A. Description: MCCB with fixed, high-set instantaneous trip only, and short-circuit withstand rating equal to equivalent breaker frame size interrupting rating.
- B. Standard: Comply with UL 489 with interrupting capacity to comply with available fault currents.
- C. Features and Accessories:
 1. Standard frame sizes and number of poles.
 2. Lugs:
 - a. Mechanical type, suitable for number, size, trip ratings, and conductor material.
 - b. Lugs shall be suitable for 167 deg F rated wire.
 3. Ground-Fault Protection: Comply with UL 1053; remote-mounted and powered type with mechanical ground-fault indicator; relay with adjustable pickup and time-delay settings, push-to-test feature, internal memory, and shunt trip unit; and three-phase, zero-sequence current transformer/sensor.
 4. Shunt Trip: Trip coil energized from separate circuit, with coil-clearing contact.
 5. Undervoltage Trip: Set to operate at 35 to 75 percent of rated voltage without intentional time delay.
 6. Auxiliary Contacts: One SPDT switch with "a" and "b" contacts; "a" contacts mimic switch contacts, "b" contacts operate in reverse of switch contacts.
 7. Alarm Switch: One NO contact that operates only when switch has tripped.
 8. Key Interlock Kit: Externally mounted to prohibit switch operation; key shall be removable only when switch is in off position.
 9. Zone-Selective Interlocking: Integral with ground-fault shunt trip unit; for interlocking ground-fault protection function.
 10. Electrical Operator: Provide remote control for on, off, and reset operations.
 11. Accessory Control Power Voltage: Integrally mounted, self-powered; 120-V ac.

2.9 ENCLOSURES

- A. Enclosed Switches and Circuit Breakers: UL 489, NEMA KS 1, NEMA 250, and UL 50, to comply with environmental conditions at installed location.
- B. Enclosure Finish: The enclosure shall be finished with gray baked enamel paint, electrodeposited on cleaned, phosphatized steel (NEMA 250 Type 1).
- C. Conduit Entry: NEMA 250 Types 4, 4X, and 12 enclosures shall contain no knockouts. NEMA 250 Types 7 and 9 enclosures shall be provided with threaded conduit openings in both endwalls.
- D. Operating Mechanism: The circuit-breaker operating handle shall be externally operable with the operating mechanism being an integral part of the box, not the cover. The cover interlock mechanism shall have an externally operated override. The override shall not permanently disable the interlock mechanism, which shall return to the locked position once the override is released. The tool used to override the cover interlock mechanism shall not be required to enter the enclosure in order to override the interlock.
- E. Enclosures designated as NEMA 250 Type 4, 4X stainless steel, 12, or 12K shall have a dual cover interlock mechanism to prevent unintentional opening of the enclosure cover when the circuit breaker is ON and to prevent turning the circuit breaker ON when the enclosure cover is open.
- F. NEMA 250 Type 7/9 enclosures shall be furnished with a breather and drain kit to allow their use in outdoor and wet location applications.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine elements and surfaces to receive enclosed switches and circuit breakers for compliance with installation tolerances and other conditions affecting performance of the Work.
- B. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.
 - 1. Commencement of work shall indicate Installer's acceptance of the areas and conditions as satisfactory.

3.2 PREPARATION

- A. Interruption of Existing Electric Service: Do not interrupt electric service to facilities occupied by Owner or others unless permitted under the following conditions and then only after arranging to provide temporary electric service according to requirements indicated:
 - 1. Notify Architect no fewer than seven days in advance of proposed interruption of electric service.

2. Indicate method of providing temporary electric service.
3. Do not proceed with interruption of electric service without Owner's written permission.
4. Comply with NFPA 70E.

3.3 ENCLOSURE ENVIRONMENTAL RATING APPLICATIONS

- A. Enclosed Switches and Circuit Breakers: Provide enclosures at installed locations with the following environmental ratings.
1. Indoor, Dry and Clean Locations: NEMA 250, Type 1.
 2. Outdoor Locations: NEMA 250, Type 3R.
 3. Kitchen and Wash-Down Areas: NEMA 250, Type 4X, stainless steel.
 4. Other Wet or Damp, Indoor Locations: NEMA 250, Type 4.
 5. Indoor Locations Subject to Dust, Falling Dirt, and Dripping Noncorrosive Liquids: NEMA 250, Type 12.
 6. Hazardous Areas Indicated on Drawings: NEMA 250, Type 7 with cover attached by Type 316 stainless steel bolts.

3.4 INSTALLATION

- A. Coordinate layout and installation of switches, circuit breakers, and components with equipment served and adjacent surfaces. Maintain required workspace clearances and required clearances for equipment access doors and panels.
- B. Install individual wall-mounted switches and circuit breakers with tops at uniform height unless otherwise indicated.
- C. Comply with mounting and anchoring requirements specified in Section 26 0548.16 "Seismic Controls for Electrical Systems."
- D. Temporary Lifting Provisions: Remove temporary lifting of eyes, channels, and brackets and temporary blocking of moving parts from enclosures and components.
- E. Install fuses in fusible devices.
- F. Comply with NFPA 70 and NECA 1.

3.5 IDENTIFICATION

- A. Comply with requirements in Section 26 0553 "Identification for Electrical Systems."
1. Identify field-installed conductors, interconnecting wiring, and components; provide warning signs.
 2. Label each enclosure with engraved metal or laminated-plastic nameplate.

3.6 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Testing Agency: Engage a qualified testing agency to perform tests and inspections.

- B. Perform tests and inspections.
- C. Tests and Inspections for Switches:
 - 1. Visual and Mechanical Inspection:
 - a. Inspect physical and mechanical condition.
 - b. Inspect anchorage, alignment, grounding, and clearances.
 - c. Verify that the unit is clean.
 - d. Verify blade alignment, blade penetration, travel stops, and mechanical operation.
 - e. Verify that fuse sizes and types match the Specifications and Drawings.
 - f. Verify that each fuse has adequate mechanical support and contact integrity.
 - g. Inspect bolted electrical connections for high resistance using one of the two following methods:
 - 1) Use a low-resistance ohmmeter.
 - a) Compare bolted connection resistance values to values of similar connections. Investigate values that deviate from those of similar bolted connections by more than 50 percent of the lowest value.
 - 2) Verify tightness of accessible bolted electrical connections by calibrated torque-wrench method in accordance with manufacturer's published data or NETA ATS Table 100.12.
 - a) Bolt-torque levels shall be in accordance with manufacturer's published data. In the absence of manufacturer's published data, use NETA ATS Table 100.12.
 - h. Verify that operation and sequencing of interlocking systems is as described in the Specifications and shown on the Drawings.
 - i. Verify correct phase barrier installation.
 - j. Verify lubrication of moving current-carrying parts and moving and sliding surfaces.
 - 2. Electrical Tests:
 - a. Perform resistance measurements through bolted connections with a low-resistance ohmmeter. Compare bolted connection resistance values to values of similar connections. Investigate values that deviate from adjacent poles or similar switches by more than 50 percent of the lowest value.
 - b. Measure contact resistance across each switchblade fuseholder. Drop values shall not exceed the high level of the manufacturer's published data. If manufacturer's published data are not available, investigate values that deviate from adjacent poles or similar switches by more than 50 percent of the lowest value.
 - c. Perform insulation-resistance tests for one minute on each pole, phase-to-phase and phase-to-ground with switch closed, and across each open pole. Apply voltage in accordance with manufacturer's published data. In the absence of manufacturer's published data, use Table 100.1 from the

NETA ATS. Investigate values of insulation resistance less than those published in Table 100.1 or as recommended in manufacturer's published data.

- d. Measure fuse resistance. Investigate fuse-resistance values that deviate from each other by more than 15 percent.
- e. Perform ground fault test according to NETA ATS 7.14 "Ground Fault Protection Systems, Low-Voltage."

D. Tests and Inspections for Molded Case Circuit Breakers:

1. Visual and Mechanical Inspection:

- a. Verify that equipment nameplate data are as described in the Specifications and shown on the Drawings.
- b. Inspect physical and mechanical condition.
- c. Inspect anchorage, alignment, grounding, and clearances.
- d. Verify that the unit is clean.
- e. Operate the circuit breaker to ensure smooth operation.
- f. Inspect bolted electrical connections for high resistance using one of the two following methods:
 - 1) Use a low-resistance ohmmeter.
 - a) Compare bolted connection resistance values to values of similar connections. Investigate values that deviate from those of similar bolted connections by more than 50 percent of the lowest value.
 - 2) Verify tightness of accessible bolted electrical connections by calibrated torque-wrench method in accordance with manufacturer's published data or NETA ATS Table 100.12.
 - a) Bolt-torque levels shall be in accordance with manufacturer's published data. In the absence of manufacturer's published data, use NETA ATS Table 100.12.
- g. Inspect operating mechanism, contacts, and chutes in unsealed units.
- h. Perform adjustments for final protective device settings in accordance with the coordination study.

2. Electrical Tests:

- a. Perform resistance measurements through bolted connections with a low-resistance ohmmeter. Compare bolted connection resistance values to values of similar connections. Investigate values that deviate from adjacent poles or similar switches by more than 50 percent of the lowest value.
- b. Perform insulation-resistance tests for one minute on each pole, phase-to-phase and phase-to-ground with circuit breaker closed, and across each open pole. Apply voltage in accordance with manufacturer's published data. In the absence of manufacturer's published data, use Table 100.1 from the NETA ATS. Investigate values of insulation resistance less than those published in Table 100.1 or as recommended in manufacturer's published data.

- c. Perform a contact/pole resistance test. Drop values shall not exceed the high level of the manufacturer's published data. If manufacturer's published data are not available, investigate values that deviate from adjacent poles or similar switches by more than 50 percent of the lowest value.
 - d. Perform insulation resistance tests on all control wiring with respect to ground. Applied potential shall be 500-V dc for 300-V rated cable and 1000-V dc for 600-V rated cable. Test duration shall be one minute. For units with solid state components, follow manufacturer's recommendation. Insulation resistance values shall be no less than two megohms.
 - e. Determine the following by primary current injection:
 - 1) Long-time pickup and delay. Pickup values shall be as specified. Trip characteristics shall not exceed manufacturer's published time-current characteristic tolerance band, including adjustment factors.
 - 2) Short-time pickup and delay. Short-time pickup values shall be as specified. Trip characteristics shall not exceed manufacturer's published time-current characteristic tolerance band, including adjustment factors.
 - 3) Ground-fault pickup and time delay. Ground-fault pickup values shall be as specified. Trip characteristics shall not exceed manufacturer's published time-current characteristic tolerance band, including adjustment factors.
 - 4) Instantaneous pickup. Instantaneous pickup values shall be as specified and within manufacturer's published tolerances.
 - f. Test functionality of the trip unit by means of primary current injection. Pickup values and trip characteristics shall be as specified and within manufacturer's published tolerances.
 - g. Perform minimum pickup voltage tests on shunt trip and close coils in accordance with manufacturer's published data. Minimum pickup voltage of the shunt trip and close coils shall be as indicated by manufacturer.
 - h. Verify correct operation of auxiliary features such as trip and pickup indicators; zone interlocking; electrical close and trip operation; trip-free, anti-pump function; and trip unit battery condition. Reset all trip logs and indicators. Investigate units that do not function as designed.
 - i. Verify operation of charging mechanism. Investigate units that do not function as designed.
3. Correct malfunctioning units on-site, where possible, and retest to demonstrate compliance; otherwise, replace with new units and retest.
 4. Perform the following infrared scan tests and inspections and prepare reports:
 - a. Initial Infrared Scanning: After Substantial Completion, but not more than 60 days after Final Acceptance, perform an infrared scan of each enclosed switch and circuit breaker. Remove front panels so joints and connections are accessible to portable scanner.
 - b. Follow-up Infrared Scanning: Perform an additional follow-up infrared scan of each enclosed switch and circuit breaker 11 months after date of Substantial Completion.
 - c. Instruments and Equipment: Use an infrared scanning device designed to measure temperature or to detect significant deviations from normal values. Provide calibration record for device.

5. Test and adjust controls, remote monitoring, and safeties. Replace damaged and malfunctioning controls and equipment.
- E. Enclosed switches and circuit breakers will be considered defective if they do not pass tests and inspections.
- F. Prepare test and inspection reports.
 1. Test procedures used.
 2. Include identification of each enclosed switch and circuit breaker tested and describe test results.
 3. List deficiencies detected, remedial action taken, and observations after remedial action.

3.7 ADJUSTING

- A. Adjust moving parts and operable components to function smoothly, and lubricate as recommended by manufacturer.
- B. Set field-adjustable circuit-breaker trip ranges as specified in Section 26 0573 "Overcurrent Protective Device Coordination Study."

END OF SECTION

SECTION 26 4313 - SURGE PROTECTION FOR LOW-VOLTAGE ELECTRICAL POWER CIRCUITS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section includes field-mounted SPDs for low-voltage (120 to 600 V) power distribution and control equipment.
- B. Related Requirements:
 - 1. Section 26 2413 "Switchboards" for factory-installed SPDs.
 - 2. Section 26 2416 "Panelboards" for factory-installed SPDs.

1.3 DEFINITIONS

- A. Inominal: Nominal discharge current.
- B. MCOV: Maximum continuous operating voltage.
- C. Mode(s), also Modes of Protection: The pair of electrical connections where the VPR applies.
- D. MOV: Metal-oxide varistor; an electronic component with a significant non-ohmic current-voltage characteristic.
- E. OCPD: Overcurrent protective device.
- F. SCCR: Short-circuit current rating.
- G. SPD: Surge protective device.
- H. VPR: Voltage protection rating.

1.4 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product.
 - 1. Include rated capacities, operating characteristics, electrical characteristics, and furnished specialties and accessories.

2. Copy of UL Category Code VZCA certification, as a minimum, listing the tested values for VPRs, Inominal ratings, MCOVs, type designations, OCPD requirements, model numbers, system voltages, and modes of protection.

1.5 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Field quality-control reports.
- B. Sample Warranty: For manufacturer's special warranty.

1.6 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

- A. Maintenance Data: For SPDs to include in maintenance manuals.

1.7 WARRANTY

- A. Manufacturer's Warranty: Manufacturer agrees to replace or replace SPDs that fail in materials or workmanship within specified warranty period.
 1. Warranty Period: Five years from date of Substantial Completion.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 GENERAL SPD REQUIREMENTS

- A. SPD with Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.
- B. Comply with NFPA 70.
- C. Comply with UL 1449.
- D. MCOV of the SPD shall be the nominal system voltage.

2.2 SERVICE ENTRANCE SUPPRESSOR

- A. SPDs: Comply with UL 1449, Type 1.
- B. SPDs: Listed and labeled by an NRTL acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction as complying with UL 1449, Type 1
 1. SPDs with the following features and accessories:
 - a. Integral disconnect switch.
 - b. Internal thermal protection that disconnects the SPD before damaging internal suppressor components.
 - c. Indicator light display for protection status.

- d. Form-C contacts rated at 5 A and 250-V ac, one normally open and one normally closed, for remote monitoring of protection status. Contacts shall reverse on failure of any surge diversion module or on opening of any current-limiting device. Coordinate with building power monitoring and control system.
 - e. Surge counter.
 - C. Comply with UL 1283.
 - D. Peak Surge Current Rating: The minimum single-pulse surge current withstand rating per phase shall not be less than 200 kA. The peak surge current rating shall be the arithmetic sum of the ratings of the individual MOVs in a given mode.
 - E. Protection modes and UL 1449 VPR for grounded wye circuits with 480Y/277 V or 208Y/120 V, three-phase, four-wire circuits shall not exceed the following:
 - 1. Line to Neutral: 1200 V for 480Y/277 V and 700 V for 208Y/120 V.
 - 2. Line to Ground: 1200 V for 480Y/277 V and 1200 V for 208Y/120 V.
 - 3. Line to Line: 2000 V for 480Y/277 V and 1000 V for 208Y/120 V.
 - F. Protection modes and UL 1449 VPR for 240/120 V, single-phase, three-wire circuits shall not exceed the following:
 - 1. Line to Neutral: 700 V.
 - 2. Line to Ground: 700 V.
 - 3. Line to Line: 1000 V.
 - G. SCCR: Equal or exceed 200 kA.
 - H. Inominal Rating: 20 kA.
- 2.3 PANEL SUPPRESSORS
- A. SPDs: Comply with UL 1449, Type 1.
 - 1. Include LED indicator lights for power and protection status.
 - 2. Internal thermal protection that disconnects the SPD before damaging internal suppressor components.
 - 3. Include Form-C contacts rated at 5 A and 250-V ac, one normally open and one normally closed, for remote monitoring of protection status. Contacts shall reverse on failure of any surge diversion module or on opening of any current-limiting device. Coordinate with building power monitoring and control system.
 - B. Peak Surge Current Rating: The minimum single-pulse surge current withstand rating per phase shall not be less than 100 kA. The peak surge current rating shall be the arithmetic sum of the ratings of the individual MOVs in a given mode.
 - C. Comply with UL 1283.
 - D. Protection modes and UL 1449 VPR for grounded wye circuits with 480Y/277 V or 208Y/120 V, three-phase, four-wire circuits shall not exceed the following:

1. Line to Neutral: 1200 V for 480Y/277 V and 700 V for 208Y/120 V.
 2. Line to Ground: 1200 V for 480Y/277 V and 700 V for 208Y/120 V.
 3. Neutral to Ground: 1200 V for 480Y/277 V and 700 V for 208Y/120 V.
 4. Line to Line: 2000 V for 480Y/277 V and 1200 V for 208Y/120 V
- E. Protection modes and UL 1449 VPR for 240/120-V, single-phase, three-wire circuits shall not exceed the following:
1. Line to Neutral: 700 V.
 2. Line to Ground: 700 V.
 3. Neutral to Ground: 700 V.
 4. Line to Line: 1200 V.
- F. SCCR: Equal or exceed 200 kA.
- G. Inominal Rating: 20 kA.

2.4 ENCLOSURES

- A. Indoor Enclosures: NEMA 250, Type 1.
- B. Outdoor Enclosures: NEMA 250, Type 3R.

2.5 CONDUCTORS AND CABLES

- A. Power Wiring: Same size as SPD leads, complying with Section 26 0519 "Low-Voltage Electrical Power Conductors and Cables."
- B. Class 2 Control Cables: Multiconductor cable with copper conductors not smaller than No. 18 AWG, complying with Section 26 0519 "Low-Voltage Electrical Power Conductors and Cables."
- C. Class 1 Control Cables: Multiconductor cable with copper conductors not smaller than No. 14 AWG, complying with Section 26 0519 "Low-Voltage Electrical Power Conductors and Cables."

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 INSTALLATION

- A. Comply with NECA 1.
- B. Install an OCPD or disconnect as required to comply with the UL listing of the SPD.
- C. Install SPDs with conductors between suppressor and points of attachment as short and straight as possible, and adjust circuit-breaker positions to achieve shortest and straightest leads. Do not splice and extend SPD leads unless specifically permitted by manufacturer. Do not exceed manufacturer's recommended lead length. Do not bond neutral and ground.

- D. Use crimped connectors and splices only. Wire nuts are unacceptable.
- E. Wiring:
 - 1. Power Wiring: Comply with wiring methods in Section 26 0519 "Low-Voltage Electrical Power Conductors and Cables."
 - 2. Controls: Comply with wiring methods in Section 26 0519 "Low-Voltage Electrical Power Conductors and Cables."

3.2 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Perform the following tests and inspections with the assistance of a factory-authorized service representative.
 - 1. Compare equipment nameplate data for compliance with Drawings and Specifications.
 - 2. Inspect anchorage, alignment, grounding, and clearances.
 - 3. Verify that electrical wiring installation complies with manufacturer's written installation requirements.
- B. An SPD will be considered defective if it does not pass tests and inspections.
- C. Prepare test and inspection reports.

3.3 STARTUP SERVICE

- A. Complete startup checks according to manufacturer's written instructions.
- B. Do not perform insulation-resistance tests of the distribution wiring equipment with SPDs installed. Disconnect SPDs before conducting insulation-resistance tests, and reconnect them immediately after the testing is over.
- C. Energize SPDs after power system has been energized, stabilized, and tested.

3.4 DEMONSTRATION

- A. Engage a factory-authorized service representative to train Owner's maintenance personnel to operate and maintain SPDs.

END OF SECTION

SECTION 26 5119 - LED INTERIOR LIGHTING

PART 1 - PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section includes the following types of LED luminaires:

1. Cylinder.
2. Downlight.
3. Highbay, linear.
4. Linear industrial.
5. Lowbay.
6. Parking garage.
7. Recessed linear.
8. Strip light.
9. Surface mount, linear.
10. Surface mount, nonlinear.
11. Suspended, linear.
12. Suspended, nonlinear.
13. Materials.
14. Finishes.
15. Luminaire support.

- B. Related Requirements:

1. Section 26 0923"Lighting Control Devices" for automatic control of lighting, including time switches, photoelectric relays, occupancy sensors, and multipole lighting relays and contactors.

1.3 DEFINITIONS

- A. CCT: Correlated color temperature.
- B. CRI: Color Rendering Index.
- C. Fixture: See "Luminaire."
- D. IP: International Protection or Ingress Protection Rating.
- E. LED: Light-emitting diode.
- F. Lumen: Measured output of lamp and luminaire, or both.

- G. Luminaire: Complete lighting unit, including lamp, reflector, and housing.

1.4 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product.

1. Arrange in order of luminaire designation.
2. Include data on features, accessories, and finishes.
3. Include physical description and dimensions of luminaires.
4. Include emergency lighting units, including batteries and chargers.
5. Include life, output (lumens, CCT, and CRI), and energy efficiency data.
6. Photometric data and adjustment factors based on laboratory tests, **complying with IES Lighting Measurements Testing and Calculation Guides, of each luminaire type. The adjustment factors shall be for lamps and accessories identical to those indicated for the luminaire as applied in this Project IES LM-79 and IES LM-80.**
 - a. Manufacturers' Certified Data: Photometric data certified by manufacturer's laboratory with a current accreditation under the National Voluntary Laboratory Accreditation Program for Energy Efficient Lighting Products.
 - b. Testing Agency Certified Data: For indicated luminaires, photometric data certified by a qualified independent testing agency. Photometric data for remaining luminaires shall be certified by manufacturer.

- B. Shop Drawings: For nonstandard or custom luminaires.

1. Include plans, elevations, sections, and mounting and attachment details.
2. Include details of luminaire assemblies. Indicate dimensions, weights, loads, required clearances, method of field assembly, components, and location and size of each field connection.
3. Include diagrams for power, signal, and control wiring.

- C. Product Schedule: For luminaires and lamps.

1.5 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Coordination Drawings: Reflected ceiling plan(s) and other details, drawn to scale, on which the following items are shown and coordinated with each other, using input from installers of the items involved:
 1. Luminaires.
 2. Suspended ceiling components.
 3. Partitions and millwork that penetrate the ceiling or extend to within **12 inches** of the plane of the luminaires.
 4. Structural members to which **equipment and or** luminaires will be attached.
 5. Initial access modules for acoustical tile, including size and locations.
 6. Items penetrating finished ceiling, including the following:
 - a. Other luminaires.
 - b. Air outlets and inlets.
 - c. Speakers.

- d. Sprinklers.
 - e. Access panels.
 - f. Ceiling-mounted projectors.
 - 7. Moldings.
 - B. Qualification Data: For testing laboratory providing photometric data for luminaires.
 - C. Seismic Qualification Certificates: For luminaires, accessories, and components, from manufacturer.
 - 1. Basis for Certification: Indicate whether withstand certification is based on actual test of assembled components or on calculation.
 - 2. Dimensioned Outline Drawings of Equipment Unit: Identify center of gravity and locate and describe mounting and anchorage provisions.
 - D. Detailed description of equipment anchorage devices on which the certification is based and their installation requirements.
 - E. Product Certificates: For each type of luminaire.
 - F. Product Test Reports: For each luminaire, for tests performed by **a qualified testing agency**.
 - G. Sample warranty.
- 1.6 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS
- A. Operation and Maintenance Data: For luminaires and lighting systems to include in operation and maintenance manuals.
 - 1. Provide a list of all lamp types used on Project; use ANSI and manufacturers' codes.
- 1.7 MAINTENANCE MATERIAL SUBMITTALS
- A. Furnish extra materials that match products installed and that are packaged with protective covering for storage and identified with labels describing contents.
 - 1. Lamps: **Ten for every 100** of each type and rating installed. Furnish at least one of each type.
 - 2. Diffusers and Lenses: **One for every 100** of each type and rating installed. Furnish at least one of each type.
 - 3. Globes and Guards: **One for every 20** of each type and rating installed. Furnish at least one of each type.
- 1.8 QUALITY ASSURANCE
- A. Luminaire Photometric Data Testing Laboratory Qualifications: Luminaire manufacturer's laboratory that is accredited under the NVLAP for Energy Efficient Lighting Products.

- B. Luminaire Photometric Data Testing Laboratory Qualifications: Provided by an independent agency, with the experience and capability to conduct the testing indicated, that is an NRTL as defined by OSHA in 29 CFR 1910.7, accredited under the NVLAP for Energy Efficient Lighting Products, and complying with the applicable IES testing standards.
- C. Provide luminaires from a single manufacturer for each luminaire type.
- D. Each luminaire type shall be binned within a three-step MacAdam Ellipse to ensure color consistency among luminaires.
- E. Mockups: For interior luminaires in room or module mockups, complete with power and control connections.
 - 1. Obtain Architect's approval of luminaires in mockups before starting installations.
 - 2. Maintain mockups during construction in an undisturbed condition as a standard for judging the completed Work.
 - 3. Approval of mockups does not constitute approval of deviations from the Contract Documents contained in mockups unless Architect specifically approves such deviations in writing.
 - 4. Subject to compliance with requirements, approved mockups may become part of the completed Work if undisturbed at time of Substantial Completion.

1.9 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Protect finishes of exposed surfaces by applying a strippable, temporary protective covering before shipping.

1.10 WARRANTY

- A. Warranty: Manufacturer and Installer agree to repair or replace components of luminaires that fail in materials or workmanship within specified warranty period.
- B. Warranty Period: **Five** year(s) from date of Substantial Completion.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Seismic Performance: Luminaires shall withstand the effects of earthquake motions determined according to **ASCE 7**.
- B. Seismic Performance: Luminaires and lamps shall be labeled vibration and shock resistant.
 - 1. The term "withstand" means "the luminaire will remain in place without separation of any parts when subjected to the seismic forces specified **and the luminaire will be fully operational during and after the seismic event.**"

2.2 LUMINAIRE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.
- B. Standards:
 - 1. ENERGY STAR certified.
 - 2. California Title 24 compliant.
 - 3. NRTL Compliance: Luminaires for hazardous locations shall be listed and labeled for indicated class and division of hazard by an NRTL.
 - 4. FM Global Compliance: Luminaires for hazardous locations shall be listed and labeled for indicated class and division of hazard by FM Global.
 - 5. UL Listing: Listed for damp location.
 - 6. Recessed luminaires shall comply with NEMA LE 4.
 - 7. User Replaceable Lamps:
 - a. Bulb shape complying with ANSI C78.79.
 - b. Lamp base complying with **ANSI C81.61 or IEC 60061-1**.
- C. CRI of **minimum of 80**. CCT as specified on drawings.
- D. Rated lamp life of **50,000** hours to L90.
- E. Lamps dimmable from 100 percent to 0 percent of maximum light output.
- F. Internal driver.
- G. Nominal Operating Voltage: **120 V ac**.
 - 1. Lens Thickness: At least **0.125 inch** minimum unless otherwise indicated.
- H. Housings:
 - 1. **Extruded-aluminum** housing and heat sink.
 - 2. **Powder-coat** finish.

2.3 MATERIALS

- A. Metal Parts:
 - 1. Free of burrs and sharp corners and edges.
 - 2. Sheet metal components shall be steel unless otherwise indicated.
 - 3. Form and support to prevent warping and sagging.
- B. Doors, Frames, and Other Internal Access: Smooth operating, free of light leakage under operating conditions, and designed to permit relamping without use of tools. Designed to prevent doors, frames, lenses, diffusers, and other components from falling accidentally during relamping and when secured in operating position.
- C. Diffusers and Globes:

1. Acrylic Diffusers: One hundred percent virgin acrylic plastic, with high resistance to yellowing and other changes due to aging, exposure to heat, and UV radiation.
 2. Glass: Annealed crystal glass unless otherwise indicated.
 3. Lens Thickness: At least **0.125 inch** minimum unless otherwise indicated.
- D. Factory-Applied Labels: Comply with UL 1598. Include recommended lamps. Locate labels where they will be readily visible to service personnel, but not seen from normal viewing angles when lamps are in place.
1. Label shall include the following lamp characteristics:
 - a. "USE ONLY" and include specific lamp type.
 - b. Lamp diameter, shape, size, wattage, and coating.
 - c. CCT and CRI for all luminaires.
- 2.4 METAL FINISHES
- A. Variations in finishes are unacceptable in the same piece.
- 2.5 LUMINAIRE SUPPORT
- A. Comply with requirements in Section 26 0529 "Hangers and Supports for Electrical Systems" for channel and angle iron supports and nonmetallic channel and angle supports.
 - B. Single-Stem Hangers: **1/2-inch** steel tubing with swivel ball fittings and ceiling canopy. Finish same as luminaire.
 - C. Wires: ASTM A 641/A 641 M, Class 3, soft temper, zinc-coated steel, **12 gage**.
 - D. Rod Hangers: **3/16-inch** minimum diameter, cadmium-plated, threaded steel rod.
 - E. Hook Hangers: Integrated assembly matched to luminaire, line voltage, and equipment with threaded attachment, cord, and locking-type plug.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

- 3.1 EXAMINATION
- A. Examine substrates, areas, and conditions, with Installer present, for compliance with requirements for installation tolerances and other conditions affecting performance of the Work.
 - B. Examine roughing-in for luminaire to verify actual locations of luminaire and electrical connections before luminaire installation. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.2 TEMPORARY LIGHTING

- A. If approved by the Architect, use selected permanent luminaires for temporary lighting. When construction is sufficiently complete, clean luminaires used for temporary lighting and install new lamps.

3.3 INSTALLATION

- A. Comply with NECA 1.
- B. Install luminaires level, plumb, and square with ceilings and walls unless otherwise indicated.
- C. Install lamps in each luminaire.
- D. Supports:
 - 1. Sized and rated for luminaire weight.
 - 2. Able to maintain luminaire position after cleaning and relamping.
 - 3. Provide support for luminaire without causing deflection of ceiling or wall.
 - 4. Luminaire mounting devices shall be capable of supporting a horizontal force of 100 percent of luminaire weight and vertical force of 400 percent of luminaire weight.
- E. Flush-Mounted Luminaire Support:
 - 1. Secured to outlet box.
 - 2. Attached to ceiling structural members at four points equally spaced around circumference of luminaire.
 - 3. Trim ring flush with finished surface.
- F. Wall-Mounted Luminaire Support:
 - 1. **Attached to structural members in walls.**
 - 2. Do not attach luminaires directly to gypsum board.
- G. Ceiling-Mounted Luminaire Support:
 - 1. Ceiling mount with **two 5/32-inch-** diameter aircraft cable supports **adjustable to 120 inches in length.**
 - 2. Ceiling mount with **pendant mount**
 - 3. Ceiling mount with hook mount.
- H. Suspended Luminaire Support:
 - 1. Pendants and Rods: Where longer than **48 inches**, brace to limit swinging.
 - 2. Stem-Mounted, Single-Unit Luminaires: Suspend with twin-stem hangers. Support with approved outlet box and accessories that hold stem and provide damping of luminaire oscillations. Support outlet box vertically to building structure using approved devices.

3. Continuous Rows of Luminaires: Use tubing or stem for wiring at one point and **wire support** for suspension for each unit length of luminaire chassis, including one at each end.
4. Do not use ceiling grid as support for pendant luminaires. Connect support wires or rods to building structure.

I. Ceiling-Grid-Mounted Luminaires:

1. Secure to any required outlet box.
2. Secure luminaire to the luminaire opening using approved fasteners in a minimum of four locations, spaced near corners of luminaire.
3. Use approved devices and support components to connect luminaire to ceiling grid and building structure in a minimum of four locations, spaced near corners of luminaire.

- J. Comply with requirements in Section 26 0519 "Low-Voltage Electrical Power Conductors and Cables" for wiring connections.

3.4 IDENTIFICATION

- A. Identify system components, wiring, cabling, and terminals. Comply with requirements for identification specified in Section 26 0553 "Identification for Electrical Systems."

3.5 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Perform the following tests and inspections:

1. Operational Test: After installing luminaires, switches, and accessories, and after electrical circuitry has been energized, test units to confirm proper operation.
2. Test for Emergency Lighting: Interrupt power supply to demonstrate proper operation. Verify transfer from normal power to battery power and retransfer to normal.

- B. Luminaire will be considered defective if it does not pass operation tests and inspections.

- C. Prepare test and inspection reports.

3.6 STARTUP SERVICE

- A. Comply with requirements for startup specified in Section 26 0943.16 "Addressable-Luminaire Lighting Controls."

- B. Comply with requirements for startup specified in Section 26 0943.23 "Relay-Based Lighting Controls."

3.7 ADJUSTING

- A. Occupancy Adjustments: When requested within **12** months of date of Substantial Completion, provide on-site assistance in adjusting the direction of aim of luminaires to suit occupied conditions. Make up to **two** visits to Project during other-than-normal hours for this purpose. Some of this work may be required during hours of darkness.
1. During adjustment visits, inspect all luminaires. Replace lamps or luminaires that are defective.
 2. Parts and supplies shall be manufacturer's authorized replacement parts and supplies.
 3. Adjust the aim of luminaires in the presence of the Architect.

END OF SECTION

SECTION 26 5619 - EXTERIOR LIGHTING

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:

1. Exterior solid-state luminaires that are designed for and exclusively use LED lamp technology.
2. Luminaire supports.
3. Luminaire-mounted photoelectric relays.

- B. Related Requirements:

1. Section 26 0923"Lighting Control Devices" for automatic control of lighting, including time switches, photoelectric relays, occupancy sensors, and multipole lighting relays and contactors.

1.3 DEFINITIONS

- A. CCT: Correlated color temperature.
- B. CRI: Color rendering index.
- C. Fixture: See "Luminaire."
- D. IP: International Protection or Ingress Protection Rating.
- E. Lumen: Measured output of lamp and luminaire, or both.
- F. Luminaire: Complete lighting unit, including lamp, reflector, and housing.

1.4 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of luminaire.

1. Arrange in order of luminaire designation.
2. Include data on features, accessories, and finishes.
3. Include physical description and dimensions of luminaire.
4. Lamps, include life, output (lumens, CCT, and CRI), and energy-efficiency data.

5. Photometric data and adjustment factors based on laboratory tests, complying with **IES Lighting Measurements Testing and Calculation Guides, of each luminaire type. The adjustment factors shall be for lamps and accessories identical to those indicated for the luminaire as applied in this Project IES LM-79 IES LM-80.**
 - a. Manufacturer's Certified Data: Photometric data certified by manufacturer's laboratory with a current accreditation under the NVLAP for Energy Efficient Lighting Products.
 - b. Testing Agency Certified Data: For indicated luminaires, photometric data certified by a qualified independent testing agency. Photometric data for remaining luminaires shall be certified by manufacturer.
 6. Wiring diagrams for power, control, and signal wiring.
 7. Photoelectric relays.
 8. Means of attaching luminaires to supports and indication that the attachment is suitable for components involved.
- B. Shop Drawings: For nonstandard or custom luminaires.
1. Include plans, elevations, sections, and mounting and attachment details.
 2. Include details of luminaire assemblies. Indicate dimensions, weights, loads, required clearances, method of field assembly, components, and location and size of each field connection.
 3. Include diagrams for power, signal, and control wiring.
- C. Product Schedule: For luminaires and lamps. **Use same designations indicated on Drawings.**
- D. Delegated-Design Submittal: For luminaire supports.
1. Include design calculations for luminaire supports **and seismic restraints.**
- 1.5 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS
- A. Coordination Drawings: Plans, drawn to scale, on which the following items are shown and coordinated with each other, using input from installers of the items involved:
1. Luminaires.
 2. Structural members to which **equipment and** luminaires will be attached.
 3. Underground utilities and structures.
 4. Existing underground utilities and structures.
 5. Above-grade utilities and structures.
 6. Existing above-grade utilities and structures.
 7. Building features.
 8. Vertical and horizontal information.
- B. Qualification Data: For testing laboratory providing photometric data for luminaires.
- C. Seismic Qualification Data: For luminaires, accessories, and components, from manufacturer.

1. Basis for Certification: Indicate whether withstand certification is based on actual test of assembled components or on calculation.
2. Dimensioned Outline Drawings of Equipment Unit: Identify center of gravity and locate and describe mounting and anchorage provisions.
3. Detailed description of equipment anchorage devices on which the certification is based and their installation requirements.

D. Product Certificates: For each type of the following:

1. Luminaire.
2. Photoelectric relay.

E. Product Test Reports: For each luminaire, for tests performed by **a qualified testing agency**.

F. Source quality-control reports.

G. Sample warranty.

1.6 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

A. Operation and Maintenance Data: For luminaires **and photoelectric relays** to include in operation and maintenance manuals.

1. Provide a list of all lamp types used on Project. Use ANSI and manufacturers' codes.
2. Provide a list of all photoelectric relay types used on Project; use manufacturers' codes.

1.7 MAINTENANCE MATERIAL SUBMITTALS

A. Furnish extra materials that match products installed and that are packaged with protective covering for storage and identified with labels describing contents.

1. Lamps: **Ten for every 100** of each type and rating installed. Furnish at least one of each type.
2. Glass, Acrylic, and Plastic Lenses, Covers, and Other Optical Parts: **One for every 100** of each type and rating installed. Furnish at least one of each type.
3. Diffusers and Lenses: **One for every 100** of each type and rating installed. Furnish at least one of each type.
4. Globes and Guards: **One for every 20** of each type and rating installed. Furnish at least one of each type.

1.8 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Luminaire Photometric Data Testing Laboratory Qualifications: Luminaire manufacturers' laboratory that is accredited under the NVLAP for Energy Efficient Lighting Products.

B. Luminaire Photometric Data Testing Laboratory Qualifications: Provided by an independent agency, with the experience and capability to conduct the testing

indicated, that is an NRTL as defined by OSHA in 29 CFR 1910.7, accredited under the NVLAP for Energy Efficient Lighting Products and complying with applicable IES testing standards.

- C. Provide luminaires from a single manufacturer for each luminaire type.
- D. Each luminaire type shall be binned within a three-step MacAdam Ellipse to ensure color consistency among luminaires.
- E. Installer Qualifications: An authorized representative who is trained and approved by manufacturer.
- F. Mockups: For exterior luminaires, complete with power and control connections.
 - 1. Obtain Architect's approval of luminaires in mockups before starting installations.
 - 2. Maintain mockups during construction in an undisturbed condition as a standard for judging the completed work.
 - 3. Approval of mockups does not constitute approval of deviations from the Contract Documents contained in mockups unless Architect specifically approves such deviations in writing.
 - 4. Subject to compliance with requirements, approved mockups may become part of the completed Work if undisturbed at time of Substantial Completion.

1.9 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Protect finishes of exposed surfaces by applying a strippable, temporary protective covering prior to shipping.

1.10 FIELD CONDITIONS

- A. Verify existing and proposed utility structures prior to the start of work associated with luminaire installation.
- B. Mark locations of exterior luminaires for approval by Architect prior to the start of luminaire installation.

1.11 WARRANTY

- A. Warranty: Manufacturer and Installer agree to repair or replace components of luminaires that fail in materials or workmanship within specified warranty period.
 - 1. Failures include, but are not limited to, the following:
 - a. Structural failures, including luminaire support components.
 - b. Faulty operation of luminaires and accessories.
 - c. Deterioration of metals, metal finishes, and other materials beyond normal weathering.
 - 2. Warranty Period: **5** year(s) from date of Substantial Completion.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Seismic Performance: Luminaires shall withstand the effects of earthquake motions determined according to **ASCE/SEI 7**.
- B. Seismic Performance: Luminaires and lamps shall be labeled vibration and shock resistant.
 - 1. The term "withstand" means "the luminaire will remain in place without separation of any parts when subjected to the seismic forces specified **and the luminaire will be fully operational during and after the seismic event.**"

2.2 LUMINAIRE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.
- B. NRTL Compliance: Luminaires shall be listed and labeled for indicated class and division of hazard by an NRTL.
- C. FM Global Compliance: Luminaires for hazardous locations shall be listed and labeled for indicated class and division of hazard by FM Global.
- D. UL Compliance: Comply with UL 1598 **and listed for wet location**.
- E. Lamp base complying with **ANSI C81.61 or IEC 60061-1**.
- F. Bulb shape complying with ANSI C79.1.
- G. CRI of **80**. CCT as specified on drawings.
- H. L70 lamp life of **50,000** hours.
- I. Lamps dimmable from 100 percent to 0 percent of maximum light output.
- J. Internal driver.
- K. Nominal Operating Voltage: **120 V ac** or **208 V ac**.
- L. Lamp Rating: Lamp marked for **outdoor use and in enclosed locations**.
- M. Source Limitations: Obtain luminaires from single source from a single manufacturer.
- N. Source Limitations: For luminaires, obtain each color, grade, finish, type, and variety of luminaire from single source with resources to provide products of consistent quality in appearance and physical properties.

2.3 LUMINAIRE-MOUNTED PHOTOELECTRIC RELAYS

- A. Comply with UL 773 or UL 773A.
- B. Contact Relays: Factory mounted, single throw, designed to fail in the on position, and factory set to turn light unit on at **1.5 to 3 fc** and off at **4.5 to 10 fc** with 15-second minimum time delay.
 - 1. Relay with locking-type receptacle shall comply with ANSI C136.10.
 - 2. Adjustable window slide for adjusting on-off set points.

2.4 MATERIALS

- A. Metal Parts: Free of burrs and sharp corners and edges.
- B. Sheet Metal Components: **Corrosion-resistant aluminum**. Form and support to prevent warping and sagging.
- C. Doors, Frames, and Other Internal Access: Smooth operating, free of light leakage under operating conditions, and designed to permit relamping without use of tools. Designed to prevent doors, frames, lenses, diffusers, and other components from falling accidentally during relamping and when secured in operating position. Doors shall be removable for cleaning or replacing lenses.
- D. Diffusers and Globes:
 - 1. Acrylic Diffusers: 100 percent virgin acrylic plastic, with high resistance to yellowing and other changes due to aging, exposure to heat, and UV radiation.
 - 2. Glass: Annealed crystal glass unless otherwise indicated.
 - 3. Lens Thickness: At least **0.125 inch** minimum unless otherwise indicated.
- E. Lens and Refractor Gaskets: Use heat- and aging-resistant resilient gaskets to seal and cushion lenses and refractors in luminaire doors.
- F. Reflecting surfaces shall have minimum reflectance as follows unless otherwise indicated:
 - 1. White Surfaces: 85 percent.
 - 2. Specular Surfaces: 83 percent.
 - 3. Diffusing Specular Surfaces: 75 percent.
- G. Housings:
 - 1. Rigidly formed, weather- and light-tight enclosure that will not warp, sag, or deform in use.
 - 2. Provide filter/breather for enclosed luminaires.
- H. Factory-Applied Labels: Comply with UL 1598. Include recommended lamps. Labels shall be located where they will be readily visible to service personnel, but not seen from normal viewing angles when lamps are in place.
 - 1. Label shall include the following lamp characteristics:

- a. "USE ONLY" and include specific lamp type.
- b. Lamp diameter, shape, size, wattage and coating.
- c. CCT and CRI for all luminaires.

2.5 FINISHES

- A. Variations in Finishes: Noticeable variations in same piece are unacceptable.
- B. Luminaire Finish: Manufacturer's standard paint applied to factory-assembled and - tested luminaire before shipping. Where indicated, match finish process and color of pole or support materials.
- C. Factory-Applied Finish for Aluminum Luminaires: Comply with NAAMM's "Metal Finishes Manual for Architectural and Metal Products" for recommendations for applying and designating finishes.
 1. Finish designations prefixed by AA comply with the system established by the Aluminum Association for designating aluminum finishes.
 2. Natural Satin Finish: Provide fine, directional, medium satin polish (AA-M32); buff complying with AA-M20 requirements; and seal aluminum surfaces with clear, hard-coat wax.
 3. Class I, Clear-Anodic Finish: AA-M32C22A41 (Mechanical Finish: Medium satin; Chemical Finish: Etched, medium matte; Anodic Coating: Architectural Class I, clear coating 0.018 mm or thicker) complying with AAMA 611.
 4. Class I, Color-Anodic Finish: AA-M32C22A42/A44 (Mechanical Finish: Medium satin; Chemical Finish: Etched, medium matte; Anodic Coating: Architectural Class I, integrally colored or electrolytically deposited color coating 0.018 mm or thicker), complying with AAMA 611.
 - a. Color: Verify with Architect.
- D. Factory-Applied Finish for Steel Luminaires: Comply with NAAMM's "Metal Finishes Manual for Architectural and Metal Products" for recommendations for applying and designating finishes.
 1. Surface Preparation: Clean surfaces to comply with SSPC-SP 1, to remove dirt, oil, grease, and other contaminants that could impair paint bond. Grind welds and polish surfaces to a smooth, even finish. Remove mill scale and rust, if present, from uncoated steel, complying with SSPC-SP 5/NACE No. 1 or SSPC-SP 8.
 2. Exterior Surfaces: Manufacturer's standard finish consisting of one or more coats of primer and two finish coats of high-gloss, high-build polyurethane enamel.
 - a. Color: As selected from manufacturer's standard catalog of colors.
 - b. Color: Match Architect's sample of **manufacturer's standard** or **custom** color.
 - c. Color: As selected by Architect from manufacturer's full range.

2.6 LUMINAIRE SUPPORT COMPONENTS

- A. Comply with requirements in Section 26 0529 "Hangers and Supports for Electrical Systems" for channel and angle iron supports and nonmetallic channel and angle supports.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine substrates, areas, and conditions, with Installer present, for compliance with requirements for installation tolerances and other conditions affecting performance of the Work.
- B. Examine roughing-in for luminaire electrical conduit to verify actual locations of conduit connections before luminaire installation.
- C. Examine walls, roofs, **and canopy ceilings and overhang ceilings** for suitable conditions where luminaires will be installed.
- D. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.2 TEMPORARY LIGHTING

- A. If approved by the Architect, use selected permanent luminaires for temporary lighting. When construction is substantially complete, clean luminaires used for temporary lighting and install new lamps.

3.3 GENERAL INSTALLATION REQUIREMENTS

- A. Comply with NECA 1.
- B. Use fastening methods and materials selected to resist seismic forces defined for the application and approved by manufacturer.
- C. Install lamps in each luminaire.
- D. Fasten luminaire to structural support.
- E. Supports:
 - 1. Sized and rated for luminaire weight.
 - 2. Able to maintain luminaire position after cleaning and relamping.
 - 3. Support luminaires without causing deflection of finished surface.
 - 4. Luminaire-mounting devices shall be capable of supporting a horizontal force of 100 percent of luminaire weight and a vertical force of 400 percent of luminaire weight.
- F. Wall-Mounted Luminaire Support:

1. **Attached to structural members in walls.**

- G. Wiring Method: Install cables in raceways. Conceal raceways and cables.
- H. **Install luminaires level, plumb, and square with finished grade unless otherwise indicated. Install luminaires at height and aiming angle as indicated on Drawings.**
- I. Coordinate layout and installation of luminaires with other construction.
- J. Adjust luminaires that require field adjustment or aiming. **Include adjustment of photoelectric device to prevent false operation of relay by artificial light sources, favoring a north orientation.**
- K. Comply with requirements in Section 26 0519 "Low-Voltage Electrical Power Conductors and Cables" and Section 26 0533 "Raceways and Boxes for Electrical Systems" for wiring connections and wiring methods.

3.4 BOLLARD LUMINAIRE INSTALLATION:

- A. Align units for optimum directional alignment of light distribution.
 - 1. Install on concrete base with top **4 inches** above finished grade or surface at luminaire location. Cast conduit into base, and shape base to match shape of bollard base. Finish by troweling and rubbing smooth. Concrete materials, installation, and finishing are specified in Section 03 3000 "Cast-in-Place Concrete."

3.5 INSTALLATION OF INDIVIDUAL GROUND-MOUNTED LUMINAIRES

- A. Aim as indicated on Drawings.
- B. Install on concrete base with top **4 inches** above finished grade or surface at luminaire location. Cast conduit into base, and finish by troweling and rubbing smooth. Concrete materials, installation, and finishing are specified in Section 03 3000 "Cast-in-Place Concrete."

3.6 CORROSION PREVENTION

- A. Aluminum: Do not use in contact with earth or concrete. When in direct contact with a dissimilar metal, protect aluminum by insulating fittings or treatment.
- B. Steel Conduits: Comply with Section 26 0533 "Raceways and Boxes for Electrical Systems." In concrete foundations, wrap conduit with **0.010-inch-** thick, pipe-wrapping plastic tape applied with a 50 percent overlap.

3.7 IDENTIFICATION

- A. Identify system components, wiring, cabling, and terminals. Comply with requirements for identification specified in Section 26 0553 "Identification for Electrical Systems."

3.8 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Inspect each installed luminaire for damage. Replace damaged luminaires and components.
- B. Perform the following tests and inspections:
 - 1. Operational Test: After installing luminaires, switches, and accessories, and after electrical circuitry has been energized, test units to confirm proper operation.
 - 2. Verify operation of photoelectric controls.
- C. Illumination Tests:
 - 1. Measure light intensities at night. Use photometers with calibration referenced to NIST standards. Comply with the following IES testing guide(s):
 - a. IES LM-5.
 - b. IES LM-50.
 - c. IES LM-52.
 - d. IES LM-64.
 - e. IES LM-72.
 - 2. Operational Test: After installing luminaires, switches, and accessories, and after electrical circuitry has been energized, test units to confirm proper operation.
- D. Luminaire will be considered defective if it does not pass tests and inspections.
- E. Prepare a written report of tests, inspections, observations, and verifications indicating and interpreting results. If adjustments are made to lighting system, retest to demonstrate compliance with standards.

3.9 DEMONSTRATION

- A. **Train** Owner's maintenance personnel to adjust, operate, and maintain luminaires **and photocell relays**.

3.10 ADJUSTING

- A. Occupancy Adjustments: When requested within **12** months of date of Substantial Completion, provide on-site assistance in adjusting the direction of aim of luminaires to suit occupied conditions. Make up to **two** visits to Project during other-than-normal hours for this purpose. Some of this work may be required during hours of darkness.
 - 1. During adjustment visits, inspect all luminaires. Replace lamps or luminaires that are defective.
 - 2. Parts and supplies shall be manufacturer's authorized replacement parts and supplies.
 - 3. Adjust the aim of luminaires in the presence of the Architect.

END OF SECTION

SECTION 28 3111 - DIGITAL, ADDRESSABLE FIRE-ALARM SYSTEM

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:

1. Fire-alarm control unit.
2. Manual fire-alarm boxes.
3. System smoke detectors.
4. Air-sampling smoke detectors.
5. Nonsystem smoke detectors.
6. Heat detectors.
7. Notification appliances.
8. Device guards.
9. Firefighters' two-way telephone communication service.
10. Firefighters' smoke-control station.
11. Magnetic door holders.
12. Remote annunciator.
13. Graphic annunciator.
14. Addressable interface device.
15. Digital alarm communicator transmitter.
16. Radio alarm transmitter.
17. Network communications.
18. System printer.

B. Related Requirements:

1. Section 28 0513 "Conductors and Cables for Electronic Safety and Security" for cables and conductors for fire-alarm systems.

1.3 DEFINITIONS

- A. EMT: Electrical Metallic Tubing.
- B. FACP: Fire Alarm Control Panel.
- C. HLI: High Level Interface.
- D. NICET: National Institute for Certification in Engineering Technologies.
- E. PC: Personal computer.

- F. VESDA: Very Early Smoke-Detection Apparatus.

1.4 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product, including furnished options and accessories.
 - 1. Include construction details, material descriptions, dimensions, profiles, and finishes.
 - 2. Include rated capacities, operating characteristics, and electrical characteristics.
- B. Shop Drawings: For fire-alarm system.
 - 1. Comply with recommendations and requirements in the "Documentation" section of the "Fundamentals" chapter in NFPA 72.
 - 2. Include plans, elevations, sections, details, and attachments to other work.
 - 3. Include details of equipment assemblies. Indicate dimensions, weights, loads, required clearances, method of field assembly, components, and locations. Indicate conductor sizes, indicate termination locations and requirements, and distinguish between factory and field wiring.
 - 4. Detail assembly and support requirements.
 - 5. Include voltage drop calculations for notification-appliance circuits.
 - 6. Include battery-size calculations.
 - 7. Include input/output matrix.
 - 8. Include statement from manufacturer that all equipment and components have been tested as a system and meet all requirements in this Specification and in NFPA 72.
 - 9. Include performance parameters and installation details for each detector.
 - 10. Verify that each duct detector is listed for complete range of air velocity, temperature, and humidity possible when air-handling system is operating.
 - 11. Provide program report showing that air-sampling detector pipe layout balances pneumatically within the airflow range of the air-sampling detector.
 - 12. Include plans, sections, and elevations of heating, ventilating, and air-conditioning ducts, drawn to scale; coordinate location of duct smoke detectors and access to them.
 - a. Show critical dimensions that relate to placement and support of sampling tubes, detector housing, and remote status and alarm indicators.
 - b. Show field wiring required for HVAC unit shutdown on alarm.
 - c. Show field wiring and equipment required for HVAC unit shutdown on alarm and override by firefighters' control system.
 - d. Show field wiring and equipment required for HVAC unit shutdown on alarm and override by firefighters' smoke-evacuation system.
 - e. Locate detectors according to manufacturer's written recommendations.
 - f. Show air-sampling detector pipe routing.
 - 13. Include voice/alarm signaling-service equipment rack or console layout, grounding schematic, amplifier power calculation, and single-line connection diagram.
 - 14. Include floor plans to indicate final outlet locations showing address of each addressable device. Show size and route of cable and conduits and point-to-point wiring diagrams.

C. General Submittal Requirements:

1. Submittals shall be approved by authorities having jurisdiction prior to submitting them to Architect.
2. Shop Drawings shall be prepared by persons with the following qualifications:
 - a. Trained and certified by manufacturer in fire-alarm system design.
 - b. NICET-certified, fire-alarm technician; Level IV minimum.
 - c. Licensed or certified by authorities having jurisdiction.

D. Delegated-Design Submittal: For notification appliances and smoke and heat detectors, in addition to submittals listed above, indicate compliance with performance requirements and design criteria, including analysis data signed and sealed by the qualified professional engineer responsible for their preparation.

1. Drawings showing the location of each notification appliance and smoke and heat detector, ratings of each, and installation details as needed to comply with listing conditions of the device.
2. Design Calculations: Calculate requirements for selecting the spacing and sensitivity of detection, complying with NFPA 72. Calculate spacing and intensities for strobe signals and sound-pressure levels for audible appliances.
3. Indicate audible appliances required to produce square wave signal per NFPA 72.

1.5 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

A. Qualification Data: For Installer.

B. Seismic Qualification Certificates: For fire-alarm control unit, accessories, and components, from manufacturer.

1. Basis for Certification: Indicate whether withstand certification is based on actual test of assembled components or on calculation.
2. Dimensioned Outline Drawings of Equipment Unit: Identify center of gravity and locate and describe mounting and anchorage provisions.
3. Detailed description of equipment anchorage devices on which the certification is based and their installation requirements.

C. Field quality-control reports.

1.6 Sample Warranty: For special warranty.

1.7 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

A. Operation and Maintenance Data: For fire-alarm systems and components to include in emergency, operation, and maintenance manuals.

1. In addition to items specified in Section 01 7823 "Operation and Maintenance Data," include the following:

- a. Comply with the "Records" section of the "Inspection, Testing and Maintenance" chapter in NFPA 72.
- b. Provide "Fire Alarm and Emergency Communications System Record of Completion Documents" according to the "Completion Documents" Article in the "Documentation" section of the "Fundamentals" chapter in NFPA 72.
- c. Complete wiring diagrams showing connections between all devices and equipment. Each conductor shall be numbered at every junction point with indication of origination and termination points.
- d. Riser diagram.
- e. Device addresses.
- f. Air-sampling system sample port locations and modeling program report showing layout meets performance criteria.
- g. Record copy of site-specific software.
- h. Provide "Inspection and Testing Form" according to the "Inspection, Testing and Maintenance" chapter in NFPA 72, and include the following:
 - 1) Equipment tested.
 - 2) Frequency of testing of installed components.
 - 3) Frequency of inspection of installed components.
 - 4) Requirements and recommendations related to results of maintenance.
 - 5) Manufacturer's user training manuals.
- i. Manufacturer's required maintenance related to system warranty requirements.
- j. Abbreviated operating instructions for mounting at fire-alarm control unit and each annunciator unit.

B. Software and Firmware Operational Documentation:

1. Software operating and upgrade manuals.
2. Program Software Backup: On magnetic media or compact disk, complete with data files.
3. Device address list.
4. Printout of software application and graphic screens.

1.8 MAINTENANCE MATERIAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Furnish extra materials that match products installed and that are packaged with protective covering for storage and identified with labels describing contents.
1. Lamps for Remote Indicating Lamp Units: Quantity equal to 10 percent of amount installed, but no fewer than one unit.
 2. Lamps for Strobe Units: Quantity equal to 10 percent of amount installed, but no fewer than one unit.
 3. Smoke Detectors, Fire Detectors: Quantity equal to 10 percent of amount of each type installed, but no fewer than one unit of each type.
 4. Detector Bases: Quantity equal to two percent of amount of each type installed, but no fewer than one unit of each type.
 5. Keys and Tools: One extra set for access to locked or tamper proofed components.
 6. Audible and Visual Notification Appliances: One of each type installed.

7. Fuses: Two of each type installed in the system. Provide in a box or cabinet with compartments marked with fuse types and sizes.
8. Filters for Air-Sampling Detectors: Quantity equal to two percent of amount of each type installed, but no fewer than one unit of each type.
9. Air-Sampling Fan: Quantity equal to one for every five detectors, but no fewer than one unit of each type.

1.9 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Installer Qualifications: Personnel shall be trained and certified by manufacturer for installation of units required for this Project.
- B. Installer Qualifications: Installation shall be by personnel certified by NICET as fire-alarm Level IV technician.
- C. NFPA Certification: Obtain certification according to NFPA 72 by an NRTL (nationally recognized testing laboratory).
- D. NFPA Certification: Obtain certification according to NFPA 72 by a UL-listed alarm company.
- E. NFPA Certification: Obtain certification according to NFPA 72 in the form of a placard by an FM Global-approved alarm company.
- F. NFPA Certification: Obtain certification according to NFPA 72 by.

1.10 PROJECT CONDITIONS

- A. Perform a full test of the existing system prior to starting work. Document any equipment or components not functioning as designed.
- B. Interruption of Existing Fire-Alarm Service: Do not interrupt fire-alarm service to facilities occupied by Owner or others unless permitted under the following conditions and then only after arranging to provide temporary guard service according to requirements indicated:
 1. Notify Construction Manager no fewer than seven days in advance of proposed interruption of fire-alarm service.
 2. Do not proceed with interruption of fire-alarm service without Construction Manager's written permission.
- C. Use of Devices during Construction: Protect devices during construction unless devices are placed in service to protect the facility during construction.

1.11 SEQUENCING AND SCHEDULING

- A. Existing Fire-Alarm Equipment: Maintain existing equipment fully operational until new equipment has been tested and accepted. As new equipment is installed, label it "NOT IN SERVICE" until it is accepted. Remove labels from new equipment when put into

service, and label existing fire-alarm equipment "NOT IN SERVICE" until removed from the building.

- B. Equipment Removal: After acceptance of new fire-alarm system, remove existing disconnected fire-alarm equipment and wiring.

1.12 WARRANTY

- A. Special Warranty: Manufacturer agrees to repair or replace fire-alarm system equipment and components that fail in materials or workmanship within specified warranty period.
 - 1. Warranty Extent: All equipment and components not covered in the Maintenance Service Agreement.
 - 2. Warranty Period: Five years from date of Substantial Completion.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 SYSTEM DESCRIPTION

- A. Source Limitations for Fire-Alarm System and Components: Components shall be compatible with, and operate as an extension of, existing system. Provide system manufacturer's certification that all components provided have been tested as, and will operate as, a system.
- B. Noncoded, [UL-certified] [FM Global-placarded] addressable system, with multiplexed signal transmission and horn/strobe evacuation.
- C. Automatic sensitivity control of certain smoke detectors.
- D. All components provided shall be listed for use with the selected system.
- E. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.

2.2 SYSTEMS OPERATIONAL DESCRIPTION

- A. Fire-alarm signal initiation shall be by one or more of the following device:
 - 1. Manual stations.
 - 2. Heat detectors.
 - 3. Flame detectors.
 - 4. Smoke detectors.
 - 5. Duct smoke detectors.
 - 6. Air-sampling smoke-detection system (VESDA).
 - 7. Carbon monoxide detectors.
 - 8. Combustible gas detectors.
 - 9. Automatic sprinkler system water flow.

10. Preaction system.
 11. Fire-extinguishing system operation.
 12. Fire standpipe system.
 13. Dry system pressure flow switch.
 14. Fire pump running.
- B. Fire-alarm signal shall initiate the following actions:
1. Continuously operate alarm notification appliances.
 2. Identify alarm and specific initiating device at fire-alarm control unit.
 3. Transmit an alarm signal to the remote alarm receiving station.
 4. Unlock electric door locks in designated egress paths.
 5. Release fire and smoke doors held open by magnetic door holders.
 6. Activate voice/alarm communication system.
 7. Switch heating, ventilating, and air-conditioning equipment controls to fire-alarm mode.
 8. Activate smoke-control system (smoke management) at firefighters' smoke-control system panel.
 9. Activate stairwell and elevator-shaft pressurization systems.
 10. Close smoke dampers in air ducts of designated air-conditioning duct systems.
 11. Activate preaction system.
 12. Recall elevators to primary or alternate recall floors.
 13. Activate elevator power shunt trip.
 14. Activate emergency lighting control.
 15. Activate emergency shutoffs for gas and fuel supplies.
 16. Record events in the system memory.
 17. Record events by the system printer.
 18. Indicate device in alarm on the graphic annunciator.
- C. Supervisory signal initiation shall be by one or more of the following devices and actions:
1. Valve supervisory switch.
 2. High- or low-air-pressure switch of a dry-pipe or preaction sprinkler system.
 3. Alert and Action signals of air-sampling detector system.
 4. Elevator shunt-trip supervision.
 5. Fire pump running.
 6. Fire-pump loss of power.
 7. Fire-pump power phase reversal.
 8. Independent fire-detection and -suppression systems.
 9. User disabling of zones or individual devices.
 10. Loss of communication with any panel on the network.
- D. System trouble signal initiation shall be by one or more of the following devices and actions:
1. Open circuits, shorts, and grounds in designated circuits.
 2. Opening, tampering with, or removing alarm-initiating and supervisory signal-initiating devices.
 3. Loss of communication with any addressable sensor, input module, relay, control module, remote annunciator, printer interface, or Ethernet module.
 4. Loss of primary power at fire-alarm control unit.

5. Ground or a single break in internal circuits of fire-alarm control unit.
6. Abnormal ac voltage at fire-alarm control unit.
7. Break in standby battery circuitry.
8. Failure of battery charging.
9. Abnormal position of any switch at fire-alarm control unit or annunciator.
10. Voice signal amplifier failure.
11. Hose cabinet door open.

E. System Supervisory Signal Actions:

1. Initiate notification appliances.
2. Identify specific device initiating the event at fire-alarm control unit.
3. Record the event on system printer.
4. After a time delay of 200 seconds, transmit a trouble or supervisory signal to the remote alarm receiving station.
5. Transmit system status to building management system.
6. Display system status on graphic annunciator.

2.3 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

A. Seismic Performance: Fire-alarm control unit and raceways shall withstand the effects of earthquake motions determined according to ASCE/SEI 7.

1. The term "withstand" means "the unit will remain in place without separation of any parts from the device when subjected to the seismic forces specified."

2.4 FIRE-ALARM CONTROL UNIT

A. Manufacturers:

1. SimplexGrinnell LP.
2. Notifier
3. Bosch Security Systems
4. (Owner Selection)

B. General Requirements for Fire-Alarm Control Unit:

1. Field-programmable, microprocessor-based, modular, power-limited design with electronic modules, complying with UL 864.
 - a. System software and programs shall be held in nonvolatile flash, electrically erasable, programmable, read-only memory, retaining the information through failure of primary and secondary power supplies.
 - b. Include a real-time clock for time annotation of events on the event recorder and printer.
 - c. Provide communication between the FACP and remote circuit interface panels, annunciators, and displays.
 - d. The FACP shall be listed for connection to a central-station signaling system service.
 - e. Provide nonvolatile memory for system database, logic, and operating system and event history. The system shall require no manual input to

initialize in the event of a complete power down condition. The FACP shall provide a minimum 500-event history log.

2. Addressable Initiation Device Circuits: The FACP shall indicate which communication zones have been silenced and shall provide selective silencing of alarm notification appliance by building communication zone.
 3. Addressable Control Circuits for Operation of Notification Appliances and Mechanical Equipment: The FACP shall be listed for releasing service.
- C. Alphanumeric Display and System Controls: Arranged for interface between human operator at fire-alarm control unit and addressable system components including annunciation and supervision. Display alarm, supervisory, and component status messages and the programming and control menu.
1. Annunciator and Display: Liquid-crystal type, 80 characters, minimum.
 2. Keypad: Arranged to permit entry and execution of programming, display, and control commands.
- D. Alphanumeric Display and System Controls: Arranged for interface between human operator at fire-alarm control unit and addressable system components including annunciation and supervision. Display alarm, supervisory, and component status messages and the programming and control menu.
1. Annunciator and Display: Liquid-crystal type, two or three] line(s) of 40 or 80 characters, minimum.
 2. Keypad: Arranged to permit entry and execution of programming, display, and control commands.
- E. Initiating-Device, Notification-Appliance, and Signaling-Line Circuits:
1. Pathway Class Designations: NFPA 72, Class A.
 2. Pathway Survivability: Level 0.
 3. Install no more than 256 addressable devices on each signaling-line circuit.
 4. Serial Interfaces:
 - a. One dedicated RS 485 port for central-station operation using point ID DACT.
 - b. One RS 485 port for remote annunciators, Ethernet module, or multi-interface module (printer port).
 - c. One [USB] [RS 232] port for PC configuration.
 - d. One RS 232 port for VESDA HLI connection.
 - e. One RS 232 port for voice evacuation interface.
- F. Smoke-Alarm Verification:
1. Initiate audible and visible indication of an "alarm-verification" signal at fire-alarm control unit.
 2. Activate an approved "alarm-verification" sequence at fire-alarm control unit and detector.
 3. Record events by the system printer.
 4. Sound general alarm if the alarm is verified.
 5. Cancel fire-alarm control unit indication and system reset if the alarm is not verified.

- G. Notification-Appliance Circuit:
1. Audible appliances shall sound in a three-pulse temporal pattern, as defined in NFPA 72.
 2. Where notification appliances provide signals to sleeping areas, the alarm signal shall be a 520-Hz square wave with an intensity 15 dB above the average ambient sound level or 5 dB above the maximum sound level, or at least 75 dBA, whichever is greater, measured at the pillow.
 3. Visual alarm appliances shall flash in synchronization where multiple appliances are in the same field of view, as defined in NFPA 72.
- H. Remote Smoke-Detector Sensitivity Adjustment: Controls shall select specific addressable smoke detectors for adjustment, display their current status and sensitivity settings, and change those settings. Allow controls to be used to program repetitive, time-scheduled, and automated changes in sensitivity of specific detector groups. Record sensitivity adjustments and sensitivity-adjustment schedule changes in system memory, and print out the final adjusted values on system printer.
- I. Transmission to Remote Alarm Receiving Station: Automatically transmit alarm, supervisory, and trouble signals to a remote alarm station.
- J. Voice/Alarm Signaling Service: Central emergency communication system with redundant microphones, preamplifiers, amplifiers, and tone generators provided [in a separate cabinet located in the fire command center] [as a special module that is part of fire-alarm control unit].
1. Indicate number of alarm channels for automatic, simultaneous transmission of different announcements to different zones or for manual transmission of announcements by use of the central-control microphone. Amplifiers shall comply with UL 1711.
 - a. Allow the application of, and evacuation signal to, indicated number of zones and, at the same time, allow voice paging to the other zones selectively or in any combination.
 - b. Programmable tone and message sequence selection.
 - c. Standard digitally recorded messages for "Evacuation" and "All Clear."
 - d. Generate tones to be sequenced with audio messages of type recommended by NFPA 72 and that are compatible with tone patterns of notification-appliance circuits of fire-alarm control unit.
 2. Status Annunciator: Indicate the status of various voice/alarm speaker zones and the status of firefighters' two-way telephone communication zones.
 3. Preamplifiers, amplifiers, and tone generators shall automatically transfer to backup units, on primary equipment failure.
- K. Printout of Events: On receipt of signal, print alarm, supervisory, and trouble events. Identify zone, device, and function. Include type of signal (alarm, supervisory, or trouble) and date and time of occurrence. Differentiate alarm signals from all other printed indications. Also print system reset event, including same information for device, location, date, and time. Commands initiate the printing of a list of existing alarm, supervisory, and trouble conditions in the system and a historical log of events.

- L. Primary Power: 24-V dc obtained from 120-V ac service and a power-supply module. Initiating devices, notification appliances, signaling lines, trouble signals, shall be powered by 24-V dc source.
 - 1. Alarm current draw of entire fire-alarm system shall not exceed 80 percent of the power-supply module rating.
- M. Secondary Power: 24-V dc supply system with batteries, automatic battery charger, and automatic transfer switch.
 - 1. Batteries: Sealed lead calcium.
- N. Instructions: Computer printout or typewritten instruction card mounted behind a plastic or glass cover in a stainless-steel or aluminum frame. Include interpretation and describe appropriate response for displays and signals. Briefly describe the functional operation of the system under normal, alarm, and trouble conditions.

2.5 PREACTION SYSTEM

- A. Initiate Presignal Alarm: This function shall cause an audible and visual alarm and indication to be provided at the FACP. Activation of an initiation device connected as part of a preaction system shall be annunciated at the FACP only, without activation of the general evacuation alarm.

2.6 MANUAL FIRE-ALARM BOXES

- A. Manufacturers:
 - 1. SimplexGrinnell LP.
 - 2. Notifier
 - 3. Bosch Security Systems
 - 4. (Owner Selection)
- B. General Requirements for Manual Fire-Alarm Boxes: Comply with UL 38. Boxes shall be finished in red with molded, raised-letter operating instructions in contrasting color; shall show visible indication of operation; and shall be mounted on recessed outlet box. If indicated as surface mounted, provide manufacturer's surface back box.
 - 1. Double-action mechanism requiring two actions to initiate an alarm, breaking-glass or plastic-rod type; with integral addressable module arranged to communicate manual-station status (normal, alarm, or trouble) to fire-alarm control unit.
 - 2. Station Reset: Key- or wrench-operated switch.
 - 3. Indoor Protective Shield: Factory-fabricated, clear plastic enclosure hinged at the top to permit lifting for access to initiate an alarm. Lifting the cover actuates an integral battery-powered audible horn intended to discourage false-alarm operation.
 - 4. Weatherproof Protective Shield: Factory-fabricated, clear plastic enclosure hinged at the top to permit lifting for access to initiate an alarm.

2.7 SYSTEM SMOKE DETECTORS

A. Manufacturers:

1. SimplexGrinnell LP.
2. System Sensor
3. Bosch Security Systems
4. (Owner Selection)

B. General Requirements for System Smoke Detectors:

1. Comply with UL 268; operating at 24-V dc, nominal.
2. Detectors shall be two-wire type.
3. Integral Addressable Module: Arranged to communicate detector status (normal, alarm, or trouble) to fire-alarm control unit.
4. Base Mounting: Detector and associated electronic components shall be mounted in a twist-lock module that connects to a fixed base. Provide terminals in the fixed base for connection to building wiring.
5. Self-Restoring: Detectors do not require resetting or readjustment after actuation to restore them to normal operation.
6. Integral Visual-Indicating Light: LED type, indicating detector has operated.
7. Remote Control: Unless otherwise indicated, detectors shall be digital-addressable type, individually monitored at fire-alarm control unit for calibration, sensitivity, and alarm condition.
 - a. Rate-of-rise temperature characteristic of combination smoke- and heat-detection units shall be selectable at fire-alarm control unit for 15 or 20 deg per minute.
 - b. Fixed-temperature sensing characteristic of combination smoke- and heat-detection units shall be independent of rate-of-rise sensing and shall be settable at fire-alarm control unit to operate at 135 or 155 deg F
 - c. Multiple levels of detection sensitivity for each sensor.
 - d. Sensitivity levels based on time of day.

C. Photoelectric Smoke Detectors:

1. Detector address shall be accessible from fire-alarm control unit and shall be able to identify the detector's location within the system and its sensitivity setting.
2. An operator at fire-alarm control unit, having the designated access level, shall be able to manually access the following for each detector:
 - a. Primary status.
 - b. Device type.
 - c. Present average value.
 - d. Present sensitivity selected.
 - e. Sensor range (normal, dirty, etc.).
 - f. .

D. Duct Smoke Detectors: Photoelectric type complying with UL 268A.

1. Detector address shall be accessible from fire-alarm control unit and shall be able to identify the detector's location within the system and its sensitivity setting.
2. An operator at fire-alarm control unit, having the designated access level, shall be able to manually access the following for each detector:

- a. Primary status.
 - b. Device type.
 - c. Present average value.
 - d. Present sensitivity selected.
 - e. Sensor range (normal, dirty, etc.).
3. Weatherproof Duct Housing Enclosure: NEMA 250, Type 4X; NRTL listed for use with the supplied detector for smoke detection in HVAC system ducts.
 4. Each sensor shall have multiple levels of detection sensitivity.
 5. Sampling Tubes: Design and dimensions as recommended by manufacturer for specific duct size, air velocity, and installation conditions where applied.
 6. Relay Fan Shutdown: Fully programmable relay rated to interrupt fan motor-control circuit.

2.8 NOTIFICATION APPLIANCES

A. Manufacturers:

1. SimplexGrinnell LP.
2. Gentex Corp.
3. Siemens Industry, Inc.
4. (Owner Selection)

B. General Requirements for Notification Appliances: Individually addressed, connected to a signaling-line circuit, equipped for mounting as indicated, and with screw terminals for system connections.

C. General Requirements for Notification Appliances: Connected to notification-appliance signal circuits, zoned as indicated, equipped for mounting as indicated, and with screw terminals for system connections.

1. Combination Devices: Factory-integrated audible and visible devices in a single-mounting assembly, equipped for mounting as indicated, and with screw terminals for system connections.

D. Chimes, Low-Level Output: Vibrating type, 75-dBA minimum rated output.

E. Chimes, High-Level Output: Vibrating type, 81-dBA minimum rated output.

F. Horns: Electric-vibrating-polarized type, 24-V dc; with provision for housing the operating mechanism behind a grille. Comply with UL 464. Horns shall produce a sound-pressure level of 90 dBA, measured 10 feet from the horn, using the coded signal prescribed in UL 464 test protocol.

G. Visible Notification Appliances: Xenon strobe lights complying with UL 1971, with clear or nominal white polycarbonate lens mounted on an aluminum faceplate. The word "FIRE" is engraved in minimum 1-inch- high letters on the lens.

1. Rated Light Output:

- a. [15] [30] [75] [110] [177] cd.
- b. 15/30/75/110 cd, selectable in the field.

2. Mounting: Wall mounted unless otherwise indicated.
3. For units with guards to prevent physical damage, light output ratings shall be determined with guards in place.
4. Flashing shall be in a temporal pattern, synchronized with other units.
5. Strobe Leads: Factory connected to screw terminals.
6. Mounting Faceplate: Factory finished, [red] [white].

H. Voice/Tone Notification Appliances:

1. Comply with UL 1480.
2. Speakers for Voice Notification: Locate speakers for voice notification to provide the intelligibility requirements of the "Notification Appliances" and "Emergency Communications Systems" chapters in NFPA 72.
3. High-Range Units: Rated 2 to 15 W.
4. Low-Range Units: Rated 1 to 2 W.
5. Mounting: [Flush] [semirecessed] [or] [surface mounted and bidirectional].
6. Matching Transformers: Tap range matched to acoustical environment of speaker location.

I. Exit Marking Audible Notification Appliance:

1. Exit marking audible notification appliances shall meet the audibility requirements in NFPA 72.
2. Provide exit marking audible notification appliances at the entrance to all building exits.
3. Provide exit marking audible notification appliances at the entrance to areas of refuge with audible signals distinct from those used for building exit marking.

2.9 GRAPHIC ANNUNCIATOR

A. Manufacturers:

1. SimplexGrinnell LP
2. Siemons Industry, Inc.
3. GE UTC Fire & Security
4. (Owner Selection)

B. Graphic Annunciator Panel: Mounted in an aluminum frame with nonglare, minimum 3/16-inch-thick, clear acrylic cover over graphic representation of the facility. Detector locations shall be represented by red LED lamps. Normal system operation shall be indicated by a lighted, green LED. Trouble and supervisory alarms shall be represented by an amber LED.

1. Comply with UL 864.
2. Operating voltage shall be 24-V dc provided by a local 24-V power supply provided with the annunciator.
3. Include built-in voltage regulation, reverse polarity protection, RS 232/422 serial communications, and a lamp test switch.
4. Surface mounted in a NEMA 250, Type 1 cabinet, with key lock and no exposed screws or hinges.
5. Graphic representation of the facility shall be a CAD drawing and each detector shall be represented by an LED in its actual location. CAD drawing shall be at 1/8-inch per foot scale or larger.

6. The LED representing a detector shall flash two times per second while detector is an alarm.

- C. Graphic Annunciator Workstation: PC-based, with fire-alarm annunciator software with historical logging, report generation, and a graphic interface showing all alarm points in the system. PC with operating system software, minimum hard drive, digital display monitor, with wireless keyboard and mouse.

2.10 REMOTE ANNUNCIATOR

- A. Description: Annunciator functions shall match those of fire-alarm control unit for alarm, supervisory, and trouble indications. Manual switching functions shall match those of fire-alarm control unit, including acknowledging, silencing, resetting, and testing.

1. Mounting: Surface cabinet, NEMA 250, Type 1.

- B. Display Type and Functional Performance: Alphanumeric display and LED indicating lights shall match those of fire-alarm control unit. Provide controls to acknowledge, silence, reset, and test functions for alarm, supervisory, and trouble signals.

2.11 ADDRESSABLE INTERFACE DEVICE

- A. General:

1. Include address-setting means on the module.
2. Store an internal identifying code for control panel use to identify the module type.
3. Listed for controlling HVAC fan motor controllers.

- B. Monitor Module: Microelectronic module providing a system address for alarm-initiating devices for wired applications with normally open contacts.

- C. Integral Relay: Capable of providing a direct signal.

1. Allow the control panel to switch the relay contacts on command.
2. Have a minimum of two normally open and two normally closed contacts available for field wiring.

- D. Control Module:

1. Operate notification devices.
2. Operate solenoids for use in sprinkler service.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine areas and conditions for compliance with requirements for ventilation, temperature, humidity, and other conditions affecting performance of the Work.

1. Verify that manufacturer's written instructions for environmental conditions have been permanently established in spaces where equipment and wiring are installed, before installation begins.
- B. Examine roughing-in for electrical connections to verify actual locations of connections before installation.
- C. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.2 EQUIPMENT INSTALLATION

- A. Comply with NFPA 72, NFPA 101, and requirements of authorities having jurisdiction for installation and testing of fire-alarm equipment. Install all electrical wiring to comply with requirements in NFPA 70 including, but not limited to, Article 760, "Fire Alarm Systems."
 1. Devices placed in service before all other trades have completed cleanup shall be replaced.
 2. Devices installed but not yet placed in service shall be protected from construction dust, debris, dirt, moisture, and damage according to manufacturer's written storage instructions.
- B. Connecting to Existing Equipment: Verify that existing fire-alarm system is operational before making changes or connections.
 1. Connect new equipment to existing control panel in existing part of the building.
 2. Connect new equipment to existing monitoring equipment at the supervising station.
 3. Expand, modify, and supplement existing [control] [monitoring] equipment as necessary to extend existing [control] [monitoring] functions to the new points. New components shall be capable of merging with existing configuration without degrading the performance of either system.
- C. Equipment Mounting: Install fire-alarm control unit on concrete base. Comply with requirements for concrete base specified in [Section 03 3000 "Cast-in-Place Concrete."] [Section 03 3053 "Miscellaneous Cast-in-Place Concrete."]
 1. Install seismic bracing. Comply with requirements in Section 26 0548.16 "Seismic Controls for Electrical Systems."
 2. Install dowel rods to connect concrete base to concrete floor. Unless otherwise indicated, install dowel rods on 18-inch centers around the full perimeter of concrete base.
 3. For supported equipment, install epoxy-coated anchor bolts that extend through concrete base and anchor into structural concrete floor.
 4. Place and secure anchorage devices. Use setting drawings, templates, diagrams, instructions, and directions furnished with items to be embedded.
 5. Install anchor bolts to elevations required for proper attachment to supported equipment.
- D. Equipment Mounting: Install fire-alarm control unit on finished floor.

1. Comply with requirements for seismic-restraint devices specified in Section 26 0548.16 "Seismic Controls for Electrical Systems."
- E. Install wall-mounted equipment, with tops of cabinets not more than 78 inches above the finished floor.
1. Comply with requirements for seismic-restraint devices specified in Section 26 0548.16 "Seismic Controls for Electrical Systems."
- F. Manual Fire-Alarm Boxes:
1. Install manual fire-alarm box in the normal path of egress within 60 inches of the exit doorway.
 2. Mount manual fire-alarm box on a background of a contrasting color.
 3. The operable part of manual fire-alarm box shall be between 42 inches and 48 inches above floor level. All devices shall be mounted at the same height unless otherwise indicated.
- G. Smoke- or Heat-Detector Spacing:
1. Comply with the "Smoke-Sensing Fire Detectors" section in the "Initiating Devices" chapter in NFPA 72, for smoke-detector spacing.
 2. Comply with the "Heat-Sensing Fire Detectors" section in the "Initiating Devices" chapter in NFPA 72, for heat-detector spacing.
 3. Smooth ceiling spacing shall not exceed 30 feet.
 4. Spacing of detectors for irregular areas, for irregular ceiling construction, and for high ceiling areas shall be determined according to Annex A in NFPA 72.
 5. HVAC: Locate detectors not closer than 36 inches from air-supply diffuser or return-air opening.
 6. Lighting Fixtures: Locate detectors not closer than 12 inches from any part of a lighting fixture and not directly above pendant mounted or indirect lighting.
- H. Install a cover on each smoke detector that is not placed in service during construction. Cover shall remain in place except during system testing. Remove cover prior to system turnover.
- I. Duct Smoke Detectors: Comply with NFPA 72 and NFPA 90A. Install sampling tubes so they extend the full width of duct. Tubes more than 36 inches long shall be supported at both ends.
1. Do not install smoke detector in duct smoke-detector housing during construction. Install detector only during system testing and prior to system turnover.
- J. Single-Station Smoke Detectors: Where more than one smoke alarm is installed within a dwelling or suite, they shall be connected so that the operation of any smoke alarm causes the alarm in all smoke alarms to sound.
- K. Remote Status and Alarm Indicators: Install in a visible location near each smoke detector, sprinkler water-flow switch, and valve-tamper switch that is not readily visible from normal viewing position.

- L. Audible Alarm-Indicating Devices: Install not less than 6 inches below the ceiling. Install bells and horns on flush-mounted back boxes with the device-operating mechanism concealed behind a grille. Install all devices at the same height unless otherwise indicated.
- M. Visible Alarm-Indicating Devices: Install adjacent to each alarm bell or alarm horn and at least 6 inches below the ceiling. Install all devices at the same height unless otherwise indicated.
- N. Device Location-Indicating Lights: Locate in public space near the device they monitor.
- O. Antenna for Radio Alarm Transmitter: Mount to building structure where indicated. Use mounting arrangement and substrate connection that resists 100-mph wind load with a gust factor of 1.3 without damage.

3.3 PATHWAYS

- A. Pathways above recessed ceilings and in nonaccessible locations may be routed exposed.
 - 1. Exposed pathways located less than 96 inches above the floor shall be installed in EMT.
- B. Pathways shall be installed in EMT.
- C. Exposed EMT shall be painted red enamel.

3.4 CONNECTIONS

- A. For fire-protection systems related to doors in fire-rated walls and partitions and to doors in smoke partitions, comply with requirements in Section 08 7100 "Door Hardware." Connect hardware and devices to fire-alarm system.
 - 1. Verify that hardware and devices are listed for use with installed fire-alarm system before making connections.
- B. Make addressable connections with a supervised interface device to the following devices and systems. Install the interface device less than 36 inches from the device controlled. Make an addressable confirmation connection when such feedback is available at the device or system being controlled.
 - 1. Alarm-initiating connection to smoke-control system (smoke management) at firefighters' smoke-control system panel.
 - 2. Alarm-initiating connection to stairwell and elevator-shaft pressurization systems.
 - 3. Smoke dampers in air ducts of designated HVAC duct systems.
 - 4. Magnetically held-open doors.
 - 5. Electronically locked doors and access gates.
 - 6. Alarm-initiating connection to elevator recall system and components.
 - 7. Alarm-initiating connection to activate emergency lighting control.

8. Alarm-initiating connection to activate emergency shutoffs for gas and fuel supplies.
9. Supervisory connections at valve supervisory switches.
10. Supervisory connections at low-air-pressure switch of each dry-pipe sprinkler system.
11. Supervisory connections at elevator shunt-trip breaker.
12. Data communication circuits for connection to building management system.
13. Data communication circuits for connection to mass notification system.
14. Supervisory connections at fire-extinguisher locations.
15. Supervisory connections at fire-pump power failure including a dead-phase or phase-reversal condition.
16. Supervisory connections at fire-pump engine control panel.

3.5 IDENTIFICATION

- A. Identify system components, wiring, cabling, and terminals. Comply with requirements for identification specified in Section 26 0553 "Identification for Electrical Systems."
- B. Install framed instructions in a location visible from fire-alarm control unit.

3.6 GROUNDING

- A. Ground fire-alarm control unit and associated circuits; comply with IEEE 1100. Install a ground wire from main service ground to fire-alarm control unit.
- B. Ground shielded cables at the control panel location only. Insulate shield at device location.

3.7 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Field tests shall be witnessed by authorities having jurisdiction and engineer.
- B. Manufacturer's Field Service: Engage a factory-authorized service representative to test and inspect components, assemblies, and equipment installations, including connections.
- C. Perform tests and inspections.
- D. Perform the following tests and inspections with the assistance of a factory-authorized service representative:
 1. Visual Inspection: Conduct visual inspection prior to testing.
 - a. Inspection shall be based on completed record Drawings and system documentation that is required by the "Completion Documents, Preparation" table in the "Documentation" section of the "Fundamentals" chapter in NFPA 72.
 - b. Comply with the "Visual Inspection Frequencies" table in the "Inspection" section of the "Inspection, Testing and Maintenance" chapter in NFPA 72;

retain the "Initial/Reacceptance" column and list only the installed components.

2. System Testing: Comply with the "Test Methods" table in the "Testing" section of the "Inspection, Testing and Maintenance" chapter in NFPA 72.
 3. Test audible appliances for the public operating mode according to manufacturer's written instructions. Perform the test using a portable sound-level meter complying with Type 2 requirements in ANSI S1.4.
 4. Test audible appliances for the private operating mode according to manufacturer's written instructions.
 5. Test visible appliances for the public operating mode according to manufacturer's written instructions.
 6. Factory-authorized service representative shall prepare the "Fire Alarm System Record of Completion" in the "Documentation" section of the "Fundamentals" chapter in NFPA 72 and the "Inspection and Testing Form" in the "Records" section of the "Inspection, Testing and Maintenance" chapter in NFPA 72.
- E. Reacceptance Testing: Perform reacceptance testing to verify the proper operation of added or replaced devices and appliances.
- F. Fire-alarm system will be considered defective if it does not pass tests and inspections.
- G. Prepare test and inspection reports.
- H. Maintenance Test and Inspection: Perform tests and inspections listed for weekly, monthly, quarterly, and semiannual periods. Use forms developed for initial tests and inspections.
- I. Annual Test and Inspection: One year after date of Substantial Completion, test fire-alarm system complying with visual and testing inspection requirements in NFPA 72. Use forms developed for initial tests and inspections.

3.8 MAINTENANCE SERVICE

- A. Initial Maintenance Service: Beginning at Substantial Completion, maintenance service shall include 12 months' full maintenance by skilled employees of manufacturer's designated service organization. Include preventive maintenance, repair or replacement of worn or defective components, lubrication, cleaning, and adjusting as required for proper operation. Parts and supplies shall be manufacturer's authorized replacement parts and supplies.
1. Include visual inspections according to the "Visual Inspection Frequencies" table in the "Testing" paragraph of the "Inspection, Testing and Maintenance" chapter in NFPA 72.
 2. Perform tests in the "Test Methods" table in the "Testing" paragraph of the "Inspection, Testing and Maintenance" chapter in NFPA 72.
 3. Perform tests per the "Testing Frequencies" table in the "Testing" paragraph of the "Inspection, Testing and Maintenance" chapter in NFPA 72.

3.9 SOFTWARE SERVICE AGREEMENT

- A. Comply with UL 864.
- B. Technical Support: Beginning at Substantial Completion, service agreement shall include software support for two years.
- C. Upgrade Service: At Substantial Completion, update software to latest version. Install and program software upgrades that become available within two years from date of Substantial Completion. Upgrading software shall include operating system and new or revised licenses for using software.
 - 1. Upgrade Notice: At least 30 days to allow Owner to schedule access to system and to upgrade computer equipment if necessary.

3.10 DEMONSTRATION

- A. Train Owner's maintenance personnel to adjust, operate, and maintain fire-alarm system.

END OF SECTION

SECTION 31 1100 – CLEARING AND GRUBBING

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 SUMMARY

- A. This work shall consist of clearing, grubbing, removing and disposing of all vegetation and debris which are within designated limits occurring inside the property boundary – except objects that 1) are designated to remain or 2) are to be removed in accordance with Section 201 of the Oklahoma Department of Transportation 2009 Standard Specifications for Highway Construction. This work shall also include protecting from injury or defacement all vegetation and objects designated to remain.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS (NOT USED)

PART 3 - EXECUTION

- 3.1 The contractor shall meet the requirements as described in the Oklahoma Department of Transportation 2009 Standard Specifications for Highway Construction, Subsection 201.04.

END OF SECTION

SECTION 31 1110 – SALVAGING TOPSOIL

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 SUMMARY

- A. This work shall consist of salvaging natural topsoil from areas of excavation and embankment to be removed in accordance with Section 205 of the Oklahoma Department of Transportation 2009 Standard Specifications for Highway Construction.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS (NOT USED)

PART 3 - EXECUTION

- 3.1 The contractor shall meet the requirements as described in the Oklahoma Department of Transportation 2009 Standard Specifications for Highway Construction, Subsection 205.04.

END OF SECTION

SECTION 31 2300 – EXCAVATION AND EMBANKMENT

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 SUMMARY

- A. This work shall consist of all excavation, disposal, placement, compaction, and subgrade preparation for all building construction, parking area, drainage areas, and other purposes in conformity with the dimensions and typical sections shown on the plans.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS (NOT USED)

PART 3 - EXECUTION

- A. The contractor shall follow all recommendations provided by the Geotechnical Engineer in the Geotechnical report by PPI dated April 21, 2017 project No. 242380.
- B. Information not covered in the geotechnical report shall be performed in accordance with Section 202 of the Oklahoma Department of Transportation 2009 Standard Specification for Highway Construction.
- C. Before beginning excavation, grading, and embankment operations in any area the area shall be completely cleared and grubbed.
- D. The suitability of material to be placed in embankments shall be subject to approval by the Geotechnical Engineer. All unsuitable material shall become the property of the Contractor. Ownership of unsuitable material implies the responsibility to dispose of the salvaged material in accordance with all applicable local, state, and federal rules and regulation. The Owner will not allow the Contractor to bury or otherwise dispose of material within the owner's property without the Owner's and Geotechnical Engineer's approval.
- E. If and when the Contractor's excavating operations encounter artifacts of historical or archaeological significance, the operations shall be temporarily discontinued. At the direction of the Architect/Engineer, the Contractor shall excavate the site in such a manner as to preserve the artifacts encountered and allow for their removal. Such specialty excavation will be paid for as extra work.
- F. Those areas outside of the pavement and building pad areas in which the top layer of soil material has become compacted by hauling or other activities of the Contractor shall be scarified and disked to the depth of 4 inches , in order to loosen and pulverize the soil.
- G. If it is necessary to interrupt existing surface drainage, sewers or under-drainage, conduits, utilities, or similar underground structures, the Contractor shall be responsible for and shall take all necessary precautions to preserve them or provide temporary services. When such facilities are encountered, the Contractor shall, at his/her own expense, satisfactorily repair or pay the cost of all damage to such facilities or structures that may result from any of the Contractor's operations during the period of this contract.

SCHEDULE 1 - TESTING REQUIREMENTS

PART 4 - ASTM D 698 **Standard Test Methods for Laboratory Compaction Characteristics of Soil Using Standard Effort**

PART 5 - ASTM D 1556 **Standard Test Method for Density and Unit Weight of Soil in Place by the Sand-Cone Method**

PART 6 - ASTM D 1557 **Standard Test Methods for Laboratory Compaction Characteristics of Soil Using Modified Effort**

PART 7 - ASTM D 2167 **Standard Test Method for Density and Unit Weight of Soil in Place by the Rubber Balloon Method**

END OF SECTION

SECTION 31 3116 – TERMITE AND INSECT CONTROL (ADD ALTERNATE)

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 1 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SECTION INCLUDES

- A. Termite particle barrier treatment.

1.3 REFERENCE STANDARDS

- A. U.S. Environmental Protection Agency:
 - 1. Pesticide Registration Manual – Chapter 13 - Devices

1.4 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Submit manufacturer's product data and application instructions for each product indicated.

1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Installer Qualifications: Use an experienced installer and adequate number of skilled personnel who are thoroughly trained and experienced in the application of self-adhesive membranes.
- B. Obtain self-adhesive flashing membrane materials from a single manufacturer regularly engaged in manufacturing the product.

1.6 DELIVERY, STORAGE AND HANDLING

- A. Deliver materials to site in manufacturer's original, unopened containers and packaging, with labels clearly identifying product name and manufacturer.
- B. Store materials in a clean, dry area in accordance with manufacturer's instructions.

1.7 ENVIRONMENTAL REQUIREMENTS

- A. Protect rolls from direct sunlight until ready for use

1.8 WARRANTY

- A. Warranty against termites is provided by the installing pest control operator. Warranty is for one year starting at the date of installation of the product. Building owner and installing pest control operator may mutually extend the termite protection with a contract which calls for annual termite inspection.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 MANUFACTURER

- A. Basis of Design: Polyguard Products Inc.
- B. Substitutions: See Section 01 – Substitution Procedures.

2.2 MATERIALS

- A. TERM Particle Barrier: Selected quartz or granite particles which have been sorted and sized to block prevalent termite species in the project area.

1. PHYSICAL PROPERTIES

Typical Properties of TERM Particle Barrier	
Property	Typical Results
Fineness Module	3.83
Weighted Particle Size	1.72
Hardness – Mohrs Hardness Scale	> 6
Gradient Angularity <i>Mean gradient angularity</i>	2000 – 3000

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 MANUFACTURER'S INSTRUCTIONS AND PRODUCT LABEL

- A. Polyguard TERM Particle Barrier is to be installed only by a pest management professional who is:
 - 1. Licensed to install pest control products within the jurisdiction where the project is located.
 - 2. Trained by Polyguard Products in the proper installation of the TERM Particle Barrier.
- B. Compliance: Comply with requirements as listed on the Polyguard TERM Particle Barrier U.S. EPA label, guide specification, and product data sheet.

3.2 APPLICATION OF TERM PARTICLE BARRIER

- A. TERM Particle Barrier should be installed at all exposed vertical concrete/masonry surfaces inside crawl space and exterior perimeter, wherever vertical concrete/masonry comes in contact with earth.

- B. TERM Particle Barrier perimeter treatment should be installed after completion of all landscaping activities. Landscaping can cause breaching of the particle barrier.
- C. Dig a triangular, wedge shaped trench around the entire perimeter of the crawlspace, interior and exterior. Approximate wedge dimensions should be 4" across away from the wall, 5" down the wall, and 6" along the slope (hypotenuse) of the triangle. Alternately, pest control operator can choose to dig a 4" x 4" square trench. Special shovel can be provided at no charge from Polyguard Products at time of order.
- D. Clean the vertical face of the concrete/masonry so the surface will be completely clean.
- E. Hose any residual dirt from the vertical face if necessary.
- F. Fill the trench to grade level with Polyguard TERM Particle Barrier.
- G. Contact Jill Heidorf (469) 500-9402 to order and arrange start-up. Allow 2 weeks for Polyguard to arrange to be on-site to supervise start-up with pest control operator. Polyguard will provide 1 day of supervision at no charge.

END OF SECTION

SECTION 32 1123 – AGGREGATE BASE COURSES

PART 1 – GENERAL

1.1 SUMMARY

- A. This item consists of a base course composed of crushed aggregates constructed on a prepared course in accordance with these specifications and in conformity to the dimensions and typical cross sections shown on the plans.

1.2 SUBMITTALS

- A. Provide submittals for all aggregate base courses materials as per the General Conditions. The submittal shall include a submittal form to identify Project, Contractor, Subcontractor or Supplier, and pertinent Contract Document references.

PART 2 – PRODUCTS

2.1 AGGREGATE

- A. Aggregates shall consist of ODOT Aggregate Base Type A in accordance with section 703.01, Aggregate for Aggregate Bases, of the Oklahoma Department of Transportation 2009 Standard Specification for Highway Construction.

PART 3 – EXECUTION

3.1 EXECUTION

- A. The Contractor shall meet the requirements as described in the Oklahoma Department of Transportation 2009 Standard Specification for Highway Construction, Section 303.

3.2 ACCEPTANCE, SAMPLING AND TESTING FOR DENSITY

- A. All sampling and testing shall be the responsibility of the Contractor.
- B. Aggregate base course shall be accepted for density on a lot basis. A lot will consist of one day's production where it is not expected to exceed 2400 square yards (2000 square meters). A lot will consist of one-half day's production where a day's production is expected to consist of between 2400 and 4800 square yards (2000 and 4000 square meters).
- C. Each lot shall be divided into two equal sublots. One test shall be made for each subplot. Sampling locations will be determined by the Engineer on a random basis in accordance with statistical procedures contained in ASTM D 3665.
- D. Each lot will be accepted for density when the field density is at least 100 percent of the maximum density of laboratory specimens prepared from samples of the base course material delivered to the job site. The specimens shall be compacted and tested in

accordance with ASTM D 698. The in-place field density shall be determined in accordance with ASTM D 1556 or D 2167. If the specified density is not attained, the entire lot shall be reworked and/or recompacted and two additional random tests made. This procedure shall be followed until the specified density is reached.

- E. In lieu of the core method of field density determination, acceptance testing may be accomplished using a nuclear gage in accordance with ASTM D 2922 and ASTM D 3017. The gage should be field calibrated in accordance with paragraph 4 of ASTM D 2922. Calibration tests shall be conducted on the first lot of material placed that meets the density requirements.
- F. Use of ASTM D 2922 results in a wet unit weight, and when using this method, ASTM D 3017 shall be used to determine the moisture content of the material. Calibration and Standardization shall be conducted in accordance with ASTM standards.
- G. If a nuclear gage is used for density determination, two random readings shall be made for each subplot.

3.3 FINISHING

- A. The surface of the aggregate base course shall be finished by blading or with automated equipment especially designed for this purpose.
- B. In no case will the addition of thin layers of material be added to the top layer of base course to meet grade. If the elevation of the top layer is 1/2 inch (12 mm) or more below grade, the top layer of base shall be scarified to a depth of at least 3 inches (75 mm), new material added, and the layer shall be blended and recompacted to bring it to grade. If the finished surface is above plan grade, it shall be cut back to grade and rerolled.

3.4 TOLERANCES

- A. The finished surface shall not vary more than 3/8 inch (9 mm) when tested with a 16-foot (4.8 m) straightedge applied parallel with or at right angles to the centerline. Any deviation in excess of this amount shall be corrected by the Contractor at the Contractor's expense.
- B. The completed thickness of the base course shall be within 1/2 inch (12 mm) of the design thickness. Four determinations of thickness shall be made for each lot of material placed. The lot size shall be consistent with that specified in paragraph 3.2. Each lot shall be divided into four equal sublots. One test shall be made for each subplot. Sampling locations will be determined by the Engineer on a random basis in accordance with procedures contained in ASTM D 3665. Where the thickness is deficient by more than 1/2 inch (12 mm), the Contractor shall correct such areas at no additional cost by excavating to the required depth and replacing with new material. Additional test holes may be required to identify the limits of deficient areas.

3.5 MAINTENANCE

- A. The base course shall be maintained in a condition that will meet all specification requirements until the work is accepted. Equipment used in the construction of an adjoining section may be routed over completed portions of the base course, provided no damage results and provided that the equipment is routed over the full width of the base course to avoid rutting or uneven compaction.
- B. The Contractor shall remove all survey and grade hubs from the base courses prior to placing any bituminous surface course.

3.6 TESTING REQUIREMENTS

ASTM C 29 Unit Weight of Aggregate

ASTM C 88 Soundness of Aggregates by Use of Sodium Sulfate or Magnesium Sulfate

ASTM C 117 Materials Finer than 75 μ m (No. 200) Sieve in Mineral Aggregates by Washing

ASTM C 131 Resistance to Degradation of Small-Size Coarse Aggregate by abrasion and impact in the Los Angeles Machine

ASTM C 136 Sieve Analysis of Fine and Coarse Aggregates

ASTM D 75 Sampling Aggregate

ASTM D 422 Particle Size Analysis of Soils

ASTM D 693 Crushed Aggregate for Macadam Pavements

ASTM D 698 Moisture-Density Relations of Soils and Soil-Aggregate Mixtures Using 5.5-lb (2.49-kg) Rammer and 12-in (305mm) Drop

ASTM D 1556 Density of Soil in Place by the Sand-Cone Method

ASTM D 1557 Test for Laboratory Compaction Characteristics of Soil Using Modified Effort

ASTM D 2167 Density and Unit Weight of Soil in Place by the Rubber Ballon Method

ASTM D 2419 Sand Equivalent Value of Soils and Fine Aggregate

ASTM D 2922 Density of Soil and Soil-Aggregate in Place by Nuclear Methods

ASTM D 3017 Water Content of Soil and Rock in Place by Nuclear Methods

ASTM D 3665 Random Sampling of Construction Materials

ASTM D 4318 Liquid Limit, Plastic Limit, and Plasticity Index of Soils

END OF SECTION

303-1(a-d) 09
11-9-12

**OKLAHOMA DEPARTMENT OF TRANSPORTATION
SPECIAL PROVISION
FOR
AGGREGATE BASE**

These Special Provisions revise, amend, and where in conflict, supersede applicable sections of the 2009 Standard Specifications for Highway Construction, English and Metric.

(Replace with the following:)

303.01 DESCRIPTION

This work consists of providing and placing one or more layers of aggregates, and specified additives, on a prepared subgrade or subbase using conventional equipment and methods for incorporating water into the aggregate base material and spreading it onto the subgrade.

303.02 MATERIALS

Provide aggregate material for the gradation type shown on the Plans (Type A, Type B or Type C) in accordance with Subsection 703.01, "Aggregate for Aggregate Base."

During aggregate production, do not change the approved gradation type or source, unless the Engineer approves another gradation type or source in writing.

303.03 EQUIPMENT

A. Stationary Plant

Provide a central mixing plant of the pugmill type, rotary drum type, or continuous type of mixer. Establish stationary plant location within reasonable proximity to the project in order to deliver the aggregate base material at the proper moisture and consistency requirements.

B. Traveling Plant

Provide a traveling plant of the type that picks up the material from a windrow or from a blanket of loose material. The mixer may be of the pugmill or auger type, or of the transverse shaft type that mixes the materials by means of revolving paddles that lift all the loose material from the working area.

Ensure the traveling plant has provisions for introducing the water at the time of mixing, through a metering device, or by other approved methods, and can apply the water by means of controls which will supply a uniform ratio of water in the approximate amount required for optimum moisture.

303-1(b-d) 09
11-9-12

Ensure the device by which the mixing machine picks up the material can be controlled and operated on each pass of the mixer as to pick up all the material to be treated and at the same time avoid cutting into the working area.

C. Compactor

Provide a self propelled, steel wheeled compactor weighing at least 10 ton [9 metric ton].

303.04 CONSTRUCTION METHODS

A. Preparation of Subgrade

Prepare the subgrade in accordance with Subsection 310.04.B, “Subgrade Method B for All Other Subbases, Bases, Pavement, or Surface,” or as required by the Contract.

B. Preparation of Existing Base Course

Prepare existing aggregate base course in accordance with Section 311, “Processing Existing Base and Surface,” or as required by the Contract.

C. Mixing Aggregate Base

Uniformly mix aggregate base materials and water using a stationary or traveling plant at outside locations, or using on-grade mixing methods to achieve a uniform material near optimum moisture. On-grade mixing methods must not cause instability to the underlying subgrade material due to moisture saturation. If instability is caused, the methods must be suspended and improved to eliminate that condition.

(1) Stationary Plant

Uniformly mix the aggregate and water in an approved central mixing plant (pugmill, rotary drum, or continuous mixer). Add water during the mixing operation to achieve the proper moisture content for compaction in accordance with Subsection 303.04.E, “Shaping and Compaction.”

(2) Traveling Plant

Perform the following steps to uniformly mix the aggregate and water using a traveling plant:

- Clean the specified area of vegetation and deleterious materials.
- Overlay the specified area with at least 3 in [75 mm] of base material and compact to achieve a work table for mixing operations.
- If the mixing machine requires a blanket of material, spread the windrow to a uniform depth and width consistent with the machine’s capability.
- Add water during the mixing operation to achieve the proper moisture content for compaction in accordance with Subsection 303.04.E, “Shaping and Compaction.” Avoid

303-1(c-d) 09
11-9-12

using excess water during mixing and compaction to prevent undue softening of the subgrade.

- Ensure the device used to pick up the material does not contaminate the mixture by cutting into the work table.
- Continue mixing until the aggregate and water are evenly distributed and a uniform mixture is produced, meeting specification requirements.
- During the mixing process, adjust the mixing equipment to prevent material from moving in a longitudinal direction.

(3) On-Grade Mixing

During the mixing of the aggregate base material and water, moisten the base material as close to optimum moisture content as practical prior to its placement to minimize the amount of water that must be uniformly mixed on the subgrade. Apply additional water as needed accurately and uniformly throughout the length of the section being placed so that no excess wet or dry spots exist in the finished aggregate base. Avoid application of excess water, during both mixing and compaction, so that undue softening of the subgrade will not develop.

D. Spreading

Transport the mixed aggregate base materials to the roadbed and place using equipment and methods that will not damage the underlying subgrade or separator fabric. Spread the aggregate base material so that once compacted, the base will be within acceptable tolerances to the final slope and elevation shown in the plans. Make adjustments to equipment and methods as needed to:

- minimize segregation and degradation of aggregate base material,
- provide sufficient moisture content of aggregate base material (near optimum moisture content) without over saturating the underlying subgrade material, and
- obtain final slope and elevations within acceptable tolerances.

Place aggregate base material in layers of from 4 in to 8 in [100 mm to 200 mm] compacted thickness.

Spread and compact the aggregate base material over the full width of the roadbed before placing a succeeding layer. Finish compacted layers to the grades, elevations, and thicknesses shown on the Plans. Correct segregated areas at no additional cost to the Department. Stagger longitudinal and transverse joints at least 1 ft [0.3 m] in each succeeding layer.

When constructing successive layers of aggregate base, minimize disturbance to the surface of the previously placed layer. Adjust placement procedures or equipment to ensure compliance with the Contract requirements.

E. Compaction

Compact each layer to the proper density: no less than 98 percent of maximum density for Type A Aggregate Base, and 95 percent for Types B and C Aggregate Base. Determine maximum density in

303-1(d-d) 09
11-9-12

accordance with AASHTO T-180, Method D. Measure the in-place field density in accordance with AASHTO T-310; direct transmission is the preferred method (rod projected into base as opposed to back-scatter mode). Provide sufficient moisture content in the aggregate base material at the time of placement near the optimum moisture content to enable proper compaction. Prevent damage to aggregate particles during compaction. Moisture content will aid in the base compaction and reduce the compactive effort necessary and minimize the breakdown of the gradation of the material.

If during compaction the moisture content drops below optimum moisture such that the required percent compaction cannot be obtained, apply water uniformly over the base materials as needed to ensure a uniform texture, firmly keyed aggregates, and proper consolidation of layers.

Cure the aggregate base material such that there is no free standing water before applying the prime coat or the succeeding layer of aggregate base or pavement section. If the density required by the Contract is achieved, the Department will not consider moisture content as an acceptance criterion.

F. Tolerances

Finish the aggregate base in accordance with Subsection 301.04.A, “Tolerances.”

303.05 METHOD OF MEASUREMENT

The Engineer will measure the volume of the compacted in-place *Aggregate Base Type A, Type B, and Type C* by multiplying the completed length of aggregate base by the area of the typical section shown on the Plans.

303.06 BASIS OF PAYMENT

The Department will pay for each pay item at the contract unit price per the specified pay unit as follows:

Pay Item:	Pay Unit:
<i>(A) AGGREGATE BASE TYPE A</i>	Cubic Yard [Cubic Meter]
<i>(B) AGGREGATE BASE TYPE B</i>	Cubic Yard [Cubic Meter]
<i>© AGGREGATE BASE TYPE C</i>	Cubic Yard [Cubic Meter]

SECTION 32 1310 – CONCRETE PAVING

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 SUMMARY

- A. This work shall consist of constructing portland cement concrete pavement and the utility pad, as specified, on a prepared base course in accordance with these Specifications and in conformity with the lines, grades, thicknesses, and typical cross sections shown on the Plans or established by the Engineer.
- B. When reference is made to the "ODOT Specification(s)" or subsection thereof it shall mean the Oklahoma Department of Transportation (ODOT) 2009 Standard Specifications for Highway Construction.

1.2 SUBMITTALS

- A. Provide submittals for all portland cement concrete materials as per the General Conditions. The submittal shall include a submittal form to identify Project, Contractor, Subcontractor or Supplier, and pertinent Contract Document references.
- B. NOTE: Do not place any portland cement concrete until the mix design is approved

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

- 2.1 This Specification covers all materials, classification, mix designs, proportioning, and testing of portland cement concrete.
 - A. Portland cement concrete shall conform to Article 701 of the ODOT Specifications and all other applicable references.
 - B. The portland cement concrete shall be Class A.
 - 1. The portland cement concrete (PCC) mix shall have a minimum 28-day compressive strength of 4000 pounds per square inch (psi).
 - 2. PCC shall be placed at a 1 to 3 inch slump.
 - 3. PCC shall have an entrained air content of 5 to 7%.

PART 3 - EQUIPMENT

- 3.1 Equipment and tools necessary for handling materials and performing all parts of the work shall be the responsibility of the Contractor as to design, capacity, and mechanical condition. The equipment shall be at the job site sufficiently ahead of the start of construction operations.
 - A. All equipment shall conform to Article 414 of the ODOT Specification and all other applicable references.

PART 4 - EXECUTION

- A. The Contractor shall meet the requirements as described in the Oklahoma Department of Transportation 2009 Standard Specification for Highway Construction, Section 414.

END OF SECTION

SECTION 32 1516 – SIDEWALK

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 SUMMARY

- A. This work shall consist of constructing sidewalks and tactile warning devices, as specified, on a prepared base course in accordance with these Specifications and in conformity with the lines, grades, thicknesses, and typical cross sections shown on the Plans or established by the Engineer.
- B. When reference is made to the "ODOT Specification(s)" or subsection thereof it shall mean the Oklahoma Department of Transportation (ODOT) 2009 Standard Specifications for Highway Construction.

1.2 SUBMITTALS

- A. Provide submittals for all sidewalk materials as per the General Conditions. The submittal shall include a submittal form to identify Project, Contractor, Subcontractor or Supplier, and pertinent Contract Document references.
- B. NOTE: Do not place any sidewalk until the mix design is approved.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

- 2.1 This Specification covers all materials, classification, mix designs, proportioning, and testing sidewalk.
 - A. Portland cement concrete shall conform to Article 701 of the ODOT Specifications and all other applicable references.
 - B. The portland cement concrete shall be Class A.

PART 3 - EQUIPMENT

- 3.1 Equipment and tools necessary for handling materials and performing all parts of the work shall be the responsibility of the Contractor as to design, capacity, and mechanical condition. The equipment shall be at the job site sufficiently ahead of the start of construction operations.
 - A. All equipment shall conform to Article 610 of the ODOT Specification and all other applicable references.

PART 4 - EXECUTION

- A. The Contractor shall meet the requirements as described in the Oklahoma Department of Transportation 2009 Standard Specification for Highway Construction, Section 610.

END OF SECTION

SECTION 33 1115 – LIQUEFIED PETROLEUM GAS PIPING POLYETHYLENE (PE)

PART 1 – GENERAL

1.1 SUMMARY

- A. This section covers liquefied petroleum gas (LPG) polyethylene - PE piping and fittings which is specified in the plans and specifications.

1.2 SUBMITTALS

- A. Provide submittals for all polyethylene pipe and fittings as per the General Conditions. The submittal shall include a submittal form to identify Project, Contractor, Subcontractor or Supplier, and pertinent Contract Document references.

PART 2 – PRODUCTS

- A. LPG Piping and Fittings. PE Pipe shall conform to ASTM D1835, latest version, International Fuel Gas Code (IFGC), International Fire Code, and NFPA 58.
- B. The pipe shall have product traceability. This shall be accomplished by the inclusion of a product code into the print line of all products. This shall notate the manufacturer, the date of manufacture, the lot and supplier of raw material, the location of manufacture, and the production shift on which the product was produced.
- C. Sand Bedding. Sand bedding materials shall conform to ASTM D2321 Class 2.
- D. Tracer Tape. Tracer tape materials may be those commercially available for this purpose, or a single THHN or THWN AWG #12 copper wire.

PART 3 – EXECUTION

- A. INSTALLATION. The LPG Piping shall be installed in accordance with IFGC latest version.
- B. All testing shall be done in accordance with ASTM D1835 in the presence of the Resident Project Representative or ENGINEER. Any piping system which fails any test shall be re-laid or repaired and retested at no expense to the OWNER.
- C. Tracer tape shall be installed over the centerline of the pipe to allow locating the line with magnetic pipeline locators. Tracer tape shall be installed immediately above the initial backfill. The final 6 feet of the wire shall be bare to provide a ground. The beginning of the tracer tape shall be raised and fastened to the valve vault and line markers in a readily accessible location.

END OF SECTION

SECTION 34 4130 – PAVEMENT STRIPING

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 SUMMARY

- A. This work shall consist of furnishing and installing all pavement striping as specified on the Plans in accordance with the Oklahoma Department of Transportation 2009 Standard Specifications for Highway Construction, Section 711 Traffic Stripe.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

- 2.1 The materials shall meet the requirements specified in the Oklahoma Department of Transportation 2009 Standard Specifications for Highway Construction, Section 711 Traffic Stripe.

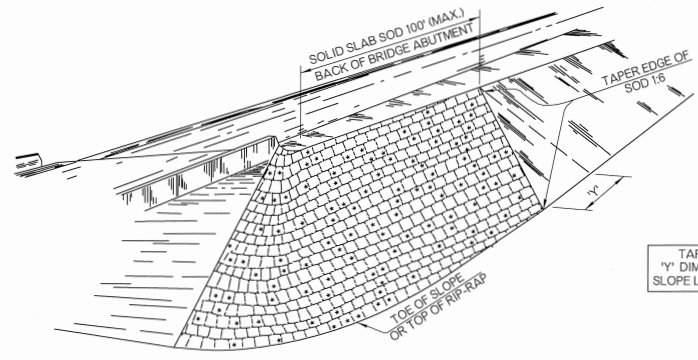
- A. All striping material shall be paint.

PART 3 - EQUIPMENT

- 3.1 The Contractor shall meet the requirements as described in the Oklahoma Department of Transportation 2009 Standard Specification for Highway Construction, Section 854.

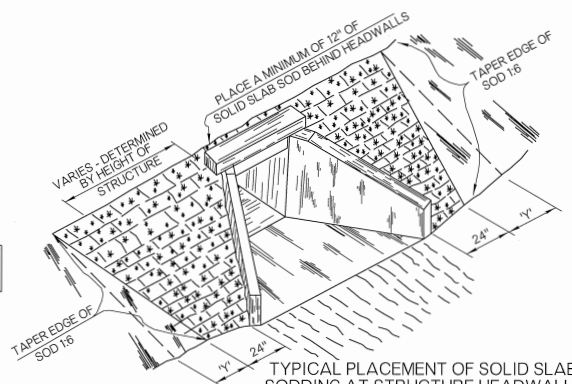
END OF SECTION

OKLAHOMA DEPARTMENT OF TRANSPORTATION		
STANDARD REVISIONS		
DESCRIPTION	DATE	



TAPER NOTE
"Y" DIMENSION =
SLOPE LENGTH x 0.17

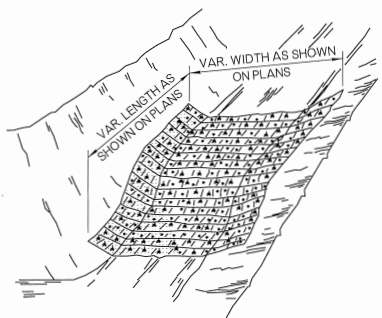
TYPICAL PLACEMENT OF SOLID SLAB SODDING ON FILL SLOPES, APPROACHES TO OVERPASSES AND BRIDGES.



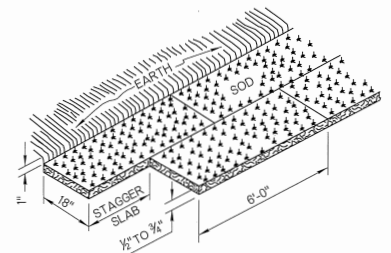
TYPICAL PLACEMENT OF SOLID SLAB SODDING AT STRUCTURE HEADWALLS

GENERAL NOTES

1. ALL CONSTRUCTION AND MATERIAL REQUIREMENTS SHALL BE IN ACCORDANCE WITH THE 2009 ODOT STANDARD SPECIFICATIONS.
2. SOLID SLAB SOD SHALL BE PLACED IN HORIZONTAL ROWS WITH THE LONGEST SIDE OF EACH SLAB RUNNING PARALLEL TO THE ROADWAY, AND THE SLABS IN ALTERNATE ROWS STAGGERED HALF THE LENGTH OF EACH INDIVIDUAL SLAB. ENSURE THE ROWS RUN PARALLEL TO THE ROADWAY.
3. SLABS SHALL BE CUT AND HARVESTED WITH A COMMERCIAL SOD CUTTER TO THE DIMENSIONS SHOWN, THEN LOADED, TRANSPORTED AND HANDLED ON PALLETS.
4. AFTER PLACEMENT OF SOLID SLAB SOD, EARTH AT THE OUTER EDGES OF THE PLACEMENT SHALL BE BACKFILLED AND LOOSELY COMPACTED TO AT LEAST 1" ABOVE THE TOP OF THE SOLID SLAB SODDING.
5. STAKE SOD ON ALL SLOPES 1:2 OR STEEPER, AND ON ANY AREAS THAT ARE IN SUCH CONDITION THAT THERE IS DANGER OF SOD SLIPPING, PERFORM STAKING CONCURRENTLY WITH SOD PLACEMENT AND PRIOR TO TAMPING WITH SOUND WOODEN STAKES APPROXIMATELY 1 INCH SQUARE OR 1 INCH IN DIAMETER AND NOT LESS THAN 12 INCHES IN LENGTH, OR USE METAL STAPLES IN PLACE OF WOODEN STAKES. PLACE, STAKE AND STAPLE THE SOD WHERE NECESSARY, AND AS DETERMINED BY THE ENGINEER.




TYPICAL PLACEMENT OF SOLID SLAB SODDING IN DITCHES



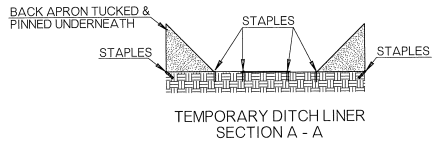
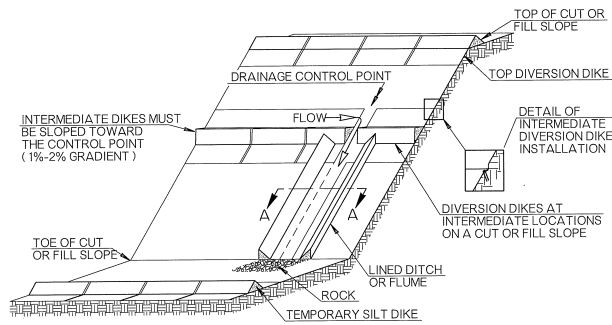
SOLID SLAB SODDING (MARCH 1 THRU AUGUST 31)

THE PLACEMENT OF SOLID SLAB SOD SHALL BE RESTRICTED TO THE PERIOD FROM MARCH 1 THRU AUGUST 31, UNLESS OTHERWISE APPROVED BY THE ENGINEER.

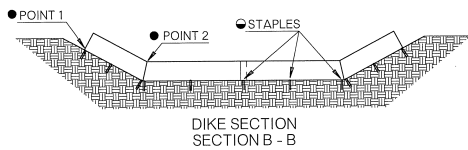
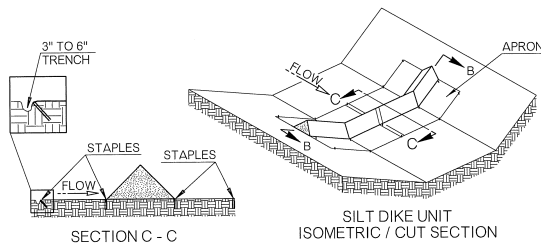
BASIS OF PAYMENT		
ITEM NO.	ITEM	UNIT
230(A)	SOLID SLAB SODDING	.SY

APPROVED BY ROADWAY ENGINEER: *Calvin F. A.* DATE: *02/16/10*
 ROADWAY DESIGN DIVISION STANDARD
 SOLID SLAB SODDING

OKLAHOMA DEPARTMENT OF TRANSPORTATION		
STANDARD REVISIONS		
DESCRIPTION	DATE	

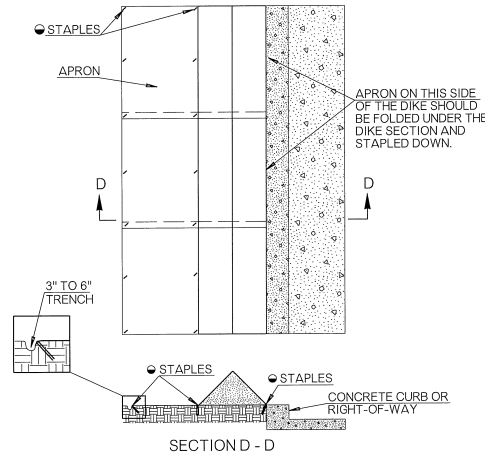


TEMPORARY SILT DIKE INSTALLATION FOR DIVERSION DIKES AND / OR DITCH LINER

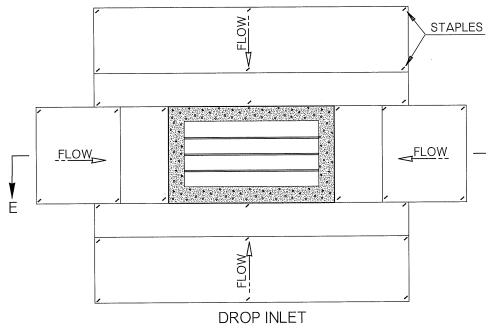


TEMPORARY SILT DIKE INSTALLATION FOR ROADWAY DITCH OR DRAINAGE DITCH

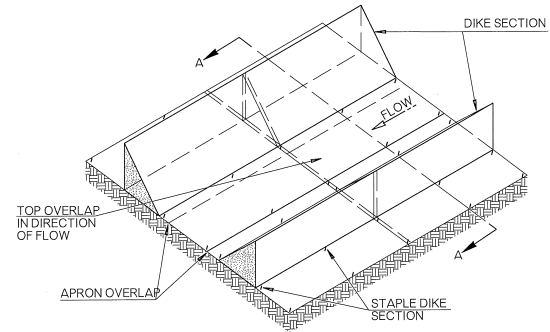
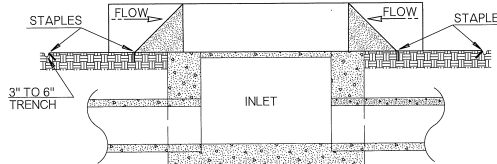
- POINT "1" MUST BE HIGHER THAN POINT "2" TO ENSURE THAT WATER FLOWS OVER THE DIKE AND NOT AROUND THE ENDS.
- STAPLES SHALL BE PLACED WHERE THE UNITS OVERLAP AND IN THE CENTER OF THE UNIT AS SHOWN ON THE DIAGRAM.



TEMPORARY SILT DIKE INSTALLATION FOR CONTINUOUS BARRIER



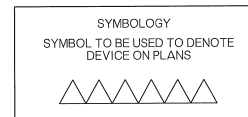
TEMPORARY SILT DIKE INSTALLATION FOR DROP INLETS



TEMPORARY SILT DIKE INSTALLATION FOR TEMPORARY DITCH LINER

GENERAL NOTES

- ALL CONSTRUCTION AND MATERIAL REQUIREMENTS SHALL BE IN ACCORDANCE WITH THE 2009 ODOT STANDARD SPECIFICATIONS.
- THIS WORK SHALL CONSIST OF FURNISHING, INSTALLING, AND MAINTAINING THE TEMPORARY SILT DIKE. THE DIKES SHALL BE USED AS A CONTINUOUS LINE BARRIER AT THE TOE OF SLOPE OR ACROSS THE ROADWAY DITCH TO CONTAIN SEDIMENT AND MINIMIZE EROSION, OR AS DIRECTED BY THE ENGINEER. THESE DIKES SHALL BE INSTALLED AND LOCATED AS SOON AS CONSTRUCTION WILL ALLOW OR AS DIRECTED BY THE ENGINEER.
- TEMPORARY SILT DIKE SHALL BE TRIANGULAR SHAPED HAVING A HEIGHT OF AT LEAST 8" TO 10" IN THE CENTER WITH EQUAL SIDES AND A 16" TO 20" BASE. THE TRIANGULAR SHAPED INNER MATERIAL SHALL BE URETHANE FOAM MEETING THE REQUIREMENTS FOR ASTM D3574. THE OUTER COVER SHALL BE A WOVEN GEOTEXTILE FABRIC PLACED AROUND THE INNER MATERIAL & ALLOWED TO EXTEND BEYOND BOTH SIDES OF THE TRIANGLE 24" TO 36". THIS FABRIC SHOULD BE MILDEW RESISTANT, ROT-PROOF AND RESISTANT TO HEAT AND ULTRAVIOLET RADIATION MEETING REQUIREMENTS FOR SEDIMENT CONTROL IN AASHTO M 288. THE DIKES SHALL BE ATTACHED TO THE GROUND WITH WIRE STAPLES. THE STAPLES SHALL BE NO. 11 GAUGE WIRE AND BE AT LEAST 6" TO 8" LONG. STAPLES SHALL BE PLACED AS SHOWN ON THESE DETAILS.
- ACCEPTED TEMPORARY SILT DIKE, MEASURED AS PROVIDED ABOVE, WILL BE PAID FOR AT THE CONTRACT UNIT PRICE BID FOR TEMPORARY SILT DIKE. PRICE BID WILL INCLUDE THE COST OF FURNISHING THE DIKES, INSTALLING, MAINTAINING AND REMOVAL WHEN DIRECTED BY THE ENGINEER.



NOTE: SILT DIKE SHOULD ONLY BE USED FOR DROP INLETS IN SUMP LOCATIONS. FOR DROP INLETS ON GRADE, USE SEDIMENT TRAPS OR OTHER CONTROLS.

BASIS OF PAYMENT		
ITEM NO.	ITEM	UNIT
221 (F)	TEMPORARY SILT DIKE	LF

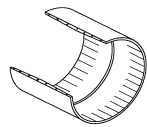
NOTE: SILT DIKES ARE ONLY FURNISHED IN 7' INCREMENTS.

APPROVED BY ROADWAY ENGINEER: *Calvin F. A.* DATE: *04/16/15*

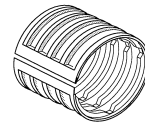
ROADWAY DESIGN DIVISION STANDARD

TEMPORARY SILT DIKE

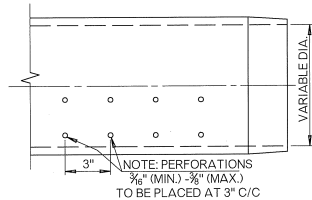
OKLAHOMA DEPARTMENT OF TRANSPORTATION	
STANDARD REVISIONS	
DESCRIPTION	DATE



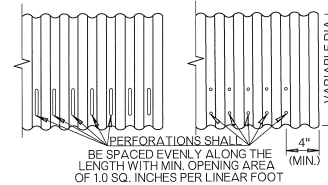
TYPICAL COUPLING FOR PVC PIPE UNDERDRAIN 1/4 SECTION REMOVED



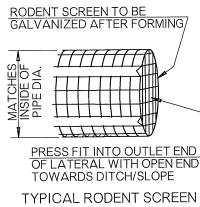
TYPICAL CORRUGATED COUPLING OR AN APPROVED EQUAL



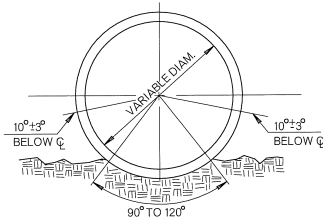
NOTE: PERFORATIONS 3/8" (MIN.) - 3/4" (MAX.) TO BE PLACED AT 3" C/C



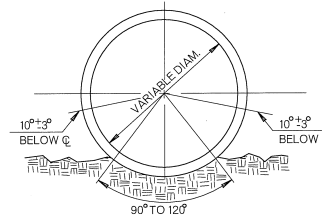
PERFORATIONS SHALL BE SPACED EVENLY ALONG THE LENGTH WITH MIN. OPENING AREA OF 1.0 SQ. INCHES PER LINEAR FOOT



TYPICAL RODENT SCREEN



POLYVINYL (PVC) PIPE UNDERDRAIN



CORRUGATED POLYETHYLENE PIPE UNDERDRAIN

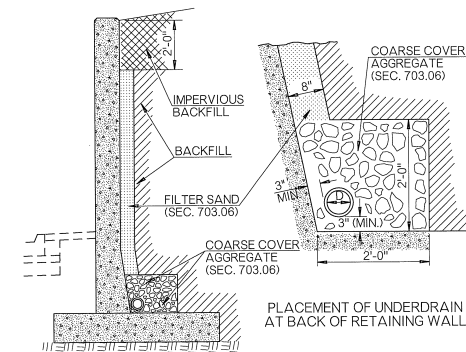
INSTALLATION TECHNIQUE: (12" DIAMETER OR SMALLER)

PERFORATED PIPE UNDERDRAIN, WHEN INSTALLED IN A TRENCH, SHALL BE BEDDED ON 4" OF COARSE COVER AGGREGATE. THE INSTALLED PIPE SHALL THEN BE CAREFULLY BACKFILLED WITH THE REMAINING COARSE COVER AGGREGATE TO 8" ABOVE THE TOP OF THE PIPE. FILTER SAND SHALL BE INSTALLED TO APPROXIMATELY 6" BELOW THE ORIGINAL NATURAL GROUND AS APPROVED BY THE ENGINEER. THE LAYER OF COARSE COVER AGGREGATE SHALL BE PAID FOR AS PIPE UNDERDRAIN COVER MATERIAL AND SHALL CONFORM TO SEC. 703.06. FILTER SAND SHALL BE PAID FOR AS CLASS C STANDARD BEDDING MATERIAL AND SHALL CONFORM TO SEC. 703.06.

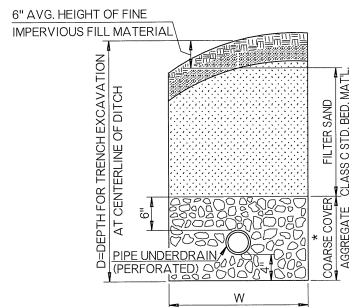
NON-PERFORATED PIPE UNDERDRAIN, WHEN INSTALLED IN A TRENCH, SHALL BE BEDDED IN A 4" LAYER CONSISTING OF COARSE AGGREGATE COVER MATERIAL OR A 50-50 MIX OF COARSE AGGREGATE COVER MATERIAL AND FILTER SAND. THIS LAYER OF COVER MATERIAL SHALL CONFORM TO SEC. 703.06, AND SHALL BE PAID FOR AS PIPE UNDERDRAIN COVER MATERIAL. THE REMAINING BACKFILL MAY BE NATIVE SOIL REMOVED IN THE TRENCHING OPERATION. FILTER SAND OR BACKFILLED ACCORDING TO THE ENGINEER. COST TO BE INCLUDED IN OTHER ITEMS OF WORK. SEE GENERAL NOTE NUMBERS 5 & 6.

GENERAL NOTES

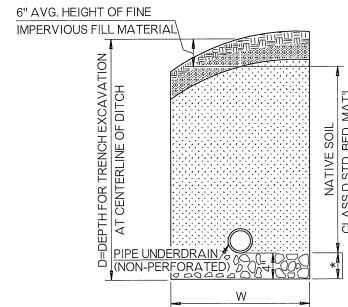
- ALL CONSTRUCTION AND MATERIAL REQUIREMENTS SHALL BE IN ACCORDANCE WITH THE 2009 ODOT STANDARD SPECIFICATIONS.
- THE EXTENT, LOCATION AND DEPTH OF DRAINS MAY BE ADJUSTED BY THE ENGINEER TO SUIT CONDITIONS FOUND DURING CONSTRUCTION.
- COST OF ALL FITTINGS TO BE INCLUDED IN THE PRICE BID PER LINEAR FOOT OF PIPE UNDERDRAIN.
- FOR PIPE UNDERDRAIN OF UP TO 12" IN DIAMETER, W = 24" WITHOUT SHEETING AND SHORING, W = 36" WHEN SHEETING AND SHORING IS USED. SEE ROADWAY STANDARD SPI-4 FOR SHEETING & SHORING NOTES.
- FOR PIPE UNDERDRAIN LARGER THAN 12" IN DIAMETER, SEE ROADWAY STANDARD SPI-4 FOR ADDITIONAL TRENCH EXCAVATION DETAILS.
- NON-PERFORATED UNDERDRAIN PIPES, LARGER THAN 12", SHALL BE TREATED AS PIPE CONDUITS: I.E. PAY ITEMS SHALL CONSIST OF TRENCH EXCAVATION AND BEDDING MATERIAL. SEE STANDARD SPB-1.
- MATERIALS SHOWN HERE ARE TYPICAL ONLY AND ARE NOT THE ONLY CHOICE FOR SUBSURFACE DRAINAGE PURPOSES.
- OUTLET OPENING SHALL HAVE INSTALLED A REMOVABLE RODENT SCREEN HAVING A WIRE MESH DESIGN & 0.23" TO 0.50" (NOM.) SQUARE OPENINGS. SCREEN MATERIAL MAY BE STAINLESS STEEL OR GALVANIZED WITH WIRE THICKNESS OF BETWEEN 0.023" & 0.038". AFTER SHAPING AND FABRICATION, RODENT SCREEN DESIGN SHALL BE APPROVED BY THE ENGINEER.
- THE FINAL SECTION OF THE OUTLET LATERAL CONDUIT SHALL BE NON-PERFORATED, SCHEDULE 40 OR TYPE S HIGH DENSITY POLYETHYLENE AND A MINIMUM 20'-0" IN LENGTH, INCLUDING COUPLINGS.
- FOR DETAILS OF OUTLET LATERAL HEADWALL, SEE ROADWAY STANDARD PED-3.



PLACEMENT OF UNDERDRAIN AT BACK OF RETAINING WALL



DETAIL TRENCH EXCAVATION PERFORATED PIPE UNDERDRAIN INSTALLATIONS * PIPE UNDERDRAIN COVER MATERIAL



DETAIL TRENCH EXCAVATION NON-PERFORATED PIPE UNDERDRAIN INSTALLATIONS * PIPE UNDERDRAIN COVER MATERIAL

BASIS OF PAYMENT		
ITEM NO.	ITEM	UNIT
613 (H)	■ PERFORATED PIPE UNDERDRAIN ROUND	LF
613 (I)	■ NON-PERFORATED PIPE UNDERDRAIN RND.	LF
613 (Q)	■ OUTLET LATERAL HEADWALL	EA
613 (T)	STANDARD BEDDING MATERIAL, CLASS C	CY
613 (U)	PIPE UNDERDRAIN COVER MATERIAL	CY
613 (V)	TRENCH EXCAVATION	CY

■ DIMENSION TO BE SPECIFIED IN INCHES

APPROVED BY: *Calvin A.* DATE: *04/14/15*
 ROADWAY DESIGN DIVISION STANDARD
 PIPE UNDERDRAIN INSTALLATION

DESCRIPTION	REVISIONS	DATE
MODIFIED GENERAL NOTE 4.		7/09/201
ISSUED		4/02/2012

WINDLOAD COORDINATES FOR SQUARE POST AT 90 MPH

SIGN CENTROID	ALLOWABLE SIGN AREA (FT ²) PER SINGLE POST *								
	FHWA APPROVED FOR: 2 POST PER SIGN					FHWA APPROVED FOR: 1 POST PER SIGN			
	1/2"x12ga perf.	3/4"x14ga perf.	1 1/4"x12ga perf.	2"x14ga perf.	2"x12ga perf.	2 1/4"x14ga perf.	2 1/4"x12ga perf.	2 1/2"x12ga perf.	
16.5'	3.46	3.90	4.85	5.19	6.48	6.67	8.34	10.44	
16'	3.57	4.02	5.00	5.36	6.68	6.88	8.60	10.76	
15.5'	3.68	4.15	5.17	5.53	6.90	7.11	8.88	11.11	
15'	3.81	4.29	5.34	5.71	7.13	7.34	9.17	11.48	
14.5'	3.94	4.44	5.52	5.91	7.37	7.60	9.49	11.87	
14'	4.08	4.59	5.72	6.12	7.64	7.87	9.83	12.30	
13.5'	4.23	4.76	5.93	6.35	7.92	8.16	10.19	12.75	
13'	4.39	4.95	6.16	6.59	8.22	8.47	10.59	13.24	
12.5'	4.57	5.15	6.41	6.86	8.55	8.81	11.01	13.77	
12'	4.76	5.36	6.67	7.14	8.91	9.18	11.47	14.35	
11.5'	4.96	5.59	6.96	7.45	9.30	9.58	11.97	14.97	
11'	5.19	5.85	7.28	7.79	9.72	10.01	12.51	15.65	
10.5'	5.44	6.13	7.63	8.16	10.18	10.49	13.11	16.40	
10'	5.71	6.43	8.01	8.57	10.69	11.01	13.76	17.22	
9.5'	6.01	6.77	8.43	9.02	11.25	11.59	14.49	18.12	
9'	6.34	7.15	8.90	9.52	11.88	12.24	15.29	19.13	
8.5'	6.72	7.57	9.42	10.08	12.58	12.96	16.19	20.26	
8'	7.14	8.04	10.01	10.71	13.36	13.77	17.20	21.52	

* USE A MULTIPLIER OF 2 OR 3 FOR 2 & 3 POST INSTALLATIONS.

GENERAL NOTES

- POST TUBE SHALL MEET ASTM A1011 GRADE 50. POST TUBE GALVANIZED AS PER ASTM A653 GRADE 90.
- HEAVY DUTY ANCHOR TUBE SHALL MEET ASTM A500 GRADE B STRUCTURAL TUBE AND STEEL SHALL BE HOT DIP GALVANIZED PER ASTM A123.
- THE UPPER SIGN POST SHALL TELESCOPE INSIDE THE ANCHOR TUBE A MINIMUM OF 12". ANCHOR TUBE SHALL BE MINIMUM OF 30" WITH 3" MAXIMUM AS SHOWN IN DETAILS.
- THE CONCRETE FOOTING SHALL BE CLASS "C" CONCRETE OR AS DIRECTED BY THE ENGINEER. CONCRETE INCLUDED IN THE COST OF SQUARE TUBE POST.
- THE NON-REINFORCED CIRCULAR CONCRETE FOOTING, ANCHOR TUBE AND HARDWARE SHALL BE INCLUDED IN THE UNIT PRICE BID FOR THE SQUARE TUBE POST.
- SEE STANDARD DRAWINGS SSA1-1, MSD5-1, MSD6-1, SBS1-1, SBS2-1, AND SBS3-1 (LATEST REVISIONS) FOR PROPER BRACKET PLACEMENT ON THE SIGN AND POST SPACING FOR TWO POST INSTALLATION.
- FOR VERTICAL AND LATERAL CLEARANCE, SEE STANDARD DRAWING GMS1-1, AND GMS2-1-(LATEST REVISION).
- SIGNS SHALL BE ATTACHED TO THE POSTS WITH BOLTS AS SHOWN ON STANDARD DRAWING SSA1-1-(LATEST REVISION).

BASIS OF PAYMENT		
ITEM NO.	ITEM	UNIT
851(C)	SQUARE TUBE POST	LF



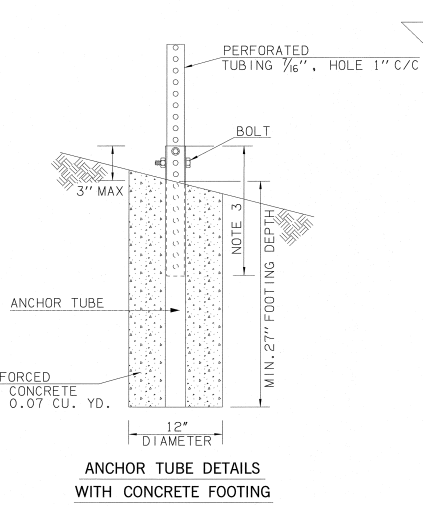
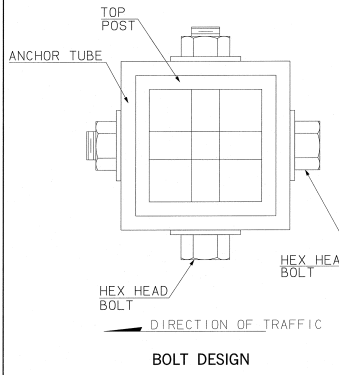
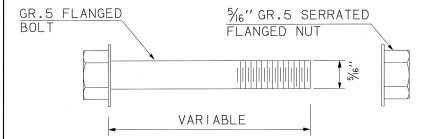
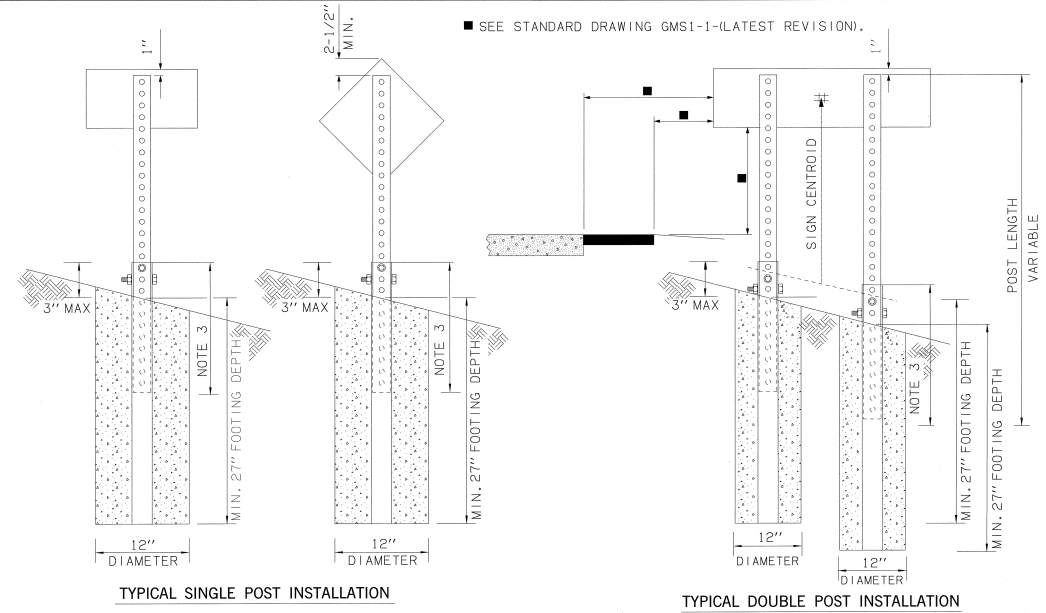
APPROVED BY TRAFFIC ENGINEER: *Thy Sany* DATE: 4/9/12

TRAFFIC STANDARD
SQUARE TUBE POST DETAILS

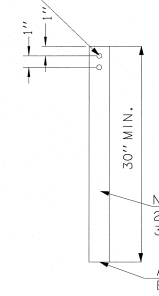
2009 SPECIFICATIONS

SSP-1	02
T-138	

SEE STANDARD DRAWING GMS1-1-(LATEST REVISION).



NON-PERFORATED ANCHOR TUBE SHALL HAVE TWO (2) 1/16" DIAMETER HOLES SPACED 1" ON CENTER ALONG THE CENTERLINE OF EACH OF THE FOUR SIDES.



HEAVY DUTY ANCHOR TUBE

- DRAWING NOT TO SCALE -

Surface Preparation for Painting Wood

Procedure code:

630002S

Division:

Wood and Plastics

Section:

Wood Treatment

Last Modified:

08/17/2016

PART 1---GENERAL

1.01 SUMMARY

- A. This specification provides guidance on preparing wood surfaces for painting.
- B. Wood surfaces scheduled to be refinished with a transparent finish shall have existing coating stripped and sanded prior to application of new coatings.
- C. Wood surfaces scheduled to be finished with an opaque finish shall either be stripped or sanded as required to produce a smooth substrate for application of the new coatings.
- D. See also:
 - 1. "Primers and Paints for Wood"
 - 2. "General Guidelines for Painting Exterior and Interior Surfaces"
 - 3. "Supplemental Guidelines for Removing Paint from Interior and Exterior Wood Surfaces"
 - 4. "Chemically Removing Paint from Wood Features"
 - 5. "Removing Paint from Wood Features Using Thermal Methods"

PART 2---PRODUCTS

2.01 MANUFACTURERS

- A. American International Tool
 - Cranston, RI
 - 1-800-932-5872
- B. Benjamin Moore
 - Montvale, NJ
 - 855-724-6802
- C. PPG Architectural Coatings
 - 1-800-441-9695

2.02 MATERIALS

NOTE: Chemical products are sometimes sold under a common name. This usually means that the substance is not as pure as the same chemical sold under its chemical name. The grade of purity of common name substances, however, is usually adequate for stain removal work, and these products should be purchased when available, as they tend to be less expensive. Common names are indicated below by an asterisk (*).

- A. Paste Wood Filler: Solvent-based, air-drying, paste-type wood filler for use on open-grain wood on interior wood surfaces such as "Benwood Wood Grain Filler 238" (Benjamin Moore) or approved equal.

- B. Trisodium Phosphate (TSP):

CAUTION: TSP IS BANNED IN SOME STATES. REGULATORY INFORMATION AND INFORMATION ON ALTERNATIVE OR EQUIVALENT CHEMICALS MAY BE REQUESTED FROM THE ENVIRONMENTAL PROTECTION AGENCY (EPA) REGIONAL OFFICE AND/OR THE STATE OFFICE OF ENVIRONMENTAL QUALITY.

- 1. TSP is a strong base-type powdered cleaning chemical sold under several brand names.
- 2. Other chemical or common names include Sodium Orthophosphate; Tribasic sodium phosphate; Trisodium orthophosphate; TSP*; Phosphate of soda. Available from chemical supply house, grocery store, supermarket or hardware store.
- 3. Products sold as substitutes for TSP may contain soda ash (sodium carbonate) and/or zeolites.
 - a. However, sodium carbonate is not as strongly basic as trisodium phosphate, making it less effective in demanding applications.
 - b. Zeolites are used in laundry detergents and rapidly break down in water, claiming to be essentially nonpolluting.
- 4. Potential Hazards: CAUSTIC TO FLESH, DAMAGING TO THROAT IF INHALED.
- 5. Safety Precautions: Wear proper personal protective equipment, and avoid inhalation, contact with skin and eyes, and do not ingest.

-OR-

- C. Non-ammoniated detergent such as "Tide"

-OR-

D. Liquid bleach containing 5% sodium hypochlorite (common household bleach)

E. Boiled linseed oil

F. Pure steam-distilled turpentine (must be clean and clear so that it will not adversely affect the texture or durability of the paint)

G. Caulking Compound (listed in order of recommended usage):

1. Polyurethanes

- a. Easily workable
- b. Paintable
- c. 15-20 year life span
- d. Limited availability

2. Polysulfides

- a. Slow-drying
- b. Can be sanded and painted
- c. Highly elastic
- d. Limited availability (most frequently used for marine repairs)

3. Butyls

- a. Paintable
- b. Cannot be sanded
- c. 7-10 year life span

4. Silicones

- a. Some can be painted
- b. Generally cannot be sanded

5. Acrylic Latex:

- a. Paintable
- b. 5-10 year lifespan

H. Clean, potable water

2.02 EQUIPMENT

A. Sanding blocks, sanding sponges, orbital sander, all with a variety of grits.

B. HEPA-rated sanding vacuum.

C. Stiff, natural and nylon bristle brushes

PART 3---EXECUTION

3.01 PREPARATION

A. Protection: Spot-prime exposed ferrous metals such as exposed nails heads that could come in contact with surfaces that are to be painted over with water-based paints. Use a suitable corrosion-inhibiting primer capable of preventing flash rusting and compatible with the coating being used.

B. Lead paint hazards

1. NOTE: SANDING DUST MAY CONTAIN LEAD; REGULATIONS PROVIDED BY THE EPA REGIONAL OFFICE AND/OR THE STATE OFFICE OF ENVIRONMENTAL QUALITY CONCERNING THE HANDLING OF LEAD-BASE PAINT MUST BE FOLLOWED.
2. NOTE: SURFACES SHOULD BE TESTED FOR LEAD CONTENT IN ADVANCE OF WORK. IF THE TEST IS POSITIVE AND YOU ARE NOT CERTIFIED TO HANDLE LEAD-ABATEMENT TASKS, IT IS ILLEGAL FOR YOU TO PERFORM FURTHER WORK.
 - a. As of 2010, those who perform indoor or outdoor renovation, repair, and painting projects that disturb lead-based paint in various facilities that were built before 1978 must be certified through the EPA, trained, and follow specific work practices to prevent lead contamination.
 - b. Violators can be fined up to \$37,500 per occurrence, per day.
3. For further lead paint abatement information, consult resources produced by leading experts, including the EPA, HUD, NCPTT and the Building Research Council.

C. Surface Preparation:

1. Lightly sand all surfaces, either by hand or with a sheet orbital sander, using fine grade sandpaper.
 - a. Chemical paint removers often raise the wood grain. Any rough fibers of raised grain will need to be sanded smooth as they will otherwise weaken the paint film causing premature paint failure.
 - b. Thermal methods of paint removal often leave behind hard particles of paint residue. These will also need to be removed prior to repainting to ensure a smooth paint finish.
 - c. Other paint removal technologies include steam generators (like those used for wallpaper removal) and infrared paint stripping.
2. If only limited paint removal is required, feather edges of sound paint to provide a smooth transition between the old and the new paint. Use either hand methods or a sheet orbital sander.

NOTE: BELT SANDERS SHOULD ONLY BE USED BY EXPERIENCED PERSONNEL. THEY WORK VERY QUICKLY AND IT IS EASY TO DAMAGE THE WOOD SUBSTRATE IF THEY ARE NOT USED CAREFULLY.

- D. Scrape and clean small, dry, seasoned knots and apply a thin coat of white shellac or other recommended knot sealer before application of putty or plastic wood filler to finish surface imperfections. Sand smooth when dried.
- E. Fill all nail holes, voids, surface defects, etc. prior to refinishing.
1. Putty stop holes where nails are set and screws countersunk on all finished woodwork.
 2. Use putty or spackle to repair voids, cracks, minor splits, and similar surface defects in finished woodwork that is to be painted or stain-varnish finished.
- F. Recondition wood to ensure a tight bond between the new paint and the wood. Wood that is not reconditioned after paint removal may absorb too much of the binder in the paint, resulting in poor binding of the prime coat.
1. Mix 2 parts boiled linseed oil with 1 part pure steam-distilled turpentine.
 2. Apply liberally with a brush and allow to dry.
 3. Repeat as necessary until dry surface has a slight sheen.
- G. If all paint has not been removed, wash the painted surfaces to remove all grease, dirt and mildew, and to ensure adequate adhesion of the prime coat.
1. Traditionally, a solution of 3 quarts warm water mixed with 2/3 cup trisodium phosphate (TSP) and 1/2 cup NON-AMMONIATED detergent has been used for this cleaning process. Before attempting this, be sure to read the TSP cautions in 2.02 B. above, and consider alternatives to TSP use.
 2. To combat a mildew problem, add 1 quart of liquid bleach to solution. For stubborn mildew, straight bleach may be necessary.
 3. Scrub surfaces with a medium bristle brush and rinse with clean, clear water. Make sure the surface is completely rinsed before painting.
 4. NOTE: WHEN TSP IS MIXED WITH WATER, IT FORMS FREE ALKALI. THIS FREE ALKALI WILL CAUSE OIL-BASED PAINTS TO BECOME SOAPY SO THAT THEY WILL NOT STICK TO THE SUBSTRATE. RINSE SUBSTRATE THOROUGHLY WITH CLEAN WATER BEFORE PROCEEDING.
 5. NOTE: DETERGENTS THAT CONTAIN SODIUM CARBONATES WILL ALSO PREVENT OIL-BASED PAINTS FROM STICKING TO SUBSTRATE AND SHOULD THEREFORE BE AVOIDED OR THOROUGHLY RINSED. CHECK LABELS FOR INGREDIENTS.
 6. CAUTION: DO NOT MIX AMMONIA WITH CHLORINE BLEACH. A POISONOUS GAS WILL RESULT! For the same reason, do not utilize bleach on bird droppings.
- H. Apply a water repellent or water repellent preservative (WRP) to all exterior items that are subject to extreme weather conditions, that are especially dry or that may have been consolidated.
1. These exterior items include windows, cornices, or other severely peeling or exposed wood features.
 2. See "Preparing a Non-Toxic Water-Repellent Preservative" and "Applying a Water-Repellent Preservative to Wood" for guidance on preparation and application.
 3. It is generally beneficial to apply a water repellent or a water repellent preservative to any unpainted wood that is to be repainted, but especially to exposed exterior wood.
- I. Caulk any end grain wood that will be subject to water infiltration and any places where wood trim pieces or door and window frames meet wall surfaces.
- J. Wood trim which has been removed, or new pieces to be installed, may be "back-primed," i.e. painted along the end grain for additional moisture-proofing. When transparent finish is required, backprime with spar varnish.

Applying a Semi-Transparent or Opaque Stain to Wood

Procedure code:

630003S

Division:

Wood and Plastics

Section:

Wood Treatment

Last Modified:

08/09/2016

PART 1---GENERAL

1.01 SUMMARY

- A. This specification provides guidance on applying a semi-transparent or opaque stain to wood surfaces. This coating will prolong the service life of wood and provide some protection against agents of deterioration.
- B. NOTE: IF THE WOOD WAS ORIGINALLY FINISHED WITH A FULL-BODY PAINT, IT SHOULD BE REPAINTED RATHER THAN STAINED, AS THE VISUAL APPEARANCE OF STAIN IS NOT COMPATIBLE WITH THAT OF PAINT. HOWEVER, SOME STAINS MAY BE SUITABLE REPLACEMENTS FOR WHITEWASH PAINT. CONSULT THE REGIONAL HISTORIC PRESERVATION OFFICER (RHPO) FOR GUIDANCE AND RECOMMENDATIONS.
- C. Natural causes of wood deterioration include decay, ultraviolet degradation, insect infestation and excess moisture.
- D. Some types of problems resulting from the weathering process include:
1. Fungi and/or mildew growth.
 2. Warped boards.
 3. Loose fasteners.
 4. Changes in surface texture resulting in cracks and checks.
- E. In addition to opaque paints, various so-called "natural" finishes and colored stains provide this necessary protection. And, like paints, proper surface preparation and application are vital to long lasting protection.
- F. See "General Project Guidelines". These guidelines should be reviewed prior to performing this procedure and should be followed, when applicable, along with recommendations from the RHPO. These guidelines cover the following sections:
1. Safety Precautions
 2. Historic Structures Precautions
 3. Submittals
 4. Quality Assurance
 5. Delivery, Storage and Handling
 6. Project/Site Conditions
 7. Sequencing and Scheduling
 8. General Protection (Surface and Surrounding)

1.02 DEFINITIONS

- A. Semi-Transparent Penetrating Stains: Thin, moderately-pigmented water repellents and water-repellent preservatives (WRPs) that penetrate the wood, thereby allowing the natural grain and texture to show through.
1. The addition of the pigment protects the wood against ultraviolet degradation and increases the durability of the finish.
 2. Semi-transparent penetrating stains made from WRPs are recommended because:
 - a. They provide additional protection against decay.
 - b. They penetrate the wood rather than forming a film.
 - c. They will not peel, flake or blister.
- B. Solid Color (Opaque) Stains: Provide an opaque finish with a slightly lower concentration of pigment than regular paints.
1. They result in a flat finish which hides the natural color and grain of the wood but maintain the original texture.
 2. Oil-based or acrylic-based (acrylic-based recommended).
 3. They form a thin film on the surface of the wood and are therefore subject to peeling, flaking, etc., just as paint is.

1.03 DELIVERY, STORAGE AND HANDLING

- A. Stains shall be in sealed containers that legibly show the designated name, formula or specification number, batch number, color, quantity, date of manufacture, manufacturer's formulation number, and manufacturer's directions, including any warnings and special precautions and name of manufacturer.
- B. Stains shall be stored on the project site and shall be stored to prevent freezing.

C. Stains shall be kept covered and safeguards taken to prevent fire.

1.04 PROJECT/SITE CONDITIONS

Environmental Requirements:

- A. Unless otherwise recommended by the manufacturer, the ambient temperature shall be between 50 degrees Fahrenheit and 95 degrees Fahrenheit when applying either a stain or WRP.
- B. Do not apply when the relative humidity exceeds 85% or the moisture content of the wood exceeds 12% as measured by an electronic moisture meter.
- C. Do not apply a stain in the direct sun. They shall be applied only when the surface to be treated is in the shade and the sun is shining on the opposite elevation. The west elevation should be treated in the morning when the sun is shining on the east elevation; the north elevation should be treated around noon when the sun is shining on the south elevation; the east elevation should be treated in the afternoon when the sun is shining on the west elevation; and the south elevation should be treated late in the afternoon when it is in full shade.
- D. Do not apply stains to damp surfaces, in misty or rainy weather, in the snow or where there is visible ice or frost on the surfaces.
- E. For optimal results when using a latex stain do not apply when the temperature is expected to go below 50 degrees Fahrenheit within 24 hours of application. To prevent the stain from drying too quickly on hot, dry days, the surface can be slightly dampened before the application of a latex stain. Be sure to follow all manufacturers' instructions.

1.05 MAINTENANCE

Maintenance of Semi-Transparent Penetrating Oil-Based Stains Finish:

- A. The life expectancy of these stains varies tremendously depending on whether one coat or two coats of stain were applied initially. A single coat, applied to smooth wood should last 2 to 4 years.
- B. A two-coat system, however, should last up to 8 years depending on the exposure.
- C. Coastal exposures or cold environments especially at high altitudes will deteriorate more quickly, as will most southern exposures.
- D. A loss of color is a good indication that the finish must be renewed.
- E. Clean surfaces with a stiff, nonferrous bristle brush to remove dirt and loose wood fibers.
- F. If the surface has mildewed, wash with bleach and detergent, rinse and let dry completely before applying a new coat of stain.
- G. NOTE: Because weathered wood is more porous and will therefore allow stain to penetrate more, subsequent applications of stain will last longer than the initial application.

PART 2---PRODUCTS

2.01 MANUFACTURERS

A. Benjamin Moore

Montvale, NJ 07645

855-724-6802

B. Cabot Premium Woodcare

Salem, NH 03079

1-800-877-8246

C. PPG Architectural Coatings

1-800-441-9695

D. Sherwin-Williams

Cleveland, OH

216-566-2000

2.02 MATERIALS

NOTE: All stains shall be from the same manufacturer to avoid problems with penetration and coverage. Different batches of stain, even from the same manufacturer, should also be avoided for the same reasons.

- A. Oil-modified alkyd semi-transparent penetrating stain such as "Acry-Shield Deck, Fence & Siding Alkyd/Oil Semi-Transparent Stain" (PPG Architectural Coatings), or approved equal. Other manufacturers are listed in Section 2.01 above.
 - 1. Oil/alkyd-based semi-transparent penetrating stains, which contain a wood preservative, are recommended for use over latex-based products. Latex-based stains do not penetrate the surface and are subject to peeling, flaking, etc.
 - 2. These stains are most effective on rough lumber and plywood, smooth lumber, weathered wood and flat-grained surfaces of dense species that do not hold paint well.
 - 3. They can also be used over other penetrating finishes which have weathered to the point of needing to be renewed.
 - 4. Do not apply over paint, solid- color (opaque) stains or varnish, or on smooth plywood.

-OR-

Solid color (opaque) stain

- 1. Though both oil- and acrylic-based solid color stains are available, the acrylic-based stains are recommended here and by the USDA's Forest Products Laboratory.
- 2. Opaque stains are recommended for:
 - a. Transitioning from a semitransparent penetrating stain or an opaque oil stain to a lighter color.
 - b. Covering a previously creosoted surface.
 - c. Covering new, close-pored wood species such as Southern yellow pine.
- 3. Like latex paint, acrylic-based opaque stains are also more resistant to mildew, easy to apply and easy to clean-up with soap and water.
- 4. Oil-based opaque stains may be successfully used on fresh, clean wood
- 5. Oil-based opaque stains are NOT recommended for:

- a. Previously-painted wood, even if all of the paint has been removed.
- b. Reapplication over existing oil-based opaque stains.
- c. In both cases an uneven, splotchy appearance can be the result.

6. Solid color stains, either oil- or latex-based, are NOT recommended for flat, horizontal surfaces such as window sills, handrails, porch floors, or decks.

B. One of the following types of caulking compounds:

1. Polyurethanes

- a. Easily workable.
- b. Paintable.
- c. 15-20 year lifespan.
- d. Limited availability, see Section 2.01.

2. Polysulfides

- a. Slow-drying.
- b. Paintable.
- c. Can be sanded.
- d. Highly elastic.
- e. Limited availability, see Section 2.01.

3. Butyls

- a. Paintable.
- b. Cannot be sanded.
- c. 7-10 year lifespan.

4. Silicones

- a. Some can be painted.
- b. Generally not sanded.

5. Acrylic Latex

- a. For exterior work.
- b. Should generally be limited to application on tight, narrow joints.
- c. Short lifespan.

2.03 EQUIPMENT

Brushes:

- A. Use natural bristle paint brushes for oil/alkyd stains. Precondition by soaking in raw linseed oil for 24 hours.
- B. Use nylon bristle brushes for latex stains.
- C. Do not use the same brush for both types of stain.
- D. For thin, runny stains, foam pad applicators can be used.
- E. Stiff natural bristle scrub brushes should also be on hand.

PART 3---EXECUTION

3.01 PREPARATION

Surface Preparation: Like any paint system, the surface to be treated must be clean and free of any loose, rough wood fibers, loose paint or varnish, mildew, grease and dust. The surface must be as meticulously prepared for a stain as it would be if it were being painted. See "Surface Preparation for Painting Wood" for guidance on preparing wood surfaces for recoating.

3.02 ERECTION, INSTALLATION, APPLICATION

A. Mixing the Stain:

- 1. Pour off the top oils to a smaller container.
- 2. Stir the remaining contents until well-mixed.
- 3. Add back the top oils and mix thoroughly again.
- 4. If possible, mix the entire amount in one container, i.e. use a five-gallon paint bucket to mix 2-3 gallons of stain. This will allow more vigorous and thorough mixing without fear of spilling.
- 5. When the first batch of stain is about 2/3 gone, stir the remaining stain into a new batch of stain. This will help even out any differences in color and pigment concentrations between cans.
- 6. Throughout the application, stir the stain often to keep the pigments and oils well-mixed.

B. Applying a semi-transparent (oil-based) penetrating stain:

- 1. NOTE: The application of a semi-transparent penetrating stain is best performed with a brush. Sprayers and rollers may be used but it is difficult to achieve using either of these methods. For stains that are especially thin, foam applicators will help control the application.
- 2. When using a commercial stain, follow all manufacturers' instructions.
- 3. One gallon of a semi-transparent oil-based penetrating stain will cover approximately 200-400 square feet when applied to a smooth surface, and 100-200 square feet when applied to a rough or weathered surface.

4. For dense species of wood such as Douglas fir or Southern pine, let the wood weather for a year before staining.
 - a. Prior to allowing the wood to sit for a year, treat it with a WRP. See "Applying a Water-Repellent Preservative to Wood" for guidance.
 - b. By allowing the wood to sit for a year, its surface becomes more porous, allowing the first coat of stain to penetrate more deeply and resulting in a more durable finish.
 5. Start at the top of the area to be stained and work down, applying the stain to a small number of boards or a single panel at a time. This will help avoid lap marks. If possible, stop at a logical breaking point such as the end of a clapboard or at a door or window.
 6. NOTE: DO NOT LET THE FRONT EDGE OF A FRESHLY-STAINED AREA TO DRY BEFORE BEGINNING THE NEXT SECTION.
 7. For rough or weathered surfaces, apply two (2) successive coats of the stain.
 - a. Brush on the first coat of stain, again working in small, logical areas. Allow each coat to soak into the wood for 20 to 60 minutes before applying the second coat, but do not allow the first to dry completely.
 - b. About an hour after the application of the second coat of stain wipe off any excess stain with a cloth, sponge, or brush which has been slightly dampened with the stain.
 8. When staining over a weathered penetrating natural finish, brush with a stiff bristle brush to remove dust and loose wood fibers.
 9. NOTE: Do not use ferrous brushes or wools. These can leave small iron particles on the surface of the wood.
 - a. Certain water-soluble extractives naturally found in some woods such as western red cedar, redwood, Douglas fir and oak can react with the iron particles, causing blue-black staining.
 - b. Pentachlorophenol, a common wood preservative often found in some WRPs and semi-transparent penetrating stains, can also cause loose iron particles to corrode, which will also result in blue-black staining.
 10. After applying the new coat of stain, carefully examine the surface.
 - a. A dull, flat surface will indicate that the stain has evenly penetrated the wood.
 - b. A slightly glossy surface will indicate that penetration of the stain was uneven resulting in a less durable surface which will need to be renewed more often.
 11. During application, if it is possible, remove any trim pieces which are to be stained a different color because it is difficult to cut in stain.
 12. For better control and more even coverage and penetration, pre-stain any new wood.
- C. Applying a solid color (opaque) stain:
1. NOTE: Opaque stains react much the same way as do oil-based and latex paints. Brush application is the best but a roller may also be used.
 2. Follow the same procedures outlined for semi-transparent penetrating stains in Section 3.02 B. above.

3.03 ADJUSTING/CLEANING

Apply any caulk after staining has been complete and water repellent or WRP has been applied, because caulks are not stainable.

Cleaning And Refinishing Of Woodwork

Procedure code:

640005S

Source:

National Capitol Region Specifications

Division:

Wood and Plastics

Section:

Architectural Woodwork

Last Modified:

07/28/2017

PART 1---GENERAL

1.01 SUMMARY

- A. This procedure includes guidance on cleaning and refinishing both shellacked and varnished woodwork.
- B. See 01100-07-S for general project guidelines to be reviewed along with this procedure. These guidelines cover the following sections:
 - 1. Safety Precautions
 - 2. Historic Structures Precautions
 - 3. Submittals
 - 4. Quality Assurance
 - 5. Delivery, Storage and Handling
 - 6. Project/Site Conditions
 - 7. Sequencing and Scheduling
 - 8. General Protection (Surface and Surrounding)

These guidelines should be reviewed prior to performing this procedure and should be followed, when applicable, along with recommendations from the Regional Historic Preservation Officer (RHPO).

1.02 SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: Submit product data for all materials selected that will be applied to existing woodwork.
- B. Operation and Maintenance Data: Submit a dust control procedure.

1.03 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Field Samples: A sample area shall be restored and serve as a standard of quality in restoration of wood. The sample area will be restored by means of the approved process.
- B. Each sample area must receive the approval of the Contracting Officer before a general application is made.

PART 2---PRODUCTS

2.01 MATERIALS

- A. Wood Stain
- B. Floor Varnish
- C. Shellac
- D. Alcohol
- E. Paste Wax - Proprietary or job-mixed compound containing carnauba, beeswax, cadelilla, or ceresin mixed with turpentine.
- F. Floor Wax
- G. Wood Bleach: Solution of sodium perborate, hydrogen peroxide or proprietary mixture suitable for oak.
- H. Wood Filler
- I. Steel Wool
- J. Sandpaper: Extra Fine Grit.

PART 3---EXECUTION

3.01 PREPARATION

- A. Protection: Mask all adjacent surfaces and protect other exposed surfaces in the work area.
- B. Surface Preparation:

1. Select an inconspicuous area on which to test materials and application for each method type required. Test area must be approved by the Contracting Officer. After each test area has been prepared, receive approval from the Contracting Officer before commencing general application.
2. Fill any split in existing wood and sand smooth prior to sealer application.

3.02 ERECTION, INSTALLATION, APPLICATION

A. General:

1. Follow manufacturer's application instructions.
2. Final appearance of woodwork must be uniform in all respects.

B. Refinishing When Removal of Existing Shellac is Required:

1. Coat wood with denatured alcohol. Apply with soft cloth. Scrape up residue as quickly as possible. Repeat application of alcohol until all shellac is removed.
2. Sand smooth.
3. Apply one coat of shellac with soft cloth.
4. Apply mixture of shellac and alcohol with soft cloth and allow to dry overnight.
5. Apply liberal amount of paste wax with soft cloth and allow to dry.
6. Buff wood lightly with steel wool.
7. Buff wood with soft brush.
8. Polish with soft cloth.
9. Other processes may be used as long as final results conform to quality standards and give uniform appearance.

C. Refinishing When Removal of Existing Wax is Required:

1. Rub wood with a soft cloth moistened in turpentine.
2. Apply liberal amount of paste wax with soft cloth and allow to dry.
3. Polish wood with soft cloth.

D. Refinishing Wood Floor:

1. Remove existing finish by sanding two or three times until bare wood is exposed.
2. Repair scratched or broken boards. Do not replace boards unless approved by the Contracting Officer.
3. Clean area of dust and sawdust.
4. Apply stain of same color as existing. Allow to dry overnight.
5. Apply two coats of floor varnish.
6. Apply two coats of floor wax.

3.04 ADJUSTING/CLEANING

- A. Wash woodwork with mild detergent and water.
- B. Dry immediately with clean cloth.
- C. Apply a liberal amount of paste wax and allow to dry.

Replacing Deteriorated Woodwork

Procedure code:

640015S

Source:

National Capitol Region Specifications

Division:

Wood and Plastics

Section:

Architectural Woodwork

Last Modified:

02/24/2017

REPLACING DETERIORATED WOODWORK

PART 1—GENERAL

1.01 SUMMARY

A. This procedure includes guidance on wood restoration work including repairing existing woodwork by removing damaged or deteriorated material and replacing with new to match existing.

B. See 01100-07-S for general project guidelines to be reviewed along with this procedure. These guidelines cover the following sections:

1. Safety Precautions
2. Historic Structures Precautions
3. Submittals
4. Quality Assurance
5. Delivery, Storage and Handling
6. Project/Site Conditions
7. Sequencing and Scheduling
8. General Protection (Surface and Surrounding)

These guidelines should be reviewed prior to performing this procedure and should be followed, when applicable, along with recommendations from the Regional Historic Preservation Officer (RHPO).

1.02 REFERENCES

A. AWI Quality Standard: Comply with applicable requirements of Architectural Woodwork Standards, published by the Architectural Woodwork Institute (www.AWI.net), except as otherwise indicated.

1.03 SYSTEM DESCRIPTION

A. Performance Requirements: Submit written program for each phase of restoration process including protection of surrounding materials on building during operations. Describe in detail materials, methods and equipment to be used for each phase of restoration work.

1.04 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Mock-Ups: Prior to start of wood restoration work, prepare the following sample panels in building where directed by RHPO. Obtain RHPO's acceptance of visual qualities before proceeding with the work. Retain acceptable panels in undisturbed condition, suitably marked, during construction as a standard for judging completed work.

1. Wood Repair: Prepare sample panels for each type of woodwork indicated to be patched, resurfaced, modified or replaced. Prepare mock-up panels on existing woodwork to demonstrate quality of materials and workmanship.

1.05 PROJECT/SITE CONDITIONS

A. Existing Conditions:

1. Installer shall advise Contractor of temperature and humidity requirements for woodwork installation areas. Do not install woodwork until required temperature and relative humidity have been stabilized and will be maintained in installation areas.

2. Maintain temperature and humidity in installation area as required to maintain moisture content of installed woodwork within a 1.0 percent tolerance of optimum moisture content, from date of installation through remainder of construction period. The fabricator of woodwork shall determine optimum moisture content and required temperature and humidity conditions.

3. Determine that surfaces to which finishes are to be applied are even, smooth, sound, clean, dry and free from defects affecting proper application. Correct or report defective surfaces to Contracting Officer.

PART 2—PRODUCTS

2.01 MATERIALS

A. New or Replacement Materials:

1. Wood Moisture Content: Provide kiln-dried lumber with an average moisture content range of 6% to 11% for interior work. Maintain temperature and relative humidity during fabrication, storage and finishing operations so that moisture content values for woodwork at time of installation do not exceed the above range.
2. Replacement Wood: Match species, grade, grain pattern, and other special characteristics of existing woodwork.

B. Clean, soft cloths

PART 3—EXECUTION

3.01 PREPARATION

A. Surface Preparation:

1. Condition woodwork to average prevailing humidity conditions in installation areas prior to installing.
2. Back prime woodwork on all surfaces which will be concealed with one coat of wood primer. Schedule delivery to allow time for application and drying of Back prime coat before installation of woodwork.
3. Remove miscellaneous hardware, nails, etc., from all existing woodwork as required to provide a first class installation of new or replacement woodwork.
4. Prior to installation of new architectural woodwork, examine shop fabricated work for completion, and complete work as required, including back priming and removal of packing.

3.02 ERECTION, INSTALLATION, APPLICATION

A. Carefully remove at locations indicated any damaged or deteriorated woodwork. Unless indicated otherwise, replace the entire length of the existing damaged piece to the next butt joint.

B. For partial replacement of existing pieces, use a neat, well-fitted level cut with grain aligned in transparent finished wood.

C. Install new pieces as described below:

1. Install the work plumb, level, true and straight with no distortions. Shim as required using concealed shims.
2. Cut to fit unless specified to be shop-fabricated or shop-cut to exact size. Where woodwork abuts other finished work, scribe and cut for accurate fit. Before making cutouts, drill pilot holes at corners.
3. Standing and Running Trim: Install with minimum number of joints possible, using full-length pieces (from maximum length of lumber available) to the greatest extent possible. Stagger joints in adjacent and related members. Cope at returns, miter at corners, and comply with Quality Standards for joinery.
4. Anchor woodwork to anchors or blocking built-in or directly attached to substrates. Secure to grounds, stripping and blocking with countersunk, concealed fasteners and blind nailing as required for a complete installation. Except where prefinished matching fasteners heads are required, use fine finishing nails for exposed nailing, countersunk and filled flush with woodwork, and matching final finish where transparent finish is indicated.

D. Finish replacement woodwork to match adjacent woodwork surfaces. See 06400-05-R and 06400-10-R for guidance.

3.03 ADJUSTING/CLEANING

A. Upon completion of this work, all floors, walls, and other adjacent surfaces that are stained, marred, or otherwise damaged by work under this section shall be cleaned and repaired and all work and the adjacent areas shall be left in a clean and perfect condition.

B. All completed work shall be adequately protected from damage by subsequent building operations and effects of weather. Protection shall be by methods recommended by the manufacturer of installed materials and as approved by the RHPO.

C. Repair damaged and defective woodwork wherever possible to eliminate defects functionally and visually; where not possible to repair properly, replace woodwork. Adjust joinery for uniform appearance.

D. Clean woodwork: Dust and damp wipe woodwork with a soft cloth dampened in clean water; dry rub with soft cloth to maintain the polish, rubbing along the grain of the wood.

E. Stain and Spot Removal:

1. Stains may be cleaned by prompt damp wiping with cloth dampened in clear water or rubbing with cloth dampened in solvent. Dry the wood with a soft cloth.
2. White spots may be removed by rubbing them with a small amount of linseed oil.

Stripping Deteriorated Varnish From Wood Handrails & Refinishing

Procedure code:

643004S

Source:

National Capitol Region Specifications

Division:

Wood and Plastics

Section:

Stairwork & Handrails

Last Modified:

11/30/2015

STRIPPING DETERIORATED VARNISH FROM WOOD HANDRAILS AND REFINISHING

PART 1---GENERAL

1.01 SUMMARY

A. This procedure includes guidance on stripping and refinishing wood handrails where the varnish is deteriorated or has been damaged.

B. See 01100-07-S for general project guidelines to be reviewed along with this procedure. These guidelines cover the following sections:

1. Safety Precautions
2. Historic Structures Precautions
3. Submittals
4. Quality Assurance
5. Delivery, Storage and Handling
6. Project/Site Conditions
7. Sequencing and Scheduling
8. General Protection (Surface and Surrounding)

These guidelines should be reviewed prior to performing this procedure and should be followed, when applicable, along with recommendations from the Regional Historic Preservation Officer (RHPO).

1.02 PROJECT/SITE CONDITIONS

A. Existing Conditions: Determine that surfaces to which finishes are to be applied are even, smooth, sound, clean, dry and free from defects affecting proper application. Correct or report defective surfaces to Contracting Officer.

B. Field Measurements: Take all required field measurements and verify profiles and installation conditions for work of this section.

PART 2---PRODUCTS

2.01 MANUFACTURERS

A. The Sherwin Williams Co.
<http://www.sherwin-williams.com/>

2.02 MATERIALS

NOTE: Chemical products are sometimes sold under a common name. This usually means that the substance is not as pure as the same chemical sold under its chemical name. The grade of purity of common name substances, however, is usually adequate for stain removal work, and these products should be purchased when available, as they tend to be less expensive. Common names are indicated below by an asterisk (*).

A. Varnish: Linseed-tung modified phenolic spar varnish such as "Rexpar" (Sherwin Williams), or approved equal.

B. Solvent: Mineral spirits, turpentine or denatured alcohol.

Mineral Spirits:

1. A petroleum distillate that is used especially as a paint or varnish thinner.

2. Other chemical or common names include Benzine* (not Benzene); Naphtha*; Petroleum spirits*; Solvent naphtha*.

3. Potential Hazards: TOXIC AND FLAMMABLE.

4. Safety Precautions:

a. AVOID REPEATED OR PROLONGED SKIN CONTACT.

b. ALWAYS wear rubber gloves when handling mineral spirits.

c. If any chemical is splashed onto the skin, wash immediately with soap and water.

5. Available from construction specialties distributor, hardware store, paint store, or printer's supply distributor.

Turpentine:

1. Typically used as a solvent and thinner.

2. Potential Hazards: TOXIC AND FLAMMABLE.

3. Safety Precautions:

a. Work in a well ventilated area.

b. Observe safety rules as turpentine is flammable, and the fumes can trip an ionization smoke detection system.

c. Store soiled cloths in a metal safety container to guard against spontaneous combustion.

d. Available from hardware store or paint store.

Denatured Alcohol:

1. Other chemical or common names include Methylated spirit*.

2. Potential hazards: TOXIC AND FLAMMABLE.

3. Available from hardware store, paint store or printer's supply distributor.

4. Denatured alcohol should be a satisfactory substitute for ethyl alcohol for stain removing purposes.

C. Alternative Solvent: a mixture of 75% toluene, 24% acetone and 1% butyl acetate.

Toluene (C7H8):

1. A liquid, aromatic hydrocarbon that resembles benzene but is less volatile, flammable and toxic; Is produced commercially from light oils from coke-oven gas and coal tar and from petroleum, and is used as a solvent, in organic synthesis and an antiknock agent for gasoline.

2. Other chemical or common names include Toluol.

3. Potential Hazards: TOXIC AND FLAMMABLE.

4. Available from chemical supply house, hardware store, paint store or printer's supply distributor.

Acetone (C3H6O):

1. A volatile fragrant flammable liquid ketone used chiefly as a solvent and in organic synthesis.

2. Other chemical or common names include Dimethyl ketone; Propanone

3. Potential Hazards: VOLATILE AND FLAMMABLE SOLVENT

4. Available from chemical supply house or hardware store.

D. Steel Wool: Grade 000 steel wool.

E. Clean, soft cloths

F. Sandpaper: 3 grades, finest grade 00.

G. Shellac burn-in sticks

PART 3---EXECUTION

3.01 ERECTION, INSTALLATION, APPLICATION

A. Stripping Deteriorated Varnish:

1. Make sure work area is well ventilated and wear protective clothing and rubber gloves. Do not allow smoking in the work area. Place a fire extinguisher for Class B fires at entrances for emergency use.

2. Always rub along the grain of the wood.

3. Change cloths as often as necessary to be effective in cleaning.

4. Cleaning:

a. Wet steel wool with solvent and rub over the wood to remove varnish buildup and smooth out checked surface. Replace soiled steel wool frequently and continue the wiping process until a smooth evenly colored surface is achieved. Use no water on wood surface under any circumstances.

b. Work only one 4' square area at a time. Work area should be within a comfortable arms reach. Protect areas of wood and adjacent surfaces not to be refinished from solvent and other stripping operations.

c. This process is to remove the varnish buildup only. If solvent affects the stained color of the wood, discontinue use and use Alternative Solvent mixture listed under 2.02 Materials.

d. Allow surface to dry thoroughly, no less than

24 hours.

5. Fill scratches and gouges with shellac burn-in sticks matching the color to the wood stain.

B. Refinishing:

1. Apply full wet coat of varnish. Allow to dry thoroughly.

2. Sand out roughness with 6/0 open coat abrasive paper. Dust off thoroughly with air jet or vacuum and wipe with a tack cloth to remove all dust.

3. Apply final full wet coat of varnish. Follow manufacturer's instructions for obtaining final satin finish.

C. For guidance on cleaning and maintaining woodwork, see 06400-02-P, 06400-01-R, and 06400-01-P.

Replacing Damaged Or Missing Pieces Of Wood Wall Molding

Procedure code:

644002S

Source:

Hspg Prepared For Nps - Sero

Division:

Concrete

Section:

Wood Ornaments

Last Modified:

11/05/2014

PART 1---GENERAL

1.01 SUMMARY

A. This procedure includes guidance on removing and replacing damaged wood wall molding. This may include crown molding, chair rail, wainscotting, base, and door and window casings.

B. See 01100-07-5 for general project guidelines to be reviewed along with this procedure. These guidelines cover the following sections:

1. Safety Precautions
2. Historic Structures Precautions
3. Submittals
4. Quality Assurance
5. Delivery, Storage and Handling
6. Project/Site Conditions
7. Sequencing and Scheduling
8. General Protection (Surface and Surrounding)

These guidelines should be reviewed prior to performing this procedure and should be followed, when applicable, along with recommendations from the Regional Historic Preservation Officer (RHPO).

PART 2---PRODUCTS

2.01 MANUFACTURERS

For Wood Molding:

1. For names of suppliers, check building trades directories and publications and websites oriented to the custom and historic preservation markets, including but not limited to: Fine Woodworking; Fine Homebuilding; Traditional Building; Period Home; Preservation Magazine; Old House Journal; and Old House Interior among others.
2. Also review the AWI - Architectural Woodwork Institute, www.AWINET.org for member directory.
3. Consult also local preservation architects, architectural conservators, and restoration contractors to identify custom millwork shops that may not have ads and not internet exposure.
4. Old World Moulding & Millwork www.oldworldmoulding.com
5. Silverton Victorian Woodworks email: SVM@frontier.net

2.02 MATERIALS

- A. Molding replacement piece of matched species, age, and grain orientation
- B. Finish nails
- C. White or yellow wood glue
- D. Wood putty
- E. Sandpaper

2.03 EQUIPMENT

- A. Claw hammer
- B. Nail puller or pliers
- C. Putty knives
- D. Knife for marking
- E. Coping saw
- F. acksaw or dovetail saw
- G. 12" combination square
- H. Nailset
- I. Compass or pair of dividers for scribing
- J. Sturdy work gloves

PART 3---EXECUTION

3.01 EXAMINATION

- A. Inspect for paint that is worn, chipped, peeling, blistered, or flaking. If any of these conditions exist there may be moisture entering the feature. Check for possible sources of this moisture and correct as necessary.
- B. Inspect for the signs of decay and/or insect infestation and make repairs as necessary.
- C. Determine the type of corner construction used before removing any molding. Outside trim corners are usually mitered (joining pieces are both cut at 45 degrees). Inside corners are usually coped (one piece is cut with a coping saw so that it contours the adjacent piece at 90 degrees).

3.02 PREPARATION

- A. Surface Preparation:
 1. Mask or cover adjacent surfaces and permanent equipment during repair and maintenance. Coverings must be adhered without adhesive tape or nails. Impervious sheeting that produces condensation shall not be used.
 2. Repair any scratches, gouges or dents in molding before removing it. See 06440-04-R for guidance.

3.03 ERECTION, INSTALLATION, APPLICATION

NOTE: IF MOLDING IS DAMAGED, REPLACE AS LITTLE AS POSSIBLE. SEARCH STORAGE AREAS FOR POSSIBLE SPARE PIECES OR TRADE WITH A PIECE IN AN INCONSPICUOUS LOCATION.

IF A REPLACEMENT PIECE MUST BE PRODUCED, USE THE SAME WOOD SPECIES AND GRAIN ORIENTATION. IF POSSIBLE LOOK FOR SALVAGED WOOD OF THE SAME AGE AS ORIGINAL BECAUSE IT MATCHES BETTER THAN NEW WOOD.

- A. Remove damaged section of molding.
 1. Use a putty knife or scraper to loosen glue or paint build-up between the molding and the wall.
 2. Determine the type of corner construction used (see Section 3.01 above).
 3. Remove the coped board first (it would have been installed after its adjacent mate).
 4. Pry boards at the edges or joint; if removing baseboards or ceiling moldings, begin at the corners.
 5. Beginning at one end, gently hammer a prybar between the molding and the wall. PLACE A WOOD SHINGLE OR WIDE-BLADED PUTTY KNIFE UNDER THE PRYBAR AND AGAINST THE WALL TO PROTECT THE WOOD FROM BEING DAMAGED BY THE PRYBAR. FOR VERY SOFT WOODS, USE TWO PUTTY KNIVES - ONE FOR PROTECTING THE WALL AND ONE FOR PROTECTING THE TRIM.
 6. Gently pull the wood away from the wall using the prybar until a nail is visible.
 7. Pry the molding open at the visible nail until the next nail is visible. Continue prying along the length of the molding. WORK THE PRYBAR ONLY AT NAIL LOCATIONS.
 - a. If large-headed common nails are used to secure the molding, try removing the nails before completely removing the molding from the wall.
 1.) Pry molding approximately 1/4" away from wall as described above.
 2.) Using a wood block, gently tap the molding back against the wall. The nail heads should project enough from the surface so that the nails can be removed.
 3.) If the nails are thin enough, cut off the exposed nailheads using wire cutters. -OR- Use a prybar to pry the nails from the wood. PLACE A WOOD SHINGLE OR PUTTY KNIFE UNDER THE PRYBAR AND AGAINST THE MOLDING TO PROTECT THE WOOD FROM BEING DAMAGED BY THE PRYBAR.
 - b. If small-headed finish nails are used to secure the molding, they will either slide through the molding and remain in the wall or come out with the molding when it is removed.
 8. When all of the nails have been pried loose, gently remove the entire board away from the wall.
 - a. Remove any finish nails remaining in the wood using a nail puller or pliers.

NOTE: ALWAYS REMOVE THE NAILS FROM THE BACK OF THE WOOD. NEVER HAMMER THE NAILS THROUGH THE FRONT. NAILHEADS ARE USUALLY SET BELOW THE SURFACE AND FILLED WITH PUTTY. PUSHING THE NAILHEAD THROUGH THE FRONT OF THE WOOD CAN CAUSE THE WOOD TO SPLINTER.
 - b. If common nails remain in the wood after it has been removed, cut them with heavy wire cutters as close to the back of the board as possible. File any remaining pieces of nail projecting from the surface.
 9. If molding is to be reused, be sure to mark each piece on the back with its location.
- B. Cutting the Replacement Molding:
 1. For a Mitered Joint: Measure the new piece from the short point (the inside edge). Make cut mark with knife instead of pencil for more accurate cut. Always cut on the waste side of the line.
 2. For a Coped Joint: Profile cut the new piece. Smaller pieces can be cut to the right length in a miter box. Slightly undercut sawn edge with coping saw to assure tight fit.
 3. For larger moldings, butt board to be cut up against board to be mated at 90 degrees. Scribe the profile with a compass or a pair of dividers. Cut along scribed line with coping saw.
 4. To join a long piece of baseboard, ceiling molding, etc. to existing, make a scarf joint. To achieve a scarf joint, cut meeting pieces at a 45 degree angle. Position the joint over a wall stud for support.
- C. Installing the Molding:
 1. Test the fit of the molding by temporarily tacking it in position using two finish nails. DO NOT hammer the nails all the way in.
 2. If the piece fits well, nail in place with finishing nails. Use existing nail holes if possible, but hammer nails at an angle so that they will strike new wood.
 3. Hammer the nail into the wood until it is just above the wood surface.
 4. Use a nailset to set the nail about 1/8" below the wood surface.
 5. Cover the recessed nailhead with putty and wipe clean so that it is flush with the surface.

Repairing Scratches, Gouges And Dents In Wood Wall Ornament

Procedure code:

644004S

Source:

Hspg Prepared For Nps - Sero

Division:

Wood and Plastics

Section:

Wood Ornaments

Last Modified:

11/12/2014

REPAIRING SCRATCHES, GOUGES, AND DENTS IN WOOD WALL ORNAMENT

PART 1---GENERAL

1.01 SUMMARY

A. This procedure includes guidance on repairing scratches, gouges and dents in wood by sanding and filling with putty as required.

B. Scratches, gouges and dents in wood wall ornament are usually the result of an abrasive object coming into contact with the surface of the wood member in question. This type of damage is usually avoidable if care is taken around wood surfaces.

C. See 01100-07-S for general project guidelines to be reviewed along with this procedure. These guidelines cover the following sections:

1. Safety Precautions
2. Historic Structures Precautions
3. Submittals
4. Quality Assurance
5. Delivery, Storage and Handling
6. Project/Site Conditions
7. Sequencing and Scheduling
8. General Protection (Surface and Surrounding)

These guidelines should be reviewed prior to performing this procedure and should be followed, when applicable, along with recommendations from the Regional Historic Preservation Officer (RHPO).

1.02 DEFINITIONS

A. Interior wood wall ornament may include crown moulding, picture rail, chair rail, wainscotting, base, and casing.

B. For the purpose of this procedure, repair of interior wall ornament may also pertain to interior wood wall covering and trim; ceiling covering, trim, and ornament; door trim; window trim; ornamental columns and posts; and built-in cabinets and bookcases.

C. Scratches are slight marks produced by rubbing, scraping or tearing with something sharp or rough. Gouges are

blunt grooves or holes and are generally deeper than scratches. Dents are depressions or hollows made by a blow or by pressure.

PART 2---PRODUCTS

2.01 MATERIALS

A. Sandpaper

B. Wood stain

C. Linseed oil putty

D. Wood filler (there are four basic types):

1. Water-mix Wood Putty: Easy to tint and fairly resilient, but has poor moisture resistance.

2. Solvent-based Wood Filler: Not tintable, but has many color choices. A solvent is needed to clean any excess or spills. It is difficult to sand, but has good adhesion and moisture resistance. It also has a problem with shrinkage.

3. Acrylic Latex Wood Filler: Better than water-based in adhesion, moisture resistance, and flexibility. Apply the filler in layers to avoid shrinkage.

4. Two-part Polyester Filler: Similar to auto body filler. It has excellent adherence and moisture resistance with minimal shrinkage. It stains easily, but is time consuming to prepare.

2.02 EQUIPMENT

A. Putty knife to apply filler

B. Any mixing tools required for filler.

C. Steam iron and moist cloth

PART 3---EXECUTION

3.01 EXAMINATION

A. Inspect for paint that is worn, chipped, peeling, blistered, or flaking. If any of these conditions exist there may be moisture entering the feature. Check for possible sources of this moisture and correct as necessary.

B. Inspect for the signs of decay and/or insect infestation and make repairs as necessary.

3.02 ERECTION, INSTALLATION, APPLICATION

A. Carefully hand rub scratches and minor surface imperfections with a fine grit sandpaper. Match patina of unscratched wood by selective staining. Do not remove more than 1/16" thickness of the material. Maintain levelness of surface over entire width or length of wood piece.

B. Small gouges and nail holes can be filled using linseed oil putty. Stain the putty to match using the sediment from the bottom of the stain can, or use universal tints.

C. For large holes, use a sandable filler. Stain to match as above (if needed).

D. Lift dents with steam iron and moistened cloth. Moisture will raise the grain of the wood surface and it will have to be sanded smooth and refinished.

E. Touch-up resurfaced area during finishing so that color and other appearance characteristics match the finish of adjacent woodwork.

Repair Of Bows Or Undulations In A Wood Door Frame

Procedure code:

821002S

Source:

Hspg Prepared For Nps - Sero

Division:

Doors and Windows

Section:

Wood Doors

Last Modified:

06/28/2017

PART 1---GENERAL

1.01 SUMMARY

- A. This procedure includes guidance on realigning a bowed wood door frame.
- B. A wood door frame that bows or undulates may result from warping in the frame, building settlement, or pressure in the wall behind the frame.
- C. See 01100-07-S for "General Project Guidelines" to be reviewed along with this procedure. These guidelines cover the following sections:
 - 1. Safety Precautions
 - 2. Historic Structures Precautions
 - 3. Submittals
 - 4. Quality Assurance
 - 5. Delivery, Storage and Handling
 - 6. Project/Site Conditions
 - 7. Sequencing and Scheduling
 - 8. General Protection (Surface and Surrounding)

These guidelines should be reviewed prior to performing this procedure and should be followed, when applicable, along with recommendations from the Regional Historic Preservation Officer (RHPO).

PART 2---PRODUCTS

2.01 MATERIAL

- A. Wooden shims and blocking
- B. 6d and 8d finish nails

2.02 EQUIPMENT

- A. Wide blade putty knife and prybar
- B. Hack saw
- C. Hammer and chisel

PART 3---EXECUTION

3.01 EXAMINATION

- A. To discern door problem, observe the door open and close a few times. Note the location of any binding or rubbing. Note also if door binds inconsistently from top to bottom or hinge side to latch side.

3.02 ERECTION, INSTALLATION, APPLICATION

- A. Check if jamb is secured to framing by carefully twisting and pushing it.
- B. Push back high spots where jamb is loose and secure by nailing. Use 8d finish nails for securing the jamb into the frame and 6d finish nails for securing the trim into the jamb.
- C. If jamb cannot be forced back into position, it must be freed from casing and realigned.

1. Carefully loosen casing on less conspicuous side, with a wide blade putty knife and pry bar; insert putty knife blade first and then insert pry bar on top of knife blade, allowing the knife blade to protect the casing.
2. Loosen casing on more noticeable side just enough to insert hack saw and cut nails which hold the casing to the jamb.
3. Shim out low spots with solid wood wedges or blocking nailed into place through jamb. If necessary nails can be hidden by first removing door stops, nailing blocking into place and renailing stops.
4. Cut down high spots by removing any existing shims and/or chiseling away at any blocking.
5. When jamb is plumb and straight, resecure casing, filling nail holes as necessary.

Rehabilitating Wood Windows

Procedure code:

861001S

Source:

The Old Custom House/New York, Ny - Gsa/Pbs, 1991

Division:

Doors and Windows

Section:

Wood Windows

Last Modified:

07/05/2017

PART 1---GENERAL

1.01 SUMMARY

- A. This procedure includes guidance for the rehabilitation of wood windows. Outlined are the steps one might go through to complete repairs. Each step is cross-referenced to one or more procedures which covers the particular problem. The cross-referenced procedures should be reviewed prior to beginning window repairs and should be followed along with recommendations from the Regional Historic Preservation Officer (RHPO).
- B. The steps in the repair of deteriorated sash include but are not limited to the following:
1. Examination, survey and condition assessment of windows.
 2. Removal of existing sash, trim, etc.
 3. Repair of deteriorated wood through the use of epoxies, dutchmen and/or the replacement with new wood to match the existing appearance.
 4. Painting/refinishing sash and trim.
 5. Installation of repaired sash.
- C. See 01100-07-S for general project guidelines to be reviewed along with this procedure. These guidelines cover the following sections:
1. Safety Precautions
 2. Historic Structures Precautions
 3. Submittals
 4. Quality Assurance
 5. Delivery, Storage and Handling
 6. Project/Site Conditions
 7. Sequencing and Scheduling
 8. General Protection (Surface and Surrounding)
- These guidelines should be reviewed before performing this procedure and should be followed, when applicable, along with recommendations from the RHPO.
- D. For general information on the repair of wood windows see 08610-01-S, "Preservation Briefs: 9 - The Repair of Historic Wooden Windows."

1.02 SUBMITTALS

- A. Shop drawings for each type of window, including 1/4-inch scale wall elevations, typical unit elevations at 3/4- inch scale, glazing details, and full-size details of typical composite members, include window rehabilitation, wood and hardware replacement, reglazing details and weatherstripping.
- B. The RHPO reserves the right to require additional samples that show fabrication techniques and construction and design of hardware and accessories.

1.03 SEQUENCING AND SCHEDULING

- A. Rehabilitation of windows shall be completed before doing any interior restoration/rehabilitation work to insure weather-tight integrity of interior spaces.

PART 2---PRODUCTS

2.01 MATERIALS

NOTE: See specific procedures for materials and equipment requirements, and their manufacturers and sources.

PART 3---EXECUTION

3.01 EXAMINATION

- A. Conduct a window-by-window survey to determine existing conditions and identify the specific work needs of each window.
- B. For each window type, the survey should include color photographs which show design details for comparison to new work, and existing conditions.

1. Full frame views, both interior and exterior.
2. Close-up views of typical details, both interior and exterior.

3.02 ERECTION, INSTALLATION, APPLICATION

- A. Carefully remove window stops, sash and trim as required. Remove only those features which cannot be repaired on-site. All disassembled parts should be indelibly marked or stamped on hidden parts so they can be returned to their exact location.
1. See 06440-03-R, "Closing Open Joints in Wood Wall Ornament"
- B. Replace rotted window sills as required.
1. See 08610-04-R, "Replacing a Wood Window Sill"
- C. Repair, replace, or rebuild all rotted or deteriorated wood features. These can include but are not limited to stiles, rails, muntins, joints, frame, trim. New work shall match existing profiles or shapes in every respect and shall be flush with existing adjacent surfaces.
1. See 06300-01-R, "Epoxy Repair for Deterioration and Decay in Wooden Members"
 2. See 08611-01-R, "Sealing Leaky Wood Double-Hung Windows"
 3. See 06440-01-R, "Repairing Cracks and Checks in Wood Wall Ornament"
 4. See 06440-03-R, "Closing Open Joints in Wood Wall Ornament"
 5. See 06440-04-R, "Repairing Scratches, Gouges and Dents in Wood Wall Ornament"
 6. See 09560-03-R, "Dutchman Repair of Wood Floor Boards"
- D. Remove paint from both interior (where applicable) and exterior surfaces.
1. See 06400-07-R, "Chemically Removing Paint From Wood Features"
 2. See 06400-02-S, "Supplemental Guidelines for Removing Paint from Interior and Exterior Wood Surfaces"
 3. See 06400-09-R, "Removing Paint From Wood Features Using Thermal Methods"
- E. Remove all deteriorated glazing putty and broken glass. Replace glass and reglaze with a flexible elastomeric glazing compound. Clean the existing historic glass. See 08800-01-R, "Replacing Broken Glass in Wood and Metal Windows"
- F. Reinstall windows. Inspect pull chains and weights at all double hung windows and adjust, clean or replace as required to ensure proper operation. Lubricate all working parts to assure smooth operation.
1. See 08760-01-R, "Repairing Double-Hung Window Sash Weights and Cords/Chains"
 2. See 08712-01-R, "Resetting a Hinge Mortise"
- G. Provide weatherstripping as required.
1. See 08500-01-R, "Installing Weatherstripping on Metal Double-Hung Windows"
- H. Refinish both interior and exterior sides of sash, frame and trim with appropriate paint, stain or natural finish as specified.
1. See 06300-01-S, "Primers and Paints for Wood"
 2. See 06300-02-R, "Surface Preparation for Painting Wood"
 3. See 06400-10-R, "Refinishing Interior Wood"
 4. See 06310-01-S, "Preparing a Non-toxic Water-repellent Preservative"
 5. See 06310-01-P, "Applying a Water-repellent Preservative to Wood"
 6. See 09900-07-S, "General Guidelines for Painting Exterior and Interior Surfaces"
 7. See 06300-03-R, "Applying a Semi-Transparent or Opaque Stain to Wood"
- I. Hardware:
1. All window hardware shall be removed, marked for proper room number and location, boxed or packaged, and collected in a central location for the Contractor who shall polish all the hardware before reinstallation.
 2. All hardware to be removed before paint stripping, cleaned to bare metal and repaired to its original condition.
 3. Where hardware is missing or damaged, provide new hardware of same design and material as original hardware.

3.03 PROTECTION

- A. Begin and maintain protection and other precautions required through the remainder of construction period to ensure that newly rehabilitated window units will not be damaged throughout the remainder of any restoration or rehabilitation work.

Replacing A Wood Window Sill

Procedure code:

861004S

Source:

Hspg Prepared For Nps - Sero

Division:

Doors and Windows

Section:

Wood Windows

Last Modified:

01/27/2015

REPLACING A WOOD WINDOW SILL

PART 1---GENERAL

1.01 SUMMARY

A. This procedure includes guidance on replacing a severely deteriorated wood window sill.

B. To arrest deterioration, repair sill with epoxy consolidant (see 08610-06-R and 06300-01-R for guidance). If sill is beyond repair, it must be replaced (see procedure outlined below).

C. See 01100-07-S for general project guidelines to be reviewed along with this procedure. These guidelines cover the following sections:

1. Safety Precautions
2. Historic Structures Precautions
3. Submittals
4. Quality Assurance
5. Delivery, Storage and Handling
6. Project/Site Conditions
7. Sequencing and Scheduling
8. General Protection (Surface and Surrounding)

These guidelines should be reviewed prior to performing this procedure and should be followed, when applicable, along with recommendations from the Regional Historic Preservation Officer (RHPO).

1.02 SYSTEM DESCRIPTION

A. A wood window sill in good condition is free from decay and sloped away from the building to shed water. The connection between sill and jamb is tight and well caulked. The sub-sill should have a drip on the bottom that prevents water from entering the building under the window assembly.

1.03 DEFINITIONS

A. Window apron - A flat broad piece of finished lumber or trim placed directly under a window sill.

B. Window stool - A horizontal board on a window sill which

forms a base on which the casing rests.

PART 2---PRODUCTS

2.01 MATERIALS

A. Lumber for new sill and subsill (match species, size and grain direction of original)

2.02 EQUIPMENT

- A. Prybar
- B. Wide blade putty knives
- C. Back saw
- D. Chisel
- E. Hacksaw
- F. Router
- G. Caulk
- H. Carpenter's end-cutting pliers

PART 3---EXECUTION

3.01 REMOVAL

A. Method #1 (This allows one to save the old sill for posterity and/or duplication.)

1. Remove stool and apron from interior of window. Pry apron off and tap stool out from under jambs.
2. Insert the blade of a wide putty knife between the apron and the wall; carefully tap a prybar into the same gap, allowing the knife blade to protect the wall.
3. Using the wall as a fulcrum, work the apron away from the wall until a nail is visible, hold the gap open with a piece of blocking or another prybar.
4. Continue working at each nail location until the next nail is exposed. When all of the nails have been exposed, the apron should easily lift off.
5. Attempt to tap sill out of place. If this is not possible, measure sill thoroughly for replacement then saw or chisel sill out carefully. Follow same directions to remove sub-sill, if required.

NOTE: The sill may be nailed at rail or under weatherstripping.

6. Remove exposed portions of nails that secured the dados.

B. Method #2: (This method is for total sill replacement and discard of the old sill.)

1. Remove stool and apron from interior of window.
2. After removing any lower interior window trim, using a reciprocating saw cut the deteriorated sill approximately in half in the transverse plane (perpendicular, or across the grain), so that a 36" long sill would now be comprised of two 18" long pieces. A fine-tooth metal hacksaw-type blade is best for this.
3. Carefully pry up on the center of the cut sill, moving it up and down and forward and back, loosening the remaining nails while taking care not to damage the remaining window frame while you remove the damaged portion. Use cedar shims as fulcrums to protect remaining frame millwork from damage.
4. Retain samples of pieces to be removed for use a template for duplication. Be prepared to completely destroy the old deteriorated portion piece-by-piece to protect the rest of the window frame.
5. Utilize the reciprocating saw to cut any nails off in place while being cautious of undamaged window trim and the surrounding wood. Utilize the carpenter's pliers to remove stubborn nails. Skip to Section 3.02 below.

3.02 INSTALLATION

If required, new sub-sill must be installed first. Rout a drip groove to underside of sub-sill to prevent water from entering wall from under window.

A. Cut sill to match original and sand sill before installation. Bevel ends slightly to ease installation.

B. Nail sill into casing from underneath. Countersink nail and fill hole with putty and seal. Seal edge of sill with caulk at jamb connection.

C. Prime and paint (see 06300-01-S, 06300-02-R and 09900-07-S for guidance on painting wood).

Sealing Leaky Wood Double-Hung Windows

Procedure code:

861101S

Source:

Hspg Prepared For Nps - Sero

Division:

Doors and Windows

Section:

Wood Double-Hung Windows

Last Modified:

02/02/2015

SEALING LEAKY WOOD DOUBLE-HUNG WINDOWS

PART 1---GENERAL

1.01 SUMMARY

A. This procedure includes guidance on sealing leaky windows and includes caulking gaps between the wall and the frame, filling cracks in the wood, repainting and replacing loose window putty.

B. Peeling paint, the absence of putty, and open sash joints are signs of moisture infiltration into the window sash. The wood should be properly sealed against moisture to prevent deterioration in wood.

C. See 01100-07-S for general project guidelines to be reviewed along with this procedure. These guidelines cover the following sections:

1. Safety Precautions
2. Historic Structures Precautions
3. Submittals
4. Quality Assurance
5. Delivery, Storage and Handling
6. Project/Site Conditions
7. Sequencing and Scheduling
8. General Protection (Surface and Surrounding)

These guidelines should be reviewed prior to performing this procedure and should be followed, when applicable, along with recommendations from the Regional Historic Preservation Officer (RHPO).

PART 2---PRODUCTS

2.01 MATERIALS

A. Caulking Compound (in order of recommended usage):

1. Polyurethanes - easily workable; paintable; 15-20 year life span; limited availability.
2. Polysulfides - slow drying; can be sanded and painted; highly elastic; limited availability.
3. Butyls - paintable but cannot be sanded; 7-10 year life span.
4. Silicones - some can be painted but generally not sanded.
5. Acrylic Latex - for exterior work, their use is best left to tight, narrow joints; short life span especially when compared to polysulfides and polyurethanes.

B. Polyethylene foam backer rod such as "Ethafoam" SB brand backer rod (available at builder's supply houses or concrete materials suppliers), or approved equal.

C. Boiled linseed oil

D. Wood filler (there are four basic types):

1. Water-mix Wood Putty: Easy to tint and fairly resilient, but has poor moisture resistance.

2. Solvent-based Wood Filler: Not tintable, but has many color choices. A solvent is needed to clean any excess or spills. It is difficult to sand, but has good adhesion and moisture resistance. It also has a problem with shrinkage.

3. Acrylic Latex Wood Filler: Better than water-based in adhesion, moisture resistance, and flexibility. Apply the filler in layers to avoid shrinkage.

4. Two-part Polyester Filler: Similar to auto body filler. It has excellent adherence and moisture resistance with minimal shrinkage. It stains easily, but is time consuming to prepare.

E. Wood water-repellent preservative (see 06310-01-P, Section 2.02 Materials, and 06310-01-S)

F. Paint (see 06300-01-S)

G. Linseed oil putty or other approved product that is complementary to the coating system.

H. Clean, potable water

2.02 EQUIPMENT

A. Wire brush

B. Natural bristle brushes for oil-based paints: Precondition by soaking in raw linseed oil for 24 hours.

Use nylon bristle brushes for water-based paint. Do not use the same brush for both types of paint.

C. Putty knife

D. Caulking gun

PART 3---EXECUTION

3.01 EXAMINATION

A. Inspect windows periodically, at least yearly. Check for ease of operation, presence and operation of all hardware, and cracked or missing putty and glazing.

3.02 ERECTION, INSTALLATION, APPLICATION

A. Recaulk Gaps Between Window Frame and Wall:

1. Renail any loose boards in the window frame.

2. Using a wire brush and putty knife, remove any loose dirt and debris that may have collected in the gap.

3. For gaps 3/8 inch or wider, insert a closed-cell polyurethane backer rod.

4. Push the backer rod into the joint to fill up the space behind the caulking.

5. Fill gap with a flexible caulking or sealant. Apply with a caulking gun until flush with the surface.

6. If an oil-based caulk is used, allow the caulk to dry for at least 48 hours and then paint. Paint will extend the life of oil-based caulk.

B. Fill holes and cracks with linseed oil and fill with putty (see 06440-04-R for guidance).

C. Examine condition of paint.

1. If paint has minor cracking or peeling, remove loose paint with a wire brush and putty knife and repaint.

2. If paint deterioration is extensive:

a. Remove all paint from window (see 06400-07-R and 06400-09-R for guidance).

b. Liberally apply a wood preservative to the wood (see 06310-01-P for guidance).

c. Allow to dry for 24 hours.

d. Apply a primer that is tinted darker than the final coat, with its choice based on compatibility with the preservative and the desired coating system.

e. Apply final layers of coating system as per manufacturers specifications and allow to dry before installation (see 06300-01-S, 06300-02-R and 09900-07-S for guidance).

D. Replace Window Putty:

1. Remove loose or cracked putty using a putty knife.

2. Using a wire brush, remove loose dirt and debris from within the putty channel.

3. Brush exposed areas with a preservative (such as a linseed oil mixture) that will not conflict with the chosen coating system. This preservative will be absorbed into the wood and prevent the new putty from drying too quickly and cracking.

4. Apply fresh window putty and smooth out with a putty knife.

Replacing Broken Glass in Wood and Metal Windows

Procedure code:

880001S

Division:

Doors and Windows

Section:

Glass & Glazing

Last Modified:

08/17/2016

PART 1---GENERAL

1.01 SUMMARY

- A. This specification provides guidance on replacing cracked, broken or missing panes of glass, replacing cracked or missing window putty and cleaning glazing in standard windows and doors.
- B. Repairs that involve art glass, stained glass, leaded glass, beveled glass or plate glass require special skills, and should only be attempted by or under the guidance of a trained conservator.
- C. Broken or cracked glass panes and missing or cracked window putty may be the result of weather, neglect, or vandalism. In any case, it is a matter that requires immediate attention.
- D. For temporary repairs to broken glass until a permanent replacement can be performed, see "Temporary Patching of Chips and Cracks in Window Glazing".
- E. Read "General Project Guidelines" along with this specification. These guidelines should be reviewed prior to performing this procedure and should be followed, when applicable, along with recommendations from the Regional Historic Preservation Officer (RHPO). The guidelines cover the following sections:

- 1. Safety Precautions
- 2. Historic Structures Precautions
- 3. Submittals
- 4. Quality Assurance
- 5. Delivery, Storage and Handling
- 6. Project/Site Conditions
- 7. Sequencing and Scheduling
- 8. General Protection (Surface and Surrounding)

1.02 SYSTEM DESCRIPTION

A window glass is in proper condition when it is set securely and tightly into the window frame, is properly caulked, and is not scratched, cracked, or broken.

1.03 SEQUENCING AND SCHEDULING

Coordination of Work: The coordination of glass repair or replacement with other proposed projects must be considered. For example, if work on other window elements is anticipated (involving but not limited to the frame, sash, trim, lintel, sill, or hardware, paint removal, cleaning, or repairing), it best to postpone any glazing work until last.

PART 2---PRODUCTS

2.01 MANUFACTURERS

- A. Due to industry standardization, there will be little difference between new glass from different manufacturers in the U.S. However, there are different types of glass, and the type of glass used for a particular project is usually an engineering, architectural, building code or safety regulation compliance issue. Some manufacturers include:

- 1. AGC Glass Company
 - Alpharetta, GA
 - 1-800-251-0441
- 2. Cardinal Glass Industries
- 3. Environmental Glass, Inc.
 - Redford, MI
 - 734-261-1930
- 4. Guardian Glass Company
 - Auburn Hills, MI
 - 248-340-1800
- 5. Pilkington North America
 - 1-800-221-0444
- 6. PPG IdeaScapes
 - 1-888-774-4332

7. Saint-Gobain Glass

8. Viracon, Inc.

Owatonna, MN

1-800-533-2080

B. Manufacturers of the sealants suggested in the following section are:

1. Bostik, Inc.

Wauwatosa, WI

1-800-726-7845

2. Dow Corning Corporation

Auburn, MI

989-496-7875

3. Percola Corporation

Harleysville, PA

1-800-523-6688

2.02 MATERIALS

A. Linseed oil putty (for wood windows)

B. Glazing compound or elastomeric sealant (for metal windows):

1. One-component advanced urethane sealant such as:

a. 2000 Primary Sealant (Bostik, Inc.)

b. DynaTrol I-XL (Pecora Corporation)

c. Approved equal

-OR-

1. One-part non-acid-curing silicone glazing sealant such as:

a. 790 Silicon Building Sealant (Dow Corning)

b. 864 NST Silicone (Pecora Corporation)

c. Approved equal

2. Any glazing sealant being used should comply with the following requirements:

a. Must be compatible with other materials with which they will come into contact.

b. Must be suitable for applications indicated and conditions at time of installation.

c. Colors: Provide color of exposed sealants as selected by the RHPO from manufacturer's standard colors.

d. Hardness and Flexibility: Consult the manufacturer to determine if the sealant meets the actual hardness or flexibility parameters needed for this particular installation and use.

e. Sealants and materials used with laminated glass are to be 100% solids, containing no solvents.

C. Materials for Removing Glazing Compound:

1. Mineral Spirits:

a. A petroleum distillate that is used especially as a paint or varnish thinner. It was developed as an inexpensive replacement for the vegetable-based turpentine, and is a light version of kerosene. It comes in three grades, and cost rises as refining quality increases.

b. Other chemical or common names include Benzine (not Benzene); Naphtha; Petroleum spirits; White spirit; Varisol; Solvent naphtha; Stoddard solvent.

c. Potential Hazards: TOXIC AND FLAMMABLE.

d. Safety Precautions:

- Work in a well ventilated area.
- ALWAYS wear proper Personal Protection Equipment, especially rubber gloves, safety glasses/goggles and a properly rated respirator, when handling any solvent such as mineral spirits.
- AVOID REPEATED OR PROLONGED SKIN CONTACT. If any chemical is splashed onto the skin, wash immediately with soap and water.
- Available from construction specialties distributors, hardware store, paint store, or printer's supply distributor.

-OR-

2. Linseed oil or thinned primer

D. Replacement Glass that Matches Existing Glass:

1. Glass comes in a variety of thicknesses and types. For this application, we will be discussing standard flat glass, often called "float glass" because of the process used to create sheets. It can be cut with specialty hand-tools (glass cutters with a steel or diamond tip). This material will usually come in thicknesses of:

a. 3/32" (2.5mm) (formerly referred to as single-strength glass, not to be confused with single-pane glass in windows and doors)

b. 1/8" (3.2mm), which was formerly referred to as double-strength glass, not to be confused with double-pane or insulated units.

2. Although you will probably not be using safety glass, it is important to understand its uses, properties, and the corresponding weight of each type. It will most frequently come in one of the following types for windows

- a. Tempered glass, which will usually come in 1/8" (3.2mm) thickness, and can be identified by a small safety rating and manufacturer symbol etched into a corner of the surface, with slightly rounded edges all around the piece. It will weigh the same as a piece of non-tempered glass of the same dimensions. This type needs to be custom-ordered from a factory and made to exact size. As it has been heat or chemically treated, it will shatter if you attempt to cut it.
- b. Laminated glass, which is most commonly encountered as two sheets of 3/32" (2.5mm) glass layered together like a sandwich, with a clear sheet of Polyvinyl or another modern plastic in between. This particular type would be referred to as 5.38mm laminated glass, and weighs over twice the amount of an individual single-thickness sheet of glass (which on a sash window, or other application where balancing weights are installed, will have a significant impact). It can only be cut to size in a professional glass shop.
- c. Wired glass, which is infrequently seen except in areas requiring fire-resistance, such as in fire doors or fire-rated partitions (such as entries to boiler rooms or exit stairwells). It is quite thick (1/4" or greater), and the weight is correspondingly larger. It is not as widely used today as safety glass because new methods have supplanted many of its previous uses, and personal contact with it can still cause serious injury.

E. Glazier's points

1. The three most common types of points are:

- a. The triangular point
- b. The diamond point
- c. The "push point", which is the easiest for the casual user to install.

2. These are usually formed from the metal zinc.

F. Neoprene setting blocks and shims

G. Clean, potable water

H. Ammonia

I. Paper towels or rags

2.03 EQUIPMENT

For Replacing a Window Pane:

- A. Goggles and gloves for protection when removing broken glass
- B. Hammer and chisel
- C. Soldering iron wrapped in foil, to help warm and remove old glazing compound
- D. Needle-nose pliers, end-cutters, and chisels for maneuvering glazier's points
- E. Sandpaper
- F. Very fine 0000 steel wool
- G. Paint brush to apply primer
- H. Glass cutter and straight edge
- I. Putty knife or glazier's tool for smoothing glazing compound

PART 3---EXECUTION

3.01 EXAMINATION

- A. Check for cracked, broken, chipped, or otherwise damaged glass.
- B. Inspect glazing putty on both sides of pane for cracked, loose, or missing sections which allow water to attack the window components, especially at the joints.
- C. Examine the condition of the window components for rot, corrosion, loose connections, etc.
 1. Note if the glass rattles or moves in the glazing system.
 2. Note if the glass stops are intact.
- D. Inspect all surfaces which are to receive glass and/or glazing sealant. Take special note of any defects or condition which will interfere with, or prevent a satisfactory installation. Correct all defects prior to installation of new glass.
- E. Verify the glass type in each window type prior to the installation of new glass.

3.02 PREPARATION

- A. Prior to reglazing, remove all oil, dirt, rust and other materials from the glass and the metal framing members using solvents such as toluol or xylo.
- B. After removing loose material from a steel window frame, neutralize rust with one of the commonly available products on the market such as Loctite "Extend Rust Neutralizer".
- C. Clean and prime all glazing rabbets prior to glazing. See "Rehabilitating Wood Windows" and/or "Cleaning and Painting Steel Windows" for guidance.
- D. Store removed glass in a safe and clean place during construction, so that it will not be damaged or need to be re-cleaned of corrosive contaminants.

3.03 ERECTION, INSTALLATION, APPLICATION

NOTE: IT IS IMPORTANT TO WEAR PROPER PERSONAL PROTECTION EQUIPMENT, INCLUDING SAFETY GLASSES/GOGGLES AND HEAVY GLOVES WHEN WORKING WITH GLASS.

- A. After the intended pieces of glass are removed, remove the glazing compound / putty left behind using any or all of the following methods:
 1. A hammer and glazing chisel (at the risk of damage to adjacent glazing) or a triangular/tear-drop scraper.
 2. A soldering iron wrapped in aluminum foil can be used to soften the putty to ease removal.
 3. Mineral spirits. CAUTION: Consult the MSDS for handling cautions and PPE requirements.

4. Linseed oil (if the originally putty is linseed oil-based, which most legacy putties are). CAUTION: Consult the MSDS for handling cautions and PPE requirements.

B. Remove glazier's points using needle-nose pliers and end-cutters. Discard.

C. Special Procedures for Wood Windows:

1. Thoroughly clean the sash of any remaining compound and sand rabbets smooth. Be alert for leftover glazing brads in the rabbets of the wooden glazing bars.
2. Apply linseed oil or thinned oil-based primer to rabbets to prevent wood from absorbing oil from new putty.
 - a. If primer is used, it should be applied in two coats, 24 hours apart.
 - b. Verify that new putty is compatible with linseed oil before attempting this step.

D. Special Procedures for Metal Windows:

1. While the glass is out, clean/repair/replace, prime and paint the metal frame, the mullions, muntins, sash, and other window components prior to glass reinstallation.
2. Apply glazing compound to the rabbets of the window sash.
3. Metal windows use special fasteners, some of which are propriety designs. Therefore, the existing glazing clips, glazing beads, and other fasteners should be cleaned and reused whenever possible. Where existing metal glazing clips are missing, you will need to supply and install new wire (metal) glazing clips to match existing. Architectural salvage operations are a good source for these items. However, the clips may need to be specially fabricated.

E. To replace damaged panes, new glass will need to be cut 1/8" smaller in length and width than the existing opening. There are several online videos readily accessible that explain this process.

1. NOTE: Proper Personal Protection Equipment, especially eye and hand protection, is absolutely necessary when cutting glass.
2. Practice cutting on an unusable piece of glass first.
3. Make sure the working surface is perfectly clean and do not press too hard with the glass cutter. NOTE: Old window glass can be quite thin, and may also contain impurities and irregular internal tensions. Pressure from the wheel cutter on even a tiny piece of dirt can cause the glass to split or "run" in an unintended direction.
4. When cutting straight pieces, use a straight edge as a guide.
 - a. Score the piece with one firm, even stroke of a sharp glass cutter. If it is a carbide steel cutter, dipping it in kerosene or mineral spirits will improve the cutting action, while lengthening the life of the cutting wheel. If using a diamond cutter lubricant should not be used.
 - b. Once glass is scored, there are several methods of breaking it along the score line. Here are three:

F. Method 1:

1. Place the glass with the scored facing up and lined up with the edge of a workbench.
2. Holding the "waste" piece beyond the score with a gloved hand, lift the overhanging edge about 1" above the workbench (the other end will remain on the workbench).
3. Next, bring the glass down sharply against the table edge, and the glass should snap along the score. When trying this for the first time, do so gently to start, and then each time increase the speed of the drop and the downward pressure until you become practiced at gauging the right balance for a clean break along the score.

G. Method 2:

1. Score the glass as above.
2. Next, turn the piece over so the score faces downward and the mark is placed about an inch off the edge of the workbench.
3. On the top (or un-scored site), carefully tap along the score with the ball end of the glass cutter to "run" the break from one end of the pane to the other, while supporting the scrap part of the pane to be cut off (which is off the table) with your gloved hand.
4. It is recommended to place a large plastic trash can under the edge of the workbench to contain the small shards that are being ejected by the tapping.

H. Method 3:

1. Use plastic glass-cutter's pliers to snap the glass along the score.
2. Requires practice to achieve quality results.

I. Cutting Curves:

1. Requires practice to achieve quality results.
2. It is recommended to place a large plastic trash can under the edge of the workbench to contain the small shards that are being ejected by the tapping.
3. Make a template out of thick cardboard or masonite board to guide the glass cutter. The template should be slightly smaller than the desired piece to allow for half the width of the glasscutter, usually about 1/8" in each dimension.
4. Practice on a scrap piece of glass- Score the piece with a sharp glass cutter following the edge of the template. A diamond cutter is preferred for complex shapes. Do not try to score the piece freehand.
5. Score lines from the initial curved score line off at a tangent to facilitate the removal of extra scrap glass.
6. Turn the piece of glass over and place it on the workbench with some of the newly scored marks on the bottom, overhanging the edge of the workbench by about an inch.
7. While supporting the overhanging piece with your free hand, use the ball end of the cutter and tap the top of the glass along the main score, starting in the middle and working toward both ends gradually.
8. Next, tap the tangential lines made for the scrap parts.
9. The score-line should fracture along the curve.
 - a. Even practiced professionals can find this difficult.
 - b. Gradual curves may be broken off in one piece.
 - c. For extreme curves, it is best to cut and remove one small section of glass at a time.
10. For pieces with complex cuts, consult a trained conservator or stained glass craftsperson.

- J. Apply a small bead of glazing compound on the glazing bar rabbet as bedding putty, to cushion the new glass, and then install the glass with spacing evenly distributed on all sides. Be sure the compound is properly chosen to work with the window material (wood, steel, etc.).
- K. Replace glazier's points 4" to 6" apart around the perimeter, and tap them halfway in. If using a glazing point driver (which is similar to a stapler), be sure not to unduly stress the glass with too much downward pressure.
- L. Form glazing compound into a 3/8" diameter rope and press around perimeter of new glass.
- M. Using a putty knife, triangulate the surface of the compound. Hold the knife at a 45 degree angle and align compound with the muntin on the interior.
- N. Allow the compound to dry for a week, and then paint accordingly with 1/16" of paint extending onto the surface of the glass to act as a moisture seal.

3.04 ADJUSTING/CLEANING

- A. After the installation of the frame is complete, remove all non-permanent labels from the glass.
- B. After glazing compound has cured (and been sealed with paint in the case of traditional putties), wash the glass on both sides with a mild solution of soapy water. NOTE: ALKALINE OR ABRASIVE AGENTS ARE NEVER TO BE USED TO CLEAN GLASS. CARE SHALL BE TAKEN DURING CLEANING TO AVOID SCRATCHING OF GLASS SURFACES THAT WOULD OCCUR IF USING GRITTY MATERIALS OR DRY CLOTHS.
- C. Thoroughly rinse away any soap residue with clean, clear water. If desired, at this point a glass cleaning solution containing alcohol or ammonia may be used on the glass (unless the frame has been finished with shellac).
- D. Dry both sides of glass with a soft, dry cotton cloth.
- E. The use of newspapers is an effective traditional method for buffing the surface of glass after work is complete.
- F. Clean any excess glazing compound or spills from frames, sash and adjacent surfaces promptly after installation.

Stripping, Staining And Polishing Wood Floors

Procedure code:

955002S

Source:

National Capitol Region Specifications

Division:

Finishes

Section:

Wood Flooring

Last Modified:

02/24/2012

STRIPPING, STAINING AND POLISHING WOOD FLOORS

PART 1---GENERAL

1.01 SUMMARY

A. This procedure includes guidance on stripping, staining and refinishing floors.

B. See 01100-07-S for general project guidelines to be reviewed along with this procedure. These guidelines cover the following sections:

1. Safety Precautions
2. Historic Structures Precautions
3. Submittals
4. Quality Assurance
5. Delivery, Storage and Handling
6. Project/Site Conditions
7. Sequencing and Scheduling
8. General Protection (Surface and Surrounding)

These guidelines should be reviewed prior to performing this procedure and should be followed, when applicable, along with recommendations from the Regional Historic Preservation Officer (RHPO).

1.02 PROJECT/SITE CONDITIONS

A. Existing Conditions: Determine that surfaces to which finishes are to be applied are even, smooth, sound, clean, dry and free from defects affecting proper application. Correct or report defective surfaces to Contracting Officer.

PART 2---PRODUCTS

2.01 MANUFACTURERS

A. Hillyard Chemical Company
800/365-1555

B. The Sherwin Williams Company
101 Prospect Ave. N.W.
Cleveland, OH 44101
216/566-2000

2.02 MATERIALS

A. Sealer: Penetrating type, pliable, wood-hardening finish/sealer such as "Penetrating Seal #21" (Hillyard Chemical Company), or approved equal.

B. Stain: Penetrating, permanent oil-based stain such as "Oil Stain" (Sherwin Williams), or approved equal, colored to match existing floor stain.

C. Clean, soft cloths

D. Fasteners: Nails and screws, select material, type, size and finish to match original installation.

E. Sandpaper: 3 grades, finest grade 00.

2.03 EQUIPMENT

A. Hand-held Orbital Sanders (NO ROTARY OR DISK SANDERS)

B. Machine belt or orbital sander (NO ROTARY OR DISK SANDERS)

C. Stiff bristle brushes

PART 3---EXECUTION

3.01 PREPARATION

A. Surface Preparation:

1. Carefully remove any floor mounted elements and store in location selected by the Contracting Officer.

2. Protect floor borders from damage during sanding and other floor refinishing operations.

3. Machine sand the wood floor to remove stains, indentations and old finish.

NOTE: BELT AND ORBITAL SANDERS SHOULD ONLY BE USED BY EXPERIENCED PERSONNEL. THEY WORK VERY QUICKLY AND IT IS EASY TO DAMAGE THE WOOD SUBSTRATE IF THEY ARE NOT USED CAREFULLY. For additional guidance on stripping wood floors and precautions to take when operating sanding equipment on wood, see 06300-02-R, 06400-10-R and 09910-01-S.

a. Sand floor in direction of wood grain. Remove only the amount of wood necessary to remove old finish but no more than 1/16" depth.

b. Use hand-held sanders at edges of floor.

c. Final sanding shall be with 00 grade sandpaper.

d. Vacuum clean, remove sanding dusted with tack cloth, and immediately apply stain finish.

e. Do not allow traffic on floor until final finishing is complete.

3.02 ERECTION, INSTALLATION, APPLICATION

A. Apply stain to wood floor to obtain a finish to match the original.

B. Apply floor sealer (two coats) in accordance with manufacturer's printed instructions, including machine buffing with steel wool as recommended by the manufacturer.

C. Reinstall floor mounted accessories in original locations. Protect wood flooring during reinstallation.

D. For guidance on cleaning and maintaining woodwork and wood floors, see 06400-02-P, 06400-01-R, and 06400-01-P.

Replacing Damaged Floorboards

Procedure code:

956001S

Source:

HSPG Prepared For NPS - Southeast Regional Office

Division:

Finishes

Section:

Wood Strip Flooring

Last Modified:

03/13/2017

REPLACING DAMAGED FLOORBOARDS

PART 1---GENERAL

1.01 SUMMARY

A. This procedure includes guidance on removing damaged floorboards and installing new replacement boards.

B. Replacing a floorboard should only be undertaken as a last resort - when a board is inadequate or dangerous such as severely warped or buckled boards, deeply nicked or splintered boards, boards with noticeable or irreversible urine stains, boards with holes that cannot be filled, or missing sections of border or inlay.

C. See 01100-07-S for general project guidelines to be reviewed along with this procedure. These guidelines cover the following sections:

1. Safety Precautions
2. Historic Structures Precautions
3. Submittals
4. Quality Assurance
5. Delivery, Storage and Handling
6. Project/Site Conditions
7. Sequencing and Scheduling
8. General Protection (Surface and Surrounding)

These guidelines should be reviewed prior to performing this procedure and should be followed, when applicable, along with recommendations from the Regional Historic Preservation Officer (RHPO).

1.02 SYSTEM DESCRIPTION

A. A wood floor surface can be either a series of connected planks or parquet (small wood pieces arranged in decorative patterns). The wood used is either plain sawn

or quarter sawn. Plank flooring, the more common type, is assembled by joining: butt joint, tongue and groove, shiplap, doweled or spline. Wood floors are usually secured to the under structure by countersinking nails, blind-nailing, or screwing and plugging.

B. A wood floor surface in proper condition does not sag, is not inadvertently stained, is free from protruding nails, and is not warped.

1.03 DELIVERY, STORAGE AND HANDLING

A. Storage and Protection:

1. Every effort must be made to use and reuse materials that are original to the structure. When removed from their rightful place, these materials must be stored under cover inside the building where they cannot be damaged.
2. If many pieces are to be removed, they must be marked inconspicuously in a consistent manner as to their location originally.
3. If salvage material is to be used, treat it as the original material with regards to its storage.
4. If new material must be used, keep it dry during delivery, storage and handling.
5. Do not allow materials to be stored in contact with damp surfaces.

PART 2---PRODUCTS

2.01 MANUFACTURERS (The following, or approved equal)

A. Craftsman Lumber Co.

<http://www.craftsmanlumber.com/>

2.02 MATERIALS

A. Replacement board (to match existing wood type, grain, etc.) from a salvage yard, new lumber yard, or inconspicuous place in building.

NOTE: In buildings where tenant areas were originally finished with wood plank or parquet, the wood is often retained as a sub-floor for carpet. Such concealed areas may be a source of replacement flooring for areas of exposed wood.

B. Wood for shims (no shingles)

C. Wood putty to fill holes

D. Colors-in-oils or residue from stain container to stain putty to match

E. Flooring nails

2.03 EQUIPMENT

A. Keyhole saw, circular saw, or mallet and chisel to remove damaged board

- B. Drill to make a pilot hole for the keyhole saw
- C. Nailset
- D. Tools for accurate measurement
- E. Carpet scrap or newspaper and pounding block for knocking new piece into place

PART 3---EXECUTION

3.01 EXAMINATION

- A. Inspect for wear in the surface such as chips or gouges.

If the wear is minimal, holes can be filled and the surface restored.

- B. Inspect for the signs of insect infestation such as mold, fungus, bore holes, and sawdust piles. Probe the wood with an ice pick or thin knife blade to determine the existence of rot.

3.02 ERECTION, INSTALLATION, APPLICATION

- A. Removing a damaged board:

NOTE: THE DAMAGED BOARD WILL HAVE TO BE DESTROYED TO REMOVE IT.

1. If the gap between boards is wide enough, remove the tongue of the damaged board with a chisel and lift board out.

-OR-

2. Remove board with a saw:

- a. Drill a hole, next to the joist edge, large enough for a keyhole saw to be inserted. DO NOT DRILL THROUGH THE SUBFLOOR.

- b. With the saw, make a cut along the width of the board and along the length of the section to be removed.

- c. Carefully pry the board out, protecting adjacent wood.

- d. If a circular saw is used, set the blade depth to the thickness of the finished floor. Use a carbide flooring blade that will also cut through nails.

CAUTION: Do not cut all the way across to the edge of adjacent floor boards. A loss of control can do irreparable damage to adjacent boards.

- e. Use a chisel to finish the cut.

-OR-

3. Remove board with a mallet and chisel:

- a. Cut along the width of the board to the nearest joist on either side of damage with the beveled edge of the chisel facing the damage. Make sure that the joints in floorboards remain staggered.

b. To free the board from nails, channel cut a wedge from each end holding the chisel at a 30 degree angle with the bevel side down, or drive nails through board with nailset.

c. Remove the center section down the face of the board. The other pieces should then come out easily.

B. Installing a new board:

1. Square up the edges of the hole before inserting replacement board.

2. Measure the new board to fit exactly. If it is tongue and groove, remove the bottom shoulder of the groove. Shim if necessary.

3. If no subfloor exists, add blocking to joist below to support new floorboard.

4. Knock the new board into place protecting the surface with a carpet scrap or newspaper and a pounding block.

5. Face nail the board to the subfloor or nail board ends into joists or attached nailing blocks.

6. Fill the nail holes with wood filler stained to match floor.

a. Add filler in layers and allow to dry between each layer.

b. To stain wood filler use either colors-in-oils or the settled pigment from the bottom of a stain container. When staining to match, go darker than the original color rather than lighter.

Repairing Small Holes and Cracks in Wood Floors

Procedure code:

956002S

Division:

Finishes

Section:

Wood Strip Flooring

Last Modified:

08/09/2016

PART 1---GENERAL

1.01 SUMMARY

- A. This specification provides guidance on filling small holes and surface cracks in wood floor boards and filling cracks between wood floor boards.
- B. Cracks the thickness of a dime between floor boards is not uncommon. In fact, plank boards may expand and contract 2-1/2 times that distance.
- C. Cracks can develop between boards from what is known as compression shrinkage or compression set. As the wood absorbs moisture, the floor boards swell. For those boards that swell beyond their allowable range, the boards compress against one another and, sometimes, become damaged. As the moisture level drops, the boards shrink and a gap develops between the boards.
- D. Read "General Project Guidelines" along with this specification. These guidelines should be reviewed prior to performing this procedure and should be followed, when applicable, along with recommendations from the Regional Historic Preservation Officer (RHPO). The guidelines cover the following sections:
 - 1. Safety Precautions
 - 2. Historic Structures Precautions
 - 3. Submittals
 - 4. Quality Assurance
 - 5. Delivery, Storage and Handling
 - 6. Project/Site Conditions
 - 7. Sequencing and Scheduling
 - 8. General Protection (Surface and Surrounding)

1.02 DEFINITIONS

- A. Parquet: Small pieces of wood arranged in decorative patterns to form a wooden floor (rather than a floor formed from planks)
- B. Plain/flat sawn: the most common and least expensive method of sawing planks, wherein the log is sawn straight across to form planks
- C. Quarter sawn: the log is first sawn into quarters, which are sawn into plans at a ninety-degree angle from the center of the log, resulting in a very straight woodgrain.
- D. Butt joint: joinery method for plank floors, wherein two pieces are attached at a right angle
- E. Tongue and groove: joinery method for plank floors, where every plank has a slot (or groove) on one edge, and a ridge (or tongue) on the other. These edges fit together with the neighboring planks.
- F. Shiplap: joinery method for plank floors, wherein each plank overlaps another plank.
- G. Doweled: joinery method for plank floors, wherein holes are bored into the planks at corresponding points and attached together with either end of a dowel, or small wooden rod.
- H. Splined: joinery method for plank floors, wherein each edge of the plank is equipped with a groove along its length, and a long thin piece of wood that fits into both grooves is used to hold them together.
- I. Countersinking: Hammering a nail slightly below the wood surface using a nail punch.
- J. Blind-nailing: For tongue and groove joints, wherein the nail is hammered into the tongue at an angle to attach the plank to the framing underneath the floor, so that when the groove is fitted over the tongue, the nail head is hidden.
- K. Screwing and plugging: Boring a small hole into wood using a plug-cutting drill bit, then drilling in a screw so that it is slightly below the surface of the wood. This hollow is the filled in, or plugged, with glue.

PART 2---PRODUCTS

2.01 MANUFACTURERS

Abatron, Inc.

Kenosha, WI

262-653-2000

2.02 MATERIALS

- A. Commercial wood putty such as WoodEpoxy (Abatron, Inc.), or approved equal.
- B. Colors-in-oil or oil stain pigment to color putty to match wood floor such as Abatron pigments), or approved equal.
- C. Wood glue to reattach splinters.

- D. Sandpaper.
- E. Sawdust.
- F. Varnish or shellac to make a paste filler.
- G. White wood glue.
- H. Tissue paper.
- I. Calcined magnesia to make paste filler.
- J. Strips of cloth, grey felt weather-stripping or varnished hemp to make a fibrous filler.
- K. Linseed oil.
- L. Marine caulking compound to make a caulk filler.
- M. Wood for shims (do not use shingles, they lack compressive strength).
- N. Strips of wood for nailing to underside of floorboards or for filling cracks between boards.

2.03 EQUIPMENT

- A. Small putty knife.
- B. Brush or sponge to spread pigment.
- C. Hammer.
- D. Nails.
- E. Screwdriver.
- F. Stiff bristle brush.
- G. Vacuum.

PART 3---EXECUTION

3.01 EXAMINATION

Inspect for the signs of decay or insect infestation such as mold, fungus, bore holes, and sawdust piles.

3.02 ERECTION, INSTALLATION, APPLICATION

A. For Small Holes and Surface Cracks:

1. Fill with commercial wood putty:
 - a. Stain the putty to match the floor by using either colors-in-oils or the settled pigment from the bottom of the stain can.
 - b. When staining putty to match wood, it is better to go darker than the wood rather than lighter.
 - c. When filling a hole or crack, add filler in layers and allow drying time between layers.
2. If a floorboard is splintered, glue the splinter down and fill the crack.
3. If damage is such that it cannot be successfully filled and the board is relatively easy to remove, turn the board over rather than replacing it. The new surface should be sanded to match surrounding boards and may need to be shimmed to make it level with the existing surface.

NOTE: THE FEASIBILITY OF THIS METHOD OF REPAIR WILL DEPEND UPON THE ORIGINAL INSTALLATION SYSTEM AND THE APPEARANCE OF THE UNDERSIDE OF THE WOOD FLOORING.

B. For cracks between floorboards:

1. In general, it is best to leave cracks between boards alone. Gaps often diminish as the boards expand in more humid seasons. However, there are several methods for filling cracks between floorboards:
2. If small, cracks between floorboards can be covered with a new floor finish.
3. If the underside of the floorboards is exposed, nail strips of wood to the underside of the crack.
4. Fill with a paste filler (made by user):
 - a. Mix sawdust with varnish, shellac or white glue, or
 - b. Mix tissue paper, glue size, and calcined magnesia into putty.
 - c. Press mixture into crack using putty knife and finish so it is level with the floor surface.
5. Fill with a fibrous filler (made by user):
 - a. Soak cloth strips in linseed oil or glue, or use strands of hemp rope (grey felt weather-stripping may also be used, but is not as stainable as hemp rope).
 - b. Pack cloth strips or strands of rope (in layers, if necessary) into the crack using a screwdriver or putty knife.
 - c. If desired, stain the filler material to match the floor.
6. Fill with caulking compound:
 - a. If the floor is to be painted, use marine caulking compound to fill the crack. It will expand and contract with the wood and the paint will hide the color difference.
 - b. Carefully mask the area before caulking.
 - c. Fill crack using a caulking gun or similar injection device.
 - d. It is best to fill the crack in the spring or in the fall.
 - e. Finish the surface level with the floor.

7. Fill with a thin strip of wood:

NOTE: This option is not ideal because it reintroduces the potential for compression problems resulting from wood expansion and contraction. However for large cracks that are hazardous, it may be used

- a. Thoroughly clean the opening of dirt and debris using a stiff bristle brush and vacuum.
- b. Slip a thin strip of wood into the crack. Match the depth of the surrounding floor and stain to match.
- c. Nail or glue the strip to only one side of the crack to allow for expansion and contraction.

C. In extreme cases, the floorboards will have to be taken up and reinstalled. See "Replacing Damaged Floorboards" for guidance.

General Guidelines for Painting Exterior and Interior Surfaces

Procedure code:

990007S

Source:

Federal Building and USPO, Spokane, WA, GSA PBS, March 1991

Division:

Finishes

Section:

Painting

Last Modified:

12/11/2017

GENERAL GUIDELINES FOR PAINTING EXTERIOR AND INTERIOR SURFACES

PART 1---GENERAL

1.01 SUMMARY

A. This procedure includes general guidelines for painting and finishing interior and exterior surfaces. General descriptions pertaining to surface preparation, priming and application of finish coats are also provided herein, where called for, should be used along with shop priming and surface treatment specified in other procedures.

B. Paint exposed surfaces whether or not colors are designated in "schedules," except where a surface or material is specifically shown not to be painted or is to remain natural. Where an item or surface is not specifically mentioned, paint the same as similar adjacent materials or surfaces. If color or finish is not designated, the contracting officer will select from standard colors or finishes available.

C. Painting is not required on prefinished items, finished metal surfaces, concealed surfaces (except as may be specified in other repair procedures) and operating parts. Do not paint over Underwriter's Laboratories, Factory Mutual or other code-required labels or equipment name, identification, performance rating, or nomenclature plates.

D. For guidance on surface preparation, see the following (references are to GSA Technical Documents):

1. For wood, see 06300-02-R.
2. For iron and steel, see 05010-05-R.

E. For general information on primers and paints, see the following:

1. For wood, see 06300-01-S.
2. For iron and steel, see 05010-13-S.

F. For guidance on paint removal, see the following:

1. For wood, see 06400-07-R, 06400-02-S, 06400-09-R.
2. For iron and steel, see 05010-05-R, 05010-16-R and 05010-17-R.
3. For masonry, see 04211-14-R.

1.02 DEFINITIONS

A. "Paint" includes coating systems materials, primers, emulsions, enamels, stains, sealers and fillers, and other applied materials whether used as prime, intermediate, or finish coats.

1.03 SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: (Submit to the appropriate Cultural Resources Manager (CRM) or designated representative for approval)

1. Provide manufacturers' technical information, label analysis, and application instructions for each material proposed for use.
2. List each material and cross-reference the specific coating and finish system and application. Identify each material by the manufacturer's catalog number and general classification.

B. Samples: Provide samples of each color and material to be applied, with texture to simulate actual conditions, on representative samples of the actual substrate.

1. Define each separate coat, including block fillers and primers. Use representative colors when preparing samples for review. Resubmit until required sheen, color, and texture is achieved.
2. Provide a list of materials and application for each coat of each sample. Label each sample as to location and application.

1.04 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Qualifications: Restoration Specialist: Work must be done by a firm having not less than 10 years' successful experience in comparable painting restoration/rehabilitation projects and employing personnel skilled in the processes and operations indicated.

B. Source of Materials: Provide primers and undercoat paint produced by the same manufacturer as the finish coats. Primers and undercoat paints shall be made to be used with the selected finish coat.

C. Regulatory Requirements:

1. Codes and Standards: Comply with all pertinent codes and regulations, including the minimum standards for materials and application as set forth in the Architectural Specifications Manual, latest edition as published by Specification Services, Washington State Council Painting and Decorating Contractors of America (PDCA), 23830 Pacific Hwy. S., Suite 102, Kent, WA 98032, (206) 878-6630.
2. Comply with applicable recommendations of the Steel Structures Painting Council (SSPC) and PDCA's Architectural Specifications Manual.
3. Where choice of painting method is to be selected from several options in SSPC and PDCA recommendations, obtain contracting officer's representatives review and approval before start of work.

D. Field Samples: On wall surfaces and other exterior and interior components, duplicate finishes of prepared samples.

1. Provide full-coat finish samples on at least 200 sq. ft. minimum of surface until required sheen, color and texture are obtained.
2. Simulate finished lighting conditions for review of in place work.
3. Final acceptance of colors will be from job-applied samples.
4. The contracting officer's representatives will select one room or surface to represent surfaces and conditions for each type of coating and substrate to be painted.
 - a. Apply coatings in this room or surface according to the schedule or as specified.
 - b. After finishes are accepted, this room or surface will be used for evaluation of coating systems of a similar nature.

E. Coordination of Work:

1. Review other sections in which primers are provided to ensure compatibility of the total systems for various substrates.
2. On request, furnish information on characteristics of finish materials to ensure use of compatible primers.
3. Notify the contracting officer of problems anticipated using the materials specified.

F. Inspections and Tests: Work in this procedure is subject to inspection and testing according to the provisions of the Architectural Specifications Manual, latest edition. Payment for inspection and testing service is responsibility of the contractor. Notify Inspection Agency at least four full working days before starting work. Allow full access to the work and give full cooperation always with the Inspection Agency in the performance of their duties in inspection and testing of the work.

1. The Inspection Agency will make field control tests specified after this for surfaces requiring painting and finishing and shall notify the specifying authority, in writing, of any defects or problems before starting work in this specification, or after failure of, or defects in, the prime coat or substrate provided by other trades. Furnish approved or alternate materials for testing, from the source or job site, upon request of the Inspection Agency.

G. Inspection Agency: Paint testing and inspection shall be done by an independent Inspection Agency acceptable to the specifying authority and as endorsed by specification service.

H. Material Quality:

1. Provide the manufacturer's best quality trade sale paint material of the various coating types specified. Paint material containers not displaying manufacturers' product identification will not be acceptable.
2. Federal Specifications establish a minimum quality level for paint materials, except where other product identification is used. Provide written certification from the manufacturer that materials provided meet or exceed these criteria.
3. Products that comply with qualitative requirements of applicable Federal Specifications, yet differ in quantitative requirements, may be considered for use when acceptable to the contracting officer's representative. Furnish material data and manufacturer's certificate of performance to contracting officer's representative for proposed substitutions.

1.05 DELIVERY, STORAGE AND HANDLING

A. Packing and Shipping: Deliver materials to the job site in the manufacturer's original, unopened packages and containers bearing manufacturers' name and label and the following information:

1. Product name or title of material
2. Product description (generic classification or binder type)
3. Federal Specification number, if applicable
4. Manufacturers' stock number and date of manufacture
5. Contents by volume, for pigment and vehicle constituents
6. Thinning instructions
7. Application instructions
8. Color, name and number

B. Storage and Protection:

1. Store materials not in use in tightly covered containers in a well-ventilated area at a minimum ambient temperature of 45 degrees F. (7 degrees C.). Maintain containers used in storage in a clean condition, free of foreign materials and residue.
2. Protect from freezing. Keep storage area neat and orderly. Remove oily rags and waste daily. Take necessary measures to ensure that workers and work areas are protected from fire and health hazards resulting from handling, mixing, and application.
3. Do not open containers of coatings or components unless for immediate use. Keep containers closed when not in use.

1.06 PROJECT/SITE CONDITIONS

A. Environmental Requirements:

1. Apply water-based paints only when the temperature of surfaces to be painted and surrounding air temperatures are between 500 F. (100 C.) and 900 F.(320 C.). Do not apply if, within 24 hours after application, temperature is expected to fall below 400 F. (40 C.).
2. Apply solvent-thinned paints only when the temperature of surfaces to be painted and surrounding air temperatures are between 450 F. (70 C.) and 950 F. (350 C.).
3. Do not apply paint in snow, rain, fog or mist when the relative humidity exceeds 85%, at temperatures less than 50 F. (30 C.) above the dew point, or to damp or wet surfaces.
4. Painting may continue during inclement weather if surfaces and areas to be painted are enclosed and heated within temperature limits specified by the manufacturer during applications and drying periods.
5. Do not apply paint when dust is present. Program surface preparation and painting so that dust and other contaminants from the surface preparation process and other work done will not fall or settle in wet, newly painted surfaces.
6. Do not apply paint to interior surfaces until the area is enclosed. Paint surfaces which will be inaccessible for painting.
7. Protect other work whether to be painted or not against defacement or damage by painting. Use masking materials to protect adjacent surfaces and materials.
8. Comply with manufacturers' instructions for paint curing period temperatures, humidity and time periods.
9. On wood, do not apply paint when the moisture content of the wood exceeds 12% as measured by an electronic moisture meter.

10. Lighting: Work under this section shall not proceed unless adequate lighting is available.
11. Ventilation: Assure that there is adequate ventilation for the type of coating and cleaning materials used. If necessary, consult paint manufacturer for recommendations.
12. Paint pots shall not be cleaned at sinks or other drainage facilities nor shall any debris be allowed to run into drainage lines of the building.
13. All fine arts, furniture and adjacent finishes shall be protected with drop cloths or other suitable methods from paint spatters, dirt or other damage during the progress of the work, and the contractor will be held responsible for any damage to fine arts incident to the work done under the contract.

PART 2---PRODUCTS

2.01 MATERIALS

A. Unless otherwise indicated, furnish scheduled products according to Chapters Five, Six and Seven of referenced Architectural Specifications Manual, including paint, varnish, stain, enamel, lacquer, fillers, and related products for prime, intermediate, and finish coats.

1. Materials not specifically suggested, but required, such as linseed oil, shellac, thinners and the like are to be of quality not less than required by applicable Federal or State Specification Standards.

B. Proprietary names used to designate colors or materials are not intended to imply that products of named manufacturers are required to exclusion of equivalent products of other manufacturer.

C. Color Pigments: Pure, nonfading, applicable types to suit substrates and service suggested.

1. Lead content in pigment, if any, is limited to contain no more than 0.06% lead, as lead metal based on the nonvolatile total (dry-film) of paint by weight.

NOTE: THE USE OF LEAD-BASE PAINTS HAS BEEN RESTRICTED SINCE 1978.

D. Paint may be thinned only when recommended by the manufacturer's printed instructions. Type of thinner and quantity shall be as specified by the manufacturer.

E. Primers

F. Undercoat Materials

G. Interior and Exterior Finish Paint Material

2.02 EQUIPMENT

A. For Brush Application:

1. Natural bristle brushes: Precondition by soaking in raw linseed oil for 24 hours.

B. For Roller Application:

1. Pipe rollers

C. For Mechanical Application:

1. Hot-air spray
2. Cold-air spray (automatic or hand)
3. Electrostatic air spray (powder or fluid)

PART 3---EXECUTION

3.01 EXAMINATION

A. Examine substrates and conditions under which painting will be done for compliance with requirements for application of paint.

B. Do not begin paint application until unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

C. Start of surface preparation/painting is the applicator's notice that the surfaces and conditions within a particular area are acceptable to begin work.

3.02 PREPARATION

NOTE: See also surface preparation procedures for specific materials referenced in Part 1 of this procedure.

A. Protection:

1. Do all preparation and cleaning procedures in strict accordance with the paint manufacturer's instructions and as herein specified, for each particular substrate condition.
2. Remove hardware and hardware accessories, plates, machined surfaces, lighting fixtures, and similar items in place that are not to be painted, or provide surface-applied protection before surface preparation and painting.
 - a. Remove these items if necessary for complete painting of the items and adjacent surfaces.
 - b. Following completion of painting operations in each space or area, have items reinstalled by workers skilled in the trades involved.
3. Adjacent surfaces shall be protected against spatters, stains, or soiling. Each coat of primer or paint shall be evenly spread without skips, runs, sags, and clogging, and allowed to dry before next coat is applied.
4. Provide ample illumination in areas where painting work is in progress to fully light the work being done.
 - a. Examine areas and conditions where painting is to be done and correct any defects before beginning paint application.
 - b. Starting to paint is applicator's notice that surface preparation is acceptable.

B. Surface Preparation: Clean and prepare new surfaces to be painted according to the manufacturer's instructions for each particular substrate condition.

1. Clean surfaces before applying paint or surface treatments.
 - a. Remove oil and grease before cleaning.
 - b. Schedule cleaning and painting so that dust and other contaminants from the cleaning process will not fall on wet, newly painted surfaces.
2. Hand sand between each undercoat and finish coats on smooth surface materials where oil and synthetic resin base paint and varnish systems are scheduled.
 - a. Use extra-fine sandpaper on painted surfaces.

- b. Remove dust from surfaces after sanding with tack cloths.
- c. Note any additional requirement for rubbed finishes on architectural woodwork, scheduled with that finish.

C. Materials Preparation: Carefully mix and prepare paint materials according to manufacturers' directions.

1. Maintain containers used in mixing and application of paint in a clean condition, free of foreign materials and residue.
2. Stir material before application to produce a mixture of uniform density; stir as required during application. Do not stir surface film into material. Remove film and, if necessary, strain material before using.
3. Use only thinners approved by the paint manufacturer, and only within recommended limits.
4. Tinting: Tint each undercoat a lighter shade to ease identification of each coat where multiple coats of the same material are applied. Tint undercoats to match the color of the finish coat, but provide sufficient differences in shade of undercoats to distinguish each separate coat.

3.03 ERECTION, INSTALLATION, APPLICATION

A. General:

1. Assume all responsibility for paint coats applied over surfaces and undercoats which have not been approved by CRM.
2. Remove paint and apply any additional coats of paint, as directed by CRM, where surface preparation and undercoats have not been approved before finish painting.
3. Provide finish coats that are compatible with primers used.
4. Where different colors meet, provide a clear line of natural juncture.
5. Apply additional coats when undercoats, stains, or other conditions show through the final coat of paint until paint film is of uniform finish, color, and appearance. Give special attention to ensure that surfaces, including edges, corners, crevices, welds, and exposed fasteners, receive a dry film thickness equivalent to that of flat surfaces.
6. Finish doors on tops, bottoms and side edges, the same as the exterior faces.
7. Paint the back sides of access panels, removable or hinged covers to match the exposed surfaces.
 - a. The term "exposed surfaces" includes areas visible when permanent or built-in fixtures, grilles, and similar components are in place.
 - b. Extend coatings in these areas as required to maintain the system integrity and provide desired protection.
8. Paint surfaces behind movable equipment and furniture the same as similar exposed surfaces.
9. Paint surfaces behind permanently fixed equipment or furniture with prime coat only before final installation of equipment.
10. Include field prime coats on metalwork in addition to any shop prime coats.
11. Sand lightly between each succeeding enamel and varnish coat.

NOTE: DO NOT PAINT OVER DIRT, RUST, SCALE, GREASE, MOISTURE, SCUFFED SURFACES, OR CONDITIONS DETRIMENTAL TO FORMATION OF A DURABLE SMOOTH PAINT FILM.

B. Scheduling Painting:

1. Apply the first coat to surfaces cleaned, pretreated, or otherwise prepared for painting when practicable after preparation and before subsequent surface deterioration.
2. Allow sufficient time between successive coats to allow proper drying. Do not recoat until paint has dried to where it feels firm, and does not deform or feel sticky under moderate thumb pressure and where application of another coat of paint does not cause lifting or loss of adhesion of the undercoat.

C. Apply paint following manufacturers' directions. Use applicators and techniques best suited for substrate and type of material being applied.

NOTE: CLOUDINESS, SPOTTING, HOLIDAYS, LAPS, BRUSH MARKS, RUNS, SAGS, ROPINESS, OR OTHER SURFACE IMPERFECTIONS WILL NOT BE ACCEPTABLE.

1. Methods of Application:

a. Brush application:

- 1) Brush-out and work brush coats in both directions onto the surfaces in a uniform film.
- 2) Use brushes best suited for the type of material being applied.
- 3) Neatly draw all glass and color break lines.

b. Roller application:

- 1) Roll-out and work roller coats in both directions onto the surfaces in a uniform film.
- 2) Sleeves used on the rollers to be clean, full clipped pile, or as recommended by paint manufacturer for material and texture required.
- 3) Use brush at corners, fasteners, irregular surfaces or items, and other like conditions.

c. Mechanical application:

NOTE: USE MECHANICAL METHODS FOR PAINT APPLICATION ONLY WHEN ACCEPTABLE. CONSULT WITH CRM.

- 1) Spray painting, if permitted, should be accomplished using pressure settings, application technique, spray tip, mesh filter screens, and mesh tip strainer as recommended by the coating manufacturer.
- 2) Do not double back with spray equipment to build up film thickness of two coats in one pass.

2. Minimum Coating Thickness:

- a. Apply materials at not less than the manufacturer's recommended spreading rate. Provide a total dry film thickness of the entire system as recommended by the manufacturer.
- b. The number of coats and film thickness required is the same, despite the application method. Do not apply succeeding coats until the previous coat has cured as recommended by the manufacturer. Sand between applications where sanding is required to produce an even smooth surface according to the manufacturer's directions.

3. Prime Coats: PRIME COAT APPLICATION SHOULD MATCH ORIGINAL FINISH APPLICATION.

NOTE: BRUSH APPLY ALL PRIME COATS UNLESS OTHERWISE ALLOWED TO USE ROLLER OR MECHANICAL APPLICATORS.

- a. Before application of finish coats, apply a prime coat of material as recommended by the manufacturer to material required to be painted or finished and has not been prime coated by others.
- b. Recoat primed and sealed surfaces where evidence of suction spots or unsealed areas in first coat appears, to assure a finish coat with no burn through or other defects due to insufficient sealing.
- c. Omit primer on metal surfaces that have been shop-primed and touch up painted.

4. Top Coats: TOP COAT APPLICATION SHOULD MATCH ORIGINAL FINISH APPLICATION.

- a. Mechanical and Electrical Work: Painting mechanical and electrical work is limited to items exposed in mechanical equipment rooms and in occupied spaces.
- b. Block Fillers: Apply block fillers to concrete masonry block at a rate to ensure complete coverage with pores filled.
- c. For Stipple Enamel Finish: Roll and redistribute paint to an even and fine texture. Leave no evidence of rolling such as laps, irregularity in texture, skid marks, or other surface imperfections.
- d. For Pigmented (Opaque) Finishes: Completely cover to provide an opaque, smooth surface of uniform finish, color, appearance, and coverage. Cloudiness, spotting, holidays, laps, brush marks, runs, sags, ropiness, or other surface imperfections will not be acceptable.
- e. For Transparent (Clear) Finishes: Use multiple coats to produce a glass-smooth surface film of even luster. Provide a finish free of laps, cloudiness, color irregularity, runs, brush marks, orange peel, nail holes, or other surface imperfections.

5. Completed Work:

- a. Match approved samples for color, texture, and coverage. Remove, refinish, or repaint work not in compliance with specified requirements.
 - b. Finish painted surfaces shall be free of clouding due to no coverage of ground coats or surfaces to which applied. Finish coat shall match specified color.
- 1) Edges adjoining other materials or colors shall be true without overlapping.
 - 2) Each coat shall be applied to ornamental work in a way that will not obscure ornament and texture.
 - 3) Each coat shall be even.

3.04 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

A. GSA reserves the right to invoke the following test procedure any time and as often as it deems necessary during the period when paint is being applied.

1. GSA may engage the services of an independent testing laboratory to sample the paint material being used. Samples of material delivered to the project will be taken, identified, sealed, and certified in the presence of the contractor.

2. The testing laboratory will do appropriate tests for the following characteristics as required by GSA.

- a. Quantitative materials
- b. Abrasion resistance
- c. Apparent reflectivity
- d. Flexibility
- e. Washability
- f. Absorption
- g. Accelerated weathering
- h. Dry opacity
- i. Accelerated yellowness
- j. Recoating
- k. Skinning
- l. Color retention
- m. Alkali and mildew resistance

B. If the test results show that the paint materials do not comply with the specified requirements, stop the painting work, and remove noncomplying paint; repaint surfaces coated with the rejected paint; remove rejected paint from previously painted surfaces if, upon repainting with the specified paint, the two coatings are non-compatible. Use corrective methods as directed.

STANDARDS FOR REHABILITATION & GUIDELINES
FOR REHABILITATING HISTORIC BUILDINGS

Rehabilitation

Rehabilitation is defined as the act or process of making possible a compatible use for a property through repair, alterations, and additions while preserving those portions or features which convey its historical, cultural, or architectural values.



Standards for Rehabilitation

1. A property will be used as it was historically or be given a new use that requires minimal change to its distinctive materials, features, spaces and spatial relationships.
2. The historic character of a property will be retained and preserved. The removal of distinctive materials or alteration of features, spaces and spatial relationships that characterize a property will be avoided.
3. Each property will be recognized as a physical record of its time, place and use. Changes that create a false sense of historical development, such as adding conjectural features or elements from other historic properties, will not be undertaken.
4. Changes to a property that have acquired historic significance in their own right will be retained and preserved.
5. Distinctive materials, features, finishes, and construction techniques or examples of craftsmanship that characterize a property will be preserved.
6. Deteriorated historic features will be repaired rather than replaced. Where the severity of deterioration requires replacement of a distinctive feature, the new feature will match the old in design, color, texture and, where possible, materials. Replacement of missing features will be substantiated by documentary and physical evidence.
7. Chemical or physical treatments, if appropriate, will be undertaken using the gentlest means possible. Treatments that cause damage to historic materials will not be used.
8. Archeological resources will be protected and preserved in place. If such resources must be disturbed, mitigation measures will be undertaken.
9. New additions, exterior alterations, or related new construction will not destroy historic materials, features, and spatial relationships that characterize the property. The new work will be differentiated from the old and will be compatible with the historic materials, features, size, scale and proportion, and massing to protect the integrity of the property and its environment.
10. New additions and adjacent or related new construction will be undertaken in such a manner that, if removed in the future, the essential form and integrity of the historic property and its environment would be unimpaired.

GUIDELINES FOR REHABILITATING HISTORIC BUILDINGS

INTRODUCTION

In **Rehabilitation**, historic building materials and character-defining features are protected and maintained as they are in the treatment Preservation. However, greater latitude is given in the **Standards for Rehabilitation and Guidelines for Rehabilitating Historic Buildings** to replace extensively deteriorated, damaged, or missing features using either the same material or compatible substitute materials. Of the four treatments, only **Rehabilitation** allows alterations and the construction of a new addition, if necessary for a continuing or new use for the historic building.

Identify, Retain, and Preserve Historic Materials and Features

The guidance for the treatment **Rehabilitation** begins with recommendations to identify the form and detailing of those architectural materials and features that are important in defining the building's historic character and which must be retained to preserve that character. Therefore, guidance on *identifying, retaining, and preserving* character-defining features is always given first.

Protect and Maintain Historic Materials and Features

After identifying those materials and features that are important and must be retained in the process of **Rehabilitation** work, then *protecting and maintaining* them are addressed. Protection generally involves the least degree of intervention and is preparatory to other work. Protection includes the maintenance of historic materials and features as well as ensuring that the property is protected before and

during rehabilitation work. A historic building undergoing rehabilitation will often require more extensive work. Thus, an overall evaluation of its physical condition should always begin at this level.

Repair Historic Materials and Features

Next, when the physical condition of character-defining materials and features warrants additional work, *repairing* is recommended. **Rehabilitation** guidance for the repair of historic materials, such as masonry, again begins with the least degree of intervention possible. In rehabilitation, repairing also includes the limited replacement in kind or with a compatible substitute material of extensively deteriorated or missing components of features when there are surviving prototype features that can be substantiated by documentary and physical evidence. Although using the same kind of material is always the preferred option, a substitute material may be an acceptable alternative if the form, design, and scale, as well as the substitute material itself, can effectively replicate the appearance of the remaining features.

Replace Deteriorated Historic Materials and Features

Following repair in the hierarchy, **Rehabilitation** guidance is provided for *replacing* an entire character-defining feature with new material because the level of deterioration or damage of materials precludes repair. If the missing feature is character defining or if it is critical to the survival of the building (e.g., a roof), it should be replaced to match the historic feature based on physical or his-

toric documentation of its form and detailing. As with repair, the preferred option is always replacement of the entire feature in kind (i.e., with the same material, such as wood for wood). However, when this is not feasible, a compatible substitute material that can reproduce the overall appearance of the historic material may be considered.

It should be noted that, while the National Park Service guidelines recommend the replacement of an entire character-defining feature that is extensively deteriorated, the guidelines never recommend removal and replacement with new material of a feature that could reasonably be repaired and, thus, preserved.

Design for the Replacement of Missing Historic Features

When an entire interior or exterior feature is missing, such as a porch, it no longer plays a role in physically defining the historic character of the building unless it can be accurately recovered in form and detailing through the process of carefully documenting the historic appearance. If the feature is not critical to the survival of the building, allowing the building to remain without the feature is one option. But if the missing feature is important to the historic character of the building, its replacement is always recommended in the **Rehabilitation** guidelines as the first, or preferred, course of action. If adequate documentary and physical evidence exists, the feature may be accurately reproduced. A second option in a rehabilitation treatment for replacing a missing feature, particularly when the available information about the feature is inadequate to permit an accurate reconstruction, is to *design* a new feature that is compatible with the overall historic character of the building. The new design should always take into account the size, scale, and material of the building itself and should be clearly differentiated from the authentic historic features. For properties that have changed over time, and where those changes have acquired

significance, reestablishing missing historic features generally should not be undertaken if the missing features did not coexist with the features currently on the building. Juxtaposing historic features that did not exist concurrently will result in a false sense of the building's history.

Alterations

Some exterior and interior alterations to a historic building are generally needed as part of a **Rehabilitation** project to ensure its continued use, but it is most important that such alterations do not radically change, obscure, or destroy character-defining spaces, materials, features, or finishes. Alterations may include changes to the site or setting, such as the selective removal of buildings or other features of the building site or setting that are intrusive, not character defining, or outside the building's period of significance.

Code-Required Work: Accessibility and Life Safety

Sensitive solutions to meeting code requirements in a **Rehabilitation** project are an important part of protecting the historic character of the building. Work that must be done to meet accessibility and life-safety requirements must also be assessed for its potential impact on the historic building, its site, and setting.

Resilience to Natural Hazards

Resilience to natural hazards should be addressed as part of a **Rehabilitation** project. A historic building may have existing characteristics or features that help to address or minimize the impacts of natural hazards. These should always be used to best advantage when considering new adaptive treatments so as to have the least impact on the historic character of the building, its site, and setting.

Sustainability

Sustainability should be addressed as part of a **Rehabilitation** project. Good preservation practice is often synonymous with sustainability. Existing energy-efficient features should be retained and repaired. Only sustainability treatments should be considered that will have the least impact on the historic character of the building.

The topic of sustainability is addressed in detail in *The Secretary of the Interior's Standards for Rehabilitation & Illustrated Guidelines on Sustainability for Rehabilitating Historic Buildings*.

New Exterior Additions and Related New Construction

Rehabilitation is the only treatment that allows expanding a historic building by enlarging it with an addition. However, the **Rehabilitation** guidelines emphasize that new additions should be considered only after it is determined that meeting specific new needs cannot be achieved by altering non-character-defining interior spaces. If the use cannot be accommodated in this way, then an attached exterior addition may be considered. New additions should be designed and constructed so that the character-defining features of the historic building, its site, and setting are not negatively impacted. Generally, a new addition should be subordinate to the historic building. A new addition should be compatible, but differentiated enough so that it is not confused as historic or original to the building. The same guidance applies to new construction so that it does not negatively impact the historic character of the building or its site.

Rehabilitation as a Treatment. *When repair and replacement of deteriorated features are necessary; when alterations or additions to the property are planned for a new or continued use; and when its depiction at a particular time is not appropriate, Rehabilitation may be considered as a treatment. Prior to undertaking work, a documentation plan for Rehabilitation should be developed.*

MASONRY: STONE, BRICK, TERRA COTTA, CONCRETE, ADOBE, STUCCO, AND MORTAR

RECOMMENDED

NOT RECOMMENDED

<p><i>Identifying, retaining and preserving</i> masonry features that are important in defining the overall historic character of the building (such as walls, brackets, railings, cornices, window and door surrounds, steps, and columns) and decorative ornament and other details, such as tooling and bonding patterns, coatings, and color.</p>	<p>Removing or substantially changing masonry features which are important in defining the overall historic character of the building so that, as a result, the character is diminished.</p> <p>Replacing or rebuilding a major portion of exterior masonry walls that could be repaired, thereby destroying the historic integrity of the building.</p> <p>Applying paint or other coatings (such as stucco) to masonry that has been historically unpainted or uncoated to create a new appearance.</p> <p>Removing paint from historically-painted masonry.</p>
<p><i>Protecting and maintaining</i> masonry by ensuring that historic drainage features and systems that divert rainwater from masonry surfaces (such as roof overhangs, gutters, and downspouts) are intact and functioning properly.</p>	<p>Failing to identify and treat the causes of masonry deterioration, such as leaking roofs and gutters or rising damp.</p>
<p>Cleaning masonry only when necessary to halt deterioration or remove heavy soiling.</p>	<p>Cleaning masonry surfaces when they are not heavily soiled to create a “like-new” appearance, thereby needlessly introducing chemicals or moisture into historic materials.</p>
<p>Carrying out masonry cleaning tests when it has been determined that cleaning is appropriate. Test areas should be examined to ensure that no damage has resulted and, ideally, monitored over a sufficient period of time to allow long-range effects to be predicted.</p>	<p>Cleaning masonry surfaces without testing or without sufficient time for the testing results to be evaluated.</p>



[1] An alkaline-based product is appropriate to use to clean historic marble because it will not damage the marble, which is acid sensitive.



[2] Mid-century modern building technology made possible the form of this parabola-shaped structure and its thin concrete shell construction. Built in 1961 as the lobby of the La Concha Motel in Las Vegas, it was designed by Paul Revere Williams, one of the first prominent African-American architects. It was moved to a new location and rehabilitated to serve as the Neon Museum, and is often cited as an example of Googie architecture. *Credit: Photographed with permission at The Neon Museum, Las Vegas, Nevada.*

MASONRY: STONE, BRICK, TERRA COTTA, CONCRETE, ADOBE, STUCCO, AND MORTAR

RECOMMENDED

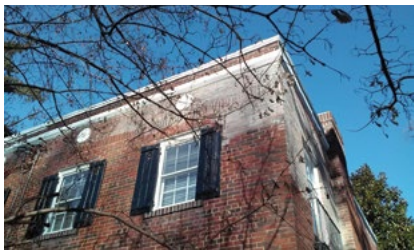
Cleaning soiled masonry surfaces with the gentlest method possible, such as using low-pressure water and detergent and natural bristle or other soft-bristle brushes.

NOT RECOMMENDED

Cleaning or removing paint from masonry surfaces using most abrasive methods (including sandblasting, other media blasting, or high-pressure water) which can damage the surface of the masonry and mortar joints.

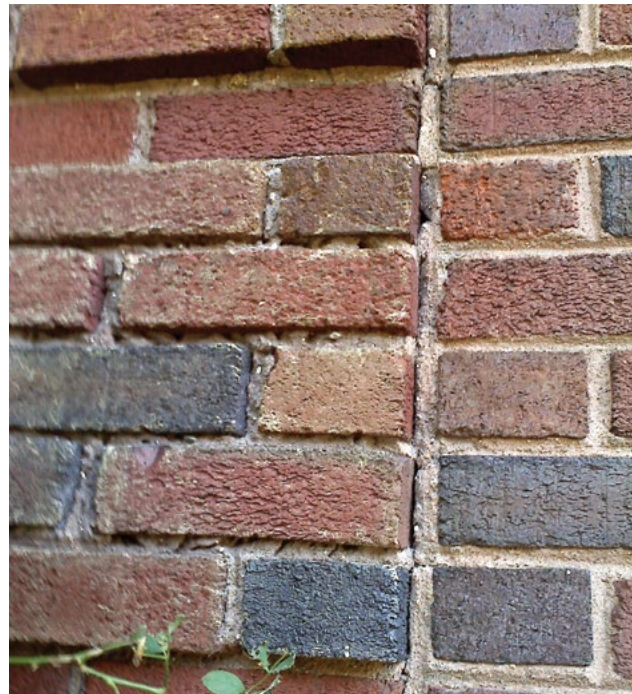
Using a cleaning or paint-removal method that involves water or liquid chemical solutions when there is any possibility of freezing temperatures.

Cleaning with chemical products that will damage some types of masonry (such as using acid on limestone or marble), or failing to neutralize or rinse off chemical cleaners from masonry surfaces.



[3] Not Recommended:
The white film on the upper corner of this historic brick row house is the result of using a scrub or slurry coating, rather than traditional repointing by hand, which is the recommended method.

[4] Not Recommended:
The quoins on the left side of the photo show that high-pressure abrasive blasting used to remove paint can damage even early 20th-century, hard-baked, textured brick and erode the mortar, whereas the same brick on the right, which was not abrasively cleaned, is undamaged.



MASONRY: STONE, BRICK, TERRA COTTA, CONCRETE, ADOBE, STUCCO, AND MORTAR

RECOMMENDED	NOT RECOMMENDED
Using biodegradable or environmentally-safe cleaning or paint-removal products.	
Using paint-removal methods that employ a poultice to which paint adheres, when possible, to neatly and safely remove old lead paint.	
Using coatings that encapsulate lead paint, when possible, where the paint is not required to be removed to meet environmental regulations.	
Allowing only trained conservators to use abrasive or laser-cleaning methods, when necessary, to clean hard-to-reach, highly-carved, or detailed decorative stone features.	
Removing damaged or deteriorated paint only to the next sound layer using the gentlest method possible (e.g., hand scraping) prior to repainting.	Removing paint that is firmly adhered to masonry surfaces, unless the building was unpainted historically and the paint can be removed without damaging the surface.
Applying compatible paint coating systems to historically-painted masonry following proper surface preparation.	Failing to follow manufacturers' product and application instructions when repainting masonry features.
Repainting historically-painted masonry features with colors that are appropriate to the historic character of the building and district.	Using paint colors on historically-painted masonry features that are not appropriate to the historic character of the building and district.
Protecting adjacent materials when cleaning or removing paint from masonry features.	Failing to protect adjacent materials when cleaning or removing paint from masonry features.
Evaluating the overall condition of the masonry to determine whether more than protection and maintenance, such as repairs to masonry features, will be necessary.	Failing to undertake adequate measures to ensure the protection of masonry features.
<p>Repairing masonry by patching, splicing, consolidating, or otherwise reinforcing the masonry using recognized preservation methods. Repair may include the limited replacement in kind or with a compatible substitute material of those extensively deteriorated or missing parts of masonry features when there are surviving prototypes, such as terra-cotta brackets or stone balusters.</p>	<p>Removing masonry that could be stabilized, repaired, and conserved, or using untested consolidants and unskilled personnel, potentially causing further damage to historic materials.</p> <p>Replacing an entire masonry feature, such as a cornice or balustrade, when repair of the masonry and limited replacement of deteriorated or missing components are feasible.</p>

MASONRY: STONE, BRICK, TERRA COTTA, CONCRETE, ADOBE, STUCCO, AND MORTAR

RECOMMENDED	NOT RECOMMENDED
<p>Repairing masonry walls and other masonry features by repointing the mortar joints where there is evidence of deterioration, such as disintegrating mortar, cracks in mortar joints, loose bricks, or damaged plaster on the interior.</p>	<p>Removing non-deteriorated mortar from sound joints and then repointing the entire building to achieve a more uniform appearance.</p>
<p>Removing deteriorated lime mortar carefully by hand raking the joints to avoid damaging the masonry.</p>	
<p>Using power tools only on horizontal joints on brick masonry in conjunction with hand chiseling to remove hard mortar that is deteriorated or that is a non-historic material which is causing damage to the masonry units. Mechanical tools should be used only by skilled masons in limited circumstances and generally not on short, vertical joints in brick masonry.</p>	<p>Allowing unskilled workers to use masonry saws or mechanical tools to remove deteriorated mortar from joints prior to repointing.</p>
<p>Duplicating historic mortar joints in strength, composition, color, and texture when repointing is necessary. In some cases, a lime-based mortar may also be considered when repointing Portland cement mortar because it is more flexible.</p>	<p>Repointing masonry units with mortar of high Portland cement content (unless it is the content of the historic mortar).</p> <p>Using “surface grouting” or a “scrub” coating technique, such as a “sack rub” or “mortar washing,” to repoint exterior masonry units instead of traditional repointing methods.</p> <p>Repointing masonry units (other than concrete) with a synthetic caulking compound instead of mortar.</p>
<p>Duplicating historic mortar joints in width and joint profile when repointing is necessary.</p>	<p>Changing the width or joint profile when repointing.</p>
<p>Repairing stucco by removing the damaged material and patching with new stucco that duplicates the old in strength, composition, color, and texture.</p>	<p>Removing sound stucco or repairing with new stucco that is different in composition from the historic stucco.</p> <p>Patching stucco or concrete without removing the source of deterioration.</p> <p>Replacing deteriorated stucco with synthetic stucco, an exterior finish and insulation system (EFIS), or other non-traditional materials.</p>

MASONRY: STONE, BRICK, TERRA COTTA, CONCRETE, ADOBE, STUCCO, AND MORTAR

RECOMMENDED	NOT RECOMMENDED
Using mud plaster or a compatible lime-plaster adobe render, when appropriate, to repair adobe.	Applying cement stucco, unless it already exists, to adobe.
Sealing joints in concrete with appropriate flexible sealants and backer rods, when necessary.	
Cutting damaged concrete back to remove the source of deterioration, such as corrosion on metal reinforcement bars. The new patch must be applied carefully so that it will bond satisfactorily with and match the historic concrete.	Patching damaged concrete without removing the source of deterioration.



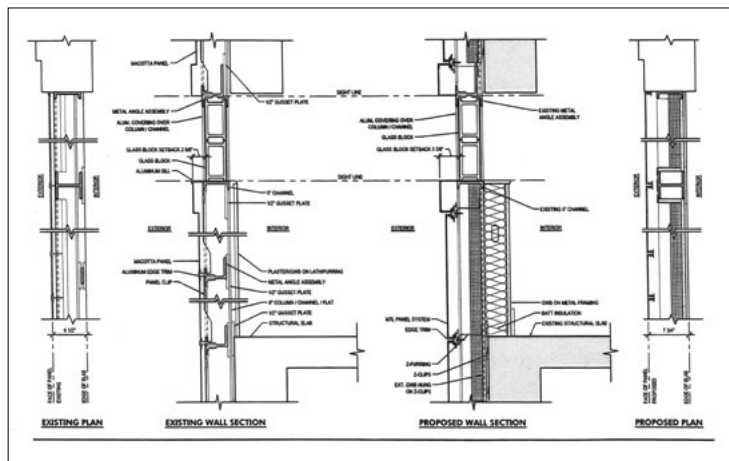
[5] Rebars in the reinforced concrete ceiling have rusted, causing the concrete to spall. The rebars must be cleaned of rust before the concrete can be patched.

[6] Some areas of the concrete brise soleil screen on this building constructed in 1967 are badly deteriorated. If the screen cannot be repaired, it may be replaced in kind or with a composite substitute material with the same appearance as the concrete.





[7] (a) J.W. Knapp's Department Store, built 1937-38, in Lansing, MI, was constructed with a proprietary material named "Maul Macotta" made of enameled steel and cast-in-place concrete panels. Prior to its rehabilitation, a building inspection revealed that, due to a flaw in the original design and construction, the material was deteriorated beyond repair. The architects for the rehabilitation project devised a replacement system (b) consisting of enameled aluminum panels that matched the original colors (c). Photos and drawing (a-b): Quinn Evans Architects; Photo (c): James Haefner Photography.



MASONRY: STONE, BRICK, TERRA COTTA, CONCRETE, ADOBE, STUCCO, AND MORTAR

RECOMMENDED	NOT RECOMMENDED
Using a non-corrosive, stainless-steel anchoring system when replacing damaged stone, concrete, or terra-cotta units that have failed.	
Applying non-historic surface treatments, such as water-repellent coatings, to masonry only after repointing and only if masonry repairs have failed to arrest water penetration problems.	Applying waterproof, water-repellent, or non-original historic coatings (such as stucco) to masonry as a substitute for repointing and masonry repairs.
Applying permeable, anti-graffiti coatings to masonry when appropriate.	Applying water-repellent or anti-graffiti coatings that change the historic appearance of the masonry or that may trap moisture if the coating is not sufficiently permeable.
Replacing in kind an entire masonry feature that is too deteriorated to repair (if the overall form and detailing are still evident) using the physical evidence as a model to reproduce the feature or when the replacement can be based on historic documentation. Examples can include large sections of a wall, a cornice, pier, or parapet. If using the same kind of material is not feasible, then a compatible substitute material may be considered.	Removing a masonry feature that is unrepairable and not replacing it, or replacing it with a new feature that does not match. Using substitute material for the replacement that does not convey the same appearance of the surviving components of the masonry feature.
<i>The following work is highlighted to indicate that it is specific to Rehabilitation projects and should only be considered after the preservation concerns have been addressed.</i>	
Designing the Replacement for Missing Historic Features	
Designing and installing a replacement masonry feature, such as a step or door pediment, when the historic feature is completely missing. It may be an accurate restoration based on documentary and physical evidence, but only when the historic feature to be replaced coexisted with the features currently on the building. Or, it may be a new design that is compatible with the size, scale, material, and color of the historic building.	Creating an inaccurate appearance because the replacement for the missing masonry feature is based upon insufficient physical or historic documentation, is not a compatible design, or because the feature to be replaced did not coexist with the features currently on the building. Introducing a new masonry feature that is incompatible in size, scale, material, or color.

WOOD: CLAPBOARD, WEATHERBOARD, SHINGLES, AND OTHER FUNCTIONAL AND DECORATIVE ELEMENTS

RECOMMENDED	NOT RECOMMENDED
<p><i>Identifying, retaining and preserving</i> wood features that are important in defining the overall historic character of the building (such as siding, cornices, brackets, window and door surrounds, and steps) and their paints, finishes, and colors.</p>	<p>Removing or substantially changing wood features which are important in defining the overall historic character of the building so that, as a result, the character is diminished.</p> <p>Removing a major portion of the historic wood from a façade instead of repairing or replacing only the deteriorated wood, then reconstructing the façade with new material to achieve a uniform or “improved” appearance.</p> <p>Changing the type of finish, coating, or historic color of wood features, thereby diminishing the historic character of the exterior.</p> <p>Failing to renew failing paint or other coatings that are historic finishes.</p> <p>Stripping historically-painted surfaces to bare wood and applying a clear finish rather than repainting.</p> <p>Stripping paint or other coatings to reveal bare wood, thereby exposing historically-coated surfaces to the effects of accelerated weathering.</p> <p>Removing wood siding (clapboards) or other covering (such as stucco) from log structures that were covered historically, which changes their historic character and exposes the logs to accelerated deterioration.</p>
<p><i>Protecting and maintaining</i> wood features by ensuring that historic drainage features that divert rainwater from wood surfaces (such as roof overhangs, gutters, and downspouts) are intact and functioning properly.</p>	<p>Failing to identify and treat the causes of wood deterioration, such as faulty flashing, leaking gutters, cracks and holes in siding, deteriorated caulking in joints and seams, plant material growing too close to wood surfaces, or insect or fungal infestation.</p>

WOOD: CLAPBOARD, WEATHERBOARD, SHINGLES, AND OTHER FUNCTIONAL AND DECORATIVE ELEMENTS

RECOMMENDED

NOT RECOMMENDED

Applying chemical preservatives or paint to wood features that are subject to weathering, such as exposed beam ends, outriggers, or rafter tails.	Using chemical preservatives (such as creosote) which, unless they were used historically, can change the appearance of wood features.
Implementing an integrated pest management plan to identify appropriate preventive measures to guard against insect damage, such as installing termite guards, fumigating, and treating with chemicals.	
Retaining coatings (such as paint) that protect the wood from moisture and ultraviolet light. Paint removal should be considered only when there is paint surface deterioration and as part of an overall maintenance program which involves repainting or applying other appropriate coatings.	Stripping paint or other coatings from wood features without recoating.



[8] Rotted clapboards have been replaced selectively with new wood siding to match the originals.

WOOD: CLAPBOARD, WEATHERBOARD, SHINGLES, AND OTHER FUNCTIONAL AND DECORATIVE ELEMENTS

RECOMMENDED	NOT RECOMMENDED
Removing damaged or deteriorated paint to the next sound layer using the gentlest method possible (e.g., hand scraping and hand sanding) prior to repainting.	Using potentially-damaging paint-removal methods on wood surfaces, such as open-flame torches, orbital sanders, abrasive methods (including sandblasting, other media blasting, or high-pressure water), or caustic paint-removers. Removing paint that is firmly adhered to wood surfaces.
Using chemical strippers primarily to supplement other methods such as hand scraping, hand sanding, and thermal devices.	Failing to neutralize the wood thoroughly after using chemical paint removers so that new paint may not adhere. Removing paint from detachable wood features by soaking them in a caustic solution, which may roughen the surface, split the wood, or result in staining from residual acids leaching out of the wood.
Using biodegradable or environmentally-safe cleaning or paint-removal products.	
Using paint-removal methods that employ a poultice to which paint adheres, when possible, to neatly and safely remove old lead paint.	
Using thermal devices (such as infrared heaters) carefully to remove paint when it is so deteriorated that total removal is necessary prior to repainting.	Using a thermal device to remove paint from wood features without first checking for and removing any flammable debris behind them. Using thermal devices without limiting the amount of time the wood feature is exposed to heat.
Using coatings that encapsulate lead paint, when possible, where the paint is not required to be removed to meet environmental regulations.	
Applying compatible paint coating systems to historically-painted wood following proper surface preparation.	Failing to follow manufacturers' product and application instructions when repainting wood features.
Repainting historically-painted wood features with colors that are appropriate to the building and district.	Using paint colors on historically-painted wood features that are not appropriate to the building or district.

WOOD: CLAPBOARD, WEATHERBOARD, SHINGLES, AND OTHER FUNCTIONAL AND DECORATIVE ELEMENTS

RECOMMENDED

NOT RECOMMENDED

Protecting adjacent materials when working on other wood features.	Failing to protect adjacent materials when working on wood features.
Evaluating the overall condition of the wood to determine whether more than protection and maintenance, such as repairs to wood features, will be necessary.	Failing to undertake adequate measures to ensure the protection of wood features.



[9] Smooth-surfaced cementitious siding (left) may be used to replace deteriorated wood siding only on secondary elevations that have minimal visibility.

[10] **Not Recommended:** Cementitious siding with a raised wood-grain texture is not an appropriate material to replace historic wood siding, which has a smooth surface when painted.



WOOD: CLAPBOARD, WEATHERBOARD, SHINGLES, AND OTHER FUNCTIONAL AND DECORATIVE ELEMENTS

RECOMMENDED	NOT RECOMMENDED
<p>Repairing wood by patching, splicing, consolidating, or otherwise reinforcing the wood using recognized conservation methods. Repair may include the limited replacement in kind or with a compatible substitute material of those extensively deteriorated or missing components of wood features when there are surviving prototypes, such as brackets, molding, or sections of siding.</p>	<p>Removing wood that could be stabilized, repaired, and conserved, or using untested consolidants and unskilled personnel, potentially causing further damage to historic materials.</p> <p>Replacing an entire wood feature, such as a cornice or balustrade, when repair of the wood and limited replacement of deteriorated or missing components is feasible.</p>
<p>Replacing in kind an entire wood feature that is too deteriorated to repair (if the overall form and detailing are still evident) using physical evidence as a model to reproduce the feature or when the replacement can be based on historic documentation. Examples of such wood features include a cornice, entablature, or a balustrade. If using wood is not feasible, then a compatible substitute material may be considered.</p>	<p>Removing a wood feature that is unrepairable and not replacing it, or replacing it with a new feature that does not match.</p> <p>Using substitute material for the replacement that does not convey the same appearance of the surviving components of the wood feature.</p>
<p>Replacing a deteriorated wood feature or wood siding on a <i>primary or other highly-visible</i> elevation with a new matching wood feature.</p>	<p>Replacing a deteriorated wood feature or wood siding on a <i>primary or other highly-visible elevation</i> with a composite substitute material.</p>
<p><i>The following work is highlighted to indicate that it is specific to Rehabilitation projects and should only be considered after the preservation concerns have been addressed.</i></p>	
<p>Designing the Replacement for Missing Historic Features</p>	
<p>Designing and installing a replacement masonry feature, such as a step or door pediment, when the historic feature is completely missing. It may be an accurate restoration based on documentary and physical evidence, but only when the historic feature to be replaced coexisted with the features currently on the building. Or, it may be a new design that is compatible with the size, scale, material, and color of the historic building.</p>	<p>Creating an inaccurate appearance because the replacement for the missing masonry feature is based upon insufficient physical or historic documentation, is not a compatible design, or because the feature to be replaced did not coexist with the features currently on the building.</p> <p>Introducing a new wood feature that is incompatible in size, scale, material, or color.</p>

METALS: WROUGHT AND CAST IRON, STEEL, PRESSED METAL, TERNEPLATE, COPPER, ALUMINUM, AND ZINC

RECOMMENDED

NOT RECOMMENDED

<p>Identifying, retaining, and preserving metal features that are important in defining the overall historic character of the building (such as columns, capitals, pilasters, spandrel panels, or stairways) and their paints, finishes, and colors. The type of metal should be identified prior to work because each metal has its own properties and may require a different treatment.</p>	<p>Removing or substantially changing metal features which are important in defining the overall historic character of the building so that, as a result, the character is diminished.</p> <p>Removing a major portion of the historic metal from a façade instead of repairing or replacing only the deteriorated metal, then reconstructing the façade with new material to achieve a uniform or “improved” appearance.</p>
<p>Protecting and maintaining metals from corrosion by providing proper drainage so that water does not stand on flat, horizontal surfaces or accumulate in curved decorative features.</p>	<p>Failing to identify and treat the causes of corrosion, such as moisture from leaking roofs or gutters.</p> <p>Placing incompatible metals together without providing an appropriate separation material. Such incompatibility can result in galvanic corrosion of the less noble metal (e.g., copper will corrode cast iron, steel, tin, and aluminum).</p>
<p>Cleaning metals when necessary to remove corrosion prior to repainting or applying appropriate protective coatings.</p>	<p>Leaving metals that must be protected from corrosion uncoated after cleaning.</p>

[11] The stainless steel doors at the entrance to this Art Deco apartment building are important in defining its historic character and should be retained in place.



METALS: WROUGHT AND CAST IRON, STEEL, PRESSED METAL, TERNEPLATE, COPPER, ALUMINUM, AND ZINC

RECOMMENDED	NOT RECOMMENDED
<p>Identifying the particular type of metal prior to any cleaning procedure and then testing to ensure that the gentlest cleaning method possible is selected; or, alternatively, determining that cleaning is inappropriate for the particular metal.</p>	<p>Using cleaning methods which alter or damage the color, texture, or finish of the metal, or cleaning when it is inappropriate for the particular metal.</p> <p>Removing the patina from historic metals. The patina may be a protective layer on some metals (such as bronze or copper) as well as a distinctive finish.</p>
<p>Using non-corrosive chemical methods to clean soft metals (such as lead, tinplate, terneplate, copper, and zinc) whose finishes can be easily damaged by abrasive methods.</p>	<p>Cleaning soft metals (such as lead, tinplate, terneplate, copper, and zinc) with abrasive methods (including sandblasting, other abrasive media, or high-pressure water) which will damage the surface of the metal.</p>
<p>Using the least abrasive cleaning method for hard metals (such as cast iron, wrought iron, and steel) to remove paint buildup and corrosion. If hand scraping and wire brushing have proven ineffective, low-pressure abrasive methods may be used as long as they do not abrade or damage the surface.</p>	<p>Using high-pressure abrasive techniques (including sandblasting, other media blasting, or high-pressure water) without first trying gentler cleaning methods prior to cleaning cast iron, wrought iron, or steel.</p>
<p>Applying appropriate paint or other coatings to historically-coated metals after cleaning to protect them from corrosion.</p>	<p>Applying paint or other coatings to metals (such as copper, bronze or stainless steel) if they were not coated historically, unless a coating is necessary for maintenance.</p>
<p>Repainting historically-painted metal features with colors that are appropriate to the building and district.</p>	<p>Using paint colors on historically-painted metal features that are not appropriate to the building or district.</p>
<p>Applying an appropriate protective coating (such as lacquer or wax) to a metal feature that was historically unpainted, such as a bronze door, which is subject to heavy use.</p>	

METALS: WROUGHT AND CAST IRON, STEEL, PRESSED METAL, TERNEPLATE, COPPER, ALUMINUM, AND ZINC

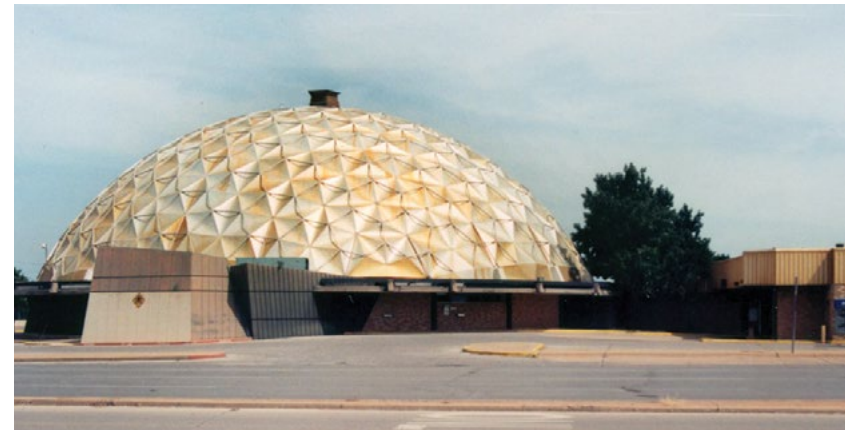
RECOMMENDED

NOT RECOMMENDED

Protecting adjacent materials when cleaning or removing paint from metal features.	Failing to protect adjacent materials when working on metal features.
Evaluating the overall condition of metals to determine whether more than protection and maintenance, such as repairs to metal features, will be necessary.	Failing to undertake adequate measures to ensure the protection of metal features.



[12] This historic steel window has been cleaned, repaired, and primed in preparation for painting and reglazing.



[13] The gold-colored, anodized aluminum geodesic dome of the former Citizen's State Bank in Oklahoma City, OK, built in 1958 and designed by Robert Roloff, makes this a distinctive mid-20th century building.



[14] Interior cast-iron columns have been cleaned and repainted as part of the rehabilitation of this historic market building for continuing use.



[15] New enameled-metal panels were replicated to replace the original panels, which were too deteriorated to repair, when the storefront of this early 1950s building was recreated.

METALS: WROUGHT AND CAST IRON, STEEL, PRESSED METAL, TERNEPLATE, COPPER, ALUMINUM, AND ZINC

RECOMMENDED

NOT RECOMMENDED

<p>Repairing metal by reinforcing the metal using recognized preservation methods. Repair may include the limited replacement in kind or with a compatible substitute material of those extensively deteriorated or missing components of features when there are surviving prototypes, such as column capitals or bases, store-fronts, railings and steps, or window hoods.</p>	<p>Removing metals that could be stabilized, repaired, and conserved, or using improper repair techniques, or unskilled personnel, potentially causing further damage to historic materials.</p>
<p>Replacing in kind an entire metal feature that is too deteriorated to repair (if the overall form and detailing are still evident) using the physical evidence as a model to reproduce the feature or when the replacement can be based on historic documentation. Examples of such a feature could include cast-iron porch steps or steel-sash windows. If using the same kind of material is not feasible, then a compatible substitute material may be considered.</p>	<p>Replacing an entire metal feature, such as a column or balustrade, when repair of the metal and limited replacement of deteriorated or missing components are feasible.</p> <p>Removing a metal feature that is unrepairable and not replacing it, or replacing it with a new metal feature that does not match.</p> <p>Using a substitute material for the replacement that does not convey the same appearance of the surviving components of the metal feature or that is physically or chemically incompatible.</p>
<p><i>The following work is highlighted to indicate that it is specific to Rehabilitation projects and should only be considered after the preservation concerns have been addressed.</i></p>	
<p>Designing the Replacement for Missing Historic Features</p>	
<p>Designing and installing a replacement metal feature, such as a metal cornice or cast-iron column, when the historic feature is completely missing. It may be an accurate restoration based on documentary and physical evidence, but only when the historic feature to be replaced coexisted with the features currently on the building. Or, it may be a new design that is compatible with the size, scale, material, and color of the historic building.</p>	<p>Creating an inaccurate appearance because the replacement for the missing metal feature is based upon insufficient physical or historic documentation, is not a compatible design, or because the feature to be replaced did not coexist with the features currently on the building.</p> <p>Introducing a new metal feature that is incompatible in size, scale, material, or color.</p>

ROOFS

RECOMMENDED	NOT RECOMMENDED
<p><i>Identifying, retaining, and preserving</i> roofs and their functional and decorative features that are important in defining the overall historic character of the building. The form of the roof (gable, hipped, gambrel, flat, or mansard) is significant, as are its decorative and functional features (such as cupolas, cresting, parapets, monitors, chimneys, weather vanes, dormers, ridge tiles, and snow guards), roofing material (such as slate, wood, clay tile, metal, roll roofing, or asphalt shingles), and size, color, and patterning.</p>	<p>Removing or substantially changing roofs which are important in defining the overall historic character of the building so that, as a result, the character is diminished.</p> <p>Removing a major portion of the historic roof or roofing material that is repairable, then rebuilding it with new material to achieve a more uniform or “improved” appearance.</p> <p>Changing the configuration or shape of a roof by adding highly visible new features (such as dormer windows, vents, skylights, or a penthouse).</p> <p>Stripping the roof of sound historic material, such as slate, clay tile, wood, or metal.</p>
<p><i>Protecting and maintaining</i> a roof by cleaning gutters and downspouts and replacing deteriorated flashing. Roof sheathing should also be checked for indications of moisture due to leaks or condensation.</p>	<p>Failing to clean and maintain gutters and downspouts properly so that water and debris collect and cause damage to roof features, sheathing, and the underlying roof structure.</p>
<p>Providing adequate anchorage for roofing material to guard against wind damage and moisture penetration.</p>	<p>Allowing flashing, caps, and exposed fasteners to corrode, which accelerates deterioration of the roof.</p>
<p>Protecting a leaking roof with a temporary waterproof membrane with a synthetic underlayment, roll roofing, plywood, or a tarpaulin until it can be repaired.</p>	<p>Leaving a leaking roof unprotected so that accelerated deterioration of historic building materials (such as masonry, wood, plaster, paint, and structural members) occurs.</p>
<p>Repainting a roofing material that requires a protective coating and was painted historically (such as a terneplate metal roof or gutters) as part of regularly-scheduled maintenance.</p>	<p>Failing to repaint a roofing material that requires a protective coating and was painted historically as part of regularly-scheduled maintenance.</p>
<p>Applying compatible paint coating systems to historically-painted roofing materials following proper surface preparation.</p>	<p>Applying paint or other coatings to roofing material if they were not coated historically.</p>
<p>Protecting a roof covering when working on other roof features.</p>	<p>Failing to protect roof coverings when working on other roof features.</p>
<p>Evaluating the overall condition of the roof and roof features to determine whether more than protection and maintenance, such as repairs to roof features, will be necessary.</p>	<p>Failing to undertake adequate measures to ensure the protection of roof features.</p>

ROOFS

RECOMMENDED

Repairing a roof by ensuring that the existing historic or compatible non-historic roof covering is sound and waterproof. Repair may include the limited replacement in kind or with a compatible substitute material of missing materials (such as wood shingles, slates, or tiles) on a main roof, as well as those extensively deteriorated or missing components of features when there are surviving prototypes, such as ridge tiles, dormer roofing, or roof monitors.

Using corrosion-resistant roof fasteners (e.g., nails and clips) to repair a roof to help extend its longevity.

NOT RECOMMENDED

Replacing an entire roof feature when repair of the historic roofing materials and limited replacement of deteriorated or missing components are feasible.



[16] The deteriorated asphalt shingles of this porch roof are being replaced in kind with matching shingles.

ROOFS

RECOMMENDED	NOT RECOMMENDED
<p>Replacing in kind an entire roof covering or feature that is too deteriorated to repair (if the overall form and detailing are still evident) using the physical evidence as a model to reproduce the feature or when the replacement can be based on historic documentation. Examples of such a feature could include a large section of roofing, a dormer, or a chimney. If using the same kind of material is not feasible, then a compatible substitute material may be considered.</p>	<p>Removing a feature of the roof that is unrepairable and not replacing it, or replacing it with a new roof feature that does not match.</p> <p>Using a substitute material for the replacement that does not convey the same appearance of the roof covering or the surviving components of the roof feature or that is physically or chemically incompatible.</p>
<p>Replacing only missing or damaged roofing tiles or slates rather than replacing the entire roof covering.</p>	<p>Failing to reuse intact slate or tile in good condition when only the roofing substrate or fasteners need replacement.</p>
<p>Replacing an incompatible roof covering or any deteriorated non-historic roof covering with historically-accurate roofing material, if known, or another material that is compatible with the historic character of the building.</p>	
<p><i>The following work is highlighted to indicate that it is specific to Rehabilitation projects and should only be considered after the preservation concerns have been addressed.</i></p>	
Designing the Replacement for Missing Historic Features	
<p>Designing and installing a new roof covering for a missing roof or a new feature, such as a dormer or a monitor, when the historic feature is completely missing. It may be an accurate restoration based on documentary and physical evidence, but only when the historic feature to be replaced coexisted with the features currently on the building. Or, it may be a new design that is compatible with the size, scale, material, and color of the historic building.</p>	<p>Creating an inaccurate appearance because the replacement for the missing roof feature is based upon insufficient physical or historic documentation, is not a compatible design, or because the feature to be replaced did not coexist with the features currently on the building.</p> <p>Introducing a new roof feature that is incompatible in size, scale, material, or color.</p>

ROOFS

RECOMMENDED

NOT RECOMMENDED

Alterations and Additions for a New Use

Installing mechanical and service equipment on the roof (such as heating and air-conditioning units, elevator housing, or solar panels) when required for a new use so that they are inconspicuous on the site and from the public right-of-way and do not damage or obscure character-defining historic features.	Installing roof-top mechanical or service equipment so that it damages or obscures character-defining roof features or is conspicuous on the site or from the public right-of-way.
Designing rooftop additions, elevator or stair towers, decks or terraces, dormers, or skylights when required by a new or continuing use so that they are inconspicuous and minimally visible on the site and from the public right-of-way and do not damage or obscure character-defining historic features.	Changing a character-defining roof form, or damaging or destroying character-defining roofing material as a result of an incompatible rooftop addition or improperly-installed or highly-visible mechanical equipment.
Installing a green roof or other roof landscaping, railings, or furnishings that are not visible on the site or from the public right-of-way and do not damage the roof structure.	Installing a green roof or other roof landscaping, railings, or furnishings that are visible on the site and from the public right-of-way.



[17] New wood elements have been used selectively to replace rotted wood on the underside of the roof in this historic warehouse.

WINDOWS

RECOMMENDED	NOT RECOMMENDED
<p>Identifying, retaining, and preserving windows and their functional and decorative features that are important to the overall character of the building. The window material and how the window operates (e.g., double hung, casement, awning, or hopper) are significant, as are its components (including sash, muntins, ogee lugs, glazing, pane configuration, sills, mullions, casings, or brick molds) and related features, such as shutters.</p>	<p>Removing or substantially changing windows or window features which are important in defining the overall historic character of the building so that, as a result, the character is diminished.</p> <p>Changing the appearance of windows that contribute to the historic character of the building by replacing materials, finishes, or colors which noticeably change the sash, depth of the reveal, and muntin configurations; the reflectivity and color of the glazing; or the appearance of the frame.</p> <p>Obscuring historic wood window trim with metal or other material.</p> <p>Replacing windows solely because of peeling paint, broken glass, stuck sash, or high air infiltration. These conditions, in themselves, do not indicate that windows are beyond repair.</p>
<p>Protecting and maintaining the wood or metal which comprises the window jamb, sash, and trim through appropriate treatments, such as cleaning, paint removal, and reapplication of protective coating systems.</p>	<p>Failing to protect and maintain window materials on a cyclical basis so that deterioration of the window results.</p>
<p>Protecting windows against vandalism before work begins by covering them and by installing alarm systems that are keyed into local protection agencies.</p>	<p>Leaving windows unprotected and subject to vandalism before work begins, thereby also allowing the interior to be damaged if it can be accessed through unprotected windows.</p>
<p>Making windows weathertight by recaulking gaps in fixed joints and replacing or installing weatherstripping.</p>	
<p>Protecting windows from chemical cleaners, paint, or abrasion during work on the exterior of the building.</p>	<p>Failing to protect historic windows from chemical cleaners, paint, or abrasion when work is being done on the exterior of the building.</p>
<p>Protecting and retaining historic glass when replacing putty or repairing other components of the window.</p>	<p>Failing to protect the historic glass when making window repairs.</p>

WINDOWS

RECOMMENDED	NOT RECOMMENDED
Sustaining the historic operability of windows by lubricating friction points and replacing broken components of the operating system (such as hinges, latches, sash chains or cords) and replacing deteriorated gaskets or insulating units.	Failing to maintain windows and window components so that windows are inoperable, or sealing operable sash permanently.
Adding storm windows with a matching or a one-over-one pane configuration that will not obscure the characteristics of the historic windows. Storm windows improve energy efficiency and are especially beneficial when installed over wood windows because they also protect them from accelerated deterioration.	Failing to repair and reuse window hardware such as sash lifts, latches, and locks.
Adding interior storm windows as an alternative to exterior storm windows when appropriate.	



[18] The historic metal storm windows in this 1920s office building were retained and repaired during the rehabilitation project.



[19] Installing a mockup of a proposed replacement window can be helpful to evaluate how well the new windows will match the historic windows that are missing or too deteriorated to repair.



[20 a-d] The original steel windows in this industrial building were successfully repaired as part of the rehabilitation project (left).

WINDOWS

RECOMMENDED	NOT RECOMMENDED
Installing sash locks, window guards, removable storm windows, and other reversible treatments to meet safety, security, or energy conservation requirements.	
Evaluating the overall condition of the windows to determine whether more than protection and maintenance, such as repairs to windows and window features, will be necessary.	Failing to undertake adequate measures to ensure the protection of window features.
Repairing window frames and sash by patching, splicing, consolidating, or otherwise reinforcing them using recognized preservation methods. Repair may include the limited replacement in kind or with a compatible substitute material of those extensively deteriorated, broken, or missing components of features when there are surviving prototypes, such as sash, sills, hardware, or shutters.	Removing window features that could be stabilized, repaired, or conserved using untested consolidants, improper repair techniques, or unskilled personnel, potentially causing further damage to the historic materials. Replacing an entire window when repair of the window and limited replacement of deteriorated or missing components are feasible.
Removing glazing putty that has failed and applying new putty; or, if glass is broken, carefully removing all putty, replacing the glass, and reputtying.	
Installing new glass to replace broken glass which has the same visual characteristics as the historic glass.	
Replacing in kind an entire window that is too deteriorated to repair (if the overall form and detailing are still evident) using the physical evidence as a model to reproduce the feature or when the replacement can be based on historic documentation. If using the same kind of material is not feasible, then a compatible substitute material may be considered.	Removing a character-defining window that is unrepairable or is not needed for the new use and blocking up the opening, or replacing it with a new window that does not match. Using substitute material for the replacement that does not convey the same appearance of the surviving components of the window or that is physically incompatible.



[21] The windows on the lower floor, which were too deteriorated to repair, were replaced with new steel windows matching the upper-floor historic windows that were retained.

WINDOWS

RECOMMENDED	NOT RECOMMENDED
Modifying a historic single-glazed sash to accommodate insulated glass when it will not jeopardize the soundness of the sash or significantly alter its appearance.	Modifying a historic single-glazed sash to accommodate insulated glass when it will jeopardize the soundness of the sash or significantly alter its appearance.
Using low-e glass with the least visible tint in new or replacement windows.	Using low-e glass with a dark tint in new or replacement windows, thereby negatively impacting the historic character of the building.
Using window grids rather than true divided lights on windows on the upper floors of high-rise buildings if they will not be noticeable.	Using window grids rather than true divided lights on windows in low-rise buildings or on lower floors of high-rise buildings where they will be noticeable, resulting in a change to the historic character of the building.
Ensuring that spacer bars in between double panes of glass are the same color as the window sash.	Using spacer bars in between double panes of glass that are not the same color as the window sash.
Replacing all of the components in a glazing system if they have failed because of faulty design or materials that have deteriorated with new material that will improve the window performance without noticeably changing the historic appearance.	Replacing all of the components in a glazing system with new material that will noticeably change the historic appearance.
Replacing incompatible, non-historic windows with new windows that are compatible with the historic character of the building; or reinstating windows in openings that have been filled in.	
<i>The following work is highlighted to indicate that it is specific to Rehabilitation projects and should only be considered after the preservation concerns have been addressed.</i>	
Designing the Replacement for Missing Historic Features	
Designing and installing a new window or its components, such as frames, sash, and glazing, when the historic feature is completely missing. It may be an accurate restoration based on documentary and physical evidence, but only when the historic feature to be replaced coexisted with the features currently on the building. Or, it may be a new design that is compatible with the size, scale, material, and color of the historic building.	<p>Creating an inaccurate appearance because the replacement for the missing window is based upon insufficient physical or historic documentation, is not a compatible design, or because the feature to be replaced did not coexist with the features currently on the building.</p> <p>Installing replacement windows made from other materials that are not the same as the material of the original windows if they would have a noticeably different appearance from the remaining historic windows.</p>



(a)



(b)



(c)

[22] **Not Recommended:** (a-b) The original wood windows in this late-19th-century building, which were highly decorative, could likely have been repaired and retained. (c) Instead, they were replaced with new windows that do not match the detailing of the historic windows and, therefore, do not meet the Standards (above).



[23] (a) This deteriorated historic wood window was repaired and retained (b) in this rehabilitation project.



WINDOWS

RECOMMENDED

NOT RECOMMENDED

Alterations and Additions for a New Use

Adding new window openings on rear or other secondary, less-visible elevations, if required by a new use. The new openings and the windows in them should be compatible with the overall design of the building but, in most cases, not duplicate the historic fenestration.

Changing the number, location, size, or glazing pattern of windows on primary or highly-visible elevations which will alter the historic character of the building.

Cutting new openings on character-defining elevations or cutting new openings that damage or destroy significant features.

Adding balconies at existing window openings or new window openings on primary or other highly-visible elevations where balconies never existed and, therefore, would be incompatible with the historic character of the building.

Replacing windows that are too deteriorated to repair using the same sash and pane configuration, but with new windows that operate differently, if necessary, to accommodate a new use. Any change must have minimal visual impact. Examples could include replacing hopper or awning windows with casement windows, or adding a realigned and enlarged operable portion of industrial steel windows to meet life-safety codes.

Replacing a window that contributes to the historic character of the building with a new window that is different in design (such as glass divisions or muntin profiles), dimensions, materials (wood, metal, or glass), finish or color, or location that will have a noticeably different appearance from the historic windows, which may negatively impact the character of the building.

Installing impact-resistant glazing, when necessary for security, so that it is compatible with the historic windows and does not damage them or negatively impact their character.

Installing impact-resistant glazing, when necessary for security, that is incompatible with the historic windows and that damages them or negatively impacts their character.

Using compatible window treatments (such as frosted glass, appropriate shades or blinds, or shutters) to retain the historic character of the building when it is necessary to conceal mechanical equipment, for example, that the new use requires be placed in a location behind a window or windows on a primary or highly-visible elevation.

Removing a character-defining window to conceal mechanical equipment or to provide privacy for a new use of the building by blocking up the opening.

ENTRANCES AND PORCHES

RECOMMENDED

NOT RECOMMENDED



[24] Rotted boards in the beaded-board porch ceiling are being replaced with new matching beaded board.

<p>Identifying, retaining, and preserving entrances and porches and their functional and decorative features that are important in defining the overall historic character of the building. The materials themselves (including masonry, wood, and metal) are significant, as are their features, such as doors, transoms, pilasters, columns, balustrades, stairs, roofs, and projecting canopies.</p>	<p>Removing or substantially changing entrances and porches which are important in defining the overall historic character of the building so that, as a result, the character is diminished.</p> <p>Cutting new entrances on a primary façade.</p> <p>Altering utilitarian or service entrances so they compete visually with the historic primary entrance; increasing their size so that they appear significantly more important; or adding decorative details that cannot be documented to the building or are incompatible with the building's historic character.</p>
<p>Retaining a historic entrance or porch even though it will no longer be used because of a change in the building's function.</p>	<p>Removing a historic entrance or porch that will no longer be required for the building's new use.</p>
<p>Protecting and maintaining the masonry, wood, and metals which comprise entrances and porches through appropriate surface treatments, such as cleaning, paint removal, and reapplication of protective coating systems.</p>	<p>Failing to protect and maintain entrance and porch materials on a cyclical basis so that deterioration of entrances and porches results.</p>
<p>Protecting entrances and porches against arson and vandalism before work begins by covering them and by installing alarm systems keyed into local protection agencies.</p>	<p>Leaving entrances and porches unprotected and subject to vandalism before work begins, thereby also allowing the interior to be damaged if it can be accessed through unprotected entrances.</p>
<p>Protecting entrance and porch features when working on other features of the building.</p>	<p>Failing to protect materials and features when working on other features of the building.</p>
<p>Evaluating the overall condition of entrances and porches to determine whether more than protection and maintenance, such as repairs to entrance and porch features, will be necessary.</p>	<p>Failing to undertake adequate measures to ensure the protection of entrance and porch features.</p>
<p>Repairing entrances and porches by patching, splicing, consolidating, and otherwise reinforcing them using recognized preservation methods. Repair may include the limited replacement in kind or with a compatible substitute material of those extensively deteriorated features or missing components of features when there are surviving prototypes, such as balustrades, columns, and stairs.</p>	<p>Removing entrances and porches that could be stabilized, repaired, and conserved, or using untested consolidants, improper repair techniques, or unskilled personnel, potentially causing further damage to historic materials.</p> <p>Replacing an entire entrance or porch feature when repair of the feature and limited replacement of deteriorated or missing components are feasible.</p>

ENTRANCES AND PORCHES

RECOMMENDED

Replacing in kind an entire entrance or porch that is too deteriorated to repair (if the overall form and detailing are still evident) using the physical evidence as a model to reproduce the feature or when the replacement can be based on historic documentation. If using the same kind of material is not feasible, then a compatible substitute material may be considered.

NOT RECOMMENDED

Removing an entrance or porch that is unrepairable and not replacing it, or replacing it with a new entrance or porch that does not match.

Using a substitute material for the replacement that does not convey the same appearance of the surviving components of entrance or porch features or that is physically incompatible.



[25] The new infill designs for the garage door openings in this commercial building (a) converted for restaurant use and in this mill building (b) rehabilitated for residential use are compatible with the historic character of the buildings.

ENTRANCES AND PORCHES

RECOMMENDED	NOT RECOMMENDED
<i>The following work is highlighted to indicate that it is specific to Rehabilitation projects and should only be considered after the preservation concerns have been addressed.</i>	
Designing the Replacement for Missing Historic Features	
<p>Designing and installing a new entrance or porch when the historic feature is completely missing or has previously been replaced by one that is incompatible. It may be an accurate restoration based on documentary and physical evidence, but only when the historic entrance or porch to be replaced coexisted with the features currently on the building. Or, it may be a new design that is compatible with the size, scale, material, and color of the historic building.</p>	<p>Creating an inaccurate appearance because the replacement for the missing entrance or porch is based upon insufficient physical or historic documentation, is not a compatible design, or because the feature to be replaced did not coexist with the features currently on the building.</p>
Alterations and Additions for a New Use	
<p>Enclosing historic porches on secondary elevations only, when required by a new use, in a manner that preserves the historic character of the building (e.g., using large sheets of glass and recessing the enclosure wall behind existing posts and balustrades).</p>	<p>Enclosing porches in a manner that results in a diminution or loss of historic character by using solid materials rather than clear glazing, or by placing the enclosure in front of, rather than behind, the historic features.</p>
<p>Designing and constructing additional entrances or porches on secondary elevations when required for the new use in a manner that preserves the historic character of the building (i.e., ensuring that the new entrance or porch is clearly subordinate to historic primary entrances or porches).</p>	<p>Constructing secondary or service entrances and porches that are incompatible in size and scale or detailing with the historic building or that obscure, damage, or destroy character-defining features.</p>

[26] **Not Recommended:** Installing a screened enclosure is never recommended on a front or otherwise prominent historic porch. In limited instances, it may be possible to add screening on a porch at the rear or on a secondary façade; however, the enclosure should match the color of the porch and be placed behind columns and railings so that it does not obscure these features.



STOREFRONTS

RECOMMENDED

Identifying, retaining, and preserving storefronts and their functional and decorative features that are important in defining the overall historic character of the building. The storefront materials (including wood, masonry, metals, ceramic tile, clear glass, and pigmented structural glass) and the configuration of the storefront are significant, as are features, such as display windows, base panels, bulkheads, signs, doors, transoms, kick plates, corner posts, piers, and entablatures. The removal of inappropriate, non-historic cladding, false mansard roofs, and other later, non-significant alterations can help reveal the historic character of the storefront.

Retaining later, non-original features that have acquired significance over time.

NOT RECOMMENDED

Removing or substantially changing storefronts and their features which are important in defining the overall historic character of the building so that, as a result, the character is diminished.

Changing the storefront so that it has a residential rather than commercial appearance.

Introducing features from an earlier period that are not compatible with the historic character of the storefront.

Changing the location of the storefront's historic main entrance.

Replacing or covering a glass transom with solid material or inappropriate signage, or installing an incompatible awning over it.

Removing later features that may have acquired significance.



[28] This new storefront, which replaced one that was missing, is compatible with the historic character of the building.

STOREFRONTS

RECOMMENDED	NOT RECOMMENDED
<p><i>Protecting and maintaining</i> masonry, wood, glass, ceramic tile, and metals which comprise storefronts through appropriate treatments, such as cleaning, paint removal, and reapplication of protective coating systems.</p>	<p>Failing to protect and maintain storefront materials on a cyclical basis so that deterioration of storefront features results.</p>
<p>Protecting storefronts against arson and vandalism before work begins by covering windows and doors and by installing alarm systems keyed into local protection agencies.</p>	<p>Leaving the storefront unprotected and subject to vandalism before work begins, thereby also allowing the interior to be damaged if it can be accessed through unprotected entrances.</p>
<p>Protecting the storefront when working on other features of the building.</p>	<p>Failing to protect the storefront when working on other features of the building.</p>
<p>Evaluating the overall condition of the storefront to determine whether more than protection and maintenance, such as repairs to storefront features, will be necessary.</p>	<p>Failing to undertake adequate measures to ensure the protection of storefront features.</p>



[27] This original c. 1940s storefront, with its character-defining angled and curved glass display window and recessed entrance with a decorative terrazzo paving, is in good condition and should be retained in a rehabilitation project.

STOREFRONTS

RECOMMENDED

NOT RECOMMENDED

Repairing storefronts by patching, splicing, consolidating, or otherwise reinforcing them using recognized preservation methods. Repair may include the limited replacement in kind or with a compatible substitute material of those extensively deteriorated or missing components of storefronts when there are surviving prototypes, such as transoms, base panels, kick plates, piers, or signs.

Removing storefronts that could be stabilized, repaired, and conserved, or using untested consolidants, improper repair techniques, or unskilled personnel, potentially causing further damage to historic materials.

Replacing in kind an entire storefront that is too deteriorated to repair (if the overall form and detailing are still evident) using the physical evidence as a model to reproduce the feature or when the replacement can be based on historic documentation. If using the same kind of material is not feasible, then a compatible substitute material may be considered.

Replacing a storefront feature when repair of the feature and limited replacement of deteriorated or missing components are feasible.

Using a substitute material for the replacement that does not convey the same appearance of the surviving components of the storefront or that is physically incompatible.

Removing a storefront that is unrepairable and not replacing it or replacing it with a new storefront that does not match.

The following work is highlighted to indicate that it is specific to Rehabilitation projects and should only be considered after the preservation concerns have been addressed.

Designing the Replacement for Missing Historic Features

Designing and installing a new storefront when the historic storefront is completely missing or has previously been replaced by one that is incompatible. It may be an accurate restoration based on documentary and physical evidence, but only when the historic storefront to be replaced coexisted with the features currently on the building. Or, it may be a new design that is compatible with the size, scale, material, and color of the historic building.

Creating an inaccurate appearance because the replacement for the missing storefront is based upon insufficient physical or historic documentation, is not a compatible design, or because the feature to be replaced did not coexist with the features currently on the building.

Using new, over-scaled, or internally-lit signs unless there is a historic precedent for them or using other types of signs that obscure, damage, or destroy character-defining features of the storefront and the building.

STOREFRONTS

RECOMMENDED	NOT RECOMMENDED
<p>Replacing missing awnings or canopies that can be historically documented to the building, or adding new signage, awnings, or canopies that are compatible with the historic character of the building.</p>	<p>Adding vinyl awnings, or other awnings that are inappropriately sized or shaped, which are incompatible with the historic character of the building; awnings that do not extend over the entire length of the storefront; or large canopies supported by posts that project out over the sidewalk, unless their existence can be historically documented.</p>
Alterations and Additions for a New Use	
<p>Retaining the glazing and the transparency (i.e., which allows the openness of the interior to be experienced from the exterior) that is so important in defining the character of a historic storefront when the building is being converted for residential use. Window treatments (necessary for occupants' privacy) should be installed that are uniform and compatible with the commercial appearance of the building, such as screens or wood blinds. When display cases still exist behind the storefront, the screening should be set at the back of the display case.</p>	<p>Replacing storefront glazing with solid material for occupants' privacy when the building is being converted for residential use.</p> <p>Installing window treatments in storefront windows that have a residential appearance, which are incompatible with the commercial character of the building.</p> <p>Installing window treatments that are not uniform in a series of repetitive storefront windows.</p>



[29] The rehabilitation of the 1910 Māālaea General Store (a), which served the workers' camp at the Wailuku Sugar Company on the Hawaiian island of Maui, included the reconstruction of the original parapet (b).



CURTAIN WALLS

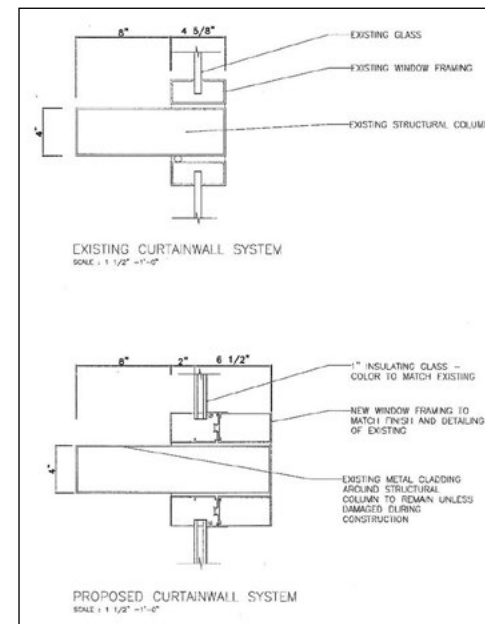
RECOMMENDED	NOT RECOMMENDED
<p>Identifying, retaining, and preserving curtain wall systems and their components (metal framing members and glass or opaque panels) that are important in defining the overall historic character of the building. The design of the curtain wall is significant, as are its component materials (metal stick framing and panel materials, such as clear or spandrel glass, stone, terra cotta, metal, and fiber-reinforced plastic), appearance (e.g., glazing color or tint, transparency, and reflectivity), and whether the glazing is fixed, operable or louvered glass panels. How a curtain wall is engineered and fabricated, and the fact that it expands and contracts at a different rate from the building's structural system, are important to understand when undertaking the rehabilitation of a curtain wall system.</p>	<p>Removing or substantially changing curtain wall components which are important in defining the overall historic character of the building so that, as a result, the character is diminished.</p> <p>Replacing historic curtain wall features instead of repairing or replacing only the deteriorated components.</p>
<p>Protecting and maintaining curtain walls and their components through appropriate surface treatments, such as cleaning, paint removal, and reapplication of protective coating systems; and by making them watertight and ensuring that sealants and gaskets are in good condition.</p>	<p>Failing to protect and maintain curtain wall components on a cyclical basis so that deterioration of curtain walls results.</p> <p>Failing to identify, evaluate, and treat various causes of curtain wall failure, such as open gaps between components where sealants have deteriorated or are missing.</p>
<p>Protecting ground-level curtain walls from vandalism before work begins by covering them, while ensuring adequate ventilation, and by installing alarm systems keyed into local protection agencies.</p>	<p>Leaving ground-level curtain walls unprotected and subject to vandalism before work begins, thereby also allowing the interior to be damaged if it can be accessed through unprotected glazing.</p>
<p>Protecting curtain walls when working on other features of the building.</p>	<p>Failing to protect curtain walls when working on other features of the building.</p>
<p>Cleaning curtain wall systems only when necessary to halt deterioration or to remove heavy soiling.</p>	<p>Cleaning curtain wall systems when they are not heavily soiled, thereby needlessly introducing chemicals or moisture into historic materials.</p>

CURTAIN WALLS

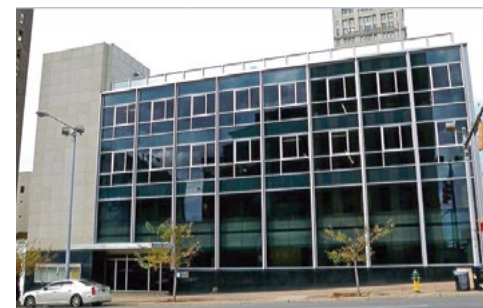
RECOMMENDED	NOT RECOMMENDED
<p>Carrying out cleaning tests, when it has been determined that cleaning is appropriate, using only cleaning materials that will not damage components of the system, including factory-applied finishes. Test areas should be examined to ensure that no damage has resulted.</p>	<p>Cleaning curtain wall systems without testing or using cleaning materials that may damage components of the system.</p>
<p>Evaluating the overall condition of curtain walls to determine whether more than protection and maintenance, such as repair of curtain wall components, will be necessary.</p>	<p>Failing to undertake adequate measures to protect curtain wall components.</p>
<p>Repairing curtain walls by ensuring that they are watertight by augmenting existing components or replacing deteriorated or missing sealants or gaskets, where necessary, to seal any gaps between system components. Repair may include the limited replacement of those extensively deteriorated or missing components of curtain walls when there are surviving prototypes.</p>	<p>Removing curtain wall components that could be repaired or using improper repair techniques.</p> <p>Replacing an entire curtain wall system when repair of materials and limited replacement of deteriorated or missing components are feasible.</p>
<p>Applying sealants carefully so that they are not readily visible.</p>	
<p>Replacing in kind a component or components of a curtain wall system that are too deteriorated to repair (if the overall form and detailing are still evident) using the physical evidence as a model to reproduce the feature. If using the same kind of material is not feasible, then a compatible substitute material may be considered as long as it has the same finish and appearance.</p>	<p>Removing a curtain wall component or the entire system, if necessary, that is unrepairable and not replacing it or replacing it with a new component or system that does not convey the same appearance.</p>
<p>Replacing masonry, metal, glass, or other components of a curtain wall system (or the entire system, if necessary) which have failed because of faulty design with substitutes that match the original as closely as possible and which will reestablish the viability and performance of the system.</p>	<p>Using substitute material for the replacement that does not convey the same appearance of the surviving components of the curtain wall or that is physically incompatible.</p>



[30] Rather than replace the original curtain wall system of the 1954 Simms Building in Albuquerque, NM, with a different color tinted glass or coat it with a non-historic reflective film, the HVAC system was updated to improve energy efficiency. Photo: Harvey M. Kaplan.



[31 a-c:] (a) The rehabilitation of the First Federal Savings and Loan Association building in Birmingham, AL, constructed in 1961, required replacing the deteriorated historic curtain wall system because the framing and the fasteners holding the spandrel glass and the windows had failed. (b) Comparative drawings show that the differences between the replacement system, which incorporated new insulated glass to meet wind-load requirements, and the original system are minimal. (c) The replacement system, shown after completion of the project, has not altered the historic character of the building.



CURTAIN WALLS

RECOMMENDED

NOT RECOMMENDED

The following work is highlighted to indicate that it is specific to Rehabilitation projects and should only be considered after the preservation concerns have been addressed.

Designing the Replacement for Missing Historic Features

Designing and installing a new curtain wall or its components when the historic feature is completely missing. It may be an accurate restoration based on documentary and physical evidence, but only when the historic feature to be replaced coexisted with the features currently on the building. Or, it may be a new design that is compatible with the size, scale, material, and color of the historic building.

Creating an inaccurate appearance because the replacement for the missing curtain wall component is based upon insufficient physical or historic documentation, is not a compatible design, or because the feature did not coexist with the features currently on the building.

Introducing a new curtain wall component that is incompatible in size, scale, material, color, and finish.

Alterations and Additions for a New Use

Installing new glazing or an entire new curtain wall system, when necessary to meet safety-code requirements, with dimensions, detailing, materials, colors, and finish as close as possible to the historic curtain wall components.

Installing new glazing or an entire new curtain wall system, when necessary to meet safety-code requirements, with dimensions and detailing that is significantly different from the historic curtain wall components.

Installing impact-resistant glazing, when necessary for security, so that it is compatible with the historic windows and does not damage them or negatively impact their character.

Installing impact-resistant glazing in a curtain wall system, when necessary for security, that is incompatible with the historic curtain walls and damages them or negatively impacts their character.

STRUCTURAL SYSTEMS

RECOMMENDED

Identifying, retaining, and preserving structural systems and visible features of systems that are important in defining the overall historic character of the building. This includes the materials that comprise the structural system (i.e., wood, metal and masonry), the type of system, and its features, such as posts and beams, trusses, summer beams, vigas, cast-iron or masonry columns, above-grade stone foundation walls, or load-bearing masonry walls.

Protecting and maintaining the structural system by keeping gutters and downspouts clear and roofing in good repair; and by ensuring that wood structural members are free from insect infestation.

NOT RECOMMENDED

Removing or substantially changing visible features of historic structural systems which are important in defining the overall historic character of the building so that, as a result, the character is diminished.

Overloading the existing structural system, or installing equipment or mechanical systems which could damage the structure.

Replacing a load-bearing masonry wall that could be augmented and retained.

Leaving known structural problems untreated, such as deflected beams, cracked and bowed walls, or racked structural members.

Failing to protect and maintain the structural system on a cyclical basis so that deterioration of the structural system results.

Using treatments or products that may retain moisture, which accelerates deterioration of structural members.

[33] Retaining as much as possible of the historic wood sill plate and replacing only the termite-damaged wood is always the preferred and recommended treatment.



STRUCTURAL SYSTEMS

RECOMMENDED	NOT RECOMMENDED
Evaluating the overall condition of the structural system to determine whether more than protection and maintenance, such as repairs to structural features, will be necessary.	Failing to undertake adequate measures to ensure the protection of structural systems.
Repairing the structural system by augmenting individual components, using recognized preservation methods. For example, weakened structural members (such as floor framing) can be paired or sistered with a new member, braced, or otherwise supplemented and reinforced.	Upgrading the building structurally in a manner that diminishes the historic character of the exterior or that damages interior features or spaces.
	Replacing a historic structural feature in its entirety or in part when it could be repaired or augmented and retained.



[32] (a-b) The rehabilitation of the 1892 Carson Block Building in Eureka, CA, for its owner, the Northern California Indian Development Council, included recreating the missing corner turret and sensitively introducing seismic reinforcement (c) shown here (opposite page) in a secondary upper floor office space. Photos: Page & Turnbull.

STRUCTURAL SYSTEMS

RECOMMENDED	NOT RECOMMENDED
Installing seismic or structural reinforcement, when necessary, in a manner that minimizes its impact on the historic fabric and character of the building.	
Replacing in kind or with a compatible substitute material large portions or entire features of the structural system that are either extensively damaged or deteriorated or that are missing when there are surviving prototypes, such as cast-iron columns, trusses, or masonry walls. Substitute material must be structurally sufficient, physically compatible with the rest of the system, and, where visible, must have the same form, design, and appearance as the historic feature.	Using substitute material that does not equal the load-bearing capabilities of the historic material; does not convey the same appearance of the historic material, if it is visible; or is physically incompatible. Installing a visible or exposed structural replacement feature that does not match.
Replacing to match any interior features or finishes that may have to be removed to gain access to make structural repairs, and reusing salvageable material.	



STRUCTURAL SYSTEMS

RECOMMENDED

NOT RECOMMENDED

The following work is highlighted to indicate that it is specific to Rehabilitation projects and should only be considered after the preservation concerns have been addressed.

Alterations and Additions for a New Use

Limiting any new excavations next to historic foundations to avoid undermining the structural stability of the building or adjacent historic buildings. The area next to the building foundation should be investigated first to ascertain potential damage to site features or archeological resources.	Carrying out excavations or regrading land adjacent to a historic building which could cause the historic foundation to settle, shift, or fail, or which could destroy significant archeological resources.
Correcting structural deficiencies needed to accommodate a new use in a manner that preserves the structural system and individual character-defining features.	Making substantial changes to significant interior spaces or damaging or destroying features or finishes that are character defining to correct structural deficiencies.
Designing and installing new mechanical or electrical equipment, when necessary, in a manner that minimizes the number and size of cuts or holes in structural members.	Installing new mechanical or electrical equipment in a manner which reduces the load-bearing capacity of historic structural members.
Inserting a new floor when required for the new use if it does not negatively impact the historic character of the interior space; and if it does not damage the structural system, does not abut window glazing, and is not visible from the exterior of the building.	Inserting a new floor that damages or destroys the structural system or abuts window glazing and is visible from the exterior of the building and, thus, negatively impacts its historic character.
Creating an atrium, light court, or lightwell to provide natural light when required for a new use only when it can be done in a manner that preserves the structural system and the historic character of the building.	Removing structural features to create an atrium, light court, or lightwell if it negatively impacts the historic character of the building.

MECHANICAL SYSTEMS: HEATING, AIR CONDITIONING, ELECTRICAL, AND PLUMBING

RECOMMENDED	NOT RECOMMENDED
Identifying, retaining, and preserving visible features of early mechanical systems that are important in defining the overall historic character of the building, such as radiators, vents, fans, grilles, and plumbing and lighting fixtures.	Removing or substantially changing visible features of mechanical systems that are important in defining the overall historic character of the building so that, as a result, the character is diminished.
Protecting and maintaining mechanical, plumbing, and electrical systems and their features through cyclical maintenance.	Failing to protect and maintain a functioning mechanical system, plumbing, and electrical systems and their visible features on a cyclical basis so that their deterioration results.
Improving the energy efficiency of existing mechanical systems to help reduce the need for a new system by installing storm windows, insulating attics and crawl spaces, or adding awnings, if appropriate.	
Evaluating the overall condition of mechanical systems to determine whether more than protection and maintenance, such as repairs to mechanical system components, will be necessary.	Failing to undertake adequate measures to ensure the protection of mechanical system components.
Repairing mechanical systems by augmenting or upgrading system components (such as installing new pipes and ducts), rewiring, or adding new compressors or boilers.	Replacing a mechanical system when its components could be upgraded and retained.
Replacing in kind or with a compatible substitute material those extensively deteriorated or missing visible features of mechanical systems when there are surviving prototypes, such as ceiling fans, radiators, grilles, or plumbing fixtures.	Installing a visible replacement feature of a mechanical system, if it is important in defining the historic character of the building, that does not convey the same appearance.

MECHANICAL SYSTEMS: HEATING, AIR CONDITIONING, ELECTRICAL, AND PLUMBING

RECOMMENDED	NOT RECOMMENDED
<i>The following work is highlighted to indicate that it is specific to Rehabilitation projects and should only be considered after the preservation concerns have been addressed.</i>	
Alterations and Additions for a New Use	
Installing a new mechanical system, if required, so that it results in the least alteration possible to the historic building and its character-defining features.	Installing a new mechanical system so that character-defining structural or interior features are radically changed, damaged, or destroyed.
Providing adequate structural support for the new mechanical equipment.	Failing to consider the weight and design of new mechanical equipment so that, as a result, historic structural members or finished surfaces are weakened or cracked.
Installing new mechanical and electrical systems and ducts, pipes, and cables in closets, service areas, and wall cavities to preserve the historic character of the interior space.	Installing systems and ducts, pipes, and cables in walls or ceilings in a manner that results in extensive loss or damage or otherwise obscures historic building materials and character-defining features.
Concealing HVAC ductwork in finished interior spaces, when possible, by installing it in secondary spaces (such as closets, attics, basements, or crawl spaces) or in appropriately-located, furred-down soffits.	Leaving HVAC ductwork exposed in most finished spaces or installing soffits in a location that will negatively impact the historic character of the interior or exterior of the building.
Installing exposed ductwork in a finished space when necessary to protect and preserve decorative or other features (such as column capitals, pressed-metal or ornamental plaster ceilings, coffers, or beams) that is painted, and appropriately located so that it will have minimal impact on the historic character of the space.	Installing exposed ductwork in a finished space when necessary to protect and preserve decorative or other features that is not painted, or is located where it will negatively impact the historic character of the space.
Lowering ceilings, installing a dropped ceiling, or constructing soffits to conceal ductwork in a finished space when this will not result in extensive loss or damage to historic materials or decorative and other features, and will not change the overall character of the space or the exterior appearance of the building (i.e., lowered ceilings or soffits visible through window glazing).	Lowering ceilings, installing a dropped ceiling, or constructing soffits to conceal ductwork in a finished space in a manner that results in extensive loss or damage to historic materials or decorative and other features, and will change the overall character of the space or the exterior appearance of the building.

MECHANICAL SYSTEMS: HEATING, AIR CONDITIONING, ELECTRICAL, AND PLUMBING

RECOMMENDED	NOT RECOMMENDED
Installing appropriately located, exposed ductwork in historically-unfinished interior spaces in industrial or utilitarian buildings.	
Installing a split system mechanical unit in a manner that will have minimal impact on the historic character of the interior and result in minimal loss of historic building material.	Installing a split system mechanical unit without considering its impact on the historic character of the interior or the potential loss of historic building material.
Installing heating or air conditioning window units only when the installation of any other system would result in significant damage or loss of historic materials or features.	
Installing mechanical equipment on the roof, when necessary, so that it is minimally visible to preserve the building's historic character and setting.	Installing mechanical equipment on the roof that is overly large or highly visible and negatively impacts the historic character of the building or setting.
Placing air conditioning compressors in a location on a secondary elevation of the historic building that is not highly visible.	Placing air conditioning compressors where they are highly visible and negatively impact the historic character of the building or setting.

[34] The new ceiling ducts installed during the conversion of this historic office building into apartments are minimal in design and discretely placed above the windows.



INTERIOR SPACES, FEATURES, AND FINISHES

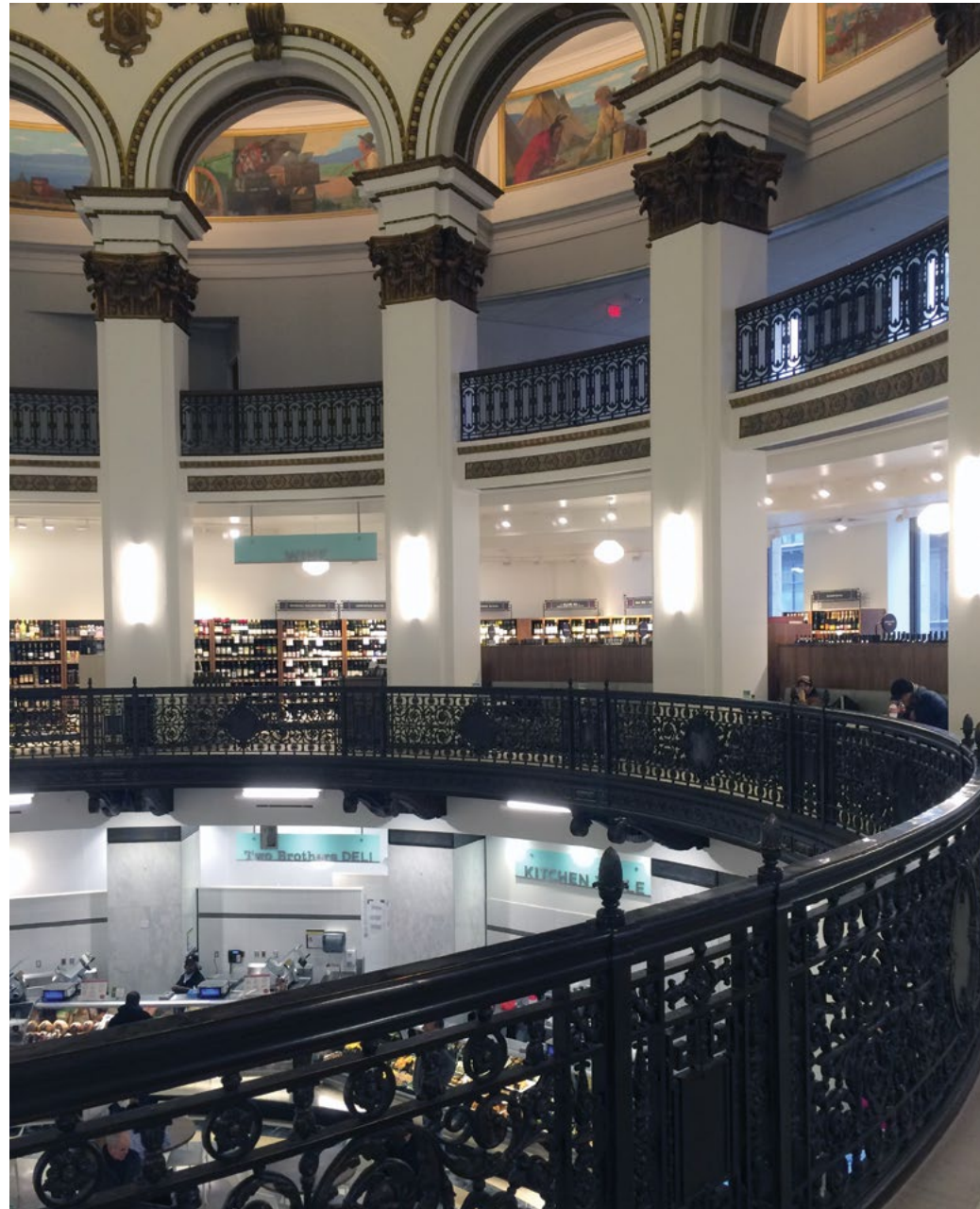
RECOMMENDED	NOT RECOMMENDED
<p><i>Identifying, retaining, and preserving</i> a floor plan or interior spaces, features, and finishes that are important in defining the overall historic character of the building. Significant spatial characteristics include the size, configuration, proportion, and relationship of rooms and corridors; the relationship of features to spaces; and the spaces themselves, such as lobbies, lodge halls, entrance halls, parlors, theaters, auditoriums, gymnasiums, and industrial and commercial interiors. Color, texture, and pattern are important characteristics of features and finishes, which can include such elements as columns, plaster walls and ceilings, flooring, trim, fireplaces and mantels, paneling, light fixtures, hardware, decorative radiators, ornamental grilles and registers, windows, doors, and transoms; plaster, paint, wallpaper and wall coverings, and special finishes, such as marbling and graining; and utilitarian (painted or unpainted) features, including wood, metal, or concrete exposed columns, beams, and trusses and exposed load-bearing brick, concrete, and wood walls.</p>	<p>Altering a floor plan, or interior spaces (including individual rooms), features, and finishes, which are important in defining the overall historic character of the building so that, as a result, the character is diminished.</p> <p>Altering the floor plan by demolishing principal walls and partitions for a new use.</p> <p>Altering or destroying significant interior spaces by inserting additional floors or lofts; cutting through floors to create lightwells, light courts, or atriums; lowering ceilings; or adding new walls or removing historic walls.</p> <p>Relocating an interior feature, such as a staircase, so that the circulation pattern and the historic relationship between features and spaces are altered.</p> <p>Installing new material that obscures or damages character-defining interior features or finishes.</p> <p>Removing paint, plaster, or other finishes from historically-finished interior surfaces to create a new appearance (e.g., removing plaster to expose brick walls or a brick chimney breast, stripping paint from wood to stain or varnish it, or removing a plaster ceiling to expose unfinished beams).</p> <p>Applying paint, plaster, or other coatings to surfaces that have been unfinished historically, thereby changing their character.</p> <p>Changing the type of finish or its color, such as painting a historically-varnished wood feature, or removing paint from a historically-painted feature.</p>

INTERIOR SPACES, FEATURES, AND FINISHES

RECOMMENDED	NOT RECOMMENDED
Retaining decorative or other character-defining features or finishes that typify the showroom or interior of a historic store, such as a pressed-metal ceiling, a beaded-board ceiling, or wainscoting.	Removing decorative or other character-defining features or finishes that typify the showroom or interior of a historic store, such as a pressed-metal ceiling, a beaded-board ceiling, or wainscoting.
Protecting and maintaining historic materials (including plaster, masonry, wood, and metals) which comprise interior spaces through appropriate surface treatments, such as cleaning, paint removal, and reapplication of protective coating systems.	Failing to protect and maintain interior materials and finishes on a cyclical basis so that deterioration of interior features results.
Protecting interior features and finishes against arson and vandalism before project work begins by erecting temporary fencing or by covering broken windows and open doorways, while ensuring adequate ventilation, and by installing alarm systems keyed into local protection agencies.	Leaving the building unprotected and subject to vandalism before work begins, thereby allowing the interior to be damaged if it can be accessed through unprotected entrances.
Protecting interior features (such as a staircase, mantel, flooring, or decorative finishes) from damage during project work by covering them with plywood, heavy canvas, or plastic sheeting.	Failing to protect interior features and finishes when working on the interior.

[35] (a) Although deteriorated, the historic school corridor, shown on the left, with its character-defining features, including doors and transoms, was retained and repaired as part of the rehabilitation project (b).





[36] The elaborate features and finishes of this historic banking hall in the Union Trust Company Building, in Cleveland, OH, were retained and repaired as part of its conversion into a food market.

INTERIOR SPACES, FEATURES, AND FINISHES

RECOMMENDED	NOT RECOMMENDED
Removing damaged or deteriorated paint and finishes only to the next sound layer using the gentlest method possible prior to repainting or refinishing using compatible paint or other coating systems.	Using potentially damaging methods, such as open-flame torches or abrasive techniques, to remove paint or other coatings. Removing paint that is firmly adhered to interior surfaces.
Using abrasive cleaning methods only on the interior of industrial or warehouse buildings with utilitarian, unplastered masonry walls and where wood features are not finished, molded, beaded, or worked by hand. Low-pressure abrasive cleaning (e.g., sand-blasting or other media blasting) should only be considered if test patches show no surface damage and after gentler methods have proven ineffective.	Using abrasive methods anywhere but utilitarian and industrial interior spaces or when there are other methods that are less likely to damage the surface of the material.
Evaluating the overall condition of the interior materials, features, and finishes to determine whether more than protection and maintenance, such as repairs to features and finishes, will be necessary.	Failing to undertake adequate measures to ensure the protection of interior materials, features, and finishes.
Repairing interior features and finishes by patching, splicing, consolidating, or otherwise reinforcing the materials using recognized preservation methods. Repairs may include the limited replacement in kind or with a compatible substitute material of those extensively deteriorated or missing parts of interior features when there are surviving prototypes, such as stairs, balustrades, wood paneling, columns, decorative wall finishes, and ornamental pressed-metal or plaster ceilings. Repairs should be physically and visually compatible.	Removing materials that could be repaired or using improper repair techniques. Replacing an entire interior feature (such as a staircase, mantel, or door surround) or a finish (such as a plaster) when repair of materials and limited replacement of deteriorated or missing components are feasible.



[37] Exposed and painted ducts were appropriately installed here in a retail space in Denver's historic Union Station after considering other options that would have impacted the ceiling height, or damaged or obscured the ornamental plaster crown molding. *Photo: Heritage Consulting Group.*

[38] The rehabilitation project retained the industrial character of this historic factory building, which included installation of a fire-rated, clear glass enclosure that allows the stairway, an important interior feature, to remain visible.



[39] Leaving the ceiling structure exposed and installing exposed ductwork where it does not impact the windows, are appropriate treatments when rehabilitating an industrial building for another use.

INTERIOR SPACES, FEATURES, AND FINISHES

RECOMMENDED

NOT RECOMMENDED

Replacing in kind an entire interior feature that is too deteriorated to repair (if the overall form and detailing are still evident) using the physical evidence as a model to reproduce the feature. Examples could include wainscoting, window and door surrounds, or stairs. If using the same kind of material is not feasible, then a compatible substitute material may be considered.

Removing a character-defining interior feature that is unrepairable and not replacing it, or replacing it with a new feature or finish that does not match the historic feature.

Using a substitute material for the replacement that does not convey the same appearance of the interior feature or that is physically incompatible.

Using a substitute material for the replacement that does not convey the same appearance of the interior feature or that is physically incompatible.

The following work is highlighted to indicate that it is specific to Rehabilitation projects and should only be considered after the preservation concerns have been addressed.

Designing the Replacement for Missing Historic Features

Designing and installing a new interior feature or finish when the historic feature or finish is completely missing. This could include missing walls, stairs, mantels, wood trim, and plaster, or even entire rooms if the historic spaces, features, and finishes are missing or have been destroyed by inappropriate alterations. The design may be an accurate restoration based on documentary and physical evidence, but only when the feature or finish to be replaced coexisted with the features currently in the building. Or, it may be a new design that is compatible with the size, scale, material, and color of the historic building.

Creating an inaccurate appearance because the replacement for the missing feature is based upon insufficient physical or historic documentation; is not a compatible design; or because the feature did not coexist with the feature currently on the building.

Introducing a new interior feature or finish that is incompatible in size, scale, material, color, and finish.

Alterations and Additions for a New Use

Installing new or additional systems required for a new use for the building, such as bathrooms and mechanical equipment, in secondary spaces to preserve the historic character of the most significant interior spaces.

Subdividing primary spaces, lowering ceilings, or damaging or obscuring character-defining features (such as fireplaces, windows, or stairways) to accommodate a new use for the building.

INTERIOR SPACES, FEATURES, AND FINISHES

RECOMMENDED	NOT RECOMMENDED
Installing new mechanical and electrical systems and ducts, pipes, and cables in closets, service areas, and wall cavities to preserve the historic character of interior spaces, features, and finishes.	Installing ducts, pipes, and cables where they will obscure character-defining features or negatively impact the historic character of the interior.
Creating open work areas, when required by the new use, by selectively removing walls only in secondary spaces, less significant upper floors, or other less-visible locations to preserve primary public spaces and circulation systems.	
Retaining the configuration of corridors, particularly in buildings with multiple floors with repetitive plans (such as office and apartment buildings or hotels), where not only the floor plan is character defining, but also the width and the length of the corridor, doorways, transoms, trim, and other features, such as wainscoting and glazing.	Making extensive changes to the character of significant historic corridors by narrowing or radically shortening them, or removing their character-defining features.
Reusing decorative material or features that had to be removed as part of the rehabilitation work (including baseboards, door casing, paneled doors, and wainscoting) and reusing them in areas where these features are missing or are too deteriorated to repair.	Discarding historic material when it can be reused to replace missing or damaged features elsewhere in the building, or reusing material in a manner that may convey a false sense of history.
Installing permanent partitions in secondary, rather than primary, spaces whenever feasible. Removable partitions or partial-height walls that do not destroy the sense of space often may be installed in large character-defining spaces when required by a new use.	Installing partitions that abut windows and glazing or that damage or obscure character-defining spaces, features, or finishes.
Enclosing a character-defining interior stairway, when required by code, with fire-rated glass walls or large, hold-open doors so that the stairway remains visible and its historic character is retained.	Enclosing a character-defining interior stairway for safety or functional reasons in a manner that conceals it or destroys its character.
Locating new, code-required stairways or elevators in secondary and service areas of the historic building.	Making incompatible changes or damaging or destroying character-defining spaces, features, or finishes when adding new code-required stairways and elevators.



[41] Not Recommended:
Leaving fragments of deteriorated or “sculpted” plaster is not a compatible treatment for either finished or unfinished interior spaces.

[40] Not Recommended:
Removing a finished ceiling and leaving the structure exposed in a historic retail space does not meet the Standards for Rehabilitation.



INTERIOR SPACES, FEATURES, AND FINISHES

RECOMMENDED	NOT RECOMMENDED
Creating an atrium, light court, or lightwell to provide natural light when required for a new use only when it can be done in a manner that preserves significant interior spaces, features, and finishes or important exterior elevations.	Destroying or damaging character-defining interior spaces, features, or finishes, or damaging the structural system to create an atrium, light court, or lightwell.
Inserting a new floor, mezzanine, or loft when required for a new use if it does not damage or destroy significant interior features and finishes and is not visible from the exterior of the building.	Inserting a new floor, mezzanine, or loft that damages or destroys significant interior features or abuts window glazing and is visible from the exterior of the building, and, thus, negatively impacts its historic character.
Inserting a new floor, when necessary for a new use, only in large assembly spaces that are secondary to another assembly space in the building; in a space that has been greatly altered; or where character-defining features have been lost or are too deteriorated to repair.	Inserting a new floor in significant, large assembly spaces with distinctive features and finishes, which negatively impacts their historic character.
Installing exposed ductwork in a finished space when necessary to protect and preserve decorative or other features (such as column capitals, ornamental plaster or pressed-metal ceilings, coffers, or beams) that is designed, painted, and appropriately located so that it will have minimal impact on the historic character of the space.	Installing exposed ductwork in a finished space when necessary to protect and preserve decorative or other features that is not painted, or is located where it will negatively impact the historic character of the space.
Lowering ceilings, installing a dropped ceiling, or constructing soffits to conceal ductwork in a finished space when they will not result in extensive loss or damage to historic materials or decorative and other features, and will not change the overall character of the space or the exterior appearance of the building (i.e., lowered ceilings or soffits visible through window glazing).	Lowering ceilings, installing a dropped ceiling, or constructing soffits to conceal ductwork in a finished space in a manner that results in extensive loss or damage to historic materials or decorative and other features, and will change the overall character of the space or the exterior appearance of the building.
Installing a split system mechanical unit in a manner that will have minimal impact on the historic character of the interior and will result in minimal loss of historic building material.	Installing a split system mechanical unit without considering its impact on the historic character of the interior or the potential loss of historic building material.

BUILDING SITE

RECOMMENDED

Identifying, retaining, and preserving features of the building site that are important in defining its overall historic character. Site features may include walls, fences, or steps; circulation systems, such as walks, paths or roads; vegetation, such as trees, shrubs, grass, orchards, hedges, windbreaks, or gardens; landforms, such as hills, terracing, or berms; furnishings and fixtures, such as light posts or benches; decorative elements, such as sculpture, statuary, or monuments; water features, including fountains, streams, pools, lakes, or irrigation ditches; and subsurface archeological resources, other cultural or religious features, or burial grounds which are also important to the site.

NOT RECOMMENDED

Removing or substantially changing buildings and their features or site features which are important in defining the overall historic character of the property so that, as a result, the character is diminished.



[42] This garden is an important character-defining landscape feature on this college campus.

BUILDING SITE

RECOMMENDED	NOT RECOMMENDED
Retaining the historic relationship between buildings and the landscape.	<p>Removing or relocating buildings or landscape features, thereby destroying the historic relationship between buildings and the landscape.</p> <p>Removing or relocating buildings on a site or in a complex of related historic structures (such as a mill complex or farm), thereby diminishing the historic character of the site or complex.</p> <p>Moving buildings onto the site, thereby creating an inaccurate historic appearance.</p> <p>Changing the grade level of the site if it diminishes its historic character. For example, lowering the grade adjacent to a building to maximize use of a basement, which would change the historic appearance of the building and its relation to the site.</p>
<i>Protecting and maintaining</i> buildings and site features by providing proper drainage to ensure that water does not erode foundation walls, drain toward the building, or damage or erode the landscape.	Failing to ensure that site drainage is adequate so that buildings and site features are damaged or destroyed; or, alternatively, changing the site grading so that water does not drain properly.
Correcting any existing irrigation that may be wetting the building excessively.	Neglecting to correct any existing irrigation that may be wetting the building excessively.
Minimizing disturbance of the terrain around buildings or elsewhere on the site, thereby reducing the possibility of destroying or damaging important landscape features, archeological resources, other cultural or religious features, or burial grounds.	Using heavy machinery or equipment in areas where it may disturb or damage important landscape features, archeological resources, other cultural or religious features, or burial grounds.
Surveying and documenting areas where the terrain will be altered to determine the potential impact to important landscape features, archeological resources, other cultural or religious features, or burial grounds.	Failing to survey the building site prior to beginning work, which may result in damage or loss of important landscape features, archeological resources, other cultural or religious features, or burial grounds.

BUILDING SITE

RECOMMENDED	NOT RECOMMENDED
Protecting (e.g., preserving in place) important site features, archeological resources, other cultural or religious features, or burial grounds.	Leaving known site features or archeological material unprotected so that it is damaged during rehabilitation work.
Planning and carrying out any necessary investigation before rehabilitation begins, using professional archeologists and methods, when preservation in place is not feasible.	Allowing unqualified personnel to perform data recovery on archeological resources, which can result in damage or loss of important archeological material
Preserving important landscape features through regularly-scheduled maintenance of historic plant material.	Allowing important landscape features or archeological resources to be lost, damaged, or to deteriorate due to inadequate protection or lack of maintenance
Protecting the building site and landscape features against arson and vandalism before rehabilitation work begins by erecting temporary fencing and by installing alarm systems keyed into local protection agencies.	Leaving the property unprotected and subject to vandalism before work begins so that the building site and landscape features, archeological resources, other cultural or religious features, or burial grounds can be damaged or destroyed. Removing or destroying features from the site, such as fencing, paths or walkways, masonry balustrades, or plant material.
Installing protective fencing, bollards, and stanchions on a building site, when necessary for security, that are as unobtrusive as possible.	Installing protective fencing, bollards, and stanchions on a building site, when necessary for security, without taking into consideration their location and visibility so that they negatively impact the historic character of the site.
Providing continued protection and maintenance of buildings and landscape features on the site through appropriate grounds and landscape management.	Failing to protect and maintain materials and features from the restoration period on a cyclical basis so that deterioration of the site results.
Protecting buildings and landscape features when working on the site.	Failing to protect building and landscape features during work on the site or failing to repair damaged or deteriorated site features.

BUILDING SITE

RECOMMENDED	NOT RECOMMENDED
<p>Evaluating the overall condition of materials and features to determine whether more than protection and maintenance, such as repairs to site features, will be necessary.</p>	<p>Failing to undertake adequate measures to ensure the protection of the site.</p>
<p>Repairing historic site features which have been damaged, are deteriorated, or have missing components order reestablish the whole feature and to ensure retention of the integrity of the historic materials. Repairs may include limited replacement in kind or with a compatible substitute material of those extensively deteriorated or missing parts of site features when there are surviving prototypes, such as paving, railings, or individual plants within a group (e.g., a hedge). Repairs should be physically and visually compatible.</p>	<p>Removing materials and features that could be repaired or using improper repair techniques.</p> <p>Replacing an entire feature of the site (such as a fence, walkway, or drive) when repair of materials and limited replacement of deteriorated or missing components are feasible.</p>



[43] The industrial character of the site was retained when this brewery complex was rehabilitated for residential use.



[44] **Not Recommended:** (a-b) The historic character of this plantation house (marked in blue on plan on opposite page) and its site was diminished and adversely impacted when multiple new buildings like this (#3 on plan) were constructed on the property (c).

BUILDING SITE

RECOMMENDED

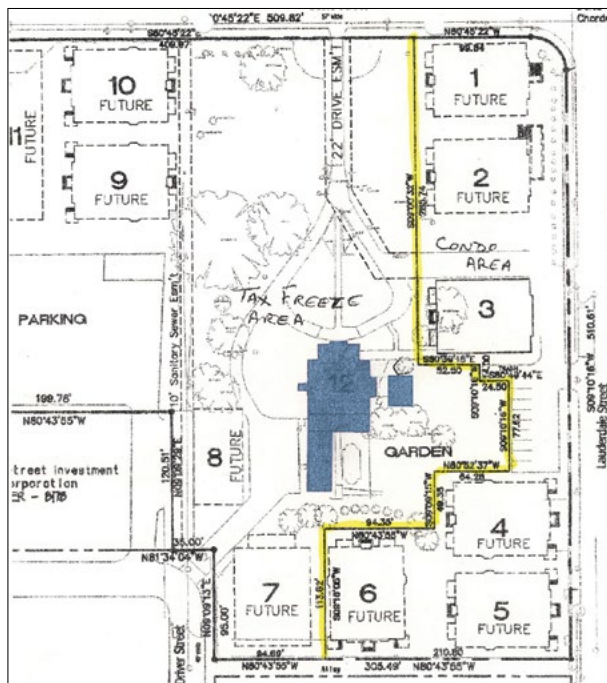
Replacing in kind an entire feature of the site that is too deteriorated to repair (if the overall form and detailing are still evident) using the physical evidence as a model to reproduce the feature. Examples could include a walkway or a fountain, a land form, or plant material. If using the same kind of material is not feasible, then a compatible substitute material may be considered.

NOT RECOMMENDED

Removing a character-defining feature of the site that is unrepairable and not replacing it, or replacing it with a new feature that does not match.

Using a substitute material for the replacement that does not convey the same appearance of the surviving site feature or that is physically or ecologically incompatible.

Adding conjectural landscape features to the site (such as period reproduction light fixtures, fences, fountains, or vegetation) that are historically inappropriate, thereby creating an inaccurate appearance of the site.



BUILDING SITE

RECOMMENDED

NOT RECOMMENDED

The following work is highlighted to indicate that it is specific to Rehabilitation projects and should only be considered after the preservation concerns have been addressed.

Designing the Replacement for Missing Historic Features

Designing and installing a new feature on a site when the historic feature is completely missing. This could include missing outbuildings, terraces, drives, foundation plantings, specimen trees, and gardens. The design may be an accurate restoration based on documentary and physical evidence, but only when the feature to be replaced coexisted with the features currently on the site. Or, it may be a new design that is compatible with the historic character of the building and site.

Creating an inaccurate appearance because the replacement for the missing feature is based upon insufficient physical or historic documentation, is not a compatible design, or because the feature did not coexist with the features currently on the site.

Introducing a new feature, including plant material, that is visually incompatible with the site or that alters or destroys the historic site patterns or use.

Alterations and Additions for a New Use

Designing new onsite features (such as parking areas, access ramps, or lighting), when required by a new use, so that they are as unobtrusive as possible, retain the historic relationship between the building or buildings and the landscape, and are compatible with the historic character of the property.

Locating parking areas directly adjacent to historic buildings where vehicles may cause damage to buildings or landscape features or when they negatively impact the historic character of the building site if landscape features and plant materials are removed.

Designing new exterior additions to historic buildings or adjacent new construction that are compatible with the historic character of the site and preserves the historic relationship between the building or buildings and the landscape.

Introducing new construction on the building site which is visually incompatible in terms of size, scale, design, material, or color, which destroys historic relationships on the site, or which damages or destroys important landscape features, such as replacing a lawn with paved parking areas or removing mature trees to widen a driveway.

Removing non-significant buildings, additions, or site features which detract from the historic character of the site.

Removing a historic building in a complex of buildings or removing a building feature or a landscape feature which is important in defining the historic character of the site.

Locating an irrigation system needed for a new or continuing use of the site where it will not cause damage to historic buildings.

Locating an irrigation system needed for a new or continuing use of the site where it will damage historic buildings.



[45] Undertaking a survey to document archeological resources may be considered in some rehabilitation projects when a new exterior addition is planned.

SETTING (DISTRICT / NEIGHBORHOOD)

RECOMMENDED

Identifying, retaining, and preserving building and landscape features that are important in defining the overall historic character of the setting. Such features can include circulation systems, such as roads and streets; furnishings and fixtures, such as light posts or benches; vegetation, gardens and yards; adjacent open space, such as fields, parks, commons, or woodlands; and important views or visual relationships.

NOT RECOMMENDED

Removing or substantially changing those building and landscape features in the setting which are important in defining the historic character so that, as a result, the character is diminished.



[46] The varied size, shapes, and architectural styles of these historic buildings are unique to this street in Christiansted, St. Croix, USVI, and should be retained in a rehabilitation project.

[47] Original paving stones contribute to the character of the historic setting and distinguish this block from other streets in the district.



SETTING (DISTRICT / NEIGHBORHOOD)

RECOMMENDED

Retaining the historic relationship between buildings and landscape features in the setting. For example, preserving the relationship between a town common or urban plaza and the adjacent houses, municipal buildings, roads, and landscape and streetscape features.

NOT RECOMMENDED

Altering the relationship between the buildings and landscape features in the setting by widening existing streets, changing landscape materials, or locating new streets or parking areas where they may negatively impact the historic character of the setting.

Removing or relocating buildings or landscape features, thereby destroying the historic relationship between buildings and the landscape in the setting.



[48] Old police and fire call boxes, which are distinctive features in this historic district, have been retained, and now showcase work by local artists.

[49] Low stone walls are character-defining features in this hilly, early-20th-century residential neighborhood.



SETTING (DISTRICT / NEIGHBORHOOD)

RECOMMENDED	NOT RECOMMENDED
Protecting and maintaining historic features in the setting through regularly-scheduled maintenance and grounds and landscape management.	Failing to protect and maintain materials in the setting on a cyclical basis so that deterioration of buildings and landscape features results. Stripping or removing historic features from buildings or the setting, such as a porch, fencing, walkways, or plant material.
Installing protective fencing, bollards, and stanchions in the setting, when necessary for security, that are as unobtrusive as possible.	Installing protective fencing, bollards, and stanchions in the setting, when necessary for security, without taking into consideration their location and visibility so that they negatively impact the historic character of the setting.
Protecting buildings and landscape features when undertaking work in the setting.	Failing to protect buildings and landscape features during work in the setting.
Evaluating the overall condition of materials and features to determine whether more than protection and maintenance, such as repairs to materials and features in the setting, will be necessary.	Failing to undertake adequate measures to ensure the protection of materials and features in the setting.
Repairing features in the setting by reinforcing the historic materials. Repairs may include the replacement in kind or with a compatible substitute material of those extensively deteriorated or missing parts of setting features when there are surviving prototypes, such as fencing, paving materials, trees, and hedgerows. Repairs should be physically and visually compatible.	Failing to repair and reinforce damaged or deteriorated historic materials and features in the setting. Removing material that could be repaired or using improper repair techniques. Replacing an entire feature of the building or landscape in the setting when repair of materials and limited replacement of deteriorated or missing components are feasible.

SETTING (DISTRICT / NEIGHBORHOOD)

RECOMMENDED	NOT RECOMMENDED
<p>Replacing in kind an entire building or landscape feature in the setting that is too deteriorated to repair (if the overall form and detailing are still evident) using the physical evidence as a model to reproduce the feature. If using the same kind of material is not feasible, then a compatible substitute material may be considered.</p>	<p>Removing a character-defining feature of the building or landscape from the setting that is unrepairable and not replacing it or replacing it with a new feature that does not match.</p> <p>Using a substitute material for the replacement that does not convey the same appearance of the surviving building or landscape feature in the setting or that is physically or ecologically incompatible.</p>
<p><i>The following work is highlighted to indicate that it is specific to Rehabilitation projects and should only be considered after the preservation concerns have been addressed.</i></p>	
<p>Designing the Replacement for Missing Historic Features</p>	
<p>Designing and installing a new feature of the building or landscape in the setting when the historic feature is completely missing. This could include missing steps, streetlights, terraces, trees, and fences. The design may be an accurate restoration based on documentary and physical evidence, but only when the feature to be replaced coexisted with the features currently in the setting. Or, it may be a new design that is compatible with the historic character of the setting.</p>	<p>Creating an inaccurate appearance because the replacement for the missing feature is based upon insufficient physical or historic documentation; is not a compatible design, or because the feature did not coexist with the features currently in the setting.</p> <p>Introducing a new building or landscape feature that is visually or otherwise incompatible with the setting's historic character (e.g., replacing low metal fencing with a high wood fence).</p>
<p>Alterations and Additions for a New Use</p>	
<p>Designing new features (such as parking areas, access ramps, or lighting), when required by a new use, so that they are as unobtrusive as possible, retain the historic relationships between buildings and the landscape in the setting, and are compatible with the historic character of the setting.</p>	<p>Locating parking areas directly adjacent to historic buildings where vehicles may cause damage to buildings or landscape features or when they negatively impact the historic character of the setting if landscape features and plant materials are removed.</p>
<p>Designing new exterior additions to historic buildings or adjacent new construction that are compatible with the historic character of the setting that preserve the historic relationship between the buildings and the landscape.</p>	<p>Introducing new construction into historic districts which is visually incompatible or that destroys historic relationships within the setting, or which damages or destroys important landscape features.</p>
<p>Removing non-significant buildings, additions, or landscape features which detract from the historic character of the setting.</p>	<p>Removing a historic building, a building feature, or landscape feature which is important in defining the historic character of the setting.</p>

CODE-REQUIRED WORK

RECOMMENDED

NOT RECOMMENDED

*Sensitive solutions to meeting accessibility and life-safety code requirements are an important part of protecting the historic character of the building and site. Thus, work that must be done to meet use-specific code requirements should be considered early in planning a **Rehabilitation** of a historic building for a new use. Because code mandates are directly related to occupancy, some uses require less change than others and, thus, may be more appropriate for a historic building. Early coordination with code enforcement authorities can reduce the impact of alterations necessary to comply with current codes.*

ACCESSIBILITY

Identifying the historic building’s character-defining exterior features, interior spaces, features, and finishes, and features of the site and setting which may be affected by accessibility code-required work.

Undertaking accessibility code-required alterations before identifying those exterior features, interior spaces, features, and finishes, and features of the site and setting which are character defining and, therefore, must be preserved.

Complying with barrier-free access requirements in such a manner that the historic building’s character-defining exterior features, interior spaces, features, and finishes, and features of the site and setting are preserved or impacted as little as possible.

Altering, damaging, or destroying character-defining exterior features, interior spaces, features, and finishes, or features of the site and setting while making modifications to a building, its site, or setting to comply with accessibility requirements.

[50] This kitchen in a historic apartment complex was rehabilitated to meet accessibility requirements.

[51] A new interior access ramp with a simple metal railing is compatible with the character of this mid-century-modern building.



CODE-REQUIRED WORK

RECOMMENDED	NOT RECOMMENDED
Working with specialists in accessibility and historic preservation to determine the most sensitive solutions to comply with access requirements in a historic building, its site, or setting.	Making changes to historic buildings, their sites, or setting without first consulting with specialists in accessibility and historic preservation to determine the most appropriate solutions to comply with accessibility requirements.
Providing barrier-free access that promotes independence for the user while preserving significant historic features.	Making modifications for accessibility that do not provide independent, safe access while preserving historic features.
Finding solutions to meet accessibility requirements that minimize the impact of any necessary alteration on the historic building, its site, and setting, such as compatible ramps, paths, and lifts.	Making modifications for accessibility without considering the impact on the historic building, its site, and setting.

[52] The access ramp blends in with the stone façade of the First National Bank in Stephenville, TX, and is appropriately located on the side where it is does not impact the historic character of the building. Photo: Nancy McCoy, QuimbyMcCoy Preservation Architecture, LLP.



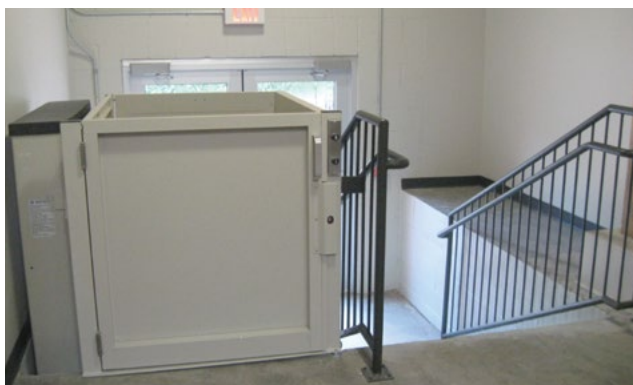
[53] This entrance ramp (right) is compatible with the historic character of this commercial building.



[54] The gently-sloped path in a historic park in Kansas City, MO, which accesses the memorial below, includes a rest area part way up the hill. Photo: STRATA Architecture + Preservation.

CODE-REQUIRED WORK

RECOMMENDED	NOT RECOMMENDED
Using relevant sections of existing codes regarding accessibility for historic buildings that provide alternative means of code compliance when code-required work would otherwise negatively impact the historic character of the property.	
Minimizing the impact of accessibility ramps by installing them on secondary elevations when it does not compromise accessibility or by screening them with plantings.	Installing elevators, lifts, or incompatible ramps at a primary entrance, or relocating primary entrances to secondary locations to provide access without investigating other options or locations.
Adding a gradual slope or grade to the sidewalk, if appropriate, to access the entrance rather than installing a ramp that would be more intrusive to the historic character of the building and the district.	
Adding an exterior stair or elevator tower that is compatible with the historic character of the building in a minimally-visible location only when it is not possible to accommodate it on the interior without resulting in the loss of significant historic spaces, features, or finishes.	
Installing a lift as inconspicuously as possible when it is necessary to locate it on a primary elevation of the historic building.	
Installing lifts or elevators on the interior in secondary or less significant spaces where feasible.	Installing lifts or elevators on the interior in primary spaces which will negatively impact the historic character of the space.



[55] The lift is compatible with the industrial character of this former warehouse.

CODE-REQUIRED WORK

RECOMMENDED

NOT RECOMMENDED

LIFE SAFETY

<p>Identifying the historic building's character-defining exterior features, interior spaces, features, and finishes, and features of the site and setting which may be affected by life-safety code-required work.</p>	<p>Undertaking life-safety code-required alterations before identifying those exterior features, interior spaces, features, and finishes, and features of the site and setting which are character defining and, therefore, must be preserved.</p>
<p>Complying with life-safety codes (including requirements for impact-resistant glazing, security, and seismic retrofit) in such a manner that the historic building's character-defining exterior features, interior spaces, features, and finishes, and features of the site and setting are preserved or impacted as little as possible.</p>	<p>Altering, damaging, or destroying character-defining exterior features, interior spaces, features, and finishes, or features of the site and setting while making modifications to a building, its site, or setting to comply with life-safety code requirements.</p>
<p>Removing building materials only after testing has been conducted to identify hazardous materials, and using only the least damaging abatement methods.</p>	<p>Removing building materials without testing first to identify the hazardous materials, or using potentially damaging methods of abatement.</p>
<p>Providing workers with appropriate personal equipment for protection from hazards on the worksite.</p>	<p>Removing hazardous or toxic materials without regard for workers' health and safety or environmentally-sensitive disposal of the materials.</p>
<p>Working with code officials and historic preservation specialists to investigate systems, methods, or devices to make the building compliant with life-safety codes to ensure that necessary alterations will be compatible with the historic character of the building.</p>	<p>Making life-safety code-required changes to the building without consulting code officials and historic preservation specialists, with the result that alterations negatively impact the historic character of the building.</p>
<p>Using relevant sections of existing codes regarding life safety for historic buildings that provide alternative means of code compliance when code-required work would otherwise negatively impact the historic character of the building.</p>	



[56 a-b] In order to continue in its historic use, the door openings of this 1916 Colonial Revival-style fire station had to be widened to accommodate the larger size of modern fire trucks. Although this resulted in some change to the arched door surrounds, it is minimal and does not negatively impact the historic character of the building. (a) Above, before; Photo: Fire and Emergency Medical Services Department (FEMS), Washington, D.C.; below, after.



[57] Workers wear protective clothing while removing lead paint from metal features.



[59] (a-b) The decorative concrete balcony railings on this 1960s building did not meet life-safety code requirements. They were replaced with new glass railings with a fritted glass pattern matching the original design—a creative solution that satisfies codes, while preserving the historic appearance of the building when viewed from the street (c-d). Photos: (a, b, d) ERA Architects, Inc.; (c) Nathan Cyprys, photographer.



CODE-REQUIRED WORK

RECOMMENDED	NOT RECOMMENDED
Upgrading historic stairways and elevators to meet life-safety codes so that they are not damaged or otherwise negatively impacted.	Damaging or making inappropriate alterations to historic stairways and elevators or to adjacent features, spaces, or finishes in the process of doing work to meet code requirements.
Installing sensitively-designed fire-suppression systems, such as sprinklers, so that historic features and finishes are preserved.	Covering character-defining wood features with fire-retardant sheathing, which results in altering their appearance.
Applying fire-retardant coatings when appropriate, such as intumescent paint, to protect steel structural systems.	Using fire-retardant coatings if they will damage or obscure character-defining features.
Adding a new stairway or elevator to meet life-safety code requirements in a manner that preserves adjacent character-defining features and spaces.	Altering, damaging, or destroying character-defining spaces, features, or finishes when adding a new code-required stairway or elevator.
Using existing openings on secondary or less-visible elevations or, if necessary, creating new openings on secondary or less-visible elevations to accommodate second egress requirements.	Using a primary or other highly-visible elevation to accommodate second egress requirements without investigating other options or locations.
Placing a code-required stairway or elevator that cannot be accommodated within the historic building in a new exterior addition located on a secondary or minimally-visible elevation.	Constructing a new addition to accommodate code-required stairs or an elevator on character-defining elevations or where it will obscure, damage, or destroy character-defining features of the building, its site, or setting.
Designing a new exterior stairway or elevator tower addition that is compatible with the historic character of the building.	



[58] Fire doors that retract into the walls have been installed here (not visible in photo) preserve the historic character of this corridor.

RESILIENCE TO NATURAL HAZARDS

RECOMMENDED

NOT RECOMMENDED

<p><i>Resilience to natural hazards should be addressed as part of the treatment Rehabilitation. A historic building may have existing characteristics or features that help address or minimize the impacts of natural hazards. These should be used to best advantage and should be taken into consideration early in the planning stages of a rehabilitation project before proposing any new treatments. When new adaptive treatments are needed they should be carried out in a manner that will have the least impact on the historic character of the building, its site, and setting. .</i></p>	
RECOMMENDED	NOT RECOMMENDED
Identifying the vulnerabilities of the historic property to the impacts of natural hazards (such as wildfires, hurricanes, or tornadoes) using the most current climate information and data available.	Failing to identify and periodically reevaluate the potential vulnerability of the building, its site, and setting to the impacts of natural hazards.
Assessing the potential impacts of known vulnerabilities on character-defining features of the building, its site, and setting; and reevaluating and reassessing potential impacts on a regular basis.	
Documenting the property and character-defining features as a record and guide for future repair work, should it be necessary, and storing the documentation in a weatherproof location.	Failing to document the historic property and its character-defining features with the result that such information is not available in the future to guide repair or reconstruction work, should it be necessary.
Ensuring that historic resources inventories and maps are accurate, up to date, and accessible in times of emergency.	
Maintaining the building, its site, and setting in good repair, and regularly monitoring character-defining features.	Failing to regularly monitor and maintain the property and the building systems in good repair.
Using and maintaining existing characteristics and features of the historic building, its site, setting, and larger environment (such as shutters for storm protection or a site wall that keeps out flood waters) that may help to avoid or minimize the impacts of natural hazards	Allowing loss, damage, or destruction to occur to the historic building, its site, or setting by failing to evaluate potential future impacts of natural hazards or to plan and implement adaptive measures, if necessary to address possible threats.
Undertaking work to prevent or minimize the loss, damage, or destruction of the historic property while retaining and preserving significant features and the overall historic character of the building, its site, and setting.	Carrying out adaptive measures intended to address the impacts of natural hazards that are unnecessarily invasive or will otherwise adversely impact the historic character of the building, its site, or setting.



[60] In some instances, it may be necessary to elevate a historic building located in a floodplain to protect it. But this treatment is appropriate only if elevating the building will retain its historic character, including its relationship to the site, and its new height will be compatible with surrounding buildings if in a historic district. The house on the right, which has been raised only slightly, has retained its historic character. The house on the left has been raised several feet higher, resulting in a greater impact on the historic character of the house and the district.

RESILIENCE TO NATURAL HAZARDS

RECOMMENDED	NOT RECOMMENDED
Ensuring that, when planning work to adapt for natural hazards, all feasible alternatives are considered, and that the options requiring the least alteration are considered first.	
Implementing local and regional traditions (such as elevating residential buildings at risk of flooding or reducing flammable vegetation around structures in fire-prone areas) for adapting buildings and sites in response to specific natural hazards, when appropriate. Such traditional methods may be appropriate if they are compatible with the historic character of the building, its site, and setting.	Implementing a treatment traditionally used in another region or one typically used for a different property type or architectural style which is not compatible with the historic character of the property.
Using special exemptions and variances when adaptive treatments to protect buildings from known hazards would otherwise negatively impact the historic character of the building, its site, and setting.	
Considering adaptive options, whenever possible, that would protect multiple historic resources, if the treatment can be implemented without negatively impacting the historic character of the district, or archeological resources, other cultural or religious features, or burial grounds.	

Sustainability

Sustainability is usually a very important and integral part of the treatment **Rehabilitation**. Existing energy-efficient features should be taken into consideration early in the planning stages of a rehabilitation project before proposing any energy improvements. There are numerous treatments that may be used to upgrade a historic building to help it operate more efficiently while retaining its character.

The topic of sustainability is addressed in detail in **The Secretary of the Interior's Standards for Rehabilitation & Illustrated Guidelines on Sustainability for Rehabilitating Historic Buildings**.

NEW EXTERIOR ADDITIONS TO HISTORIC BUILDINGS AND RELATED NEW CONSTRUCTION

RECOMMENDED	NOT RECOMMENDED
New Additions	
Placing functions and services required for a new use (including elevators and stairways) in secondary or non-character-defining interior spaces of the historic building rather than constructing a new addition.	Expanding the size of the historic building by constructing a new addition when requirements for the new use could be met by altering non-character-defining interior spaces.
Constructing a new addition on a secondary or non-character-defining elevation and limiting its size and scale in relationship to the historic building.	Constructing a new addition on or adjacent to a primary elevation of the building which negatively impacts the building's historic character.
Constructing a new addition that results in the least possible loss of historic materials so that character-defining features are not obscured, damaged, or destroyed.	Attaching a new addition in a manner that obscures, damages, or destroys character-defining features of the historic building.
Designing a new addition that is compatible with the historic building.	Designing a new addition that is significantly different and, thus, incompatible with the historic building.
Ensuring that the addition is subordinate and secondary to the historic building and is compatible in massing, scale, materials, relationship of solids to voids, and color.	Constructing a new addition that is as large as or larger than the historic building, which visually overwhelms it (i.e., results in the diminution or loss of its historic character).

NEW EXTERIOR ADDITIONS TO HISTORIC BUILDINGS AND RELATED NEW CONSTRUCTION

RECOMMENDED

NOT RECOMMENDED

Using the same forms, materials, and color range of the historic building in a manner that does not duplicate it, but distinguishes the addition from the original building.	Duplicating the exact form, material, style, and detailing of the historic building in a new addition so that the new work appears to be historic.
Basing the alignment, rhythm, and size of the window and door openings of the new addition on those of the historic building.	
Incorporating a simple, recessed, small-scale hyphen, or connection, to physically and visually separate the addition from the historic building.	
Distinguishing the addition from the original building by setting it back from the wall plane of the historic building.	

[61 a-b] The materials, design, and location at the back of the historic house are important factors in making this a compatible new addition. Photos: © Maxwell MacKenzie.



NEW EXTERIOR ADDITIONS TO HISTORIC BUILDINGS AND RELATED NEW CONSTRUCTION

RECOMMENDED	NOT RECOMMENDED
Ensuring that the addition is stylistically appropriate for the historic building type (e.g., whether it is residential or institutional).	
Considering the design for a new addition in terms of its relationship to the historic building as well as the historic district, neighborhood, and setting.	



[62] The stair tower at the rear of this commercial building is a compatible new addition.

NEW EXTERIOR ADDITIONS TO HISTORIC BUILDINGS AND RELATED NEW CONSTRUCTION

RECOMMENDED

NOT RECOMMENDED

Rooftop Additions

Designing a compatible rooftop addition for a multi-story building, when required for a new use, that is set back at least one full bay from the primary and other highly-visible elevations and that is inconspicuous when viewed from surrounding streets.

Constructing a rooftop addition that is highly visible, which negatively impacts the character of the historic building, its site, setting, or district.

[63] (a) A mockup should be erected to demonstrate the visibility of a proposed rooftop addition and its potential impact on the historic building. Based on review of this mockup (orange marker), it was determined that the rooftop addition would meet the Standards (b). The addition is unobtrusive and blends in with the building behind it.



NEW EXTERIOR ADDITIONS TO HISTORIC BUILDINGS AND RELATED NEW CONSTRUCTION

RECOMMENDED	NOT RECOMMENDED
<p>Limiting a rooftop addition to one story in height to minimize its visibility and its impact on the historic character of the building.</p>	<p>Constructing a highly-visible, multi-story rooftop addition that alters the building's historic character.</p> <p>Constructing a rooftop addition on low-rise, one- to three-story historic buildings that is highly visible, overwhelms the building, and negatively impacts the historic district.</p> <p>Constructing a rooftop addition with amenities (such as a raised pool deck with plantings, HVAC equipment, or screening) that is highly visible and negatively impacts the historic character of the building.</p>



[64] Not Recommended:
 It is generally not appropriate to construct a rooftop addition on a low-rise, two- to three-story building such as this, because it negatively affects its historic character.

NEW EXTERIOR ADDITIONS TO HISTORIC BUILDINGS AND RELATED NEW CONSTRUCTION

RECOMMENDED

NOT RECOMMENDED

Related New Construction

Adding a new building to a historic site or property only if the requirements for a new or continuing use cannot be accommodated within the existing structure or structures.

Adding a new building to a historic site or property when the project requirements could be accommodated within the existing structure or structures.

Locating new construction far enough away from the historic building, when possible, where it will be minimally visible and will not negatively affect the building's character, the site, or setting.

Placing new construction too close to the historic building so that it negatively impacts the building's character, the site, or setting.

[65] (a) This (far left) is a compatible new outbuilding constructed on the site of a historic plantation house (b). Although traditional in design, it is built of wood to differentiate it from the historic house (which is scored stucco) located at the back of the site so as not to impact the historic house, and minimally visible from the public right-of-way (c).



new addition

NEW EXTERIOR ADDITIONS TO HISTORIC BUILDINGS AND RELATED NEW CONSTRUCTION

RECOMMENDED	NOT RECOMMENDED
Designing new construction on a historic site or in a historic setting that it is compatible but differentiated from the historic building or buildings.	Replicating the features of the historic building when designing a new building, with the result that it may be confused as historic or original to the site or setting.
Considering the design for related new construction in terms of its relationship to the historic building as well as the historic district and setting.	
Ensuring that new construction is secondary to the historic building and does not detract from its significance.	<p>Adding new construction that results in the diminution or loss of the historic character of the building, including its design, materials, location, or setting.</p> <p>Constructing a new building on a historic property or on an adjacent site that is much larger than the historic building.</p> <p>Designing new buildings or groups of buildings to meet a new use that are not compatible in scale or design with the character of the historic building and the site, such as apartments on a historic school property that are too residential in appearance.</p>
Using site features or land formations, such as trees or sloping terrain, to help minimize the new construction and its impact on the historic building and property.	
Designing an addition to a historic building in a densely-built location (such as a downtown commercial district) to appear as a separate building or infill, rather than as an addition. In such a setting, the addition or the infill structure must be compatible with the size and scale of the historic building and surrounding buildings—usually the front elevation of the new building should be in the same plane (i.e., not set back from the historic building). This approach may also provide the opportunity for a larger addition or infill when the façade can be broken up into smaller elements that are consistent with the scale of the historic building and surrounding buildings.	